STANDARD: The platoon processes enemy prisoners of war (EPWs) in accordance with the "five-S's and T", at a minimum, EPWs are not allowed to disrupt or halt the unit's mission and are treated humanely according their rights under international law.

EVENT COMPONENTS:

1. The platoon commander establishes an EPW holding area.
2. The platoon commander/platoon sergeant reports the capture of EPWs to the S-3/S-4.
3. Report the number of personnel captured, date and time of capture, place of capture by grid coordinates, and circumstances of capture.
4. The platoon searches each prisoner.
5. Remove all weapons and documents and process captured materials and equipment.
6. Examine ID cards, protective masks, and other protective equipment, and return them to the EPWs.
7. Give each prisoner from whom personal property is taken a written receipt for the property.
8. The platoon segregates EPWs within the holding area.
9. Segregate EPWs by nationality, sex, rank (field grade officers, company grade officers, NCOs, enlisted, civilians), deserters, and ideology.
10. Turn wounded EPWs over to medical personnel for evacuation through medical channels.
11. The platoon silences prisoners.
12. Prevent EPW leaders from giving orders.
13. Prevent EPWs from planning escape.
14. Record everything EPWs say, if possible.
15. Do not talk in front of EPWs except to issue orders and maintain discipline.
16. The platoon speeds the evacuation of prisoners to the company or battalion EPW collection point or holding area, as given in the OPORD or SOP.
17. The platoon rapidly moves the EPWs to the rear.
18. The platoon commander requests special instructions for EPW disposition from the S-3.
19. The platoon safeguards the EPWs.
20. Remove EPWs from the dangers of the battlefield.
21. Prevent abuse to the EPWs.
22. Do not allow civilians to give the EPWs food or water.
23. Treat EPWs humanely and IAW the law of war.
24. The platoon continues its mission.
25. Before evacuating the EPW, attach a tag to him listing all pertinent information and procedures.

REFERENCES:

1. FM 3-90.1 Tank and Mechanized Infantry Company Team
2. FM 3-90.2 Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force
3. MCO 3500.27B W/ERRATUM Operational Risk Management
4. MCRP 3-11.2A Marine Troop Leader's Guide
5. MCRP 4-11.8C Enemy Prisoners of War and Civilian Internees
6. MCRP 5-12.1A The Law of Land Warfare
7. MCWP 3-12 Marine Corps Tank Employment
8. MCWP 3-15.5 Antiarmor Operations
9. MCWP 4-1 Logistics Operations
10. NAVMC 3500.87 Infantry Training & Readiness Manual

TOW-OTH-5701: Conduct Convoy Security

SUPPORTED MET(S): 4

EVALUATION-CODED: NO **SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL:** 12 months

DESCRIPTION: This mission requires the TOW platoon to provide a convoy with security and close-in protection from direct fire while on the move. Depending on a variety of factors such as size of the convoy, escort assets available, METT-TC factors, the platoon may perform convoy escort either independently or as part of a larger unit's convoy security mission.

CONDITION: The TOW platoon is performing tactical operations as part of a battalion task force. The platoon receives an OPORD/FRAGO and supporting overlays to conduct a convoy escort operation as the lead element, flank element, trail element, or integrated within the body of the convoy. The platoon completes coordination in person or via digital communications with the convoy commander. The enemy situation is vague, but enemy contact is possible. Some iterations of this task is performed in limited visibility. Some iterations of this task is performed in MOPP 4.

STANDARD: The platoon positions its vehicles as directed and provides effective protection to the front, flanks, and/or rear of the convoy. The platoon sustains no personnel or equipment losses due to friendly fire. The platoon maintains situational awareness by monitoring digital communications displays and FM communications. Time required to plan and implement is increased when operating in MOPP 4.

EVENT COMPONENTS:

1. Platoon commander performs troop-leading procedures.
2. Verify command relationships with escorted unit and security force commander, as applicable.
3. Exchange frequencies and call signs of the escorted element.
4. Verify composition (number and type of vehicles) of the convoy and the order of march.
5. Determine primary and alternate route of march.
6. Verify all VCs have a strip map/graphic control measure of the primary and alternate route.
7. Verify location of the platoon in relation to the convoy (lead, flank, or trail element, or integrated in the convoy body).
8. Verify fire coordination measures.
9. Verify actions at halts.
10. Verify actions on contact.
11. As necessary, platoon commander directs rehearsals covering contact situations such as obstacles, ambushes, artillery, snipers, roadblocks, and civilian elements.
12. Verify actions for vehicle breakdown.
13. Establish time and location of linkup with the escorted unit (if appropriate).
14. Verify visual signals (far and near recognition signals for linkup, if appropriate).
15. Verify ROE for area of operations.
16. Platoon conducts linkup with the convoy.
17. Use far and near recognition signals, as appropriate.
18. Occupy covered and concealed position at the linkup site.

19. Coordinate to verify platoon tasks, convoy actions, and other details of escort mission.
20. Brief convoy leaders as necessary on platoon capabilities and maneuver/fire plans.
21. Platoon escorts the convoy.
22. Use most advantageous formation and movement technique, and covered and concealed routes.
23. Perform tactical movement to platoon's position in the convoy and begins movement as part of the convoy.
24. Maintain proper weapons orientation to provide security.
25. Platoon performs actions at halts.
26. Move off route, at least 100 meters beyond the convoy element.
27. Execute a herringbone formation and establishes all around security.
28. Report "SET" to the security force commander, using digital communications or FM communications.
29. Verify PLGR is correctly oriented and tracking properly.
30. Receive further guidance from security force commander, using digital communications or FM communications.
31. Platoon executes actions on contact in response to an enemy ambush.
32. Initiate actions on contact quickly and decisively as directed by the OPORD.
33. Execute action drill (platoon orients toward the enemy and places a high volume of fire on the enemy force) and sends a contact report to the convoy commander).
34. Send SPOTREP to convoy commander.
35. Use any additional reaction forces to engage the enemy.
36. Request indirect fires to suppress/destroy the enemy (lifting and shifting the fires when the platoon assaults) and smoke between the enemy and the convoy to obscure the enemy's line of sight.
37. Maintain contact to support a hasty attack by reaction force.
38. Destroy an inferior force.
39. Platoon performs actions on contact at obstacles and/or restrictions.
40. Send a contact report to convoy commander using FM communications.
41. Reconnoiter the obstacle, look for a bypass, and clear surrounding areas.
42. The platoon assumes responsibility for overwatching the obstacle; however, it is still responsible for maintaining security for the convoy.
43. Send follow-up SPOTREP to the convoy commander and recommend a COA.
44. The platoon commander recommends bypass, breach obstacle with assets on-hand, or breach obstacles using reinforcing assets; if engineers are attached to the platoon, the platoon commander's recommendations to the commander must take into account the engineers' reconnaissance and recommendations; the platoon also provides security and assistance to the engineers, as necessary.
45. Recommend, as necessary, use of indirect fires and alerts the reaction force through the convoy commander.
46. Execute the COA directed by the convoy commander.
47. Platoon completes convoy escort activities.
48. Move through the RP.
49. Move to the designated position as directed by the security force commander or the OPORD/FRAGO.

PREREQUISITE EVENTS:
TOW-TAC-5804

RELATED EVENTS:
0352-EMPL-2301 0302-OFF-1205

REFERENCES:
1. FM 3-07 Stability Operations and Support Operations
2. FM 3-90.1 Tank and Mechanized Infantry Company Team
3. FM 3-90.2 Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force
4. MCO 3500.27B W/ERRATUM Operational Risk Management
5. MCRP 3-11.2A Marine Troop Leader's Guide
6. MCWP 3-12 Marine Corps Tank Employment
7. MCWP 3-15.5 Antiarmor Operations
8. MCWP 3-33 Military Operations Other Than War (MOOTW)
9. MCWP 3-35.3 Military Operations on Urbanized Terrain
10. NAVMC 3500.87 Infantry Training & Readiness Manual

TOW-TAC-5801: Occupy an Assembly Area

SUPPORTED MET(S): 4

EVALUATION-CODED: NO **SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL:** 12 months

DESCRIPTION: Abbreviated "AA" on overlays, this is a location at which the platoon gathers (usually as part of the company team or battalion task force) to conduct maintenance and resupply activities and to make other preparations for future operations. The platoon must be able to defend from the assembly area.

CONDITION: The TOW platoon is conducting tactical operations as part of a battalion task force and receives an OPORD to occupy an assembly area. The OPORD specifies required assembly area activities, REDCON levels, and priorities of work. Time is available to complete assembly area procedures. Enemy contact is not expected. Some iterations of this task is performed in limited visibility. Some iterations of this task is performed in MOPP 4.

STANDARD: The platoon enters the assembly area without stopping or blocking the route of march, establishes local security, and maintains appropriate REDCON levels. The platoon performs all specified assembly area procedures and executes priorities of work as outlined in the OPORD. The platoon maintains situational awareness by monitoring FM communications and/or digital communications. Time required to plan and implement is increased when operating in MOPP 4.

EVENT COMPONENTS:
1. Platoon commander/platoon sergeant designate quartering party.
2. Assign personnel (such as one or two vehicle crewmen or full vehicle) to quartering party IAW unit SOP and/or tactical requirements.
3. Brief personnel on platoon or company/team requirements for quartering party.
4. Platoon quartering party prepares the assembly area (AA).
5. Assist in reconnaissance of the proposed AA.
6. Assist in improving and marking entrances, exits, and internal routes.
7. Assist in making obstacles and mines.
8. Select platoon position and mark tentative vehicle positions IAW OPORD/FRAGO or unit SOP.

9. Maintain surveillance and provide security of the area.
10. Platoon clears the release point (RP) and moves into the AA.
11. Follow directions from the guide stationed at the RP (if guides are used).
12. Move off the route of march and clears the RP without stopping or blocking traffic.
13. Orient weapon systems to cover sectors of responsibility.
14. Platoon performs initial occupation of the AA.
15. Follow directions from guides and move into marked vehicle positions (using ground guides as necessary).
16. Orient weapons systems to cover sectors of responsibility.
17. Following proper cool-down procedures, shut down engines simultaneously.
18. Platoon commander initiates AA activities.
19. Review organization of the AA with quartering party personnel.
20. Designate TRPs, trigger lines and disengagement criteria and plan.
21. Direct vehicle commanders (VCs) and missile gunners to prepare range cards and/or sector sketches.
22. Keep the commander informed of the status of the operation, using digital communications or FM communications.
23. The platoon commander reports platoon arrival at AA and completion of initial occupation.
24. As necessary, the platoon sergeant compiles SITREPs sent by vehicle commanders, using digital or FM communications and transmits the consolidated report to the platoon commander.
25. Platoon commander establishes security procedures, REDCON level, and priorities of work.
26. Establish local security as specified in the OPORD.
27. The platoon commander designates OP locations, as necessary; establishes sectors of fire that provide overlapping fields of fire; reduces dead space to minimum by employing hasty obstacles and indirect fires; verifies radio listening silence is maintained; directs platoon to camouflage vehicles and equipment; directs establishment of wire communications IAW unit SOP; and enforces noise, light and litter discipline.28. Designate REDCON level.
29. REDCON-1 (full alert): A period of maximum preparedness; all crewmen are alert and prepared for action immediately; vehicles are loaded and secured, and weapons are manned; digital link-up is completed; vehicles are ready to move immediately, with engines running and OPs pulled in.
30. REDCON-2 (full alert): Equipment is stowed except for wire and telephone gear; digital link-up is complete; vehicles and weapons are manned; OPs and M8 alarms are still deployed; engines are off, all vehicles are ready to move within 15 minutes of notification.
31. REDCON-3 (reduced alert): Fifty percent of each crew stands down for feeding, rest, and maintenance; remaining personnel man vehicles, weapons, and OPs; monitor radios; and continue with assembly area procedures; digital link-up is maintained; vehicles are ready to move within 30 minutes of notification.
32. REDCON-4 (minimum alert): Seventy-five percent of each crew stands down for feeding, rest, and maintenance; remaining personnel man vehicles, weapons, and OPs; monitor radios; and continue with assembly area procedures; digital link-up (connectivity and monitoring) is maintained; vehicles are ready to move within 1 hour of notification.
33. Establish priorities of work.
34. Platoon commander prepares platoon fire plan.
35. Coordinate with adjacent units, using digital communications or face to face.

36. Develop fire plan using individual vehicle range cards/sector sketches.
37. Verify that the fire plan affords overlapping sectors of observation and fire (including supporting fires) within the platoon and with adjacent units.
38. Platoon performs priorities of work, including OPSEC, maintenance, resupply and rest activities.
39. Establish/maintain OPSEC IAW platoon commander's guidance, OPORD/FRAGO, and/or unit SOP.
40. Perform necessary vehicle and equipment maintenance.
41. The platoon reports equipment deficiencies to the platoon sergeant.
42. Within capabilities, the platoon recovers or evacuates vehicles and equipment, and perform emergency repairs and operator maintenance as necessary.
43. The platoon performs and/or assists scheduled maintenance.
44. On order of the battalion commander, (or in some cases, the platoon commander), destroy vehicles and equipment it cannot recover or evacuate.
45. Coordinate and perform resupply, including refueling and rearmament.
46. The platoon sergeant consolidates reports and reviews ammunition, fuel, personnel and vehicle status, then forwards the platoon report to the Tank Leader/Company Gunnery Sergeant, using digital or FM communications.
47. Critical supply and equipment or personnel shortages are reported by exception using standard voice report formats.
48. Develop and implement sleep plan.
49. Platoon performs field sanitation operations.
50. Maintain adequate supply of potable water.
51. Establish heads and hand-washing facilities.
52. Perform personal hygiene activities.
53. Platoon commander continues with troop-leading procedures until ordered to move for the next mission.
54. Perform thorough METT-TC analysis.
55. Maintain contact with the higher commander and adjacent/supporting units, using digital communications or FM communications.
56. Keep platoon informed of any changes in the mission or situation.
57. Continue to supervise and refine mission-related plans and preparations.
58. Platoon prepares to depart the AA.
59. Reconnoiter route and/or calculate time-distance factors from the platoon position to the SP, as directed.
60. Perform police call to verify no equipment, supplies, or other items of tactical or intelligence value are left behind.
61. Increase REDCON level as required based on battalion commander's/platoon commander's guidance or unit SOP.

RELATED EVENTS:

0302-OFF-1205	0302-DEF-1305	0352-MOBL-2402
0352-MOBL-2403	0352-EMPL-2301	

REFERENCES:

1. FM 3-90.1 Tank and Mechanized Infantry Company Team
2. FM 3-90.2 Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force
3. MCO 3500.27B W/ERRATUM Operational Risk Management
4. MCRP 3-11.2A Marine Troop Leader's Guide
5. MCWP 3-12 Marine Corps Tank Employment

6. MCWP 3-15.5 Antiarmor Operations
7. NAVMC 3500.87 Infantry Training & Readiness Manual

TOW-TAC-5802: Conduct Consolidation

SUPPORTED MET(S): 3, 4

EVALUATION-CODED: NO **SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL:** 12 months

DESCRIPTION: The procedures of organizing and strengthening of a newly captured position so that it can be used against the enemy; the occupying force prepares for succeeding operations.

CONDITION: The TOW platoon is conducting tactical operations as part of the company/team (CO/TM) or battalion task force and either gains an objective or repels an assault on a defensive position. The enemy is defeated, but is still capable of some disorganized resistance. Some iterations of this task is performed in limited visibility. Some iterations of this task is performed in MOPP 4.

STANDARD: The platoon destroys, captures, or forces all enemy to withdraw and completes consolidation within one hour. The platoon sustains no personnel or equipment losses due to friendly fire. The platoon maintains situational awareness by monitoring digital communications displays and FM communications. Time required to plan and implement is increased when operating in MOPP 4.

EVENT COMPONENTS:
1. Platoon clears area of the enemy.
2. Reports and updates on enemy status are made in digital communications or FM communications.
3. Destroy or capture all enemy combat vehicles and personnel.
4. Drive enemy from the objective/defensive sector and surrounding key terrain.
5. Platoon establishes security.
6. Position TOW systems to cover armor avenues of approach.
7. Emplace OPs.
8. Position vehicles so they have overlapping fields of fire.
9. Annotate graphic control measures in digital communications overlays.
10. Platoon establishes a hasty defense.
11. Report to company/team or task force commander when consolidation is complete.

REFERENCES:
1. FM 3-90.1 Tank and Mechanized Infantry Company Team
2. FM 3-90.2 Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force
3. MCO 3500.27B W/ERRATUM Operational Risk Management
4. MCRP 3-11.2A Marine Troop Leader's Guide
5. MCWP 3-12 Marine Corps Tank Employment
6. MCWP 3-15.5 Antiarmor Operations
7. NAVMC 3500.87 Infantry Training & Readiness Manual

TOW-TAC-5803: Conduct Reorganization

SUPPORTED MET(S): 3, 4

EVALUATION-CODED: NO **SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL:** 12 months

DESCRIPTION: Reorganization is the shifting of internal resources within a degraded unit to increase its level of combat effectiveness.

CONDITION: The TOW platoon is conducting tactical operations as part of a company/team (CO/TM) or battalion task force and has either gained an objective or repelled an assault on a defensive position. The enemy is defeated and the platoon has completed consolidation. The platoon has sustained casualties and damaged/destroyed equipment. Some iterations of this task is performed in limited visibility. Some iterations of this task is performed in MOPP 4.

STANDARD: The platoon removes all EPWs, WIAs, and KIAs from the platoon area within 1 hour and conducts immediate resupply and cross-leveling of Class V items and reestablishes a chain of a command. The platoon accomplishes reorganization of elements below 50 percent strength within 1 hour and verifies that all Marines and leaders are aware of the new chain of command. The platoon maintains situational awareness by monitoring digital communications displays and FM communications. Time required to plan and implement is increased when operating in MOPP 4.

EVENT COMPONENTS:

1. Platoon commander reports status to S-3 or CO/TM commander using FM communications and/or digital communications.
2. Report casualties and personnel status.
3. Report Class III and V status.
4. Report vehicle status.
5. Report communications equipment status.
6. Request items for resupply.
7. Platoon commander establishes or reestablishes command and control.
8. Reestablish communications with the CO/TM or task force and adjacent units, using digital communications and FM communications.
9. Develop a COA for the unit.
10. Coordinate with adjacent units.
11. Platoon accounts for personnel.
12. Determine WIAs, MIAs, and KIAs.
13. Report personnel status to company commander/XO/1stSgt using digital communications or FM communications.
14. Platoon commander replaces key losses.
15. Utilize personnel from disabled vehicles.
16. Fill leader positions first.
17. Verify all vehicles have at least a three-man crew.
18. Redesignate wingmen.
19. Submit requests for replacement personnel, using digital communications or FM communications.
20. Platoon initiates evacuation procedures.
21. Submit requests in digital communications or FM communications.
22. Evacuate the seriously wounded and KIAs.
23. Recover and evacuate disabled vehicles.
24. Evacuate intelligence information and EPWs.

25. Evacuate intelligence information and EPWs.
26. Inventory and cross-level remaining ammunition.
27. Redistribute ammunition from damaged vehicles.
28. Reload ready storage area and machine gun bins to capacity.
29. Request resupply from S-4 officer after consolidating vehicle SITREPs and determining ammunition, fuel, personnel and vehicle status.
30. Platoon prepares for tactical operations.
31. Restore communications, both FM and digital.
32. Perform maintenance checks and emergency repairs.
33. Verify digital communications connectivity and FM communications in all vehicles prior to movement.
34. Refuel and rearm.
35. Continue to implement SOP.
36. Issue FRAGO, as necessary, using digital communications or FM communications.

PREREQUISITE EVENTS:
TOW-CSS-5503 TOW-CSS-5501 TOW-CSS-5502

REFERENCES:
1. FM 3-90.1 Tank and Mechanized Infantry Company Team
2. FM 3-90.2 Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force
3. MCO 3500.27B W/ERRATUM Operational Risk Management
4. MCRP 3-11.2A Marine Troop Leader's Guide
5. MCWP 3-12 Marine Corps Tank Employment
6. MCWP 3-15.5 Antiarmor Operations
7. NAVMC 3500.87 Infantry Training & Readiness Manual

TOW-TAC-5804: Conduct Tactical Movement

SUPPORTED MET(S): 2, 4

EVALUATION-CODED: NO **SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL:** 12 months

DESCRIPTION: Moving tactically dictates that elements of a unit are organized to facilitate combat. Movement techniques are used to traverse terrain such as traveling, traveling overwatch, and bounding overwatch which is determined by the likelihood of enemy contact. Movement formations are the arrangement of troops and/or vehicles for a specific purpose related to terrain and the likelihood of enemy contact. Formations include box, column, diamond, line, vee, wedge, echelon (right or left), coil, and herringbone.

CONDITION: The TOW platoon is conducting tactical operations as part of a company/team (CO/TM) or Battalion task force and receives an OPORD/FRAGO directing it to conduct tactical movement. The order includes graphic control measures for movement. It may or may not specify the route or axis of advance, the technique of movement, and/or the formation to be used. Enemy contact may or may not be expected during movement. Some iterations of this task is performed in limited visibility. Some iterations of this task is performed in MOPP 4.

STANDARD: The platoon moves on the route or axis of advance specified in the OPORD/FRAGO. The platoon uses formations and techniques of movement as

specified in the order, the commander's guidance and/or unit SOP. The platoon adjusts the route/axis, formation and movement technique in response to the changing probability of enemy contact and changes in the tactical situation (METT-TC factors), as necessary. The platoon sustains no personnel or equipment losses due to friendly fire. The platoon maintains situational awareness by monitoring digital communications displays and FM communications. Time required to plan and implement is increased when operating in MOPP 4.

EVENT COMPONENTS:

1. Platoon commander performs troop-leading procedures.
2. Perform reconnaissance and develop a movement plan, using digital communications to identify and designate control points as time permits.
3. Initiate movement to designated route or axis of advance as required to support the plan.
4. Platoon commander determines appropriate route, technique and formation based on mission analysis and reconnaissance.
5. Annotate graphic control measures on map overlay or digital communications; disseminate overlay to platoon.
6. Select a route that provides adequate cover and concealment (unless the route is designated in the OPORD/FRAGO).
7. Select technique of movement based on METT-TC (unless the movement technique is specified in the company/team OPORD/FRAGO).
8. The platoon commander selects traveling when speed is necessary and contact with the enemy is not likely; or traveling overwatch when speed is necessary, but contact with the enemy is possible; or bounding overwatch when contact with the enemy is expected or when crossing an open area in which the enemy may have unobstructed fields of observation and fire (danger area).
9. The platoon commander selects alternate bounds when a secure but more rapid advance is required; or successive bounds when maximum security and ease of control are required.
10. Select movement formation based on METT-TC (unless the formation was specified in the OPORD/FRAGO or by the unit SOP).
11. The platoon commander selects a column when speed is critical, when moving through restrictive terrain on a specified route, and/or when enemy contact is not likely; or a staggered column when speed is critical, when there is limited area for lateral dispersion, and/or when enemy contact is not likely; or a wedge when provided with overwatch by another element and moving in open rolling terrain; or a Vee when terrain restricts movement or when overwatch within the formation is required; or an echelon when required to provide a screen on an exposed flank of a larger moving force; or a line when required to cross a danger area and is overwatched by another element or when assaulting enemy positions.
12. Platoon commander briefs platoon and directs movement on the selected route using the selected technique of movement and formation.
13. Brief section and squad leaders on route, movement technique, and formation (and specify use of way points to assist in navigation).
14. Use the correct visual signal and/or voice command on FM communications to initiate movement technique and/or formation.
15. Use graphic control measures in digital communications or other visual or voice cues to initiate the technique of movement and/or formation.
16. Platoon performs traveling technique of movement.
17. Assume correct order of march as directed by the platoon commander.
18. Move continuously as one unit, with one element trailing the other.

19. Maintain interval and dispersion between vehicles as terrain and weather permit.
20. Use terrain driving techniques by individual vehicles to reduce exposure.
21. Maintain visual contact between lead and trail element.
22. Maintain section integrity and organize the formation for ease of deployment during the upcoming mission.
23. Maintain areas of responsibility for observation and fire to provide all around security.
24. Platoon performs traveling overwatch technique of movement.
25. Assume positions as lead and trail elements as designated by platoon commander.
26. Move with element continuously as the trail element halts periodically at good vantage points to provide overwatch/support by fire for the lead element.
27. Maintain all around security for all vehicles.
28. Use terrain driving techniques by individual vehicles to reduce exposure.
29. Platoon performs bounding overwatch technique of movement.
30. The platoon will use the alternate or successive bounding method, either as designated by the platoon commander or as specified in the OPORD; the platoon commander designates the bounding and overwatch elements.
31. Assume positions as lead (bounding) and trail (overwatch) elements as designated by platoon commander.
32. Execute alternate bounds.
33. The designated overwatch element (1st Squad in this example) occupies firing positions that afford optimum fields of observation and fire and provides overwatch/support by fire for the bounding element (2nd Squad in this example); once 1st Squad reports "SET," 2nd Squad begins its bound past 1st Squad, taking care not to obstruct the overwatch element's (1st Squad) fields of observation and fire (IAW METT-TC); the two elements repeat this sequence of alternate bounds until the platoon comes to a halt or the technique of movement is changed.
34. Execute successive bounds.
35. The designated overwatch element (1st Squad in this example) occupies firing positions that afford optimum fields of observation and fire, and provides overwatch/support by fire for the bounding element (2nd Squad in this example); once 1st Squad reports "SET," 2nd Squad begins its bound in the direction of 1st Squad, taking up a position abreast of (to the left or right of) 1st Squad, taking care not to obstruct the overwatch element's fields of observation and fire; the two elements repeat the sequence of bounding until the platoon comes to a halt, or the technique of movement is changed.
36. Platoon commander directs movement using a column formation.
37. Platoon commander positions himself where the platoon can most effectively execute the formation and where he can best control the platoon.
38. Direct vehicles to move into designated positions within the formation.
39. Verify vehicles maintain correct interval and speed.
40. Direct VCs to orient weapon systems to provide all around security (last vehicle orients its weapon systems to the rear if the platoon is the last element in a column or is operating independently).
41. Platoon commander directs movement using a staggered column formation.
42. Platoon commander positions himself where the platoon can most effectively execute the formation and where he can best control the platoon.
43. Direct vehicles to move into the designated positions within the formation with vehicles staggered on alternate sides of the prescribed route and the trail section or squad positioned to provide overwatch for the lead

section or squad, as necessary.
44. Verify vehicles maintain proper lateral dispersion, interval, and speed.
45. Direct VCs to orient weapons systems to provide all around security (last vehicle orients its weapons to the rear if the platoon is the last element in a staggered column, or if the platoon is operating independently).
46. Platoon commander directs movement using a wedge formation.
47. Platoon commander positions himself where the platoon can most effectively execute the formation and where he can best control the platoon.
48. Direct vehicles to move into designated positions within the formation with the platoon sergeant abreast of the platoon commander and wingmen behind and to the outside of their respective section leaders.
49. Verify vehicles maintain proper lateral dispersion, interval, and speed.
50. Direct VCs to orient weapons systems to provide fires to the front and flanks.
51. Platoon commander directs movement using a Vee formation.
52. Platoon commander positions himself where the platoon can most effectively execute the formation and where he can best control the platoon.
53. Direct vehicles to move into designated positions within the formation, with the platoon commander's section opposite of the platoon commander, and the platoon sergeant and his section opposite each other, behind and to the inside of the lead squads.
54. Direct lead section to orient weapons systems in a cross fire configuration to increase standoff if factors of METT-TC permit.
55. Verify vehicles maintain positions, so that the trail section can monitor the lead section's movement (if lead section masks trail section's fire, or move out of range of its weapons systems, trail section adjusts its positions or informs lead section to adjust its position or to slow movement).
56. Verify vehicles maintain proper lateral dispersion, interval, and speed.
57. Direct VCs to orient weapons systems to provide fires to the front and flanks.
58. Platoon commander directs movement using an echelon formation.
59. Position himself where the platoon can most effectively execute the formation and where he can best control the platoon.
60. Direct vehicles to move into the designated positions within the formation using the wingman concept, forming an echelon left or right behind the lead vehicle.
61. Verify vehicles maintain proper echelon position, lateral dispersion, interval, and speed by monitoring the display.
62. Direct VCs to orient weapons systems to provide fires to the front and in the direction of the echelon (left or right).
63. Platoon commander directs movement using a line formation.
64. Position himself where the platoon can most effectively execute the formation and where he can control the platoon.
65. Direct vehicles to move into designated positions within the formation using the squads abreast concept, with vehicles forming a line abreast of each other.
66. Verify vehicles maintain proper lateral dispersion, interval, and speed.
67. Direct VCs to orient weapons systems to provide fires to the front.
68. Platoon commander directs the platoon to execute a herringbone formation.
69. The platoon executes a herringbone formation when a scheduled or unscheduled halt occurs and the platoon must assume a hasty defense with all-round security, while remaining postured to resume movement in the direction of travel.
70. Use graphic control measures on map, or a radio cue to initiate the

formation change.
71. Use FM communications and/or digital communications command or visual signal.
72. Position himself where the platoon can most effectively execute the formation and where he can best control the platoon.
73. Direct vehicles to move into covered and concealed positions on alternate sides of the route.
74. Platoon commander directs the platoon to execute a coil formation during convoy operations.
75. During convoy operations, platoon vehicles move off the route and away from the escorted vehicles to provide early warning and protection for the convoy based on factors of METT-TC or the convoy commander's guidance.
76. Direct VCs to orient vehicle outward and maintain proper dispersion.
77. Direct VCs to orient weapons systems outward to maintain all around security (if the platoon is operating independently, the trail vehicle orients weapons systems to the rear to provide rear security).
78. Direct platoon to establish/maintain local security.
79. Take actions for a scheduled halt.
80. The platoon commander determines cause of the halt, informs commander of the halt and its cause (voice), develops COA, and resumes movement as soon as possible.
81. Take required actions for a scheduled halt.
82. The platoon commander directs/request maintenance and resupply operations, as necessary.
83. Platoon commander directs the platoon to execute a coil formation when the platoon is operating independently and must establish perimeter defense during extended halts or lulls in combat.
84. Use graphic control measures on map, or a radio cue to initiate the formation change.
85. Use voice command or visual signal.
86. Platoon commander positions himself where the platoon can most effectively execute the formation and where he can best control the platoon.
87. Direct vehicles to move into designated positions within the formation.
88. The lead vehicle, squad, or section occupies a covered and concealed position in the direction of travel (12 o'clock); second vehicle, squad, or section occupies a covered and concealed position at either the 3 o'clock or the 9 o'clock position based on unit SOP; third vehicle, or squad, or section occupies a covered and concealed position opposite of the second vehicle (3 o'clock or 9 o'clock); and the trail vehicle, or squad, or section, occupies a covered and concealed position opposite the lead vehicle (6 o'clock).
89. Direct VCs to orient vehicles outward and maintain proper dispersion.
90. Direct VCs to orient weapons systems outward to maintain all around security.
91. Direct platoon to establish/maintain local security.

RELATED EVENTS:

0352-MOBL-2402 0352-MOBL-2403

REFERENCES:

1. FM 3-90.1 Tank and Mechanized Infantry Company Team
2. FM 3-90.2 Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force
3. MCO 3500.27B W/ERRATUM Operational Risk Management
4. MCRP 3-11.2A Marine Troop Leader's Guide
5. MCWP 3-12 Marine Corps Tank Employment

6. MCWP 3-15.5 Antiarmor Operations
7. NAVMC 3500.87 Infantry Training & Readiness Manual

TOW-TAC-5805: Follow and Support

SUPPORTED MET(S): 2

EVALUATION-CODED: NO **SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL:** 12 months

DESCRIPTION: The TOW platoon conducts follow and support missions when the enemy situation is extremely fluid or unknown. Normally, it executes the mission in support of dismounted infantry or scout platoons. On rare occasions, the platoon will follow and support other tank platoons or mechanized forces. When the lead element makes contact with an enemy force it cannot destroy or bypass, it requests the support of the tank platoon to destroy or suppress the enemy. Based on the request, the platoon conducts linkup and coordination, then executes an offensive COA.

CONDITION: The TOW platoon is conducting tactical operations as part of a company/team (CO/TM) or battalion task force. Elements consisting of dismounted infantry or scouts are leading. The platoon is conducting tactical movement, or it is stationary to the rear and not in the battlespace of the lead element. The platoon commander receives a FRAGO and supporting overlays, if required, to conduct linkup and to destroy an enemy position that has halted the forward progress of the lead element. Some iterations of this task is performed in limited visibility. Some iterations of this task is performed in MOPP 4.

STANDARD: The platoon positions itself so that it does not interfere with the lead element's battle space or tactical movement. The platoon performs linkup and destroys the enemy position or vehicle(s), enabling the lead element to continue its original mission. The platoon sustains no personnel or equipment losses due to friendly fire. The platoon maintains situational awareness by monitoring digital communications displays and FM communications. Time required to plan and implement is increased when operating in MOPP 4.

EVENT COMPONENTS:
1. Platoon commander prepares and issues a FRAGO.
2. Verify digital communications connectivity and FM communications in all vehicles.
3. Uses digital or FM communications.
4. Designate location of linkup point.
5. Specify route and formation for the movement.
6. Designate far and near recognition signals.
7. Specify time of movement.
8. Platoon performs tactical movement to the linkup point.
9. Use covered and concealed routes to the maximum extent possible.
10. Use the most advantageous formation and movement technique based on METT-TC.
11. Maintain SA to guide platoon to linkup point.
12. Maintains weapons orientation to provide all-round security.
13. Enter BP from the rear and occupies position using modified line formation.

14. Move into positions and orient weapons systems toward the center of the avenue of approach or EA.
15. Platoon commander links up with the lead element, if physical linkup is required.
16. Perform tactical movement to the designated contact point.
17. Check for supporting units distance and awareness.
18. Use far and near recognition signals to reduce fratricide risk.
19. Platoon commander coordinates with lead element.
20. Exchange information face-to-face, or by FM communications and/or digital communications, based on the tactical situation.
21. The platoon commander confirms or determines enemy disposition, friendly disposition, tentative maneuver plan, requirements for use of guides, control procedures for direct and indirect fires, close-in protection measures for direct and indirect fires, communications procedures (visual, wire, hand-held radios, FM radio).
22. Perform a digital and/or ground reconnaissance, as time permits.
23. The platoon commander determines primary and alternate routes, locates firing positions, designates danger areas along the route, identifies dominating structures and terrain along the route, and determines the use of and location for ground guides.
24. Platoon commander updates the platoon.
25. Outline results of information exchange.
26. Brief the plan to destroy the target, including tactical information from the reconnaissance.
27. Specify time of movement.
28. Platoon performs tactical movement to the firing position.
29. Use indirect fires or CAS, and direct fires to suppress enemy anti-armor and crew-served weapons and obscure the movement of the platoon.
30. Use dismounted personnel to guide vehicles to their positions and provide close-in security, as required.
31. Platoon executes actions on contact.
32. Destroy an inferior force.
33. Attack by fire against the enemy position.
34. Execute a hasty attack or assault against the enemy position.
35. Execute support by fire for an assault by friendly elements or provides overwatch for friendly movement to destroy the enemy position.
36. Send SITREP using FM communications and/or digital communications.
37. Direct the platoon to continue the follow and support mission until change in mission.

PREREQUISITE EVENTS:
TOW-TAC-5814

RELATED EVENTS:
0352-EMPL-2301 0302-OFF-1205

REFERENCES:
1. FM 3-90.1 Tank and Mechanized Infantry Company Team
2. FM 3-90.2 Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force
3. MCO 3500.27B W/ERRATUM Operational Risk Management
4. MCRP 3-11.2A Marine Troop Leader's Guide
5. MCWP 3-12 Marine Corps Tank Employment
6. MCWP 3-15.5 Antiarmor Operations
7. NAVMC 3500.87 Infantry Training & Readiness Manual

TOW-TAC-5806: Conduct an Attack by Fire

SUPPORTED MET(S): 2, 5

EVALUATION-CODED: NO **SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL:** 12 months
DESCRIPTION: The purpose of the attack by fire is to destroy the enemy using long-range fires from dominating terrain or using standoff of the TOW missile. The platoon can use an attack by fire to destroy inferior forces when the platoon commander does not desire to close with the enemy or when the platoon is part of a company-level or battalion task force effort. In addition, the platoon may occupy an attack by fire position as part of a hasty defense with the goal of destroying a superior force. A successful attack by fire destroys the enemy force.

CONDITION: The TOW platoon is operating in a tactical environment as part of a battalion task force that has made contact with a moving or stationary enemy. The task force commander directs the platoon to conduct an attack by fire from a designated position. Some iterations of this task is performed in limited visibility. Some iterations of this task is performed in MOPP 4.

STANDARD: The platoon occupies the designated ABF position and places effective direct and indirect fire (if applicable) on the enemy element and destroys or suppresses the unit. The platoon sustains no personnel or equipment losses due to friendly fire. The platoon maintains situational awareness by monitoring digital communications displays and FM communications. Time required to plan and implement is increased when operating in MOPP 4.

EVENT COMPONENTS:
1. Platoon commander receives/analyzes OPORD/FRAGO.
2. Determine location of enemy element.
3. Identify covered and concealed routes to ABF position (if not specified in the order) and, if applicable, use way points to assist in navigation.
4. Confirm commander's direct fire and indirect fire (if applicable) scheme of maneuver (who has indirect fire control; when to lift and shift fires).
5. Coordinate with supporting elements as required.
6. Issue FRAGO to the platoon using digital communications or FM communications.
7. Platoon performs tactical movement to ABF position.
8. Use appropriate speed, formation, and movement technique to the ABF position.
9. In many situations, bounding overwatch will be the most advantageous technique.
10. Orient weapon systems to provide all around security during movement.
11. Engage enemy forces, if necessary.
12. Platoon occupies the ABF position.
13. Confirm that the position provides for placement of effective fires on the enemy, and facilitates weapons standoff.
14. Confirm the position affords cover and concealment.
15. Perform a hasty occupation of the ABF position.
16. Designate or identify TRPs.
17. Brief platoon on sectors of fire and adjust positions as needed.
18. Platoon attacks by fire.
19. Scan for enemy elements using long range optics.
20. Locate other friendly elements, nominally those conducting the assault,

and ensure all VCs and gunners know friendly situation.
21. Use TOW missiles to suppress and destroy large targets.
22. The platoon commander issues a platoon fire command specifying the method of fire, firing pattern and rate of fire the platoon must sustain to accomplish the task.
23. Use machine gun fire to suppress dismounted troops, smaller or closer targets, and suspected enemy positions.
24. Use indirect fires and CAS on enemy elements.
25. Platoon continues the attack by fire until all enemy elements are destroyed, suppressed or the order to lift fires is received.
26. Sustain a continuous and consistent rate of fire on the enemy position.
27. Shift, start, stop, or adjust direct and/or indirect fires, as necessary.
28. Move to alternate ABF positions as necessary to avoid becoming decisively engaged and/or to maintain effective fires on the enemy, on order or when disengagement criteria are met.
29. Cease fire once the enemy is destroyed, or on order from the commander.

PREREQUISITE EVENTS:
TOW-TAC-5804

RELATED EVENTS:
0352-EMPL-2301 0302-OFF-1205

REFERENCES:
1. FM 3-90.1 Tank and Mechanized Infantry Company Team
2. FM 3-90.2 Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force
3. MCO 3500.27B W/ERRATUM Operational Risk Management
4. MCRP 3-11.2A Marine Troop Leader's Guide
5. MCWP 3-12 Marine Corps Tank Employment
6. MCWP 3-15.5 Antiarmor Operations
7. NAVMC 3500.87 Infantry Training & Readiness Manual

TOW-TAC-5807: Conduct an Anti-Armor Ambush

SUPPORTED MET(S): 2, 5

EVALUATION-CODED: NO **SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL:** 12 months

DESCRIPTION: An ambush is a surprise attack by fire from concealed positions on a moving or temporarily halted enemy.

CONDITION: The TOW platoon is operating in a tactical environment as part of a battalion task force. The task force commander directs the platoon to conduct an anti-armor ambush to destroy enemy vehicles and disrupt their reconnaissance efforts. Some iterations of this task is performed in limited visibility. Some iterations of this task is performed in MOPP 4.

STANDARD: The platoon occupies the designated ambush position and places effective direct and indirect fire (if applicable) on the enemy element and destroys the unit. The platoon sustains no personnel or equipment losses due to friendly fire. The platoon maintains situational awareness by monitoring digital communications displays and FM communications. Time required to plan and implement is increased when operating in MOPP 4.

EVENT COMPONENTS:

1. Platoon commander receives/analyzes OPORD/FRAGO.
2. Determine location of enemy element.
3. The platoon commander/section leader, accompanied by security personnel, conduct leader's reconnaissance to confirm the plan and return to the objective rally point (ORP).
4. Identify covered and concealed routes to ambush position (if not specified in the order) and, if applicable, use way points to assist in navigation.
5. The security element departs the assembly area and moves to assigned positions where they can secure the flanks of the ambush site.
6. The platoon commander assigns positions that have: good fields of fire into the kill zone, offering maximum standoff for the TOW system; cover and concealment; an obstacle between the platoon/section and the kill zone; covered and concealed withdrawal routes.
7. The platoon commander/section leader plans indirect fire targets in the kill zone to cover the platoon's withdrawal.
8. If possible, platoon members prepare or improve covered and concealed positions while waiting for the enemy.
9. Upon observing the enemy, the security team alerts the platoon commander/section leader.
10. At a minimum, the team reports direction of movement, size of target, and any special weapons and equipment carried.
11. All platoon/section members remain motionless and employ noise and light discipline until the enemy appears in the kill zone.
12. The platoon commander gives the method of engagement.
13. The platoon commander signals the initiating cue to commence fire.
14. Upon initiating the ambush the remainder of the armor-killer team opens fire with the remaining weapons.
15. Indirect fires should impact the kill zone as soon as possible after the initiation of the ambush.
16. The platoon/section destroys the enemy.
17. The platoon commander signals cease fire.
18. The platoon commander/section leader gives the signal to withdraw.
19. The platoon/section withdraws to the ORP.
20. Smoke is used to cover the withdrawal.
21. The platoon commander/section leader determine the method of withdrawal.
22. The platoon commander reports IAW the OPORD.
23. The platoon/section halts at least one terrain feature away and disseminates information.

RELATED EVENTS:

0302-OFF-1205	0352-EMPL-2301	0352-EMPL-1301
0352-EMPL-1302	0352-EMPL-2300	

REFERENCES:

1. FM 3-90.1 Tank and Mechanized Infantry Company Team
2. FM 3-90.2 Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force
3. MCO 3500.27B W/ERRATUM Operational Risk Management
4. MCRP 3-11.2A Marine Troop Leader's Guide
5. MCWP 3-12 Marine Corps Tank Employment
6. MCWP 3-15.5 Antiarmor Operations
7. NAVMC 3500.87 Infantry Training & Readiness Manual

TOW-TAC-5808: Conduct an Overwatch/Support by Fire

SUPPORTED MET(S): 2, 5

EVALUATION-CODED: NO **SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL:** 12 months

DESCRIPTION: A tactical task in which a maneuver element moves to a position on the battlefield where it can engage the enemy by direct fire to support a maneuvering force by either support by fire, providing overwatch, or establishing a base of fire. The maneuver element does not attempt to maneuver to capture enemy forces or terrain.

CONDITION: The TOW platoon is conducting tactical operations as part of a battalion task force. The platoon is designated by the battalion commander to provide overwatch and/or support by fire for moving friendly elements from moving or stationary positions. Enemy contact is possible. Some iterations of this task is performed in limited visibility. Some iterations of this task is performed in MOPP 4.

STANDARD: The platoon occupies a position from which it can provide overwatch/support by fire for the supported element. The platoon suppresses or destroys enemy elements that could affect accomplishment of the supported element's mission. The platoon maintains communications with the supported unit and warns it of lapses in overwatch coverage. The platoon sustains no personnel or equipment losses due to friendly fire. The platoon maintains situational awareness and monitors FM communications and/or digital communications. Time required to plan and implement is increased when operating in MOPP 4.

EVENT COMPONENTS:

1. Platoon commander alerts and issues the FRAGO/OPORD for the overwatch/support by fire mission.
2. Identify/designate tentative overwatch/SBF positions, TRPs, sectors of fire, battalion objective, moving element routes, and/or orientation on likely enemy positions.
3. Identify covered and concealed routes to be used during movement to overwatch/SBF position.
4. Verify signal to lift and shift fires.
5. Annotate essential graphic control measures in map overlays and updates the platoon.
6. Platoon performs tactical movement to and occupies overwatch/SBF position.
7. Maintain orientation on and overwatch of the supported element's battle space during movement.
8. Adjust movement to maintain correct interval from the supported element based on the terrain and the ability of the platoon's weapon systems to cover the supported element's battle space.
9. Observe elements to slow/alter movement so it does not exceed the platoon's ability to provide direct/indirect fire.
10. Make a short halt on key terrain that affords more effective overwatch for the supported element, if necessary.
11. Perform hasty occupation of overwatch/SBF position that provides effective weapon standoff, cover and concealment for HMMWV positions, and/or cover and concealment on likely enemy positions, if appropriate.
12. Platoon performs overwatch from stationary position, as the situation dictates.

13. Scan sectors of fire, as designated by the platoon commander or SOP.
14. Observe supported unit to assist movement and control supporting fire.
15. Keep supported element informed of the enemy situation.
16. Platoon initiates suppressive fires, if support by fire becomes necessary.
17. Suppressive fires are initiated when the platoon commander issues a platoon fire command or when individual vehicles fire, after observing an enemy element.
18. Use TOW missiles and machine gun fire to destroy targets and suppress dismounted troops and suspected enemy locations.
19. Call for and adjust indirect fire and CAS.
20. Adjust fires, based on the supported unit's movement/signals, to prevent fratricide, as necessary.
21. Move to alternate positions to avoid becoming decisively engaged and/or to maintain effective fires on the enemy, as necessary.

PREREQUISITE EVENTS:
TOW-TAC-5818

RELATED EVENTS:
0352-EMPL-2301 0302-OFF-1205

REFERENCES:
1. FM 3-90.1 Tank and Mechanized Infantry Company Team
2. FM 3-90.2 Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force
3. MCO 3500.27B W/ERRATUM Operational Risk Management
4. MCRP 3-11.2A Marine Troop Leader's Guide
5. MCWP 3-12 Marine Corps Tank Employment
6. MCWP 3-15.5 Antiarmor Operations
7. NAVMC 3500.87 Infantry Training & Readiness Manual

TOW-TAC-5809: Conduct a Bypass

SUPPORTED MET(S): 2

EVALUATION-CODED: NO **SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL:** 12 months

DESCRIPTION: A bypass is a tactical task that involves maneuvering around an obstacle, position, or enemy force to maintain the momentum of advance. Bypassed obstacles and enemy forces are reported to higher headquarters. It is conducted in accordance to the bypass criteria, which is established by higher headquarters and specifies the conditions and size under which enemy units and/or obstacles and contact may be avoided.

CONDITION: The TOW platoon is conducting tactical operations as part of a battalion task force and makes contact with an enemy force or obstacle. The platoon initiates actions on contact and is directed by the commander to conduct a bypass. The platoon's movement is covered by adjacent units in an overwatch position. Some iterations of this task is performed in limited visibility. Some iterations of this task is performed in MOPP 4.

STANDARD: The platoon locates a suitable bypass route affording cover and concealment and/or weapon standoff. The platoon conducts the bypass without becoming decisively engaged by the enemy element being bypassed. The platoon sustains no personnel or equipment losses due to friendly fire. The platoon

maintains situational awareness and monitors FM communications and/or digital communications. Time required to plan and implement is increased when operating in MOPP 4.

EVENT COMPONENTS:

1. Platoon commander reconnoiters to locate an available route, if the commander did not designate one.
2. Annotate graphic control measures in digital communications overlays and transmits information to the platoon using a combination of FM and digital SA.
3. Verify bypass affords routes away from enemy positions and obstacles.
4. Verify that terrain along the bypass route will support movement of platoon vehicles.
5. Verify bypass affords covered and concealed positions/routes beyond the enemy positions/obstacles.
6. If the platoon commander does not locate a suitable bypass route, he sends a SITREP (FM communications/digital communications) to the company commander and prepares the platoon to take actions as directed.
7. Platoon performs tactical movement along the route.
8. Use most advantageous formation and movement technique.
9. Maintain weapons orientation to provide all around security.
10. Identify and react to enemy forces along the route.
11. Call for indirect fire support, including smoke, to screen movement using digital communications or FM communications.
12. Platoon takes appropriate actions, after the completion of the bypass.
13. Report completion to the S-3, using FM communications and/or digital communications.
14. Assume an overwatch/support by fire role to allow follow-on units to bypass, if so ordered.

PREREQUISITE EVENTS:

TOW-TAC-5804

RELATED EVENTS:

0352-EMPL-2301 0302-OFF-1205

REFERENCES:

1. FM 3-90.1 Tank and Mechanized Infantry Company Team
2. FM 3-90.2 Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force
3. MCO 3500.27B W/ERRATUM Operational Risk Management
4. MCRP 3-11.2A Marine Troop Leader's Guide
5. MCWP 3-12 Marine Corps Tank Employment
6. MCWP 3-15.5 Antiarmor Operations
7. MCWP 3-17 Engineer Operations
8. NAVMC 3500.87 Infantry Training & Readiness Manual

TOW-TAC-5810: Conduct an Assault

SUPPORTED MET(S): 2, 5

EVALUATION-CODED: NO **SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL:** 12 months

DESCRIPTION: The culmination of an attack which closes with the enemy

CONDITION: The TOW platoon is conducting tactical operations as part of a battalion task force and receives an OPORD/FRAGO to conduct an assault. The location of the assault position is designated in the order. The battalion or CO/TM commander has positioned adjacent units in support-by-fire positions. Some iterations of this task is performed in limited visibility. Some iterations of this task is performed in MOPP 4.

STANDARD: The platoon seizes the position, resulting in the destruction, capture, or withdrawal of 100 percent of the enemy. The platoon sustains no more than 20 percent casualties due to enemy fire. The platoon sustains no personnel or equipment losses due to friendly fire. The platoon maintains situational awareness by monitoring digital communications displays and FM communications. Time required to plan and implement is increased when operating in MOPP 4.

EVENT COMPONENTS:

1. Platoon commander receives and analyzes the OPORD/FRAGO.
2. Determine location of the objective.
3. Identify covered and concealed routes to the assault position (if not specified in the FRAGO).
4. Confirm commander's direct and indirect fire scheme of maneuver (who has indirect fire control or CAS; when to lift and shift fires, what target precedence exists).
5. Issue FRAGO to the platoon, using a verbal orders process or FM communications and/or digital communications.
6. Platoon moves to the assault position
7. Use appropriate formation and movement technique.
8. Orient weapons systems to provide all around security during movement.
9. Engage enemy forces, if necessary.
10. Platoon occupies the assault position.
11. If the platoon is unable to occupy the assault position, platoon commander determines/designates tactical information and relays it to the platoon and/or higher, through FM communications and/or digital communications, prior to crossing LD.
12. Perform final checks of vehicles, weapons, and equipment and reports to the platoon commander when prepared to assault.
13. Come on line within the assault position.
14. Scan the objective using all available long-range optics to determine enemy type, size, and locations of any obstacles.
15. Transmit SPOTREP to the platoon commander and S-3 officer.
16. Platoon commander analyzes the situation and makes final preparations, as needed.
17. Develop an estimate of the situation to determine additional COAs that may be required by the platoon and/or battalion prior to and after the assault but that were not in the commander's original OPORD/FRAGO.
18. Determine composition and disposition of the enemy force occupying the objective and identifies route(s) into enemy flanks and/or bypass routes around any known obstacles.
19. Send SPOTREP/SITREP to the S-3 with recommendations on COAs, using FM communications and/or digital communications.
20. Relay essential information from higher to the vehicle commanders as it is received.
21. Designate additional TRPs, targets, and routes through the objective, as necessary, and identify them to VCs using FM communications and/or digital communications.

22. Platoon commander orders the platoon to assault.
23. Fires should be initiated as part of the assault plan.
24. Specify weapons orientation and LOA.
25. Request adjustment to direct/indirect fire support and/or CAS to suppress known or suspected enemy forces on or within range of the objective, using FM communications and/or digital communications.
26. Platoon assaults.
27. Move out on line.
28. Maintain forward momentum along designated route(s) or IAW OPORD/FRAGO.
29. Lift and shift supporting fires beyond objective, as necessary, using FM communications and/or digital communications; this can be achieved on the move while closing toward the objective or from stationary firing positions, as necessary.
30. Use all weapon systems to destroy or suppress enemy elements on the objective.
31. Move to its designated position on the objective, if the objective is defensible maintaining alignment with adjacent units, as necessary.
32. Assault through the objective to occupy defensible terrain beyond it IAW the commander's intent, if objective is not defensible.
33. Platoon occupies defensible positions.
34. Execute steps for hasty occupation of a BP.
35. Continue to use direct/indirect fires as appropriate to destroy identified enemy elements.
36. Platoon commander reports the situation.
37. Compile SITREPs from vehicle commanders.
38. Submit SITREPs by FM communications and/or digital communications to the S-3.

PREREQUISITE EVENTS:
TANK-TAC-7804

RELATED EVENTS:
0352-EMPL-2301 0302-OFF-1205

REFERENCES:
1. FM 3-90.1 Tank and Mechanized Infantry Company Team
2. FM 3-90.2 Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force
3. MCO 3500.27B W/ERRATUM Operational Risk Management
4. MCRP 3-11.2A Marine Troop Leader's Guide
5. MCWP 3-12 Marine Corps Tank Employment
6. MCWP 3-15.5 Antiarmor Operations
7. NAVMC 3500.87 Infantry Training & Readiness Manual

TOW-TAC-5811: Conduct Operations in an Urban Area

SUPPORTED MET(S): 2, 3, 4, 5

EVALUATION-CODED: NO **SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL:** 12 months

DESCRIPTION: Operations in a built-up urban area are planned and executed based on the factors of METT-TC and established doctrine. The platoon is usually employed as part of a larger force, such as a company/team or battalion task force, but may be task organized to support operations at the section level.

CONDITION: The TOW platoon is conducting tactical operations in an urban environment as part of a company/team (CO/TM) or battalion task force. The unit receives an operations order (OPORD) or fragmentary order (FRAGO) directing it to support operations in a built-up area at the location and time specified. The built-up area may be a very small village (10 or fewer buildings), in a lateral strip area (along a road), or a concentration of structures/facilities. The order includes all applicable overlays and graphics. Indirect fires, engineer assets, and military intelligence assets are available upon request. All necessary unit personnel and equipment are available. Contact is possible. The unit establishes communications and digital connectivity (if applicable), with subordinate, adjacent, and higher headquarters, and is passing information in accordance with (IAW) the standard operating procedures (SOP). The unit is provided guidance on the rules of engagement (ROE) and rules of interaction (ROI). Coalition forces and noncombatants may be present in the operational environment. Some iterations of this task is performed in limited visibility. Some iterations of this task is performed in MOPP 4.

STANDARD: The platoon supports tactical operations in the urban built-up area IAW the SOP, the order, and/or the higher commander's guidance. The platoon task organizes according to mission needs and employs all available assets against the enemy to isolate and secure the objective(s). The unit complies with the ROE and ROI. No friendly unit suffers casualties or equipment damage as a result of fratricide.

EVENT COMPONENTS:

1. The platoon commander, in coordination with the supported infantry unit leaders, conducts a physical or map reconnaissance, based on METT-TC, of the routes to be used by the CO/TM in the built-up area.
2. Identify primary and supporting routes.
3. Identify approach routes to the built-up area.
4. Identify restrictive locations along the route that may provide ambush positions.
5. Identify dominating structures along the route.
6. Identify routes out of the built-up area.
7. Develop a tentative plan.
8. Conduct reconnaissance of the position with section/squad leaders, and security.
9. Assign sectors and OP locations.
10. Select tentative building or vehicle locations for defensive positions.
11. Select a location for the platoon/section CP.
12. Platoon commander/section leader(s) designates escape routes and priority of work, to include sleeping and feeding, positioning of Class IV and Class V, booby traps, and unused rooms and buildings.
13. The platoon/section establishes and marks routes for movement between positions, both within and between buildings.
14. The platoon/section establishes wire communications between positions.
15. The platoon commander/section leaders give sectors of fire to gunners for range cards.
16. Range cards and sector sketches are prepared.
17. Platoon commander/section leader designates alternate and supplementary positions.
18. Obstacles are emplaced to deny the enemy access to streets, buildings, or to slow movement (include rooftops and inside buildings).
19. Vehicle positions are selected.

20. Vehicles using firing positions hidden inside of buildings enter through the wall opposite the likely direction of enemy advance.
21. The building must be sturdy enough to support the weight of the vehicle.
22. There must be a 9-inch mask clearance between the launcher and any obstruction.
23. All glass from windows, doors, and furniture that could be blown around are removed.
24. Vehicle tracks into the building are filled in or brushed over.
25. A dismounted TOW position within a building should have the following: a sturdy building; a ceiling a least 7 feet high; a room that is a least 17 by 24 feet or larger; 20 square feet of ventilation to the rear of the system; there must be 9 inches of clearance between the bottom of the launch tube and the window sill; glass is removed from all windows and doors, and furniture and other objects that could be blown around are removed from the room; all Marines in the room wear earplugs and ballistic eye protection and are positioned forward of the rear of the launch tube.
26. The platoon/section improves movement routes within the platoon/section position.
27. The platoon/section prepares the withdrawal plan.
28. Routes are marked.
29. Leaders plan and disseminate primary and alternate withdrawal signals.
30. The withdrawal plan is rehearsed.
31. The platoon commander reports status, any change in the tactical situation, and combat strength to the S-3.

PREREQUISITE EVENTS:

TOW-TAC-5808	TOW-TAC-5804	TOW-TAC-5810

RELATED EVENTS:

0352-EMPL-2301	0302-OFF-1205

REFERENCES:

1. FM 3-06 Urban Operations
2. FM 3-07 Stability Operations and Support Operations
3. FM 3-90.1 Tank and Mechanized Infantry Company Team
4. FM 3-90.2 Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force
5. MCO 3500.27B W/ERRATUM Operational Risk Management
6. MCRP 3-11.2A Marine Troop Leader's Guide
7. MCWP 3-12 Marine Corps Tank Employment
8. MCWP 3-15.5 Antiarmor Operations
9. MCWP 3-33 Military Operations Other Than War (MOOTW)
10. MCWP 3-35.3 Military Operations on Urbanized Terrain
11. NAVMC 3500.87 Infantry Training & Readiness Manual

TOW-TAC-5812: Conduct a Deliberate Occupation of a Battle Position

SUPPORTED MET(S): 3

EVALUATION-CODED: NO **SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL:** 12 months

DESCRIPTION: The TOW platoon can conduct deliberate occupation of a BP when all of the following conditions exist: time is available, the enemy is not expected or has not been located within direct fire range, and a friendly element is forward of the BP with the mission of providing security for the

occupying force. The platoon begins by occupying a hide position behind the BP. It assumes a formation that will provide 360-degree security based on considerations of METT-TC and OCOKA. Section and squad leaders move to the platoon commander's vehicle and prepare to reconnoiter the position. The platoon commander briefs his gunner on actions to take if the reconnaissance group does not return by a specified time or if contact occurs.

CONDITION: The TOW platoon is conducting tactical operations as part of a battalion task force and is directed to conduct a deliberate occupation of a battle position (BP). The platoon commander conducts ground reconnaissance of the BP with the S-3/S-3A or HQSVC CO commander. Using overlays, the platoon commander prepares a tentative platoon fire plan for the position and designated tentative vehicle positions, sectors of fire, TRPs, EAs, indirect fire plan, obstacles, and routes based on the ground or map reconnaissance. Enemy contact is not likely prior to the "defend NLT" time specified in the OPORD/FRAGO. Sufficient time is available to conduct a deliberate occupation. The battalion task force commander/S-3 specifies a time and location to conduct coordination between adjacent units. Engineer assets may or may not be available. Some iterations of this task is performed in limited visibility. Some iterations of this task is performed in MOPP 4.

STANDARD: The platoon moves into the BP, avoids detection by the enemy, and establishes security. The platoon commander and vehicle commander's reconnoiter the BP. The platoon commander finalizes the plan and completes coordination with adjacent units. The platoon completes the occupation by the "defend NLT" time stated in the OPORD/FRAGO. The platoon maintains situational awareness and monitors FM communications and/or digital communications. Time required to plan and implement is increased when operating in MOPP 4.

EVENT COMPONENTS:

1. Platoon performs tactical movement to a hide position behind the BP.
2. Use covered and concealed routes to the maximum extent possible.
3. Use the most advantageous formation and movement technique.
4. Maintain weapons orientation to provide all around security.
5. Platoon occupies a hide position behind the BP.
6. Execute herringbone formation.
7. Establish local security, with OPs emplaced as necessary (the platoon may have to coordinate with dismounted infantry for OP support).
8. Occupy individual vehicle hide positions (designated by the platoon commander using voice digital/visual signals) and perform simultaneous shutdown.
9. Platoon commander designates and briefs the quartering party.
10. Platoon commander designates and briefs the reconnaissance group.
11. The reconnaissance group usually consists of platoon sergeant, section leaders, and a security element with a dismounted radio.
12. Outline reconnaissance procedures, including required equipment, routes, security measures, and displacement plan.
13. Brief reconnaissance group on information that is already known about the BP.
14. Platoon commander selects an NCO to be in command of platoon element remaining in the hide position and briefs him on requirements and procedures applicable during the reconnaissance.
15. Outline security and maintenance procedures.
16. Designate elements to provide overwatch for the reconnaissance group, if

applicable.

17. Establish a contingency plan for actions to be taken if the reconnaissance group does not return by a specified time, or if enemy contact occurs during the reconnaissance element's absence.
18. Establish communications between the reconnaissance element tanks.
19. Platoon reconnaissance group moves to the BP.
20. Use covered and concealed routes to the maximum extent possible.
21. Maintain local security.
22. Platoon commander (with reconnaissance group) reconnoiters BP and EAs and marks key locations in AO.
23. Move to a vantage point that allows the group to view the BP from the enemy's perspective, if possible and not excessively hazardous.
24. Drive (or walk) the EA.
25. Mark TRPs in the EA for both day and night combat; thermal marking for the TOW thermal sight if preferred.
26. Move to vantage point within the BP that affords a clear view of platoon's AO, if possible.
27. Identify locations of existing obstacles and tentative positions for reinforcing obstacles.
28. Point out terrain that corresponds to the platoon's and battalion's graphic control measures (EA, TRPs, BPs, routes between BPs).
29. Brief the scheme of maneuver.
30. Designate primary and supplementary firing positions and sectors of fire to cover the EA for all weapon systems.
31. Designate covered and concealed routes between primary and supplementary firing positions.
32. Designate OP positions to provide observation of the avenues of approach into the platoon's sector and route back to the BP.
33. Brief vehicle commanders on the platoon scheme of defense (to include trigger point, break point and disengagement plan).
34. Mark key locations in the BP and EA using daylight and limited visibility materials and records ten-digit grid coordinates for these locations for platoon fire plan sketch.
35. Platoon commander emplaces OPs.
36. Assign overwatch responsibilities for OPs.
37. Establish a contingency plan for actions the OPs will take if enemy contact occurs.
38. Designate criteria and signals for displacement and return of the OPs.
39. Platoon commander coordinates with adjacent units.
40. Confirm location of OPs and patrols including patrol routes, indirect fire targets, and patrol time schedules.
41. Designate overlapping sectors of fire and observation.
42. Verify location of adjacent units' vehicles and primary, alternate, and supplementary BPs and firing positions.
43. Identify dead space and plan accordingly.
44. Determine location and types of obstacles.
45. Confirm indirect fire targets.
46. Exchanges and update SOI information.
47. Coordinate routes into and out of the BP and routes to subsequent BPs.
48. Update graphic control measures on map overlays and direct their reproduction for the platoon as necessary.
49. Platoon occupies the BP.
50. Start vehicles simultaneously following FM communications command or visual signals from the platoon commander.
51. Move along designated covered and concealed routes and occupies individual

vehicle hide positions behind the primary fighting positions.
52. Move simultaneously into fighting positions and scan platoon sector for enemy activity.
53. Complete sketch cards (hard-copy) and forward one copy per vehicle to the platoon commander.
54. Back down into designated individual vehicle hide positions behind primary fighting positions, and shut the vehicles down individually.
55. One vehicle may be left in position as a mounted OP.
56. Platoon commander consolidates sketch cards and finalizes the platoon fire plan.
57. Plot grid lines.
58. Identify: individual vehicle positions; platoon sector or EA; TRPs; range lines, trigger points, break points, and other key terrain features; locations of OPs and obstacles; indirect fire targets, including FPF (if allocated), and dead space.
59. Record appropriate marginal information, including (as required) engagement criteria, effective range of available weapon systems, fire pattern, and disengagement criteria.
60. Platoon commander informs the battalion commander or S-3 that the BP is occupied and reports "ESTABLISHED".
61. Submit the completed fire plan (by messenger or digital transmission).
62. Platoon commander updates platoon on any changes to the occupation plan.
63. Initiate necessary actions to be made as a result of coordination.
64. Direct platoon to conduct vehicle and system maintenance and prepare-to-fire checks.
65. Platoon commander/platoon sergeant/VCs supervise improvement of the BP.
66. Coordinate with engineer assets (if available).
67. Supervise digging of firing positions, using engineers, if available.
68. Inspect dug-in firing positions and escort engineers to the next tank when finished.69. Direct the platoon to camouflage vehicles and equipment.
70. Verify clear fields of fire.
71. Establish thermal TRPs IAW unit SOP.
72. Direct the platoon to establish wire communications.
73. Direct employment of chemical alarms, obstacles, and prestock ammunition and supplies.
74. Emplace decoys, if available.
75. Supervise/perform vehicle maintenance and prepare-to-fire checks.
76. Platoon performs rehearsals (the extent and complexity of platoon rehearsals will depend on the time available and the tactical situation; the platoon may conduct rehearsals by itself or in conjunction with the CO/TM).
77. Perform special rehearsals (individual/crew tasks), map rehearsals, key leader rehearsals, sand table, terrain model or digital communications rehearsals, force-on-force rehearsals, or a rehearsal with all crews observing a designated vehicle as it moves in the EA.

RELATED EVENTS:
0352-EMPL-2301 0302-DEF-1305

REFERENCES:
1. FM 3-90.1 Tank and Mechanized Infantry Company Team
2. FM 3-90.2 Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force
3. FM 5-100 Engineers in Combat Operations
4. FM 5-101 Mobility
5. FM 5-102 Countermobility

6. FM 5-103 Survivability
7. FM 5-170 Engineer Reconnaissance
8. MCO 3500.27B W/ERRATUM Operational Risk Management
9. MCRP 3-11.2A Marine Troop Leader's Guide
10. MCWP 3-12 Marine Corps Tank Employment
11. MCWP 3-15.5 Antiarmor Operations
12. MCWP 3-17 Engineer Operations
13. NAVMC 3500.87 Infantry Training & Readiness Manual

TOW-TAC-5813: Defend a Battle Position

SUPPORTED MET(S): 3, 5

EVALUATION-CODED: NO **SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL:** 12 months

DESCRIPTION: Defense of a battle position is a technique that places a unit in a battle position (BP) to concentrate its fires, limit its maneuver, or place it in an advantageous position to counterattack. The BP is a general location on the ground. The commander positions his forces on the best terrain within and in the vicinity of the BP. The commander may position security forces forward of and about the BP. The commander can maneuver his forces freely within the BP and seize the initiative to maneuver outside of the BP to attack enemy forces provided that it does not interfere with the commander's concept.

CONDITION: The TOW platoon completes occupation of a BP as part of the battalion task force defense or in preparation for a perimeter defense. The platoon commander prepares a platoon fire plan and an overlay and receives displacement criteria from the task force commander. The platoon observes an advancing enemy or is alerted to an enemy unit by digital or FM SPOTREP from the task force commander or another element. Some iterations of this task is performed in limited visibility. Some iterations of this task is performed in MOPP 4.

STANDARD: The platoon destroys, blocks, or canalizes the enemy force, or begins displacement IAW the task force commander's orders/intent. The platoon moves to a subsequent BP before being overrun by the enemy force in its sector, if necessary. The platoon sustains no personnel or equipment losses due to friendly fire. The platoon maintains situational awareness by monitoring displays and FM communications and/or digital communications. Time required to plan and implement is increased when operating in MOPP 4.

EVENT COMPONENTS:
1. Platoon reacts to the enemy contact.
2. Alert the rest of the platoon with a SPOTREP (FM communications and/or digital communications) of enemy contact (VC making initial contact).
3. Send a SPOTREP (FM communications and/or digital communications) of enemy contact to the S-3, or acknowledges the incoming SPOTREP or contact report.
4. Platoon commander analyzes the incoming message if contact results from a report by another unit.
5. Identify mounted/dismounted avenues of approach he expects the enemy to use to enter the platoon sector.
6. Determine the enemy element's capabilities and objectives based on the

information available.
7. Identify enemy's expected avenues of approach and projected capabilities and objectives.
8. Provide other tactical information as available.
9. Direct crew making first contact with the enemy to alert the platoon with a SPOTREP or contact report (FM communications and/or digital communications).
10. Platoon prepares for the enemy's arrival.
11. Adjust REDCON level as necessary.
12. Start engines simultaneously and move to positions on platoon commander's signal (visual, wire, radio).
13. Withdraw from dismounted positions and remount vehicles, if applicable.
14. Scan for targets and enemy activity.
15. Platoon commander/platoon sergeant call for indirect fire or CAS.
16. Request indirect fire IAW the defensive fire plan, using FM or VHF communications.
17. Adjust indirect fire to force the enemy to button up and deploy.
18. Platoon commander issues a platoon fire command.
19. Give alert (address the vehicle or vehicles to fire).
20. Describe target (briefly describe the target; must include the number, type, and activity of enemy elements).
21. Specify orientation (location given by reference point, terrain feature, or direction to target).
22. Specify execution (such as "FIRE" or "AT MY COMMAND").
23. Platoon prepares to engage.
24. Lay TOW launchers for direction.
25. Issue fire commands specifying "AT MY COMMAND".
26. Load missiles.
27. Orient gunners on proper targets.
28. Report to platoon commander when ready to engage.
29. Direct the platoon to move simultaneously into hull-down positions within primary fighting positions.
30. Direct vehicles to engage targets within their sector IAW the platoon fire plan.
31. Order "FIRE" when the enemy crosses the trigger line.
32. Coordinate sections' movement to alternate positions with the platoon sergeant, so only one squad, vehicle, or section moves at a time.
33. Issue additional fire commands, as necessary, to destroy all enemy targets within the platoon sector, while controlling overkill and ammunition expenditure.
34. Direct all, or a portion of the platoon, to move to supplementary fighting positions, as necessary, to destroy enemy forces moving through different sectors of fire or avenues of approach.
35. Platoon continues to defend from its present location, if the enemy has been destroyed or halted.
36. Terminate direct fire engagements when platoon commander announces "CEASE FIRE".
37. Back into turret-down positions as directed by the platoon commander.
38. Scan for additional enemy targets.
39. Send a periodic and complete SITREP to the commander, using or FM communications and/or digital communications.
40. Perform consolidation and reorganization.
41. Platoon displaces to subsequent or alternate BP.

PREREQUISITE EVENTS:
TOW-TAC-5812

RELATED EVENTS:

0302-DEF-1305	0352-EMPL-2301	0352-EMPL-1301
0352-EMPL-1302	0352-EMPL-2300	

REFERENCES:
1. FM 3-90.1 Tank and Mechanized Infantry Company Team
2. FM 3-90.2 Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force
3. MCO 3500.27B W/ERRATUM Operational Risk Management
4. MCRP 3-11.2A Marine Troop Leader's Guide
5. MCWP 3-12 Marine Corps Tank Employment
6. MCWP 3-15.5 Antiarmor Operations
7. NAVMC 3500.87 Infantry Training & Readiness Manual

TOW-TAC-5814: Conduct a Linkup

SUPPORTED MET(S): 4

EVALUATION-CODED: NO **SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL:** 12 months

DESCRIPTION: Linkup operations are conducted to join two forces and may occur in a variety of circumstances. They are most often conducted: to join two forces regardless of where they are on the battlefield, to join an attacking force with a force inserted into the enemy's rear, to complete the encirclement of an enemy force, or to assist the breakout or come to the relief of an encircled force.

CONDITION: The TOW platoon is conducting tactical operations as part of a battalion task force and is ordered to linkup and conduct coordination with another unit. This can be an adjacent or moving unit while the platoon is stationary or a stationary unit while the platoon is on the move. Contact points are given to the platoon commander as a grid coordinates or depicted on the platoon's operational graphics (digital and/or hard copy). Control measures and tentative indirect fire targets are determined by the commander or platoon commander. Some iterations of this task is performed in limited visibility. Some iterations of this task is performed in MOPP 4.

STANDARD: The platoon conducts linkup with the other unit at the time and place specified in the OPORD/FRAGO, and completes all necessary coordination. The platoon sustains no personnel or equipment losses due to friendly fire. The platoon maintains situational awareness and monitors FM communications and/or digital communications. Time required to plan and implement is increased when operating in MOPP 4.

EVENT COMPONENTS:
1. Platoon commander analyzes the OPORD/FRAGO and performs troop-leading procedures.
2. Check and/or designate mission specific graphics provided by battalion OPORD control measures.
3. Verify call signs frequencies of other unit and adjust defaults in digital communications to correctly route digital message traffic.
4. Verify and/or designate visual recognition signals (far and near).

5. Verify and/or designate basic fire coordination measures in digital communications.
6. Verify the command relationship with the other units.
7. Verify command authority at contact point.
8. Platoon conducts linkup with an adjacent or moving unit while stationary if time permits.
9. Perform tactical movement to the designated contact point.
10. Evaluate suitability of designated contact point if face-to-face coordination is required.
11. The platoon commander/platoon sergeant verify that the contact point is a covered and concealed location that is easy to recognize; if the contact point is near a danger area or is otherwise unsuitable, the commander is notified and permission to change the location is requested.
12. Secure and occupy the contact point prior to the time specified in the OPORD/FRAGO.
13. The platoon stops 50 to 100 meters short of the contact point and establishes overwatch; a 2-to-3 man team is used to clear and secure the contact point; if necessary, the platoon can request assistance from the other unit to secure the contact point and provide local security; the unit that first arrives at the contact point is responsible for its security (direct and/or indirect fire); however, units that have contact points within their AOs are responsible for their defense in the event of an enemy attack.
14. Exchange long-range (far) recognition signal with the other unit.
15. The platoon establishes digital communications and FM communications before the other unit enters the effective range of direct fire weapons; the platoon monitors the frequency of the other unit, and, as necessary, authenticates correctly and/or challenges the other unit using the SOI; the platoon informs the other unit of number, type, and orientation of vehicles at the contact point, and requests that the other unit identify number and type of vehicles, and direction from which it is traveling; the platoon confirms short-range (near) recognition signal (hand-and-arm, flags, VS-17, flashlight or pyrotechnics).
16. Linkup with the other unit.
17. The platoon exchanges short-range (near) recognition signal with the other unit and continues to monitor the other unit's frequency and observe digital communications SA to reduce the risk of fratricide.
18. Platoon conducts linkup with a stationary unit while on the move.
19. If both units are digital communications-equipped, there is no requirement to perform the steps leading up to and including the face-to-face meeting, unless specifically required by CO/TM.
20. Information can be exchanged in digital communications, even when radio listening silence is imposed.
21. Perform tactical movement to the designated contact point.
22. Prior to movement, the platoon sergeant verifies digital communications connectivity and FM communications in all vehicles.
23. Exchange long-range (far) recognition signal with the stationary unit, if face-to-face coordination is required.
24. The platoon establishes digital communications and FM communications before entering the effective range of the stationary unit's direct fire weapons and, as necessary, authenticates correctly and/or responds to challenges IAW the SOI; the platoon informs the stationary unit of number and type of vehicles and direction from which the platoon is traveling, and requests the stationary unit identify number and type of vehicles, direction of weapons orientation and location of any dismounts; the

platoon verifies that the contact point is secure and/or that additional security is needed at the contact point, and confirms short-range (near) recognition signals (hand-and-arm, flags, VS-17, flashlight, or pyrotechnics).
25. Platoon coordinates with the other unit.
26. If both units are digital communications-equipped, there is no requirement to perform the steps leading up to and including the face-to-face meeting, unless specifically required to by CO/TM; information can be exchanged in digital communications, even when radio listening silence is imposed.
27. Coordinate control measures, including contact points and/or all labeled way points, checkpoints, OPs, BPs, TRP locations, and sectors of responsibility.
28. Coordinate friendly forces information, including unit designations and dispositions, friendly obstacles, mines, contaminated areas, CP locations, SOI information, and tactical plans and situations (routes, indirect fire data, location of flanks, OPs, and/or other patrols, sectors of fire).
29. Coordinate enemy information, including number and types of units (if known), specific locations (if known), obstacles, mines, contaminated areas, and suspected avenues of approach (mounted/dismounted).
30. Coordinate mission-specific information designated in OPORD/FRAGO or requested by the commander.
31. Determine time and place of next coordination.
32. Platoon commander/platoon sergeant keeps commander informed throughout the linkup.
33. Send updated SITREPs (voice/digital) as necessary during the linkup.
34. Report information obtained during coordination as previously specified by the commander, using digital communications or FM communications.
35. Report completion of the linkup/coordination.

PREREQUISITE EVENTS:
TOW-TAC-5804

RELATED EVENTS:
0352-EMPL-2301 0302-OFF-1205

REFERENCES:
1. FM 3-90.1 Tank and Mechanized Infantry Company Team
2. FM 3-90.2 Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force
3. MCO 3500.27B W/ERRATUM Operational Risk Management
4. MCRP 3-11.2A Marine Troop Leader's Guide
5. MCWP 3-12 Marine Corps Tank Employment
6. MCWP 3-15.5 Antiarmor Operations
7. NAVMC 3500.87 Infantry Training & Readiness Manual

TOW-TAC-5815: Conduct a Passage of Lines

SUPPORTED MET(S): 4

EVALUATION-CODED: NO **SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL:** 12 months

DESCRIPTION: The TOW platoon participates in a passage of lines, in which one unit moves through the stationary positions of another, as part of a larger force. If it is part of the stationary force, the platoon occupies defensive positions and assists the passing unit. If it is part of a passing

unit, the platoon executes tactical movement through the stationary unit. A passage may be forward or rearward, depending on whether the passing unit is moving toward (forward) or away from (rearward) an enemy unit or area of operations.

CONDITION: The TOW platoon is conducting tactical operations as part of a battalion task force and receives an OPORD and supporting overlays to conduct either a forward or rearward a passage of lines through a stationary unit. Contact is possible; enemy forces could include disruption, battle, support zone forces, or asymmetrical threat. The unit establishes communications and digital connectivity (if applicable), with subordinate, adjacent, and higher headquarters, and is passing information in accordance with (IAW) the standard operating procedure (SOP). Some iterations of this task is performed in limited visibility. Some iterations of this task is performed in MOPP 4.

STANDARD: The platoon conducts the passage of lines at the time and place specified in the OPORD or FRAGO with no compromise of security. The platoon completes the passage of lines as specified with no friendly casualties or equipment damage due to fratricide.

EVENT COMPONENTS:

1. The platoon commander/section leader makes coordination with the stationary unit.
2. Coordination remains the same whether the platoon is conducting a forward or rearward passage of lines.
3. Coordination includes the following: identification and types of unit(s) to pass; time(s) of departure and reentry; number of vehicles and types; mission of units and scheme of maneuver; battle handover line location; presence of NBC contamination; fire support plan; enemy situation; friendly locations (day and night) to include OPs and patrol routes; contact point, coordination points, and dismount point (if required); passage points, lanes, and routes; obstacle locations and types; assembly areas or attack position; combat support and combat service support locations for emergency support provided by the stationary unit; recognition signals; CEOI information.
4. The platoon/section conducts the passage of lines.
5. The platoon/section arrives at the designated contact point at the time specified displaying the coordinated recognition signals.
6. The unit picks up the stationary force guides, moves to the passage points, and continues to move on the designated passage lane without halting.
7. A platoon/section representative moves to the contact point(s) and counts platoon/section vehicles through each point to the passage point(s).
8. The platoon/section moves rapidly through the passage lanes to an assembly area or to a new overwatch position.
9. The platoon/section avoids stationary force obstacles.
10. A platoon/section representative at the passage at the passage point tells guide when all elements have passed.

PREREQUISITE EVENTS:

TOW-TAC-5814

RELATED EVENTS:

0352-EMPL-2301 0302-OFF-1205

REFERENCES:
1. FM 3-90.1 Tank and Mechanized Infantry Company Team
2. FM 3-90.2 Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force
3. MCO 3500.27B W/ERRATUM Operational Risk Management
4. MCRP 3-11.2A Marine Troop Leader's Guide
5. MCWP 3-12 Marine Corps Tank Employment
6. MCWP 3-15.5 Antiarmor Operations
7. NAVMC 3500.87 Infantry Training & Readiness Manual

TOW-TAC-5816: Conduct a Relief in Place

SUPPORTED MET(S): 4

EVALUATION-CODED: NO **SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL:** 12 months

DESCRIPTION: A relief in place is a tactical operation in which, by direction of higher authority, all or part of a unit is replaced in an area by the incoming unit. The responsibilities of the replaced elements for the mission and the assigned zone of operations are transferred to the incoming unit. The incoming unit continues the operation as ordered.

CONDITION: The TOW platoon is conducting tactical operations as part of a battalion task force and receives an OPORD and supporting overlays to conduct a relief in place as either the relieving or relieved unit. Coordination may or may not be complete. Enemy contact is not likely. Some iterations of this task is performed in limited visibility. Some iterations of this task is performed in MOPP 4.

STANDARD: The platoon performs the relief in place IAW the OPORD and the battalion commander's guidance. The platoon conducts linkup with the relieving or relieved unit and exchanges required information. The platoon completes the relief in place by the time specified in the OPORD and avoids exposing the units to the enemy detection. The platoon performs continuous observation of the sector of fire (defensive relief). The platoon sustains no personnel or equipment losses due to friendly fire. The platoon maintains situational awareness and monitors FM communications and/or digital communications. Time required to plan and implement is increased when operating in MOPP 4.

EVENT COMPONENTS:
1. Platoon commander performs troop-leading procedures if the commander has completed coordination.
2. Determine the time the relief in place is to begin and end and conduct recon if time permits.
3. Determine method for conducting the relief.
4. Verify control measures.
5. Determine when responsibility will change.
6. Identify OPSEC considerations and deception plan.
7. Verify location of and transfer procedures for obstacles.
8. Determine contingency plans in case of enemy attack during the relief.
9. Determine responsibilities and requirements for transfer of supplies and equipment.
10. Platoon commander coordinates linkup with relieving/relieved unit if the commander has not completed coordination.

11. Move to the designated contact point.
12. Coordinate time that the responsibility for the BP/sector will pass to the relieving unit.
13. Coordinate routes and control measures into and out of positions.
14. Coordinate graphics depicting primary, alternate, and supplementary fighting positions.
15. Coordinate handover procedures for artillery and AD.
16. Fire support is normally provided by the relieved unit until the relieving units accepts responsibility for the BP.
17. Coordinate sketch cards and fire plans for all positions (hard copy and/or digital versions, as applicable).
18. Coordinate procedures for transfer of supplies and wire lines (if necessary).
19. Coordinate procedures for turnover of obstacles.
20. Exchange communications data.
21. Platoon prepares for the relief as the relieving unit.
22. Maintain OPSEC.
23. The platoon changes frequencies on all radios to the frequencies of the relieved unit; units must verify that frequency change does not take place on channel one; other means of communications (satellite, VHF) are established IAW OPORD or unit SOP; the platoon maintains radio listening silence, and noise, light, and litter discipline.
24. Identify and prepare equipment for quick exchange with the relieved unit.
25. Initiate movement.
26. The platoon maintains radio listening silence and moves to predetermined contact points (using covered and concealed routes and maintaining all-round security) to meet the guides from the relieved unit; the platoon moves into hide positions and coordinates any final information; VCs report to the platoon commander when occupation is complete; the platoon commander reports to the commander that the platoon is prepared to perform the relief.
27. Occupy preliminary positions in preparation for conducting the relief and determine the method of relief.
28. Platoon commander directs platoon to prepare for relief as the relieved unit, and exchange required information with the relieving platoon commander.
29. Direct platoon to maintain communications as determined in the coordination or as specified in the OPORD.
30. Identify and prepare equipment for quick exchange with the relieving unit.
31. Update and/or prepare necessary range cards, sector sketches, minefield records, and prestock supplies for transfer to the relieving unit.
32. Meet relieving platoon commander at the prescribed contact point.
33. Exchange information on the enemy situation.
34. Provide sketch cards and platoon fire plans (hard copy or digital versions, as applicable).
35. Transfer obstacle target folders and hasty protective minefield forms.
36. Reconnoiter positions.
37. Report to the commander that preparations for the relief are complete, using FM communications and/or digital communications.
38. Platoon performs the relief as the relieving unit.
39. Meet the relieved unit at the designated contact points.
40. Follow guides to positions in the determined sequence of relief.
41. Transfer equipment and supplies (as required).
42. Assume relieved unit's mission when entire platoon is in position.
43. Report completion of the relief to the S-3, using FM communications and/or

digital communications.
44. Platoon performs the relief as the relieved unit.
45. Send guides to designated contact points.
46. Guide relieving units to positions in the determined sequence of relief.
47. Transfer equipment and supplies as necessary.
48. Transfer responsibility for mission when entire relieving unit is in position.
49. Report completion of relief to the S-3, using FM communications and/or digital communications.
50. Move to a predetermined rally point to account for vehicles/personnel.
51. Move to designated assembly area.

PREREQUISITE EVENTS:
TOW-TAC-5804

RELATED EVENTS:
0302-OFF-1205 0352-EMPL-2301 0302-DEF-1305

REFERENCES:
1. FM 3-90.1 Tank and Mechanized Infantry Company Team
2. FM 3-90.2 Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force
3. MCO 3500.27B W/ERRATUM Operational Risk Management
4. MCRP 3-11.2A Marine Troop Leader's Guide
5. MCWP 3-12 Marine Corps Tank Employment
6. MCWP 3-15.5 Antiarmor Operations
7. NAVMC 3500.87 Infantry Training & Readiness Manual

TOW-TAC-5817: Conduct a Disengagement/Withdrawal from the Enemy

SUPPORTED MET(S): 4

EVALUATION-CODED: NO **SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL:** 12 months

DESCRIPTION: The process of breaking contact with the enemy and moving to a point where the enemy can neither observe nor engage the unit by direct fire. The platoon commander establishes disengagement criteria and develops the disengagement plan to support the battalion scheme of maneuver. Disengagement criteria are primarily based on a specified number and type of enemy vehicles reaching a specified location (normally called the break point) to trigger displacement, in order to break contact with the enemy and move to a point where the enemy can neither observe nor engage the unit by direct fire. A withdrawal is a retrograde operation to free a force in contact with the enemy so it can execute a new mission. Conducting a withdrawal at platoon level is identical to disengagement. The withdrawal may be conducted under pressure (with direct or indirect fire enemy contact) or with no pressure.

CONDITION: The TOW platoon is conducting tactical operations as part a battalion task force and is in contact with enemy elements. The commander has ordered the platoon to disengage, and specifies a route for the disengagement and a location to which the platoon is to move. Another element may or may not be available to cover platoon movement. Some iterations of this task is performed in limited visibility. Some iterations of this task is performed in MOPP 4.

STANDARD: The platoon breaks contact with the enemy and moves to the designated point where neither the enemy nor the platoon can engage the other with direct fire. The platoon sustains no personnel or equipment losses due to friendly fire. The platoon maintains situational awareness and monitors FM communications and/or digital communications. Time required to plan and implement is increased when operating in MOPP 4.

EVENT COMPONENTS:

1. Platoon commander issues a FRAGO.
2. Use verbal orders process or FM communications and/or digital communications.
3. Designate the location to which the platoon will move.
4. Designate the route to the new location (using GPS or way points as applicable).
5. Designate the order of march.
6. Platoon disengages from enemy contact with another unit providing overwatch.
7. Use radio to assist with control between units and disengage force.
8. Perform tactical movement to the predesignated location.
9. Use appropriate formation and movement technique.
10. Maintain weapons orientation toward the enemy and engages enemy elements, as necessary.
11. Use artillery smoke and smoke grenades, as appropriate, to screen movement.
12. Occupy the new position and establishes local security.
13. Platoon disengages from enemy contact without overwatch support.
14. Designate one section to lead the movement (maneuver section) and the others to provide overwatch (overwatch sections).
15. Begin disengagement with overwatch sections remaining in place and providing direct/indirect fires (including smoke) to suppress, neutralize, or destroy, and/or screen the enemy.
16. Perform tactical movement to the designated location, with the maneuver section keeping weapons oriented toward the enemy and engaging enemy forces, as necessary.
17. The maneuver section uses smoke grenades, as appropriate.
18. Disengage the overwatch sections at the appropriate time.
19. First overwatch section calls for final indirect fires as appropriate, begins tactical movement toward designated location, and maintains weapons orientation toward the enemy, engaging as necessary; uses smoke grenades as needed.
20. Occupy the new position and establishes local security.
21. Platoon commander completes disengagement actions.
22. Send a report of completion of disengagement to the commander using FM communications and/or digital communications.
23. Direct reorganization activities as required to prepare platoon for future operations.

PREREQUISITE EVENTS:

TOW-TAC-5804

RELATED EVENTS:

0302-OFF-1205 0352-EMPL-2301 0302-DEF-1305

REFERENCES:
1. FM 3-90.1 Tank and Mechanized Infantry Company Team
2. FM 3-90.2 Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force
3. MCO 3500.27B W/ERRATUM Operational Risk Management
4. MCRP 3-11.2A Marine Troop Leader's Guide
5. MCWP 3-12 Marine Corps Tank Employment
6. MCWP 3-15.5 Antiarmor Operations
7. NAVMC 3500.87 Infantry Training & Readiness Manual

TOW-TAC-5818: Conduct a Tactical Road March

SUPPORTED MET(S): 4

EVALUATION-CODED: NO **SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL:** 12 months

DESCRIPTION: A tactical road march is a rapid movement used to relocate units within a combat zone in order to prepare for combat operations. Although contact with enemy ground forces is not anticipated, security against air attack, enemy special forces, and sympathizers is maintained and the unit is prepared to take immediate action against an enemy threat.

CONDITION: The TOW platoon receives an OPORD/FRAGO complete with supporting graphics to conduct a tactical road march as part of a battalion task force. The order specifies the arrival time at the SP as well as the march speed, interval, and order of march. All planning and preparations are complete, including reconnaissance to determine the time-distance factor to the SP. Enemy contact is not expected. Some iterations of this task is performed in limited visibility. Some iterations of this task is performed in MOPP 4.

STANDARD: The platoon moves through the SP, checkpoints, and RP at times specified in the OPORD/FRAGO. The platoon moves IAW OPORD/FRAGO and completes movement to the designated location. The platoon sustains no personnel or equipment losses due to friendly fire. The platoon maintains situational awareness and monitors FM communications and/or digital communications. Time required to plan and implement is increased when operating in MOPP 4.

EVENT COMPONENTS:
1. Platoon prepares for road march: perform PMCS, resupply (water, rations, ammunition), inspect personnel, and make a communications check and report REDCON, using digital communications or FM communications.
2. Platoon commander initiates road march and controls platoon movement toward the SP.
3. Direct platoon to begin movement using designated formation, movement technique, vehicle interval, and speed.
4. Use visual signals, FM communications, or digital communications to communicate with platoon.
5. Platoon commander positions himself where he can best control the movement of the platoon.
6. Platoon performs road march.
7. Cross the SP at the designated time, using the proper formation, movement technique, interval, and speed as prescribed in the OPORD/FRAGO.
8. Maintain march speed and reach checkpoints at times specified in the order.

9. Report control measures IAW OPORD/FRAGO or unit SOP.
10. Maintain proper weapons orientation to provide all around security throughout the road march.
11. Each vehicle designates an air guard.
12. Maintain all around observation, including aerial observation.
13. Verify that vehicles which drop out of the march formation rejoin the formation at the rear or continue along the route of march with follow on unit, or stand by for maintenance or recovery.
14. Platoon takes actions at scheduled halts.
15. Execute a herringbone formation.
16. Establish security.
17. Post guides to direct traffic as necessary.
18. Perform during-operation PMCS.
19. Refuel, if scheduled.
20. Verify GPS is tracking properly.
21. Report status to the company commander, using digital communications or FM communications.
22. Platoon takes actions at unscheduled halts.
23. Clear the route of march and execute a herringbone or coil formation.
24. Establish local security (manning TOW systems, machine guns, radios, and OPs as necessary).
25. Determine the cause of the halt.
26. Report unscheduled halt to the commander, using digital communications or FM communications, providing as much information as possible.
27. Eliminate the cause of the halt, if possible.
28. Continue the march when directed by the commander, or as soon as possible.
29. Platoon takes actions when a vehicle becomes disabled.
30. Move the disabled vehicle off the road, if possible, so it does not block traffic, and make maintenance and recovery assessment.
31. Post guides to direct traffic around vehicle, if necessary.
32. Crew establishes local security and radio watch.
33. Report status of disabled vehicle to the commander, using digital communications or FM communications.
34. Perform repairs within capability and rejoin the rear of the formation.
35. Request assistance if unable to repair the vehicle, assists maintenance personnel, and rejoin the rear of the formation once the vehicle is repaired.
36. Platoon arrives and clears the RP.
37. Avoid stopping or blocking traffic at the RP.
38. Report arrival at and clearance of the RP to the commander, using digital communications or FM communications.
39. Follow guides and moves to the designated area.

RELATED EVENTS:

0302-OFF-1205 0352-MOBL-2402 0352-MOBL-2403
0352-EMPL-2301

REFERENCES:

1. FM 3-90.1 Tank and Mechanized Infantry Company Team
2. FM 3-90.2 Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force
3. MCO 3500.27B W/ERRATUM Operational Risk Management
4. MCRP 3-11.2A Marine Troop Leader's Guide
5. MCWP 3-12 Marine Corps Tank Employment
6. MCWP 3-15.5 Antiarmor Operations
7. NAVMC 3500.87 Infantry Training & Readiness Manual

TANK T&R MANUAL

CHAPTER 7

COLLECTIVE TRAINING SCOUT PLATOON

	PARAGRAPH	PAGE
PURPOSE	7001	7-2
EVENT CODING	7002	7-2
ADMINISTRATIVE NOTES	7003	7-2
COLLECTIVE DESCRIPTION/CORE CAPABILITY	7004	7-3
INDEX OF COLLECTIVE EVENTS BY FUNCTIONAL AREA	7005	7-4
PLATOON LEVEL COLLECTIVE EVENTS	7006	7-5

CHAPTER 7

COLLECTIVE TRAINING SCOUT PLATOON

7001. PURPOSE. This chapter contains all Platoon level Scout unit events (5000 Level). Unit training managers can isolate all training relevant to the platoon and devise training to support their competencies as needed. Additionally, unit training managers should reference NAVMC DIR 3500.87 (Infantry Training and Readiness Manual) in order to identify all individual events specific to the infantry occupational specialty as referenced in this manual.

7002. EVENT CODING. Events in the T&R manual are depicted with a 12 field alphanumeric system, i.e. XXXX-XXXX-XXXX. This chapter utilizes the following methodology:

a. Field one - Each event starts with "SCT" indicating that the event is for the Scout unit organic to the Tank Battalion in the Infantry Occupational Field.

b. Field two - This field is alpha characters indicating a functional area. Functional areas used at the platoon level are:

CMDC - Command and Control
CSS - Combat Service Support
TAC - Tactical Operations
CBTS - Combat Support
OTH - Other Operations

c. Field three - This field provides unit level at which the event is accomplished and numerical sequencing.

7003. ADMINISTRATIVE NOTES. Each Event may contain a paragraph that describes internal and external Support Requirements the unit and Marines will need to complete the event. Ranges/Training Areas are described in this section with plain-language description. They are also described using the Range/Facility Codes that identify the type of range and/or training area needed to accomplish the Event. Marines can use the codes to find information about available ranges at their geographic location by using the web-based Range/Training Area Management System (see TECOM website). Ultimate use of the Range/Training Area Code is to relate ranges to readiness by identifying those Events that cannot be accomplished at a certain location due to lack of ranges.

7004. COLLECTIVE DESCRIPTION/CORE CAPABILITY

1. Prepares for, reacts to, and participates in operations in a nuclear, biological, and chemical environment.

2. Prepares for and conducts tactical movement.

3. Conducts a passage of lines.

4. Conducts a relief in place.

5. Conducts convoy escort.

6. Participates in and conducts operations in urban environments.

7. Prepares for, participates in, and conducts operations with dismounted, mechanized and motorized forces.

8. Prepares for and conducts platoon level offensive, defensive, and security operations.

9. Defends against air attack.

10. Processes enemy prisoners of war and captured documents.

11. Executes platoon formations.

12. Executes platoon fire and movement.

13. Conducts route reconnaissance and participates in area and zone reconnaissance operations.

7005. INDEX OF COLLECTIVE EVENTS BY FUNCTIONAL AREA

Event Code	Eval Code	Event	Page
SCT-CMDC-5201		Conduct Troop-Leading Procedures	7-5
SCT-CMDC-5202		Conduct Risk Management	7-8
SCT-CMDC-5203		Maintain Operations Security (OPSEC)	7-10
SCT-CMDC-5204		Conduct a Rehearsal	7-12
SCT-CMDC-5205		Establish an Observation Post	7-14
SCT-CMDC-5206		Process Captured Documents and Equipment	7-16
SCT-CMDC-5207		Conduct a Route Reconnaissance	7-17
SCT-CMDC-5208		Conduct an Area Reconnaissance	7-18
SCT-CMDC-5209		Conduct a Zone Reconnaissance	7-19
SCT-CMDC-5210		Conduct Urban Area Reconnaissance	7-20
SCT-CMDC-5211		Reconnoiter an Obstacle and a Bypass	7-23
SCT-CBTS-5401		Prepare for a Chemical/Biological Attack	7-24
SCT-CBTS-5402		React to a Chemical/Biological Attack	7-25
SCT-CBTS-5403		Prepare for a Nuclear Attack	7-26
SCT-CBTS-5404		React to a Nuclear Attack	7-27
SCT-CBTS-5405		Conduct Operational Decontamination	7-28
SCT-CBTS-5406		React to Enemy Indirect Fire	7-30
SCT-CBTS-5407		Defend Against an Enemy Air Attack	7-31
SCT-CBTS-5408		React to Enemy Air Attack	7-32
SCT-CSS-5501		Conduct Resupply Operations	7-34
SCT-CSS-5502		Prepare and Evacuate Casualties	7-36
SCT-CSS-5503		Process Enemy Prisoners of War	7-37
SCT-OTH-5701		Conduct Convoy Escort	7-38
SCT-OTH-5702		Support Roadblock/Checkpoint Operations	7-40
SCT-TAC-5801		Occupy an Assembly Area	7-43
SCT-TAC-5802		Conduct Tactical Movement	7-44
SCT-TAC-5803		Conduct a Dismounted Patrol	7-45
SCT-TAC-5804		Assist a Linkup	7-47
SCT-TAC-5805		Assist a Passage of Lines	7-49
SCT-TAC-5806		Conduct a Passage of Lines	7-51
SCT-TAC-5807		Conduct a Relief in Place	7-52
SCT-TAC-5808	**Yes**	**Conduct a Screen**	**7-53**
SCT-TAC-5809		Conduct Actions on Contact	7-55
SCT-TAC-5810		Conduct a Tactical Road March	7-56

7006. PLATOON LEVEL COLLECTIVE EVENTS

SCT-CMDC-5201: Conduct Troop-Leading Procedures

SUPPORTED MET(S): 2, 3, 4, 5

EVALUATION-CODED: NO **SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL:** 12 months

DESCRIPTION: Troop-leading is a dynamic process that begins when the platoon receives a new mission or is notified by warning order that a new mission is imminent. Most tactical decisions are made by the company commander, who then announces them in the form of orders that include his intent and concept of the operation. Based on these orders, the platoon commander uses troop-leading procedures to organize his time during planning and preparation and to translate the operation into instructions his Marines can understand. He can then lead the platoon more effectively in the execution of the mission.

CONDITION: The Scout platoon receives an OPORD/FRAGO, or WARNO from the company commander or S-3 officer while preparing for tactical operations as part of a company/team (CO/TM) or battalion task force. The order specifies the time of movement and describes the enemy situation. The platoon has conducted linkup with any attachments. Time is available to conduct troop-leading procedures. Some iterations of this task are performed in limited visibility. Some iterations of this task are performed in MOPP 4.

STANDARD: The platoon moves by the time specified in the order with operational weapons, equipment, and basic load of supplies as specified by the order and/or platoon commander. The platoon commander verifies all personnel can explain the higher's mission, commander's intent, the platoon's mission, and their specific tasks and duties to support the mission. The platoon commander briefs and inspects all attachments. The platoon maintains situational awareness by monitoring communications. Time required to plan and implement is increased when operating in MOPP 4.

EVENT COMPONENTS:

1. Platoon commander/platoon sergeant receives and analyzes the mission.
2. Obtain clarification on all aspects of the mission from the commander.
3. Coordinate with higher command, adjacent units, and CS elements (as necessary), using digital or FM communications.
4. Disseminate all pertinent information as quickly as possible, using digital or FM communications.
5. Perform initial METT-TC analysis, focusing on mission and time requirements.
6. Develop reverse planning schedule to accomplish all tasks.
7. Platoon commander uses 1/3 of available time for planning, to include issuing the OPORD; allocate the remaining 2/3 to the squad leaders to plan and prepare for the upcoming mission.
8. Platoon commander issues the WARNO, using digital communications or FM communications.
9. The platoon commander issues the initial WARNO as soon as possible after receiving the mission so squad leaders can start their planning and preparation; issue subsequent WARNOs as more information becomes available or as the situation changes.
10. Provide task organization of the platoon; give the situation; provide

operational graphics; give the time and nature of the operation; give the earliest time of movement; give the time and place the OPORD will be issued; delegate/assign preparatory tasks to the platoon sergeant, section leaders, and squad leaders.

11. Tasks include but not limited to graphics production, development of terrain model, coordination requirements, CSS requirements, PCIs, and rehearsals.
12. Platoon commander makes a tentative plan, when the commander's OPORD specifies the platoon plan.
13. The platoon sergeant assists the platoon commander throughout METT-TC analysis and development of the plan; the scope of the platoon commander's activities in this troop-leading step is directly affected by the amount of detail and instruction in the commander's OPORD; the OPORD normally will specify the platoon plan and maneuver requirements; the platoon commander is responsible for analyzing higher command's scheme of maneuver and adapting them to the platoon level; the platoon commander must be prepared to develop his own plan with a minimum of information and direction from the commander; this involves a detailed METT-TC analysis and development of platoon tasks and COAs.
14. Review the platoon's role in the scheme of maneuver in relation to the factors of METT-TC.
15. Identify critical METT-TC considerations that affect the platoon plan (these considerations may or may not have been addressed in the OPORD).
16. Identify deficiencies and/or issues in the plan and report them to the CO/TM commander or S-3 officer.
17. Adjust reverse planning schedule as required.
18. Platoon commander makes a tentative plan when the commander's OPORD does not provide a detailed platoon plan.
19. Perform mission analysis: the platoon commander identifies the mission and the intent of the commander two levels up, and specified, implied, and essential tasks.
20. Perform enemy analysis: the platoon commander identifies current and/or probable enemy locations, composition and capabilities, and most probable COA).
21. Perform terrain and weather analysis, including visibility for missile gunners.
22. Perform terrain and weather analysis: the platoon commander identifies locations of all existing and reinforcing obstacles, and determines how they will affect maneuver and how the platoon can use them to its advantage; most likely locations for enemy emplaced obstacles and how the platoon can bypass or breach them; most advantageous avenues of approach for both the enemy and the platoon; key terrain and how it can be used by the platoon to support the mission; positions from which the enemy can observe and engage the platoon; positions from which the platoon can effectively observe and engage the enemy; routes and natural firing positions that offer cover and concealment; effects of current and expected weather on smoke or NBC operations; effects of recent weather on the AO; and effects of weather and light conditions on future operations.
23. Perform troop analysis: the platoon commander identifies the platoon's supply status; present condition of vehicles, launchers, equipment, and personnel; present state of training and morale; amount of sleep personnel have had, or will be able to get prior to the mission; and attachments the platoon has and/or needs to accomplish the mission.
24. Performs the time analysis: the platoon commander identifies movement times and other milestones specified in the order, including likely times

the enemy may conduct operations; effects of the weather and NBC operations on movement times; priorities of work the platoon can accomplish in the time available prior to the start of the mission; and a revised timeline that will enable the platoon to accomplish all necessary tasks; the platoon commander uses backward planning to refine tentative timeline.

25. Incorporate products developed in the IPB process into the METT-TC analysis.
26. Develop one or more COAs that address all specified, implied, and essential tasks, using results of the METT-TC analysis and IPB process.
27. Identify reconnaissance requirements.
28. Identify other coordination requirements.
29. Evaluate advantages and disadvantages of each COA and make a tentative selection of the most favorable COA.
30. Adjust reverse planning schedule as required to incorporate the selected COA.
31. Platoon commander/platoon sergeant initiate movement.
32. Verify digital communications connectivity and FM communications in all vehicles prior to movement.
33. Direct platoon to assume the appropriate REDCON level.
34. Dispatch quartering party, as necessary.
35. Direct platoon to begin priorities of work.
36. Designate a leader to perform a time-distance check of the route to the SP, as necessary.
37. Position the platoon in an advantageous location to prepare for the upcoming mission.
38. Perform ground or map reconnaissance.
39. Confirm the initial march route to the LD, SP, or initial positions, and check some of the area beyond the LD.
40. Information should be used to verify, and if necessary, to update maps and overlays to verify correctness.
41. Adjust the tentative plan based on the reconnaissance.
42. Platoon commander completes the plan.
43. The platoon sergeant assists the platoon commander through out the process of finalizing and updating the plan.
44. Select the best available COA based on METT-TC analysis and reconnaissance.
45. Complete the details of how the platoon will accomplish each task.
46. Annotate overlays to further define his area of responsibility and to aid in command and control of the platoon, as necessary.
47. Integrate the fire support plan into platoon operations to support the scheme of maneuver.
48. Develop a communication plan.
49. All vehicle commanders should verify communications are up unless radio silence is ordered.
50. Integrate CS and CSS elements into the plan.
51. Continue to update the plan and verify plan complies with S-3's original OPORD/FRAGO based on information from the S-3 or S-2 and subsequent reconnaissance.
52. Platoon commander issues the order.
53. Use the five-paragraph OPORD format.
54. Distribute the order and supervise squad leaders and section leaders issuing their own orders.
55. Direct platoon sergeant to verify that squad leaders have posted overlays on their maps and that all overlays match the platoon commander's overlay.

56. Verify squad leaders understand the enemy and friendly situations as well as all tasks for which they are responsible.
57. Use confirmation briefing to verify section leaders understand the order.
58. If time permits, the platoon commander should lead the subordinate leaders in a walk-through rehearsal using a sand table or realistic terrain model.
59. Platoon commander/platoon sergeant/squad leaders supervise and refine platoon preparations.
60. Brief squads on the platoon mission based on the platoon commander's OPORD.
61. Perform back-briefs and rehearsals.
62. Direct and supervise resupply operations, using FM and/or digital communications.
63. Supervise precombat checks.
64. Perform precombat inspections (PCI): the platoon sergeant identifies key inspection areas/items (based on METT-TC) and develop PCI plan; platoon commander or platoon sergeant assigns area of responsibilities for the PCI and determines time line for PCI requirements; the platoon commander/sergeant or designated representatives inspect required areas/items to verify they are present, functional, clean, and/or complete; the platoon commander tests individual knowledge of the mission.
65. Continue to supervise and refine throughout execution of the operation.

RELATED EVENTS:
0352-EMPL-2301

REFERENCES:
1. FM 3-20.98 Reconnaissance Platoon
2. FM 3-90.1 Tank and Mechanized Infantry Company Team
3. FM 3-90.2 Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force
4. MCO 3500.27B W/ERRATUM Operational Risk Management
5. MCRP 2-12A Intelligence Preparation of the Battlefield (IPB)
6. MCRP 5-12A Operational Terms and Symbols
7. MCWP 3-12 Marine Corps Tank Employment
8. MCWP 3-15.5 Antiarmor Operations
9. MCWP 5-1 Marine Corps Planning Process
10. NAVMC 3500.87 Infantry Training & Readiness Manual

SCT-CMDC-5202: Conduct Risk Management

SUPPORTED MET(S): 1, 2, 3, 4, 5

EVALUATION-CODED: NO **SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL:** 12 months

DESCRIPTION: The primary objective of risk management is to help units protect their combat power through accident prevention, enabling them to win the battle quickly and decisively, with minimum losses. The Scout platoon commander, his NCOs, and all other Marines must know how to use risk management, coupled with fratricide reduction measures, to ensure that the mission is executed in the safest possible environment within mission constraints.

CONDITION: The Scout Platoon is conducting operations independently or as part of a higher headquarters and receives an operation order (OPORD) or fragmentary order (FRAGO) to conduct a mission at the location and time

specified. The order includes all applicable overlays and or graphics. All necessary unit personnel and equipment are available. The unit has communications with higher, adjacent, and subordinate elements. Coalition forces and noncombatants may be present in the operational environment. Some iterations of this task are performed in MOPP 4.

STANDARD: The platoon collects relevant information and correctly assesses risk status. All personnel are informed of and understand the risk factors. All potential safety problems are identified and either reduced or eliminated. Fratricide prevention is addressed. The unit complies with the ROE.

EVENT COMPONENTS:

1. Unit leaders gain and or maintain situational understanding using available communications equipment, maps, intelligence summaries, situation reports (SITREPs), and other available information sources.
2. Platoon commander and subordinate leaders identify risks and safety hazards.
3. Identify specified and implied missions or tasks in the OPORD, operation plan (OPLAN), FRAGO, and or ROE; identify all risks associated with specified and implied missions or tasks; integrate safety into every phase of planning process; identify benefits of safety measures to unit's mission versus potential cost of risk or safety hazards; conduct continuous assessment during all phases of operations for safety and risk reduction.
4. Platoon commander and subordinate leaders assess risk or safety hazards identified during operations.
5. Identify previously executed unsafe acts and corrective actions; identify unwarranted risks; compare identified risk to commander's acceptable risk level based on stated objectives; calculate projected loss of equipment and personnel from accidents by reviewing historical records; describe operation in terms of its risk level (extremely high, high, medium, low) using risk assessment matrices (regular and environmental) and the following categories.
6. Compute overall risk factor.
7. Identify aspects of the operation that may be affected by the primary causes of fratricide.
8. Include failures in direct fire control plan, land navigation failures, failures in combat identification, inadequate control measures, failures in reporting and communications, weapons errors, and battlefield hazards.
9. Platoon commander, platoon sergeant, and squad leaders develop controls and make risk decisions to eliminate or reduce risk and safety hazards.
10. Select course of action (COA) that maximizes the operation and minimizes risk.
11. Develop procedures that reduce risk.
12. Provide guidance that enhances safety during all phases of operation.
13. Prescribe safety and protective equipment that enhance safety and reduce risks.
14. Marines implement risk control procedures.
15. Practice safety procedures during all mission rehearsals and operations.
16. Correct unsafe acts on the spot.
17. Report all risk and safety violations to S-3 officer or HQSVC company commander.
18. Platoon commander supervises and evaluates risk management controls.
19. Enforce standards and controls.

20. Evaluate effectiveness of controls and adjust and or update as necessary.
21. Comply with orders, SOP, commander's guidance, ROE and ROI.

REFERENCES:
1. DoDD 2000.12 DoD Antiterrorism/Force Protection (AT/FP) Program
2. FM 3-20.98 Reconnaissance Platoon
3. FM 3-90.1 Tank and Mechanized Infantry Company Team
4. FM 3-90.2 Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force
5. MCO 3302.1C The Marine Corps Antiterrorism Program
6. MCO 3500.27B W/ERRATUM Operational Risk Management
7. MCRP 3-11.2A Marine Troop Leader's Guide
8. MCWP 3-12 Marine Corps Tank Employment

SCT-CMDC-5203: Maintain Operations Security (OPSEC)

SUPPORTED MET(S): 1, 2, 3, 4

EVALUATION-CODED: NO **SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL:** 12 months

DESCRIPTION: The maintenance of operations security (OPSEC) is a process of identifying critical information and subsequently analyzing friendly actions attendant to military operations and other activities to: identify those actions that are observed by adversary intelligence systems; determine indicators hostile intelligence systems might obtain that are interpreted or pieced together to derive critical information in time to be useful to adversaries; and select and execute measures that eliminate or reduce to an acceptable level the vulnerabilities of friendly actions to adversary exploitation. All measures taken to maintain security and achieve tactical surprise. It includes countersurveillance, physical security, signal security, and information security. It also involves the identification and elimination or control of indicators that are exploited by hostile intelligence organizations. OPSEC is a component of force protection, which conserves the fighting potential of a force.

CONDITION: The Scout platoon is conducting operations independently or as part of a higher headquarters and must maintain operations security (OPSEC) to deny the enemy information about friendly activities taking place in the area of operations (AO). All command posts (CPs) are operational and information is being passed between higher, adjacent, subordinate, and supporting elements. The enemy has the capability to detect the unit visually, audibly, and electronically. All necessary unit personnel and equipment are available. Coalition forces and noncombatants may be present in the operational environment. Some iterations of this task are conducted during limited visibility conditions. Some iterations of this task are performed in MOPP 4.

STANDARD: The platoon employs OPSEC measures in accordance with the standard operating procedures, the order, and higher commander's guidance. The unit identifies and eliminates or controls indicators which can be exploited by hostile intelligence organizations. The unit practices active and passive noise, light, litter, and communications discipline to deny friendly information to enemy forces.

EVENT COMPONENTS:

1. The platoon develops an OPSEC plan that addresses active and passive noise, light, litter, and communications measures to deny friendly information to enemy forces.
2. Identify indicators which can be exploited by hostile intelligence organizations.
3. Develop a deception plan when planning missions.
4. Platoon prepares for OPSEC; brief subordinates on the OPSEC plan and its importance to mission success; conduct extensive reconnaissance and surveillance (R&S).
5. Unit executes the OPSEC plan.
6. Enforce measures that protects friendly information: prohibit fraternization with local civilians; make sure maps do not contain the friendly order of battle; conduct inspections and gives briefings to ensure that personnel do not carry details of military activities in personal materials; ensure all planning areas and positions are sanitized after use or before unit elements depart their areas.
7. Man and perform surveillance from observation posts (OPs).
8. Conduct counter-reconnaissance patrols if possible.
9. Destroy enemy reconnaissance elements when encountered.
10. Conduct stand-to procedures.
11. Establish local security.
12. Establish specific levels of alert based on the factors of mission, enemy, terrain, troops, time available, and civil considerations (METT-TC).
13. Use camouflage to conceal individuals, equipment, supplies, and positions: cover all reflective surfaces with non-reflective material such as cloth, mud, or camouflage stick; use terrain and vegetation for concealment.
14. Avoid footpaths, trails, and roads where possible.
15. Erase tracks leading into positions.
16. Control movement.
17. Use the proper movement formation and movement technique: move as fast as the situation permits and along covered and concealed routes.
18. Enforce radio discipline.
19. Enforce the use of proper radio procedures.
20. Ensure subordinate elements: change frequencies and call signs IAW signal operating instructions (SOI) and SOP; use varied transmission schedules and lengths; use established formats to expedite transmissions; use encoded messages or use secure voice; use brevity codes when possible; use the lowest power settings possible; avoid transmission patterns; use and maintain radio silence as directed.
21. Ensure subordinate elements understand action to take if jamming is suspected: continue to operate, disconnect the antenna, switch to the highest power, relocate the radio, use directional antennas, turn the squelch off, use messenger and wire whenever possible, and use the radio in the quiet/message mode.
22. Enforce litter discipline: collect and back-haul trash during logistics runs during stationary periods and carry trash until it can be disposed of securely.
23. Enforce light discipline: ensure subordinate elements conceal lights necessary for planning or reading a map; ensure all flashlights have filters; ensure subordinate elements remove or tape personal items that may reflect light; ensure subordinate elements prohibit use of cigarettes and open fires during darkness or when smoke and or fire may be observed by the enemy; ensure subordinate elements use only passive night observation equipment if possible.

24. Enforce noise discipline: identify shortcomings in noise discipline during inspections; ensure subordinate elements tape down or remove items that make noise; ensure subordinate elements use normal means of communication to the greatest extent possible; ensure subordinate elements prohibit talking except as required to conduct or plan operations; ensure subordinate elements use hand and arm signals to the fullest extent possible during daylight hours or with night vision devices.
25. Enforce information assurance.
26. Unit leaders assess OPSEC measures.
27. Monitor the effectiveness of the OPSEC plan.
28. Monitor subordinate compliance with the OPSEC plan.
29. Direct adjustments as necessary.

REFERENCES:
1. DoDD 2000.12 DoD Antiterrorism/Force Protection (AT/FP) Program
2. FM 3-20.98 Reconnaissance Platoon
3. FM 3-90.1 Tank and Mechanized Infantry Company Team
4. FM 3-90.2 Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force
5. MCO 3302.1C The Marine Corps Antiterrorism Program
6. MCO 3500.27B W/ERRATUM Operational Risk Management
7. MCRP 3-11.2A Marine Troop Leader's Guide
8. MCWP 2-6 Counterintelligence
9. MCWP 3-12 Marine Corps Tank Employment

SCT-CMDC-5204: Conduct a Rehearsal

SUPPORTED MET(S): 1, 2, 3, 4

EVALUATION-CODED: NO **SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL:** 12 months

DESCRIPTION: A rehearsal is a practice session conducted to prepare units for an upcoming operation or event. The platoon commander should never underestimate the value of a rehearsal. They are his most valuable tools in preparing the platoon for the upcoming operation. Effective rehearsals require crewmen to perform required tasks, ideally under conditions that are as close as possible to those expected for the actual operation. Participants maneuver their actual vehicles or use vehicle models or simulations while interactively verbalizing their elements' actions. The primary types of rehearsals available to the tank platoon are the following: confirmation brief, backbrief, combined arms rehearsal, support rehearsal, and battle drill or SOP. The techniques of rehearsal listed in descending order of preparation time and resources are the following: full dress rehearsal, reduced force rehearsal, terrain model rehearsal, sketch map rehearsal, map rehearsal, and radio/digital rehearsal.

CONDITION: The Scout platoon is conducting operations independently or as part of a higher headquarters and is preparing for a mission. Mission planning and coordination have been accomplished. The unit operations order (OPORD) is developed and briefed. The platoon commander directs the unit to conduct a rehearsal. All section leaders, squad leaders, and operational control (OPCON) or attached leaders are present. All necessary unit personnel and equipment are available. The unit has communications with higher, adjacent, and subordinate elements. The unit is provided guidance on the rules of engagement (ROE) and rules of interaction (ROI). Coalition

forces and noncombatants may be present in the operational environment. Some iterations of this task are conducted during limited visibility conditions. Some iterations of this task are performed in MOPP 4.

STANDARD: The platoon plans, prepares, and executes the rehearsal in accordance with the appropriate reference, standard operating procedures (SOP), and commander's guidance. The rehearsal addresses key and or critical aspects of the operation and provides necessary information for subordinate leaders and attachments to execute their mission. The platoon commander develops a rehearsal script. The platoon commander identifies and prioritizes key events to be rehearsed. The platoon commander coordinates and allocates time for the key events requiring rehearsal. The platoon commander briefs rehearsal participants and directs adjustments to the rehearsal to ensure that operations remain aligned with the commander's intent. The platoon commander reinforces the ROE and ROI.

EVENT COMPONENTS:

1. The platoon commander gains and or maintains situational understanding using available communications equipment, maps, intelligence summaries, situation reports (SITREPs), and other available information sources.
2. Platoon commander plans and prioritizes the rehearsal schedule.
3. Select rehearsal criteria.
4. Select one of the following rehearsal techniques: full dress, reduced force, terrain model, sketch map, map, or radio/digital.
5. Select one of the following rehearsal types: confirmation brief, backbrief, combined arms rehearsal, support rehearsal, and battle drill or standing operating procedures (SOP) rehearsal.
6. Select place of rehearsal, attendees, and enemy course of action (COA) to be portrayed during the rehearsal.
7. Develop a rehearsal script that includes the following: an agenda, a response sequence, an actions checklist, and a sequence of events.
8. Perform the following tasks: ensure rehearsal time and location are published in the unit operations order (OPORD) or warning order (WARNO); complete any rehearsals with the staff; determine rehearsal products.
9. Platoon commander prepares for rehearsal: identify and prioritize key events to be rehearsed, allocate time, ensure completeness of task organization, ensure readiness of personnel and material, and ensure unit level of preparation for the assigned mission.
10. Platoon sergeant prepares for rehearsal: coordinate and allocate time for the key events requiring rehearsal, establish rehearsal time limits according to the platoon commander's guidance and factors of METT-TC, verify rehearsal site preparation, and determine the method for controlling the rehearsal and ensuring its logical flow.
11. Subordinate leaders prepare for rehearsal: complete their planning process, identify issues derived from the unit order, and conduct personal preparation similar to that of the unit commander.
12. Platoon/leaders move to rehearsal site.
13. Platoon/leaders execute rehearsal.
14. Platoon commander briefs participants: orient participants to the training aid and the terrain, define the standard, visualize and synchronize the concept of operations, focus on the key events and synchronization required to achieve the desired effect on the enemy, and address any points in the operation where the execution of branches or sequels is likely to occur.
15. Direct the rehearsal: conduct a formal roll call and ensure that

necessary equipment is on hand; validate task organization for the mission; rehearse synchronization of combat power from flank, higher, and his own units; synchronize the timing and contribution of each operating system; use the OPORD, DST, and synchronization matrix to accomplish disciplined leader movements, enforce brevity, ensure completeness; keep the rehearsal within established time constraints; ensure selected events receive appropriate attention; ensure absentees and flank units receive changes immediately.

16. Direct the rehearsal: conduct a formal roll call and ensure that necessary equipment is on hand; validate task organization for the mission; rehearse synchronization of combat power from flank, higher, and his own units; synchronize the timing and contribution of each operating system; use the OPORD, DST, and synchronization matrix to accomplish disciplined leader movements, enforce brevity, ensure completeness; keep the rehearsal within established time constraints; ensure selected events receive appropriate attention; ensure absentees and flank units receive changes immediately.
17. Assist the commander in the fight forward: portray his actions during the fight; ensure compliance with the plan.
18. Base execution actions on the enemy COA the commander has selected during the planning process: portray best assessment of the enemy COA; communicate the enemy commander's presumed concept of operation, desired effects, and intended end state.
19. Use an established format: articulate their unit's actions and responsibilities effectively; record changes on their copies of the graphics or OPORD.
20. Unit leaders assess the rehearsal.
21. Monitor continuously the situation and progress.
22. Direct adjustments to ensure that operations remain aligned with the commander's intent.
23. Rehearse again, if the standard is not met and time is available.
24. Recorder accomplishes the following, after the rehearsal is complete.
25. Restate any changes, coordination, or clarification directed by the commander.
26. Estimate the time that a written fragmentation order (FRAGO) codifying the changes will follow.
27. Unit provides staff updates.
28. Issue OPORD.
29. Platoon commander assembles participants to conduct an after action review (AAR).

REFERENCES:

1. FM 3-20.98 Reconnaissance Platoon
2. FM 3-90.1 Tank and Mechanized Infantry Company Team
3. FM 3-90.2 Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force
4. MCWP 3-12 Marine Corps Tank Employment
5. NAVMC 3500.87 Infantry Training & Readiness Manual

SCT-CMDC-5205: Establish an Observation Post

SUPPORTED MET(S): 3

EVALUATION-CODED: NO **SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL:** 12 months

DESCRIPTION: A position from which military observations are made, fires are directed and adjusted, and which possesses appropriate communications.

CONDITION: The Scout platoon is conducting tactical operations as part of a battalion task force and receives an OPORD/FRAGO complete with supporting graphics to establish observation post (OPs), or the platoon commander, as a result of his METT-TC analysis, determines that the platoon must establish OPs to provide early warning of enemy activity. The OPs can be occupied by dismounted personnel or by a vehicle (mounted OP). Enemy contact is possible or expected during emplacement of the OPs. Some iterations of this task are performed in limited visibility. Some iterations of this task are performed in MOPP 4.

STANDARD: The platoon commander positions the OPs to observe likely enemy avenues of approach. Platoon OP personnel provide early warning to the platoon commander in the event of enemy activity. The platoon sustains no personnel or equipment losses due to friendly fire. The platoon maintains situational awareness by monitoring digital communications displays and FM communications. Time required to plan and implement is increased when operating in MOPP 4.

EVENT COMPONENTS:

1. Platoon commander selects OP sites.
2. Determine how many OPs are needed based on avenues of approach/NAIs the platoon must cover.
3. Determine whether OPs will be mounted or dismounted.
4. Select sites that provide unobstructed observation of the desired area.
5. Select sites that provide cover and concealment.
6. Verify covered and concealed routes into and out of the sites.
7. Verify positions do not skyline the observers.
8. Dismounted OPs should be emplaced within effective machine gun range of the unit and a minimum of two personnel should man a dismounted OP.
9. Review the task force mission.
10. Orient OPs by relating mission graphics to the terrain (TRPs, trigger point, break point).
11. Specify primary/secondary avenues of approach, means of communications (visual, wire, radio), covered/concealed routes to and from the OPs, and displacement criteria for the OPs.
12. Platoon OP personnel assemble required equipment for dismounted OPs.
13. Verify all required personnel equipment (kevlar helmet, weapons, MOPP gear) is on hand/serviceable.
14. Verify proper communications equipment (visual, wire, radio, digital) is on hand/serviceable.
15. Verify digital communications settings and defaults with graphics are correct or map with graphics is on hand.
16. Verify binoculars are on hand/serviceable.
17. Verify night vision goggles are on hand/serviceable.
18. Platoon OP personnel occupy dismounted site.
19. Move to OPs using covered and concealed routes.
20. Verify positions provide adequate cover and concealment until they can be improved.
21. Perform hasty occupation of the OPs.
22. Report to platoon commander when set.
23. Run hot loop (wire) to tank section.
24. Scout squad occupies mounted OP site.

25. Dismount and move forward to verify routes to the sites provide adequate cover and concealment.
26. Verify OP sites afford cover and concealment and unobstructed observation of mounted avenues of approach in platoon area.
27. Brief VCs of vehicle OPs on avenues of approach, dead space, and routes into and out of OPs.
28. Direct machine gunners to establish local security of OP sites and return to vehicles with platoon commander.
29. Brief gunners/drivers and move vehicles forward into OP positions (VCs of OP vehicles).
30. Develop range cards/sector sketches in hard copy or in digital communications and send copy to platoon commander using digital communications.
31. Platoon commander/platoon sergeant inspects dismounted/mounted OPs.
32. Verify OPs are camouflaged and afford adequate cover and concealment (including overhead cover for dismounted OPs), OP personnel are alert, and required equipment is on hand/serviceable.
33. Check OPs means of communication with Scout section/squad.
34. Check range cards/sector sketches for accuracy.
35. Platoon OP personnel observe the sector.
36. Maintain constant surveillance of the sector and/or NAI.
37. Maintain local security as necessary.
38. Send updated SITREPs to the platoon using digital communications or FM communications.
39. Identify enemy forces entering sector along designated avenues of approach.
40. Report enemy activity to platoon commander, using digital communications or FM communications.
41. Platoon OP personnel improve positions as time permits.
42. Develop a complete sector sketch or map with mission graphics, using digital communications or in hard copy.
43. Dig in to enhance cover and concealment.
44. Camouflage the site.
45. Establish wire communications.

REFERENCES:
1. FM 3-20.98 Reconnaissance Platoon
2. FM 3-90.1 Tank and Mechanized Infantry Company Team
3. FM 3-90.2 Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force
4. MCWP 3-12 Marine Corps Tank Employment
5. NAVMC 3500.87 Infantry Training & Readiness Manual

SCT-CMDC-5206: Process Captured Documents and Equipment

SUPPORTED MET(S): 4

EVALUATION-CODED: NO **SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL:** 12 months

DESCRIPTION: To satisfy command Priority Information Requirements (PIRs), the Scout platoon must be proficient in the processes of identifying documents and equipment that may be exploitable for information regarding an adversary's plans, reports, or intentions.

CONDITION: The Scout platoon is conducting operations independently or as part of a higher headquarters and has captured enemy documents and/or equipment. All necessary unit personnel and equipment are available. The unit has communications with higher, adjacent, subordinate, and supporting elements. Some iterations of this task are conducted during limited visibility conditions.

STANDARD: The platoon processes captured documents and equipment in accordance with standard operating procedures, ROE and ROI, and international law.

EVENT COMPONENTS:
1. The platoon tags documents and captured equipment with the necessary information to include: type of equipment, date and time of capture, place of capture, capturing unit, circumstances of capture, and prisoner's name.
2. The platoon reports capture of documents/equipment to higher headquarters.
3. The platoon disposes of captured equipment.
4. Destroy, secure, evacuate, or abandon the captured equipment in accordance with the disposition instructions.
5. Evacuate documents to designated personnel/higher headquarters.

REFERENCES:
1. FM 3-20.98 Reconnaissance Platoon
2. FM 3-90.1 Tank and Mechanized Infantry Company Team
3. FM 3-90.2 Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force
4. MCWP 3-12 Marine Corps Tank Employment
5. NAVMC 3500.87 Infantry Training & Readiness Manual

SCT-CMDC-5207: Conduct a Route Reconnaissance

SUPPORTED MET(S): 4

EVALUATION-CODED: NO **SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL:** 12 months

DESCRIPTION: The Scout platoon conducts a route reconnaissance to gain detailed information about a specific route or axis as well as the terrain on both sides of the route that the enemy could use to influence movement on the route. The platoon is usually tasked with this mission when the commander wants to use a certain route, but first wants to make sure that the route is free of obstacles and threat forces and that it will support the movement of his vehicles.

CONDITION: The Scout platoon is conducting tactical operations as part of a battalion task force and receives an OPORD and supporting overlays to conduct a route reconnaissance. Threat security forces are operating in the area of operations. The unit establishes communications and digital connectivity (if applicable), with subordinate, adjacent, and higher headquarters, and is passing information in accordance with (IAW) the standard operating procedure (SOP). Some iterations of this task are performed in limited visibility. Some iterations of this task are performed in MOPP 4.The platoon is ordered to conduct a route reconnaissance.

STANDARD: The platoon collects and reports information on decisive and key terrain and threat forces (squad size or greater), and reconnoiters the assigned route and lateral routes. The platoon reports all route information and retains freedom to maneuver.

EVENT COMPONENTS:

1. Platoon deploys utilizing appropriate formation and techniques of movement specified in operation order.
2. Platoon conducts reconnaissance.
3. Use maximum reconnaissance force forward.
4. Orient on the reconnaissance objective.
5. Report all information rapidly and accurately.
6. Retain freedom to maneuver.
7. Gain and maintain enemy contact.
8. Develop the situation rapidly.
9. Platoon collects information about the route and adjacent terrain.
10. Determine trafficablility along the route.
11. Locate and evaluate all bridges, fords and/or crossing sites along the route.
12. Locate mines, obstacles, and barriers along the route.
13. Locate and evaluate all underpasses and tunnels.
14. Identify and evaluate all restrictive curves and steep grades along the route.
15. Identify and evaluate all other restrictive passages.
16. Locate and evaluate bypasses of all restrictive passages.
17. Complete and confirm map reconnaissance by visual inspection of the route and adjacent terrain.
18. Reconnoiter terrain that dominates along the route.
19. Reconnoiter all built-up areas along the route.
20. Reconnoiter all routes effecting reconnaissance.
21. Determine existence and extent of NBC contamination along the route, if required.
22. Platoon identifies threat forces that can influence the route.
23. Platoon commander/platoon sergeant prepares a route classification overlay.
24. Depict beginning and end coordinates of the route, restrictions to traffic flow, sharp curves and series of curves, level grade railroad crossings, length and width of constrictions, percentage of slope on steep grades, and overall capability of the route.
25. Report terrain information by submitting route classification overlay.
26. Report terrain information by submitting obstacle, bypass, and ford reports.

PREREQUISITE EVENTS:

SCT-TAC-5802

REFERENCES:

1. FM 3-20.98 Reconnaissance Platoon
2. FM 3-90.1 Tank and Mechanized Infantry Company Team
3. FM 3-90.2 Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force
4. MCWP 3-12 Marine Corps Tank Employment
5. NAVMC 3500.87 Infantry Training & Readiness Manual

SCT-CMDC-5208: Conduct an Area Reconnaissance

SUPPORTED MET(S): 4

EVALUATION-CODED: NO **SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL:** 12 months

DESCRIPTION: Before moving forces into or near a specified area, the commander may task the Scout platoon to conduct an area reconnaissance to avoid being surprised by unsuitable terrain conditions or unexpected threat forces.

CONDITION: The Scout platoon is conducting tactical operations as part of a battalion task force and receives an OPORD and supporting overlays to conduct an area reconnaissance. Threat security forces are operating in the area of operations. The unit establishes communications and digital connectivity (if applicable), with subordinate, adjacent, and higher headquarters, and is passing information in accordance with (IAW) the standard operating procedure (SOP). Some iterations of this task are performed in limited visibility. Some iterations of this task are performed in MOPP 4.

STANDARD: The platoon collects and reports information on threat forces (squad or larger), orients on the reconnaissance objective, and gains and maintains contact with the threat, if present. The platoon reports all pertinent information and retains freedom to maneuver.

EVENT COMPONENTS:

1. Platoon deploys utilizing appropriate formation and techniques of movement specified in operation order.
2. Platoon conducts reconnaissance.
3. Use maximum reconnaissance force forward.
4. Orient on the reconnaissance objective.
5. Report all information rapidly and accurately.
6. Retain freedom to maneuver.
7. Gain and maintain enemy contact.
8. Platoon collects and records terrain information.
9. Determine trafficability of all major routes.
10. Determine cross-country trafficability of all terrain within the area.
11. Locate and evaluate all bridges within the area.
12. Locate suitable fording or crossing sites near all bridges within the area.
13. Locate and evaluate all tunnels and underpasses.
14. Locate mines, obstacles, and barriers in the area.
15. Locate a bypass around built-up areas, obstacles, and contaminated areas.
16. Locate landing or drop zones.
17. Reconnoiter terrain that dominates the area, if required.
18. Determine the existence and extent of NBC contamination within area, if required.
19. Platoon identifies threat forces within the area.
20. Platoon reports information to battalion.
21. Submit overlay of area (if required).
22. Submit obstacle, bypass, and ford reports.

PREREQUISITE EVENTS:

SCT-TAC-5802 SCT-CMDC-5207

REFERENCES:
1. FM 3-20.98 Reconnaissance Platoon
2. FM 3-90.1 Tank and Mechanized Infantry Company Team
3. FM 3-90.2 Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force
4. MCWP 3-12 Marine Corps Tank Employment
5. NAVMC 3500.87 Infantry Training & Readiness Manual

SCT-CMDC-5209: Conduct a Zone Reconnaissance

SUPPORTED MET(S): 4

EVALUATION-CODED: NO **SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL:** 12 months

DESCRIPTION: The commander normally assigns a zone reconnaissance when he needs detailed information before maneuvering his forces through a zone. This reconnaissance provides the commander with a detailed picture of how the threat plans to defend the zone, enabling him to choose the appropriate COA. In order to adequately conduct a zone reconnaissance, the Scout platoon should receive significant augmentation or operate as part of a larger reconnaissance force.

CONDITION: The Scout platoon is conducting tactical operations as part of a battalion task force and receives an OPORD and supporting overlays to conduct a zone reconnaissance. Threat security forces are operating in the area of operations. The unit establishes communications and digital connectivity (if applicable), with subordinate, adjacent, and higher headquarters, and is passing information in accordance with (IAW) the standard operating procedure (SOP). Some iterations of this task are performed in limited visibility. Some iterations of this task are performed in MOPP 4.

STANDARD: The platoon collects and reports information on decisive and key terrain and threat forces (squad or larger) within the zone. The platoon orients on the reconnaissance objective, retains freedom to maneuver, and gains and maintains contact if the threat is present.

EVENT COMPONENTS:
1. Platoon deploys utilizing appropriate formation and techniques of movement specified in operation order.
2. Platoon conducts reconnaissance.
3. Use maximum reconnaissance force forward.
4. Orient on the reconnaissance objective.
5. Report all information rapidly and accurately.
6. Retain freedom to maneuver.
7. Develop the situation rapidly.
8. Gain and maintain enemy contact.
9. Platoon collects and records terrain information.
10. Determine trafficability of any major route.
11. Determine cross-country trafficability of all terrain within the zone.
12. Gather intervisibilility information.
13. Locate and evaluate all bridges within the zone.
14. Locate and evaluate fords and/or crossing sites near all bridges within the zone.
15. Locate mines, obstacles, and barriers along the route.
16. Locate and evaluate all underpasses and tunnels.

17. Determine existence and extent of NBC contamination along the route, if required.
18. Locate a bypass around built-up areas, obstacles and contaminated areas.
19. Platoon identifies threat forces that can influence within the zone.
20. Platoon commander reports terrain information.
21. Submit route classification overlay if required.
22. Submit obstacle, bypass, and ford reports.

PREREQUISITE EVENTS:
SCT-TAC-5802 SCT-CMDC-5208 SCT-CMDC-5207

REFERENCES:
1. FM 3-20.98 Reconnaissance Platoon
2. FM 3-90.1 Tank and Mechanized Infantry Company Team
3. FM 3-90.2 Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force
4. MCWP 3-12 Marine Corps Tank Employment
5. NAVMC 3500.87 Infantry Training & Readiness Manual

SCT-CMDC-5210: Conduct Urban Area Reconnaissance

SUPPORTED MET(S): 4

EVALUATION-CODED: NO **SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL:** 12 months

DESCRIPTION: Reconnaissance is a mission undertaken to obtain, by visual observation or other detection methods, information about the activities and resources of an enemy.

CONDITION: The Scout platoon receives an order directing it to conduct reconnaissance of an urban area to facilitate informational and situational understanding of the area for its higher headquarters. The operations order (OPORD)/fragmentary order (FRAGO) specifies the commander's critical information requirements (CCIR) and focus, tempo, and engagement criteria for the mission. Coalition partners, civilians, government agencies, nongovernmental organizations, and the international media may be present in the area. The ROE/ROI is published. Additional maneuver, combat support (CS), and combat service support (CSS) assets may be available. Contact is possible. Some iterations of this task is performed in MOPP 4.

STANDARD: The platoon reports signs of unusual civilian activity, threat presence, threat vehicles, command and control facilities, obstacles (e.g., rubble, blown bridges, craters), Nuclear, Biological, and Chemical (NBC) contamination, logistics elements, and potential bypasses in the urban area. The reconnaissance tempo enables the platoon to complete the mission with minimal casualties. The platoon reports information within the time specified in the order. The platoon submits a reconnaissance report that includes a sector sketch (urban map) of the area. The platoon adheres to the ROE/ROI. No friendly unit suffers casualties or equipment damage as a result of fratricide.

EVENT COMPONENTS:
1. Platoon commander receives and analyzes the OPORD/FRAGO.
2. Platoon commander collects and analyzes existing intelligence.
3. Obtain current maps, aerial images, tactical intelligence on the threat,

and human intelligence (HUMINT) on the urban area from higher headquarters.

4. Analyze the three layers of urban terrain (airspace over the city, buildings and streets, and subterranean systems).
5. Analyze the threat in the urban area.
6. Analyze the impact civilians may have on operations.
7. Identify information requirements that assist with development of urban operation sketches.
8. Develop or revise urban operations sketch of the area of operations.
9. Identify key terrain and other important locations in the area of operations on the sketch.
10. Use a reference system IAW unit SOP to identify buildings and streets to aid navigation.
11. Add appropriate graphic control measures to facilitate command and control during operations.
12. Distribute sketch within the platoon and as necessary submits copies to higher and adjacent elements IAW order and/or unit SOP.
13. Continue to update the sketch during execution of the operation IAW order and/or unit SOP.
14. Platoon commander issues order.
15. Platoon begins movement to the urban area.
16. Prior to departure, inform all units in area and on flank of times and location for departure, composition, zone/area(s), and time of return (if applicable) for the reconnaissance.
17. Conduct passage of lines, as required.
18. Conduct coordination with supporting combat and/or air elements as applicable.
19. Conduct coordination at contact points with adjacent units on the flanks IAW order and/or unit SOP.
20. Platoon reconnoiters progressively from the surrounding area toward the urban area to gain information on the objective.
21. Reconnoiter outlying towns and villages along the avenue of approach to the reconnaissance LOA.
22. Refine routes and reconnaissance objectives as they gain and analyze new information.
23. Platoon infiltrates surveillance teams as necessary.
24. Platoon vehicles provide overwatch for surveillance teams.
25. Select fixed urban hide sites.
26. Establish sufficient hide/surveillance sites that observe the objective area.
27. Rotate personnel as necessary.
28. Surveillance teams report information to platoon commander.
29. If platoon makes contact with threat during surveillance of the area: Platoon commander assesses situation and reports to higher headquarters, use indirect fire to suppress the threat, direct surveillance team(s) in contact to displace back to platoon position, and remaining surveillance teams continue to observe.
30. Platoon conducts urban patrolling as necessary.
31. Leaders conduct preliminary reconnaissance to: Identify insertion and extraction routes, Identify choke points along routes, and identify escape and evasion routes provided by lateral and parallel streets.
32. Conduct mounted patrolling.
33. Conduct dismounted patrolling.
34. Conduct subterranean patrolling.
35. Adjust patrol routes and vehicle speed to avoid repetitive patterns and

promote deception.
36. Continue to improve the urban operations sketch throughout the reconnaissance.
37. Reconnoiter all terrain surrounding the urban area focusing on approach routes for mounted and dismounted forces.
38. Inspect and classify all bridges on approaches to the urban area.
39. Locate fords or crossing sites near all bridges on the approaches to the urban area.
40. Inspect and classify all overpasses, underpasses, and culverts on the approaches to the urban area.
41. Locate obstacles, barriers, and mines on the approaches and identify bypasses.
42. Locate bypasses around the urban area.
43. Locate contaminated areas and bypasses.
44. Identify support positions for direct and indirect fire weapon systems.
45. Locate entry points or points of penetration to the urban area.
46. Verify the density and composition of the urban area.
47. Locate key terrain, especially building and facilities that support further reconnaissance and other operations.
48. Verify the location of hazard areas such as gas distribution lines, fuel storage, chemical production, and other facilities.
49. Verify the location of communication facilities.
50. Identify locations for retrans sites.
51. Locate and identify threat forces within and around the urban area.
52. Identify sources of power and/or influence.
53. Platoon commander adjusts reconnaissance tempo during operations as necessary.
54. Platoon reports reconnaissance information IAW order and/or SOP.

REFERENCES:
1. FM 3-20.98 Reconnaissance Platoon
2. FM 3-90.1 Tank and Mechanized Infantry Company Team
3. FM 3-90.2 Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force
4. MCWP 3-12 Marine Corps Tank Employment
5. NAVMC 3500.87 Infantry Training & Readiness Manual

SCT-CMDC-5211: Reconnoiter an Obstacle and a Bypass

SUPPORTED MET(S): 4

EVALUATION-CODED: NO **SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL:** 12 months

DESCRIPTION: How the Scout platoon approaches obstacle reconnaissance is highly dependent on METT-TC. In general, the process of conducting this type of reconnaissance can be covered in five steps that under most METT-TC conditions will ensure an organized and efficient operation: detection, area security/reconnaissance, obstacle reconnaissance, selection of a COA, and recommendation/execution of COA.

CONDITION: The Scout platoon is conducting tactical operations as part of a battalion task force and receives an OPORD/FRAGO directing it to conduct reconnaissance operations. During the operation the platoon encounters an obstacle which impedes movement. Enemy forces are operating within the area of operations. Some iterations of this task are performed in limited

visibility. Some iterations of this task are performed in MOPP 4.

STANDARD: The platoon performs a reconnaissance of the obstacle, locates any bypasses, and provides the necessary information to the commander in the obstacle report IAW unit SOP.

EVENT COMPONENTS:
1. Scouts discovering obstacle deploy in an overwatch position and report.
2. Platoon commander reports obstacle to battalion (SALUTE).
3. An element moves to a position overwatching the obstacle.
4. Employ indirect fires to suppress known or suspected threat positions (if the use of indirect fire is prudent).
5. Platoon establishes security and locates a bypass.
6. Locate bypass on either side of obstacle.
7. Move to far (threat) side of obstacle and establish forward OPs.
8. Develop bypass report while moving to establish OP.
9. One section moves to obstacle and conducts local security.
10. Remaining section moves to the flanks to provide flank security.
11. Platoon sergeant reconnoiters the obstacle and prepares reports.
12. Move to the near side of the obstacle.
13. Reconnoiter obstacle for trip wires, mines, and other booby traps.
14. Determine if the obstacle can be breached or cleared with organic assets.
15. Receive bypass reports from section leaders.
16. Report results of reconnaissance to platoon commander.
17. Platoon commander reports results and submits recommendations to battalion.
18. Send report via designated means.
19. Send recommendation to use bypass around obstacle, no assistance required.
20. Send recommendation there is no bypass around obstacle, assistance required.
21. Send recommendation there is a difficult bypass around obstacle, assistance required.
22. Platoon prepares to continue mission.
23. Sections pick up local security at obstacle and return to forward OP.
24. Platoon bypasses obstacle and prepares to resume mission.
25. If bypass is not possible, platoon provides overwatch and local security of obstacle until arrival of breaching force.

PREREQUISITE EVENTS:
SCT-TAC-5809 SCT-TAC-5802

REFERENCES:
1. FM 3-20.98 Reconnaissance Platoon
2. FM 3-90.1 Tank and Mechanized Infantry Company Team
3. FM 3-90.2 Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force
4. FM 5-101 Mobility
5. MCWP 3-12 Marine Corps Tank Employment
6. MCWP 3-17.3 MAGTF Breaching Operations
7. NAVMC 3500.87 Infantry Training & Readiness Manual

SCT-CBTS-5401: Prepare for a Chemical/Biological Attack

SUPPORTED MET(S): 2, 3, 4

EVALUATION-CODED: NO **SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL:** 12 months

DESCRIPTION: The active measures a unit takes in order to protect itself against chemical or biological attack based on the enemy's capabilities. Depending on unit SOP, the Scout platoon may be given the mission as the battalion's monitor and survey team and should be prepared to conduct these activities accordingly.

CONDITION: The Scout platoon is conducting operations as part of a battalion task force and receives an OPORD or FRAGO to take immediate actions necessary to protect itself from a chemical attack in its area of operations. All necessary unit personnel and equipment are available. The platoon has communications and digital connectivity (if applicable) with higher, adjacent, and subordinate elements. Some iterations of this task are conducted during limited visibility conditions. This task is always performed in MOPP 4.

STANDARD: The platoon prepares for a chemical/biological attack in accordance with standard operating procedures, the order, and higher commander's guidance. The unit constructs or reinforces positions, briefs or inspects personnel, positions alarms and monitors upwind of friendly positions, assumes the appropriate mission-oriented protective posture (MOPP), and takes cover.

EVENT COMPONENTS:

1. The platoon commander orders Marines to put on chemical protective overgarments, overboots, mask, and gloves (MOPP 4).
2. Marines use the buddy-team method to don and check proper wear of protective suit.
3. Individual Marines cover their equipment and weapons using ponchos, foliage, plastic, or any material that is expandable or readily decontaminated.
4. Marines attach M9 paper to overgarments and to supplies.
5. Vehicle crews prepare their vehicles.
6. Store water, rations, and unused equipment inside vehicles.
7. The platoon commander ensures that designated personnel conduct periodic monitoring with a chemical-agent detector.
8. conduct continuous monitoring with a chemical alarm.
9. Report results to company commander.
10. Platoon commander inspects to ensure that the platoon is prepared for a chemical/biological attack
11. Decontamination equipment is available and serviceable.
12. Platoon personnel and equipment are prepared for a chemical attack.
13. The platoon is capable of operating in MOPP 4 for 6 hours.

REFERENCES:

1. FM 3-100 NBC Operations
2. FM 3-20.98 Reconnaissance Platoon
3. FM 3-90.1 Tank and Mechanized Infantry Company Team
4. FM 3-90.2 Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force
5. MCRP 3-37.1A NBC Vulnerability Analysis/Chemical Hazard Assessment Guide
6. MCRP 3-37.2A Chemical and Biological Contamination Avoidance
7. MCRP 4-11.1A Treatment of Chemical Agent Casualties and Conventional Military Chemical Agents
8. MCRP 4-11.1C Treatment of Biological Warfare Agent Casualties

9. MCWP 3-12 Marine Corps Tank Employment
10. MCWP 3-37 MAGTF NBC Defense Operations
11. MCWP 3-37.1 Chemical Operations Principles and Fundamentals
12. MCWP 3-37.2 NBC Protection
13. MCWP 3-37.3 NBC Decontamination
14. MCWP 3-37.4 NBC Reconnaissance
15. NAVMC 3500.87 Infantry Training & Readiness Manual

SCT-CBTS-5402: React to a Chemical/Biological Attack

SUPPORTED MET(S): 2, 3, 4

EVALUATION-CODED: NO **SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL:** 12 months

DESCRIPTION: The active measures a unit takes in order to protect it and respond to a chemical or biological attack based on the enemies capabilities.

CONDITION: The Scout platoon is conducting tactical operations as part of a battalion task force. Chemical/Biological weapons are being used in the area of operations. The platoon must respond immediately to a chemical or biological attack, when the unit's automatic chemical agent alarm system(s) sounds, detector paper changes color, and/or a Marine displays symptoms of chemical/biological agent poisoning. Coalition forces and noncombatants may be present in the operational environment. Some iterations of this task are conducted during limited visibility conditions. This task is performed in MOPP 4.

STANDARD: Platoon members react to the chemical or biological attack within time standards and give the appropriate alarm. All unmasked Marines put on their protective masks and other MOPP gear. They assume MOPP 4 within 8 minutes and put the vehicle overpressurization system into operation. The platoon initiates use of the M256/M256A1 chemical agent detector kits to determine the type of agent. As soon as mission, enemy, terrain and weather, troops and support available, time available, and civil considerations (METT-TC) permits, the platoon conducts unmasking procedures. The platoon suffers no casualties as a result of heat injury or improper preparation.

EVENT COMPONENTS:
1. The platoon prepares for a chemical/biological attack.
2. Crewmen recognize and react to a chemical/biological hazard.
3. Put on protective mask within 15 seconds.
4. Alert the remainder of the platoon.
5. Within 8 minutes, assume MOPP 4.
6. Administer self-aid and buddy-aid to crewmen with symptoms of chemical/biological agent poisoning.
7. Ensure individual crewmen decontaminate their skin.
8. Conduct operator's spray down and decontamination of equipment as necessary.
9. Initiate continuous monitoring with M256/M256A1 detection kits, and submit NBC-1 and follow-up reports as needed.
10. Continue the mission.
11. Monitor for chemical/biological agents; as the situation warrants, initiate actions to reduce MOPP levels and discontinue agent monitoring.

PREREQUISITE EVENTS:
SCT-CBTS-5401

REFERENCES:
1. FM 3-100 NBC Operations
2. FM 3-20.98 Reconnaissance Platoon
3. FM 3-3 Chemical and Biological Contamination Avoidance
4. FM 3-90.1 Tank and Mechanized Infantry Company Team
5. FM 3-90.2 Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force
6. MCRP 3-37.1A NBC Vulnerability Analysis/Chemical Hazard Assessment Guide
7. MCRP 3-37.2A Chemical and Biological Contamination Avoidance
8. MCRP 3-37.2B Nuclear Contamination Avoidance
9. MCRP 3-37A NBC Field Handbook
10. MCRP 3-37B Field Behavior of NBC Agents
11. MCWP 3-12 Marine Corps Tank Employment
12. MCWP 3-37 MAGTF NBC Defense Operations
13. MCWP 3-37.1 Chemical Operations Principles and Fundamentals
14. MCWP 3-37.2 NBC Protection
15. MCWP 3-37.3 NBC Decontamination
16. MCWP 3-37.4 NBC Reconnaissance
17. NAVMC 3500.87 Infantry Training & Readiness Manual

SCT-CBTS-5403: Prepare for a Nuclear Attack

SUPPORTED MET(S): 2, 3, 4

EVALUATION-CODED: NO **SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL:** 12 months

DESCRIPTION: The active measures a unit takes to protect it and harden equipment against a nuclear attack and to alert higher, adjacent, subordinate and supporting units that a nuclear attack has occurred and the subsequent actions taken to monitor and mitigate its effect.

CONDITION: Platoon members observe a brilliant flash of light and a mushroom shaped cloud, or the platoon is alerted to a nuclear attack. This task is performed in MOPP 4.

STANDARD: The platoon takes immediate actions to minimize the initial effects of a nuclear detonation within its area of operations and then continues its mission.

EVENT COMPONENTS:
1. The platoon prepares for a nuclear attack.
2. The platoon commander instructs all personnel to prepare for a nuclear blast.
3. Vehicles are positioned so that the front of the vehicles are toward the expected direction of the blast.
4. Remove and stow daysight and nightsights in vehicles.
5. Make sure the vehicles are dug in.
6. Place one or more layers of sandbags on top of each vehicle (offers additional protection from gamma radiation).
7. Wet down sandbags (enhances neutron radiation shielding and protects sandbags from thermal damage).
8. Disconnect and stow all radios and antennas (one radio is left on in the

offense).
9. Stow all water and rations inside the vehicle.
10. Tie down all loose equipment inside the vehicles.
11. Marines position themselves as low as possible within the fighting positions.
12. Marines wear helmets with chin strap secured and brace for the blast.
13. The platoon commander inspects to ensure that the platoon is prepared for nuclear attack.
14. Vehicles are ready, equipment is secured, and Marines are prepared.

REFERENCES:
1. FM 3-100 NBC Operations
2. FM 3-20.98 Reconnaissance Platoon
3. FM 3-90.1 Tank and Mechanized Infantry Company Team
4. FM 3-90.2 Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force
5. MCRP 3-37.1A NBC Vulnerability Analysis/Chemical Hazard Assessment Guide
6. MCRP 3-37.2B Nuclear Contamination Avoidance
7. MCRP 3-37A NBC Field Handbook
8. MCRP 3-37B Field Behavior of NBC Agents
9. MCWP 3-12 Marine Corps Tank Employment
10. MCWP 3-37 MAGTF NBC Defense Operations
11. MCWP 3-37.1 Chemical Operations Principles and Fundamentals
12. MCWP 3-37.2 NBC Protection
13. MCWP 3-37.3 NBC Decontamination
14. MCWP 3-37.4 NBC Reconnaissance
15. NAVMC 3500.87 Infantry Training & Readiness Manual

SCT-CBTS-5404: React to a Nuclear Attack

SUPPORTED MET(S): 2, 3, 4

EVALUATION-CODED: NO **SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL:** 12 months

DESCRIPTION: The active procedures that a unit executes to alert higher, adjacent, subordinate and supporting units that a nuclear attack has occurred and the subsequent actions taken to monitor and mitigate its effect.

CONDITION: The Scout platoon is conducting tactical operations as part of a battalion task force. Platoon members observe a brilliant flash of light and mushroom cloud from a nuclear explosion. The platoon has taken actions to prepare for the explosion, but has sustained some casualties from the blast. Some iterations of this task are conducted during limited visibility conditions. Some iterations of this task are performed in MOPP 4.

STANDARD: The platoon takes immediate protective actions, reports the attack, and treats casualties. MOPP level specified by the task force commander is reached and continuous radiological monitoring is initiated in accordance with standard operating procedures, the order, and commander's guidance.

EVENT COMPONENTS:
1. Take immediate protective actions.
2. If mounted, close vehicle doors.
3. If time permits, position the vehicle behind a protective terrain feature,

and turn off the power until the effects of the blast have passed.
4. Dismounted crewmen drop to the ground and cover exposed skin until blast effects have passed.
5. Implement SOPs and accomplish related actions.
6. Reestablish communications.
7. Prepare and forward an NBC-1 report.
8. Implement continuous monitoring.
9. Submit a SITREP to the task force commander/S-3.
10. Reorganize the platoon.
11. Evacuate casualties and fatalities.
12. Redistribute personnel as needed.
13. Conduct essential maintenance.
14. Continue the mission.

PREREQUISITE EVENTS:
SCT-CBTS-5403

REFERENCES:
1. FM 3-100 NBC Operations
2. FM 3-20.98 Reconnaissance Platoon
3. FM 3-90.1 Tank and Mechanized Infantry Company Team
4. FM 3-90.2 Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force
5. MCRP 3-37.1A NBC Vulnerability Analysis/Chemical Hazard Assessment Guide
6. MCRP 3-37.2B Nuclear Contamination Avoidance
7. MCRP 3-37A NBC Field Handbook
8. MCRP 3-37B Field Behavior of NBC Agents
9. MCWP 3-12 Marine Corps Tank Employment
10. MCWP 3-37 MAGTF NBC Defense Operations
11. MCWP 3-37.2 NBC Protection
12. MCWP 3-37.3 NBC Decontamination
13. MCWP 3-37.4 NBC Reconnaissance
14. NAVMC 3500.87 Infantry Training & Readiness Manual

SCT-CBTS-5405: Conduct Operational Decontamination

SUPPORTED MET(S): 4
EVALUATION-CODED: NO **SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL:** 12 months

DESCRIPTION: A decontamination operation consists of two techniques, the mission-oriented protective posture (MOPP) gear exchange and the vehicle/equipment wash-down. Decontamination is carried out by an individual and/or a unit, restricted to specific parts of operationally essential equipment, material and/or working areas, in order to minimize contact and transfer hazards and to sustain operations. This may include decontamination of the individual beyond the scope of immediate decontamination, as well as decontamination of mission-essential spares and limited terrain decontamination.

CONDITION: The Scout platoon is conducting tactical operations as part of a battalion task force and is contaminated. The platoon is directed to conduct an operational decontamination. Decontaminants and new overgarments are available and a decontamination site is selected. This task is performed in MOPP 4.

STANDARD: The platoon completes operational decontamination within 1 hour from start of decontamination. The platoon decontaminates without sustaining additional casualties to personnel or damage to equipment and without spreading contamination. The platoon maintains situational awareness by monitoring digital communications displays and FM communications.

EVENT COMPONENTS:

1. Platoon occupies the decontamination site.
2. Form a coil upwind of the actual decontamination location.
3. Locate in a forward position, so that vehicles can move to and from the decontamination site in a minimum amount of time.
4. Establish all around security.
5. Determine order in which vehicles are to be decontaminated.
6. Platoon performs MOPP gear exchange.
7. Decontaminate gear.
8. Remove old overgarments and put on new overgarments.
9. Secure gear.
10. Move to the decontamination location.
11. Close all vehicle hatches.
12. Move through decontamination site and wash vehicles and equipment for two to three minutes with hot soapy water.
13. Return to the coil/defensive position immediately after decontamination.
14. Decontaminate individuals to reading level consistent with surrounding area.
15. Monitor decontaminated personnel with AN/PDR 27 for level of contamination decontaminate if required.
16. Report decontamination status to battalion commander/S-3, using digital communications or FM communications.

PREREQUISITE EVENTS:

SCT-CBTS-5402

REFERENCES:

1. FM 3-100 NBC Operations
2. FM 3-20.98 Reconnaissance Platoon
3. FM 3-3 Chemical and Biological Contamination Avoidance
4. FM 3-90.1 Tank and Mechanized Infantry Company Team
5. FM 3-90.2 Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force
6. MCRP 3-37.1A NBC Vulnerability Analysis/Chemical Hazard Assessment Guide
7. MCRP 3-37.2A Chemical and Biological Contamination Avoidance
8. MCRP 3-37.2B Nuclear Contamination Avoidance
9. MCRP 3-37A NBC Field Handbook
10. MCRP 3-37B Field Behavior of NBC Agents
11. MCRP 4-11.1A Treatment of Chemical Agent Casualties and Conventional Military Chemical Agents
12. MCRP 4-11.1C Treatment of Biological Warfare Agent Casualties
13. MCWP 3-12 Marine Corps Tank Employment
14. MCWP 3-37 MAGTF NBC Defense Operations
15. MCWP 3-37.1 Chemical Operations Principles and Fundamentals
16. MCWP 3-37.2 NBC Protection
17. MCWP 3-37.3 NBC Decontamination
18. MCWP 3-37.4 NBC Reconnaissance
19. NAVMC 3500.87 Infantry Training & Readiness Manual

SCT-CBTS-5406: React to Enemy Indirect Fire

SUPPORTED MET(S): 2, 3, 4

EVALUATION-CODED: NO **SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL:** 12 months

DESCRIPTION: The measures and steps taken by a unit to nullify or reduce the effectiveness of enemy indirect fires on combat power. It is an action taken to conserve the fighting potential of a force, which is an element of force protection.

CONDITION: The Scout platoon is conducting operations independently or as part of a higher headquarters and must react immediately to an indirect fire attack. All necessary unit personnel and equipment are available. The unit has communications with higher, adjacent, subordinate, and supporting elements. Some iterations of this task are conducted during limited visibility conditions. This task is performed in MOPP 4.

STANDARD: The platoon reacts to an indirect fire attack in accordance with standing operating procedures and appropriate field manual. If moving, the unit continues movement until at least 300 meters from the impact area. If stationary, the unit takes cover within 10 seconds or move out of the impact area within 3 minutes of the impact of the first round. The unit takes no more than 10 percent casualties. The unit reports attack to higher headquarters.

EVENT COMPONENTS:

1. Unit leaders gain and or maintain situational understanding using available communications equipment, maps, intelligence summaries, situation reports (SITREPs), and other available information sources.
2. The unit reacts to indirect fire while moving.
3. Any Marine observing indirect fire gives the alert ("incoming", "snowstorm", or appropriate code word).
4. Alert is pasted to all elements over the radio.
5. All personnel close doors of vehicles with in 5 seconds.
6. All elements continue direction of movement and movement, unless redirected by unit commander.
7. Platoon commander reports attack to higher headquarters within 2 minutes.
8. The unit reacts to indirect fire while stationary.
9. Any Marine observing indirect fire gives the alert ("incoming", "snowstorm", or appropriate code word).
10. Alert is passed to all elements over the radio.
11. All Marines are under cover within 10 seconds.
12. If directed Marines mount vehicles within 3 minutes and move out to a rally point.
13. All vehicles move to a designated rally point at distance and direction given by the unit commander.
14. Platoon commander reports attack to higher headquarters within 2 minutes.
15. Unit treats and evacuates casualties.
16. Casualties are less than 10 percent.
17. Marines or medical personnel perform immediate (buddy or combat lifesaver) first aid on all casualties within 5 minutes or when the tactical situation permits.
18. Unit commander monitors the situation and adjusts MOPP level as the situation dictates.

19. Ensure individuals remain at the directed MOPP level.
20. Unit consolidates and reorganizes as necessary.
21. Unit continues operations as directed.

REFERENCES:
1. FM 3-20.98 Reconnaissance Platoon
2. FM 3-90.1 Tank and Mechanized Infantry Company Team
3. FM 3-90.2 Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force
4. MCWP 3-12 Marine Corps Tank Employment
5. NAVMC 3500.87 Infantry Training & Readiness Manual

SCT-CBTS-5407: Defend Against an Enemy Air Attack

SUPPORTED MET(S): 2, 3, 4

EVALUATION-CODED: NO **SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL:** 12 months

DESCRIPTION: The passive defensive measures or steps taken by a unit to nullify or reduce the effectiveness of an enemy air attack.

CONDITION: The Scout platoon is conducting tactical operations as part of a battalion task force. Hostile aircraft are observed or the platoon receives a report that hostile aircraft are operating in the area. The platoon is directed to take passive air defense measures. Weapons control status is WEAPONS HOLD. Some iterations of this task are performed in MOPP 4.

STANDARD: The platoon uses attack avoidance and damage-limiting measures (including observation, dispersion, camouflage, and concealment) to avoid detection and/or engagement by hostile aircraft. The platoon maintains situational awareness by monitoring digital communications displays and FM communications. Time required to plan and implement is increased when operating in MOPP 4.

EVENT COMPONENTS:
1. The platoon uses attack avoidance measures and available resources (camouflage, cover, and concealment) to hide from hostile aircraft and limit vulnerability while stationary or moving.
2. Erect/install camouflage nets.
3. Use vegetation to camouflage vehicles.
4. Cover vehicle tracks.
5. Avoid silhouetting or positioning vehicles against contrasting terrain.
6. Cover shiny objects (windshield, optics) with mud, tape, burlap, sacks, or other materials.
7. Platoon uses appropriate damage-limiting measures if occupying a tactical position.
8. Disperse in an assembly area.
9. Occupy OPs (day and night) to provide early warning of approaching aircraft.
10. Establish and rehearse air attack alarms and procedures.
11. Take appropriate actions when hostile aircraft are identified and report to S-3 using digital communications or FM communications.
12. Platoon uses appropriate damage-limiting measures while moving.
13. Maintain prescribed march speed and interval during road marches.
14. Stagger vehicles as necessary to avoid creating a linear target.

15. Use terrain driving techniques to prevent detection.
16. Use air guards to provide all around observation, maintaining coverage until movement is completed.
17. Use appropriate air attack alarms, drills, and procedures, as necessary.
18. Take appropriate actions when hostile aircraft are identified and report to S-3 using FM communications.

REFERENCES:
1. FM 1-402 Aviator's Recognition Manual
2. FM 3-20.98 Reconnaissance Platoon
3. FM 3-90.1 Tank and Mechanized Infantry Company Team
4. FM 3-90.2 Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force
5. MCWP 3-12 Marine Corps Tank Employment
6. NAVMC 3500.87 Infantry Training & Readiness Manual

SCT-CBTS-5408: React to Enemy Air Attack

SUPPORTED MET(S): 2, 3, 4

EVALUATION-CODED: NO **SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL:** 12 months

DESCRIPTION: When the platoon observes high-performance aircraft, helicopters, or unmanned aerial vehicles (UAV) that could influence its mission, it initially takes passive air defense measures then active measures to engage enemy aircraft in order to destroy it or reduce the effectiveness of its attack.

CONDITION: The Scout platoon is conducting tactical operations as part of a battalion task force. Hostile aircraft are observed or the platoon receives a report that hostile aircraft are operating in the area. The platoon is directed to take passive air defense measures. Weapons control status is WEAPONS TIGHT. Some iterations of this task are performed in MOPP 4.

STANDARD: The platoon uses attack avoidance and damage-limiting measures (including observation, dispersion, camouflage, and concealment) to avoid detection and/or engagement by hostile aircraft. The platoon maintains situational awareness and monitors FM communications and/or digital communications. Time required to plan and implement is increased when operating in MOPP 4.

EVENT COMPONENTS:
1. Platoon uses attack avoidance measures and available resources (camouflage, cover, and concealment) to hide from hostile aircraft and limit vulnerability while stationary or moving.
2. Erect/install camouflage nets.
3. Use vegetation to camouflage vehicles.
4. Cover vehicle tracks.
5. Avoid silhouetting or positioning vehicles against contrasting terrain.
6. Cover windshields and windows with mud, tape, burlap, sacks, or other materials.
7. Platoon uses appropriate damage-limiting measures if occupying a tactical position.
8. Disperse in an assembly area.
9. Occupy OPs (day and night) to provide early warning of approaching

aircraft.
10. Establish and rehearse air attack alarms and procedures.
11. Take appropriate actions when hostile aircraft are identified and reports to S-3 using FM communications and/or digital communications.
12. Platoon members visually identify hostile aircraft and alert platoon with a FM communications and/or digital communications contact report e.g. "CONTACT, BANDITS, NORTH"; on order of the platoon commander, VCs and gunners prepare to engage aircraft with a high volume of machine gun fire; hovering helicopters maybe engaged with the TOW missile; if required to engage the aircraft, the platoon executes a react-to-air-attack drill and reports aircraft to the S-3.
13. Platoon uses appropriate damage-limiting measures while moving.
14. Maintain prescribed march speed and interval during road marches.
15. If identified by aircraft during the march, vehicles disperse, seek the nearest concealed position and stop.
16. Stagger vehicles as necessary to avoid creating a linear target.
17. Use terrain driving techniques to prevent detection.
18. The platoon uses folds of the earth, depressions, and covered and concealed routes, whenever possible.
19. Use air guards to provide all around observation, maintaining coverage until movement is completed.
20. Use appropriate air attack alarms, drills, and procedures, as necessary.
21. Take appropriate actions when hostile aircraft are identified and reports to S-3 using FM communications and/or digital communications.
22. Platoon members visually identify hostile aircraft and alert platoon with a FM communications and/or digital communications contact report e.g. "CONTACT, BANDITS, NORTH."; on order of the platoon commander, VCs and gunners prepare to engage aircraft with a high volume of machine gun fire; hovering helicopters maybe engaged with the TOW missile; if required to engage the aircraft, the platoon executes a react-to-air-attack drill and reports aircraft to the S-3.

PREREQUISITE EVENTS:
SCT-CBTS-5407

REFERENCES:
1. FM 1-402 Aviator's Recognition Manual
2. FM 3-20.98 Reconnaissance Platoon
3. FM 3-90.1 Tank and Mechanized Infantry Company Team
4. FM 3-90.2 Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force
5. MCWP 3-12 Marine Corps Tank Employment
6. NAVMC 3500.87 Infantry Training & Readiness Manual

SCT-CSS-5501: Conduct Resupply Operations

SUPPORTED MET(S): 2, 3, 4

EVALUATION-CODED: NO **SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL:** 12 months

DESCRIPTION: Resupply is the act of replenishing stocks of all classes of supply in order to maintain the combat power of the unit. The HQ section is responsible for and organized to process supply requests and to receive, issue, and temporarily store supplies. Distribution priorities for items in short supply are determined by the platoon commander based on recommendations

by the platoon sergeant and operational requirements of the unit.

CONDITION: The Scout platoon is directed to receive supplies or determines that resupply operations are necessary while conducting tactical operations as part of a battalion task force. The platoon receives an OPORD/FRAGO and has a unit SOP detailing all required communications report formats. Enemy contact is not expected. Some iterations of this task are performed in limited visibility. Some iterations of this task are performed in MOPP 4.

STANDARD: The platoon successfully completes resupply operations to replenish its basic load of critical supplies and maintains security at a level consistent with METT-TC factors. The platoon maintains situational awareness by monitoring digital communications displays and FM communications. Time required to plan and implement is increased when operating in MOPP 4.

EVENT COMPONENTS:

1. Platoon sergeant monitors supply and reports status as required by SOP.
2. Status reports cover Class I (rations), Class II (supplies and equipment), Class III (POL), class IV (construction materials), Class V (ammunition), Class VI (personal demand items), Class VII (major end items), Class VIII (medical supplies focusing on critical times such as first aid dressings, refills for first aid kits, and combat lifesaver bags), and Class IX (repair parts).
3. The platoon should cross-level supplies before submitting resupply reports/requests.
4. Compile status reports from all VCs and sends consolidated status reports to the Platoon Sergeant and/or Platoon Commander.
5. Platoon reports personnel status, requests replacements using proper formats, and processes reassignments/replacements as required.
6. Report personnel strength and losses to the platoon commander/platoon sergeant.
7. Compile vehicle reports and sends consolidated reports to S-3/S-4 per SOP.
8. Reassign remaining personnel to fill key positions and man critical weapons.
9. Assign replacements using same criteria as above.
10. Platoon reports vehicle, equipment, fuel, and ammunition status and requests resupply or other support as necessary.
11. Report vehicle and equipment status.
12. Report maintenance, recovery and evacuation support requirements.
13. Compile vehicle reports/requests and submit consolidated reports/requests to S-3/S-4.
14. Platoon sergeant coordinates LOGPAC support/activities with supply trains NCOIC.
15. Verify platoon's personnel, vehicle, equipment fuel and ammunition status.
16. Submit specific resupply requests.
17. Coordinate for linkup at designated contact point if tailgate resupply is appropriate.
18. Coordinate LOGPAC location and other resupply details if service station resupply is appropriate.
19. Platoon performs tailgate resupply.
20. Select accessible routes affording adequate cover and concealment into and out of vehicle positions.
21. Establish and maintain local security to provide early warning of enemy activity, if necessary.

22. Meet LOGPAC at designated linkup point and lead it to the first vehicle to be resupplied.
23. Replenish basic load critical supplies as available.
24. Based on supply availability and the unit's logistical capability, the LOGPAC should carry all requested resupply items and maintenance support assets.
25. Maintain control over the LOGPAC and guides it to the next location when resupply of each vehicle is completed.
26. Monitor progress of resupply operations.
27. Lead the LOGPAC to the linkup point or another point as designated by the S-4 chief when all vehicles have completed resupply.
28. Coordinate with the S-4 chief for additional requirements.
29. Keep S-3/S-4 informed of the status of resupply operations at all times, using digital communications or FM communications.
30. The tailgate method is the slowest resupply technique; however, it is useful during defensive and security missions because stealth and security can be more easily maintained (depending on METT-TC factors) than with the service station method.
31. Platoon performs service station resupply.
32. Move to the resupply location.
33. Establish local security for LOGPAC activities.
34. Determine which section will be resupplied first and when each section will move if platoon does not move together.
35. Determine order of movement to the resupply location if platoon moves together.
36. Rotate to different supply points as directed to replenish basic load of supplies (as available).
37. Coordinate with the S-4 chief for additional requirements.
38. Keep S-3/S-4 informed of the status of resupply operations at all times, using digital communications or FM communications.
39. Platoon performs refuel on the move (ROM).
40. Move to the ROM site.
41. Refuel IAW OPORD/FRAGO (OPORD/FRAGO should designate location, time and amount of fuel per vehicle).
42. Maintain local security and dispersion.
43. Keep the S-3/S-4 informed of the status of resupply operations at all times, using digital communications or FM communications.

RELATED EVENTS:

0352-MOBL-2401 0352-EMPL-2301

REFERENCES:

1. FM 3-20.98 Reconnaissance Platoon
2. FM 3-90.1 Tank and Mechanized Infantry Company Team
3. FM 3-90.2 Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force
4. MCWP 3-12 Marine Corps Tank Employment
5. MCWP 4-1 Logistics Operations
6. MCWP 4-11 Combat Service Support Operations
7. MCWP 4-11.4 Maintenance Operations
8. NAVMC 3500.87 Infantry Training & Readiness Manual

SCT-CSS-5502: Prepare and Evacuate Casualties

SUPPORTED MET(S): 4

EVALUATION-CODED: NO **SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL:** 12 months

DESCRIPTION: It is the vehicle commander's responsibility to make sure that wounded in action (WIA) crewmen receive first aid and that the platoon commander or platoon sergeant is notified of all casualties. The use of crewmen who are trained as combat lifesavers is absolutely critical. As a minimum, one crew member of each squad should be a trained combat lifesaver.

CONDITION: The Scout platoon is conducting continuous operations as part of a battalion task force and sustains casualties during combat. Some iterations of this task are performed in limited visibility. Some iterations of this task are performed in MOPP 4.

STANDARD: The platoon treats and evacuates casualties in accordance with (IAW) standard operating procedures (SOP), the order, and higher commander's guidance. The platoon administers the proper lifesaving measures to stabilize casualties and evacuates casualties to the higher headquarters casualty collection point.

EVENT COMPONENTS:
1. The platoon identifies casualties requiring evacuation.
2. Crewmen administer combat lifesaving techniques.
3. The platoon commander/platoon sergeant report casualties to the S-3/S-4.
4. The platoon assists in the evacuation of casualties.
5. Prepare casualties for evacuation by air or ground transportation to aid station or clearing station.
6. Request helicopter or ground evacuation of casualties.
7. Select and mark the best available covered and concealed landing zone (air evac only).
8. Extract casualties from vehicles or dangerous situation without causing further injury.
9. Move casualties by best available means to LZ or ground pickup point and continue treatment.
10. Assist the flight or ambulance crew with casualty loading.
11. Retain classified documents (CEOI, maps, orders, overlays) previously controlled by casualty.
12. Maintain security of landing site or pickup point including coordinating any suppressive fires required.
13. Platoon evacuates contaminated casualties.
14. Decontamination is initiated prior to loading.
15. If decontamination is impossible, the hazards en route are minimized by covering casualties.
16. Platoon evacuates EPW casualties by the same standard as U.S. casualties.
17. Security of EPWs is continuously maintained.

REFERENCES:
1. FM 3-20.98 Reconnaissance Platoon
2. FM 3-90.1 Tank and Mechanized Infantry Company Team
3. FM 3-90.2 Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force
4. FM 4-02.4 Medical Platoon Leader's Handbook Tactics, Techniques, and Procedures

5. FM 4-02.7 Health Service Support in a Nuclear, Biological, and Chemical Environment Tactics, Techniques, and Procedures
6. MCRP 3-02G First Aid
7. MCRP 4-11.1A Treatment of Chemical Agent Casualties and Conventional Military Chemical Agents
8. MCRP 4-11.1C Treatment of Biological Warfare Agent Casualties
9. MCWP 3-12 Marine Corps Tank Employment
10. NAVMC 3500.87 Infantry Training & Readiness Manual

SCT-CSS-5503: Process Enemy Prisoners of War

SUPPORTED MET(S): 4

EVALUATION-CODED: NO **SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL:** 12 months

DESCRIPTION: If enemy prisoners want to surrender, it is the Scout platoon's responsibility to take them into custody and control them until they can be evacuated. EPWs are excellent sources of combat intelligence; however, this information will be of tactical value only if the prisoners are processed and evacuated to the rear quickly. The unit SOP or company/team OPORD should designate specific EPW handling procedures, such as collection points, responsibilities for safeguarding prisoners, and procedures for movement of prisoners.

CONDITION: The Scout platoon is conducting tactical operations as part of a battalion task force that is in contact with a moving or stationary enemy. During the conduct of operations enemy soldiers are captured. The platoon is responsible for processing EPWs in accordance with (IAW) the commander's intent, OPORD, and unit standard operating procedure (SOP). The platoon is provided guidance on the rules of engagement (ROE) and rules of interaction (ROI). Coalition forces and noncombatants may be present in the operational environment. Some iterations of this task are performed in limited visibility. Some iterations of this task are performed in MOPP 4.

STANDARD: The platoon processes enemy prisoners of war (EPWs) in accordance with the "five-S's and T", at a minimum, EPWs are not allowed to disrupt or halt the unit's mission and are treated humanely according their rights under international law.

EVENT COMPONENTS:
1. The platoon commander establishes an EPW holding area.
2. The platoon commander/platoon sergeant reports the capture of EPWs to the S-3/S-4.
3. Report the number of personnel captured, date and time of capture, place of capture by grid coordinates, and circumstances of capture.
4. The platoon searches each prisoner.
5. Remove all weapons and documents and process captured materials and equipment.
6. Examine ID cards, protective masks, and other protective equipment, and return them to the EPWs.
7. Give each prisoner from whom personal property is taken a written receipt for the property.
8. The platoon segregates EPWs within the holding area.
9. Segregate EPWs by nationality, sex, rank (field grade officers, company

grade officers, NCOs, enlisted, civilians), deserters, and ideology.
10. Turn wounded EPWs over to medical personnel for evacuation through medical channels.
11. The platoon silences prisoners.
12. Prevent EPW leaders from giving orders.
13. Prevent EPWs from planning escape.
14. Record everything EPWs say, if possible.
15. Do not talk in front of EPWs except to issue orders and maintain discipline.
16. The platoon speeds the evacuation of prisoners to the company or battalion EPW collection point or holding area, as given in the OPORD or SOP.
17. The platoon rapidly moves the EPWs to the rear.
18. The platoon commander requests special instructions for EPW disposition from the S-3.
19. The platoon safeguards the EPWs.
20. Remove EPWs from the dangers of the battlefield.
21. Prevent abuse to the EPWs.
22. Do not allow civilians to give the EPWs food or water.
23. Treat EPWs humanely and IAW the law of war.
24. The platoon continues its mission.
25. Before evacuating the EPW, attach a tag to him listing all pertinent information and procedures.

REFERENCES:
1. FM 3-20.98 Reconnaissance Platoon
2. FM 3-90.1 Tank and Mechanized Infantry Company Team
3. FM 3-90.2 Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force
4. MCRP 4-11.8C Enemy Prisoners of War and Civilian Internees
5. MCRP 5-12.1A The Law of Land Warfare
6. MCWP 3-12 Marine Corps Tank Employment
7. NAVMC 3500.87 Infantry Training & Readiness Manual

SCT-OTH-5701: Conduct Convoy Escort

SUPPORTED MET(S): 4

EVALUATION-CODED: NO **SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL:** 12 months

DESCRIPTION: Convoy security missions can be performed by the Scout platoon to provide protection for a specific convoy. The size of the unit performing the escort is dependent on a number of factors, including the size of the convoy, the terrain, and the length of the route.

CONDITION: The Scout platoon receives an order to conduct a convoy escort mission either independently or as part of a larger unit's convoy security mission. The order specifies the commander's intent, convoy route and composition, and graphic control measures that include the start point (SP), release point (RP), and critical points along the route. Coalition partners, civilians, government agencies, nongovernmental organizations, and the international media may be present in the area. Rules of engagement/rules of interaction (ROE/ROI) have been published. Threat contact is possible. Additional maneuver, combat support (CS), and combat service support (CSS) assets may be available. Some iterations of this task are performed in limited visibility. Some iterations of this task are performed in MOPP 4.

STANDARD: The platoon positions its vehicles as directed and provides security to the front, flanks, and/or rear of the convoy. The platoon prevents the threat from impeding, harassing, seizing, or destroying the convoy. During halts, the platoon maintains local security. The platoon maintains communications with higher headquarters. No high-value assets are lost during the movement and all operations adhere to the ROE/ROI without injury to friendly civilians. No friendly unit suffers casualties or equipment damage as a result of fratricide.

EVENT COMPONENTS:

1. Platoon commander receives and analyzes OPORDER/FRAGO.
2. Platoon commander coordinates to determine the composition and disposition of the escorted unit.
3. Platoon commander issues order to platoon.
4. Platoon conducts linkup with the escorted element.
5. Use far- and near-recognition signals as appropriate.
6. Occupy covered and concealed position at the linkup site.
7. Conducts coordination to verify platoon tasks, escorted element actions, and other details of escort mission.
8. Brief escorted element leaders as necessary on platoon capabilities and maneuver/fire plans.
9. Platoon conducts the escort mission.
10. Based on METT-TC, use most advantageous formation and movement technique and, as applicable, covered and concealed routes.
11. Conduct tactical movement to platoon's position in the convoy and begins movement as part of the convoy (as directed in OPORD/fragmentary order [FRAGO]).
12. Based on formation selected and guidance from the OPORD, maintains proper weapons orientation to ensure 360-degree or flank security.
13. Track reports from intelligence, surveillance, and reconnaissance (ISR) assets and/or air elements of potential contacts on or near route.
14. Platoon conducts actions at halts as directed by the escorted element commander, order, and/or based on METT-TC factors.
15. Platoon vehicles take up protective positions forward, to the rear, and to the flanks (up to 100 meters beyond the escorted vehicles, as applicable) and orient their weapon systems outward.
16. Platoon remains at readiness condition (REDCON)-1 and establishes dismounted local security.
17. Platoon commander reports "SET".
18. When the order to move out is given and the escorted vehicles have reestablished the column, platoon vehicles rejoin the column, leaving local security dismounted.
19. Once all elements are in column, local security personnel mount and the escorted element resumes movement.
20. Platoon executes actions on contact in response to a threat ambush.
21. React to the ambush IAW METT-TC.
22. Platoon actions toward the threat.
23. Vehicles seek covered positions between the escorted element and the threat and suppress the threat with the highest possible volume of fire.
24. Platoon commander sends contact report to higher headquarters.
25. Escorted element commander retains control over the convoy and maintains radio contact with the platoon while moving the escorted element out of the kill zone as rapidly as possible.
26. As necessary, damaged or disabled vehicles are abandoned or pushed off the route.

27. Platoon commander sends spot report (SPOTREP) to escorted element commander.
28. If necessary, the platoon commander requests reinforcement and calls for and directs indirect fire and air support if they are available.
29. Once the escorted element is clear of the kill zone, the platoon commander chooses one of the following COAs based on the capabilities of the escort force and the strength of the threat: platoon continues to suppress the threat while combat reaction forces move to support, platoon assaults the threat, or platoon breaks contact and moves out of the kill zone.
30. Keep escorted element commander informed at all times.
31. Platoon executes actions at an obstacle.
32. Escorted element commander directs a short halt.
33. Platoon vehicles take up protective positions to the flanks and orient their weapon systems outward while escorted vehicles remain on the road.
34. Platoon establishes local dismounted security and overwatch of the obstacle.
35. Escorted element commander sends a SPOTREP to higher headquarters and requests support by QRFs, engineer assets (if they are not already part of the convoy), and aerial reconnaissance assets; and alerts artillery units to be prepared to provide fire support.
36. Platoon forms a reconnaissance team and begins reconnaissance for a bypass while maintaining 360-degree security of the escorted element.
37. Simultaneously, an additional reconnaissance team (to include engineers if available) moves forward to conduct reconnaissance of the obstacle.
38. Once reconnaissance is complete, the platoon commander, in conjunction with the escorted element commander, determines which of the following COAs to execute: bypass the obstacle, breach the obstacle with assets on hand, or breach the obstacle with reinforcing assets.
39. Platoon executes selected COA.
40. Platoon completes escort activities.
41. Move through the RP.
42. Move to designated position as directed by the commander or IAW order.
43. Report completion of escort mission to higher headquarters.

PREREQUISITE EVENTS:
SCT-TAC-5809 SCT-TAC-5802

RELATED EVENTS:
0302-MOUT-1106

REFERENCES:
1. FM 3-20.98 Reconnaissance Platoon
2. FM 3-90.1 Tank and Mechanized Infantry Company Team
3. FM 3-90.2 Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force
4. MCWP 3-12 Marine Corps Tank Employment
5. NAVMC 3500.87 Infantry Training & Readiness Manual

SCT-OTH-5702: Support Roadblock/Checkpoint Operations

SUPPORTED MET(S): 4

EVALUATION-CODED: NO **SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL:** 12 months

DESCRIPTION: Establishment of checkpoints is a high-frequency task for

subordinate elements involved in stability operations. Roadblocks/checkpoints can be either deliberate or hasty.

CONDITION: The Scout platoon receives an order to establish and operate a roadblock/checkpoint. The order specifies search and seizure procedures, and the location, orientation, purpose, and construction timelines for checkpoints. Sufficient time and materials are available for checkpoint construction. Additional maneuver, combat support (CS), and combat service support (CSS) assets may be available. Contact is possible. Some iterations of this task are performed in MOPP 4.

STANDARD: The roadblock/checkpoint is established at the location and time specified in the order. It conducts search and seizure procedures, and prevents movement of personnel and equipment whose intent and/or presence conflict with objectives and/or international agreements in accordance with (IAW) the order and/or unit standard operating procedures (SOP). All operations adhere to the rules of engagement/rules of interaction (ROE/ROI) without injury to friendly military forces and civilians.

EVENT COMPONENTS:

1. Platoon commander receives and analyzes OPORDER/FRAGO.
2. Determine type and purpose of the roadblock/checkpoint.
3. Determine the most advantageous location for the roadblock/checkpoint.
4. Select a location that offers adequate cover and concealment.
5. Ensure the location cannot be seen more than a short distance away to prevent drivers from avoiding it.
6. Ensure the location will not present such a sudden surprise that drivers cannot stop safely.
7. Ensure the location supports accomplishment of the mission, enhances force protection, and adheres to the provisions of the ROE/ROI.
8. Select locations for the roadblock(s) to channel traffic into the checkpoint (if applicable).
9. Ensure fields of fire and observation cover the roadblock/checkpoint location.
10. Task organize the platoon based on METT-TC to include the following elements: headquarters element, security force element, reaction force, search team(s), and sentry team(s).
11. Develop contingency plans that address possible and/or expected situations during operation of the roadblock/checkpoint.
12. Platoon commander issues order to platoon.
13. Platoon prepares for operations.
14. Conduct reconnaissance.
15. Coordinate for the following personnel as required: civil affairs officer, liaison officer, civilian police or other local authority, Interpreter/linguist, and trained female searcher(s).
16. Direct rehearsals, as time permits, focusing on the following: use of lethal force to stop charging vehicles or fleeing pedestrians, appropriate methods for vehicle and personnel searches, appropriate methods for questioning personnel, and apprehension and detention of civilian personnel.
17. Prior to departure, informs all units in area, either US or international, of time and location for departure, composition, and disposition of forces at roadblock/checkpoint.
18. Platoon establishes and maintains security for the roadblock/checkpoint.
19. Position an element in concealed location an appropriate distance from the

roadblock/checkpoint to prevent escape of any vehicle or person attempting to turn back upon sighting the roadblock/checkpoint.

20. Establish rest area for platoon personnel near the search area so platoon personnel can be assembled quickly as a reaction force.
21. Develop measures for protecting platoon searchers from possible explosives.
22. If possible, dig the vehicle search area into the ground to deflect blasts upward or build earthen barriers for protection.
23. Ensure fields of fire of the close-in security element are not masked.
24. Use sentries and patrols to prevent possible ambushes.
25. Harden the roadblock/checkpoint as time and situation permit.
26. Establish OPs as required to maintain observation of areas that could influence the roadblock/checkpoint.
27. Platoon constructs the roadblock/checkpoint.
28. Emplace parallel obstacles across the road.
29. Base distance between the obstacles on the amount of traffic to be held in the search area.
30. Place a barrier pole between obstacles to control movement from the search area to the exit obstacle.
31. Employ warning signs (printed in the native language and English) on all perimeter barriers, and wires.
32. Establish overwatch positions.
33. Establish parking and/or holding areas outside the perimeter for personnel and vehicles waiting to enter the checkpoint.
34. Establish vehicle search areas.
35. Establish separate search areas for males and females.
36. Establish detention areas inside the perimeter where personnel can be held and vehicles and equipment stored.
37. Prepare drop holes to provide protection for searchers in the event of problems during the search and to prevent searchers from masking security element fires.
38. Ensure adequate lighting for night operations.
39. Ensure translator is present at the roadblock/checkpoint.
40. Report completion of roadblock/checkpoint to higher headquarters.
41. Platoon conducts roadblock/checkpoint operations.
42. Perform actions to accomplish any or all of these purposes: deter, block, and/or control movement through roadblock/checkpoint along a specified route and/or into the designated area of operations (AO); demonstrate presence of forces; prevent smuggling of contraband; and enforce peace agreement terms.
43. Check and/or inspect military convoys.
44. Confirm authorization to use the route.
45. Ensure cargo manifest and related documents match actual load.
46. Check and/or inspect civilian vehicles for authorization to use the route.
47. Search military and/or civilian vehicles for specified personnel.
48. Search vehicles and personnel for specified items.
49. Detain personnel and seizes vehicles, equipment, and/or items in holding area as necessary.
50. Question detained personnel to obtain information of immediate importance.
51. Evacuate and/or dispose of detained personnel and/or seized vehicles, equipment, and other items as directed.
52. Employ active and passive protective measures, and improve roadblock/checkpoint as time and situation permit.
53. Platoon reacts to hostile elements and/or actions IAW order and/or unit SOP and ROE/ROI.

54. Control fleeing civilians using minimal force required.
55. Use necessary force to disarm evading military or paramilitary forces.
56. Attack to disable all vehicles attempting to flee or breach the roadblock/checkpoint.
57. Destroy vehicles that return or initiate fires.
58. Destroy vehicles that persist in attempting to flee or breach the roadblock/checkpoint.
59. Administer first aid to causalities.
60. Send situation report (SITREP) to higher headquarters.

REFERENCES:
1. FM 3-20.98 Reconnaissance Platoon
2. FM 3-90.1 Tank and Mechanized Infantry Company Team
3. FM 3-90.2 Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force
4. MCWP 3-12 Marine Corps Tank Employment
5. NAVMC 3500.87 Infantry Training & Readiness Manual

SCT-TAC-5801: Occupy an Assembly Area

SUPPORTED MET(S): 4

EVALUATION-CODED: NO **SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL:** 12 months

DESCRIPTION: An assembly area is a site where a unit regroups or prepares for future operations. Normally, a scout platoon occupies an assembly area as part of its parent unit, but it may occupy one independently. Once in the assembly area, the platoon prepares and issues orders, conducts resupply operations, repairs and maintains vehicles and equipment, and feeds and rests its Marines.

CONDITION: The Scout platoon is conducting tactical operations as part of a battalion task force receives an OPORD to occupy an assembly area. The OPORD specifies required assembly area activities, REDCON levels, and priorities of work. Time is available to complete assembly area procedures. Enemy contact is not expected. Some iterations of this task are performed in limited visibility. Some iterations of this task are performed in MOPP 4.

STANDARD: The platoon enters the assembly area without stopping or blocking the route of march, establishes local security, and maintains appropriate REDCON levels. The platoon performs all specified assembly area procedures and executes priorities of work as outlined in the OPORD. The platoon maintains situational awareness by monitoring FM communications and/or digital communications. Time required to plan and implement is increased when operating in MOPP 4.

EVENT COMPONENTS:
1. Platoon commander plans occupation of the assembly area.
2. Conduct a map reconnaissance and assign tentative vehicle locations.
3. Develop a tentative plan for defense of the assembly area.
4. Identify and briefs the quartering party on the tentative occupation plan.
5. Platoon performs quartering party duties.
6. Conduct a reconnaissance of the assembly area.
7. Check concealment from air and ground observation.
8. Check cover from direct fire.

9. Check for good drainage on the surface that supports vehicles.
10. Check for good exits, entrances, and adequate internal roads or trails.
11. Check for space for dispersion of vehicles, personnel, and equipment.
12. Check a suitable landing site nearby for a helicopter (if necessary).
13. Mark or remove obstacles, mines, or booby traps.
14. Mark entrances and exits of assembly area.
15. Report status to platoon commander or to leader of quartering party.
16. Move to RP to perform guide duties.
17. Guide vehicles to designated areas.
18. Platoon occupies the assembly area.
19. Meet guides and move to designated vehicle locations.
20. Move into assembly area without slowing or halting on route of march.
21. Establish communications within the platoon and higher headquarters.
22. Platoon establishes security.
23. Designate vehicle positions on the perimeter of the assembly area that permit observation and fires on all mounted/dismounted avenues of approach into the assembly area.
24. Emplace mines and early warning devices for protection.
25. Establish dismounted OPs/LPs outside the perimeter of the assembly area.
26. Conduct mounted/dismounted security patrols at random intervals in and around the assembly area.
27. Platoon prepares to depart the assembly area.
28. All platoon personnel are at REDCON 1 at the time specified in the operation order.
29. Secure and properly stows tools, equipment, and personal effects.
30. Communicate with all platoon vehicles and higher headquarters.
31. Vehicle commanders confirm that all personnel and equipment are mounted and ready to move, consistent with the established readiness condition.
32. Open the platoon net correctly and requires proper authentication.
33. Perform short count to start vehicles (if permitted by operation order or SOP).
34. Enter the higher headquarters net correctly and uses proper authentication.
35. Provide higher headquarters with a status of operational/ non-operational vehicles.
36. Recover any mines or early warning devices emplaced.
37. Platoon departs the assembly area.
38. Take steps to reduce signs of the unit's presence in the area prior to departure.
39. Vehicles depart the area without bunching up along designated route.

REFERENCES:

1. FM 3-20.98 Reconnaissance Platoon
2. FM 3-90.1 Tank and Mechanized Infantry Company Team
3. FM 3-90.2 Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force
4. MCO 3500.27B W/ERRATUM Operational Risk Management
5. MCWP 3-12 Marine Corps Tank Employment
6. NAVMC 3500.87 Infantry Training & Readiness Manual

SCT-TAC-5802: Conduct Tactical Movement

SUPPORTED MET(S): 2, 4

EVALUATION-CODED: NO **SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL:** 12 months

DESCRIPTION: Moving tactically dictates that elements of a unit are organized to facilitate combat. Movement techniques are used to traverse terrain such as traveling, traveling overwatch, and bounding overwatch which is determined by the likelihood of enemy contact. Movement formations are the arrangement of troops and/or vehicles for a specific purpose related to terrain and the likelihood of enemy contact. Formations include box, column, diamond, line, vee, wedge, echelon (right or left), coil, and herringbone.

CONDITION: The Scout platoon is conducting tactical operations as part of a battalion task force and receives an OPORD/FRAGO directing it to conduct tactical movement. The order includes graphic control measures for movement. It may or may not specify the route or axis of advance, the technique of movement, and/or the formation to be used. Enemy contact may or may not be expected during movement. Some iterations of this task are performed in limited visibility. Some iterations of this task are performed in MOPP 4.

STANDARD: The platoon moves on the route or axis of advance specified in the OPORD/FRAGO. The platoon uses formations and techniques of movement as specified in the order, the commander's guidance and/or unit SOP. The platoon adjusts the route/axis, formation and movement technique in response to the changing probability of enemy contact and changes in the tactical situation (METT-TC factors), as necessary. The platoon sustains no personnel or equipment losses due to friendly fire. The platoon maintains situational awareness by monitoring digital communications displays and FM communications. Time required to plan and implement is increased when operating in MOPP 4.

REFERENCES:
1. FM 3-20.98 Reconnaissance Platoon
2. FM 3-90.1 Tank and Mechanized Infantry Company Team
3. FM 3-90.2 Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force
4. MCWP 3-12 Marine Corps Tank Employment
5. NAVMC 3500.87 Infantry Training & Readiness Manual

SCT-TAC-5803: Conduct a Dismounted Patrol

SUPPORTED MET(S): 2, 4

EVALUATION-CODED: NO **SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL:** 12 months

DESCRIPTION: Dismounted patrols may be utilized to gather information or to conduct combat operations. Understanding when to employ dismounted scouts will facilitate the successful accomplishment of any of the five types of patrols reconnaissance, security, combat, presence, and tracking).

CONDITION: The Scout platoon receives an order to conduct a dismounted patrol, or the platoon commander as a result of his analysis of METT-TC, determines that the platoon must conduct a dismounted patrol in order to answer information requirements. Based on the commander's guidance the platoon commander determines the type of patrol; reconnaissance, security, combat, or tracking. Threat contact is possible. Additional maneuver, combat support (CS), and combat service support (CSS) assets may be available. Some iterations of this task are performed in MOPP 4.

STANDARD: The patrol departs at the specified time and accomplishes all assigned tasks in accordance with (IAW) the patrol order. It returns to the platoon position without loss of personnel, and reports reconnaissance information IAW the order and/or unit standard operating procedures (SOP). No friendly unit suffers casualties or equipment damage as a result of fratricide.

EVENT COMPONENTS:

1. Patrol leader receives and analyzes OPORDER/FRAGO.
2. Identify the focus of the patrol, tempo of reconnaissance, and engagement criteria and rules of engagement (ROE).
3. Coordinate with forward and/or adjacent units as required.
4. Coordinate for intelligence, surveillance, and reconnaissance (ISR) asset and/or close air support.
5. Coordinate for combat support.
6. Plan departure, accomplishment of essential tasks, and return to the platoon position.
7. Plan routes to and from the reconnaissance objective using maps, urban operations sketch, aerial photography, and any known intelligence.
8. Plan for expected actions on hostile contact.
9. Plan rally points.
10. Plan for special equipment requirements.
11. Plan organization of patrol to include reconnaissance elements and security elements IAW METT-TC.
12. Backbrief the platoon commander on the plan.
13. Patrol leader briefs patrol plan.
14. Review engagement criteria and ROE.
15. Employ modified patrol order format.
16. Patrol leader inspects patrol members.
17. Patrol leader directs rehearsals.
18. Patrol begins movement.
19. Depart from vehicles and/or friendly positions IAW the plan.
20. Conduct passage of lines, as required.
21. Conduct dismounted tactical movement, using appropriate formation and movement techniques, to and from the objective.
22. Designate rally points.
23. Implement patrol plan and route without deviation.
24. Conduct continuous surveillance and maintains 360-degree security during movement.
25. Maintain communications using code words and reporting at intervals, as specified in patrol plan.
26. Patrol occupies objective rally point (ORP).
27. Halt beyond sight, sound, and small-arms weapons range of the tentative ORP.
28. Patrol establishes security.
29. Patrol leader issues contingency plan.
30. Patrol leader, compass man, and one member from each team move to ORP to confirm its suitability.
31. Patrol leader positions the accompanying team members in the ORP.
32. Patrol leader conducts leader's reconnaissance of the objective.
33. Patrol leader designates personnel for the leader's reconnaissance and issues contingency plan.
34. Confirm the location of the objective.
35. Identify positions for patrol elements.
36. Adjust patrol plan as necessary.

37. Leader's reconnaissance returns to ORP.
38. Patrol leader disseminates information, issues orders and instructions, and allows subordinate leaders time to make any additional preparations.
39. Patrol conducts reconnaissance of the objective.
40. Designated security element maintains security of the ORP and on likely threat avenues into the objective area.
41. Reconnaissance elements moves to reconnaissance objective or surveillance point.
42. Establish observation posts (OP(s)) to conduct long-range or short-range observation of the objective.
43. Conduct reconnaissance of the objective using the fan, box, or converging routes method based on METT-TC.
44. Reconnaissance element collects information to answer specific information requirements (SIR) IAW operations order (OPORD).
45. Patrol leader reports information as required in OPORD and unit SOP.
46. As necessary, patrol executes actions on contact as specified in the OPORD.
47. Reconnaissance element returns to ORP.
48. Platoon reenters friendly lines.
49. Patrol conducts tactical movement to the reentry rally point (RRP) and establishes security.
50. Patrol leader communicates code word advising the friendly unit of the patrol's location and that it is ready to return; the friendly unit must acknowledge the message and confirm that guides are waiting before the platoon moves from the RRP.
51. If communication is not possible, patrol leader, radio/telephone operator (RTO), and two-man security element attempt to contact an OP using the challenge and password.
52. If the patrol leader cannot find an OP, he moves straight forward toward (and away from) the friendly lines with the RTO and security element to locate the coordinated reentry point.
53. After making contact with the friendly unit, the patrol leader issues a contingency plan and moves with the RTO and security element to the reentry point.
54. Patrol leader uses far- and near-recognition signals to establish contact with the guide.
55. Patrol leader signals patrol forward or returns and leads it to the reentry point.
56. Patrol counts and verifies each soldier as they pass through the reentry point.
57. Patrol leader completes patrol report.
58. Debrief patrol members and complies reconnaissance information.
59. Prepare patrol report.
60. Review patrol report with patrol members for accuracy and completeness.
61. Submit completed patrol report to the platoon commander.
62. Platoon commander submits completed patrol report to the commander.

RELATED EVENTS:
0302-PAT-1104

REFERENCES:
1. FM 3-20.98 Reconnaissance Platoon
2. FM 3-90.1 Tank and Mechanized Infantry Company Team
3. FM 3-90.2 Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force
4. MCWP 3-12 Marine Corps Tank Employment

5. NAVMC 3500.87 Infantry Training & Readiness Manual

SCT-TAC-5804: Assist a Linkup

SUPPORTED MET(S): 4

EVALUATION-CODED: NO **SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL:** 12 months
DESCRIPTION: Linkup operations are conducted to join two forces and may occur in a variety of circumstances. They are most often conducted: to join two forces regardless of where they are on the battlefield, to join an attacking force with a force inserted into the enemy's rear, to complete the encirclement of an enemy force, or to assist the breakout or come to the relief of an encircled force.

CONDITION: The Scout platoon is conducting tactical operations as part of a battalion task force and is ordered to assist the battalion in coordinating linkup with a stationary force. Contact points are given to the platoon commander as a grid coordinates or depicted on the platoon's operational graphics (digital and/or hard copy). Control measures and tentative indirect fire targets are determined by the battalion commander or platoon commander. Some iterations of this task are performed in limited visibility. Some iterations of this task are performed in MOPP 4.The platoon is operating as part of the battalion and the battalion has been ordered to linkup with a stationary force. The scout platoon has been ordered to assist the battalion by acting as the coordinating unit for the battalion. Platoon-size elements are operating in the area. Friendly and enemy units have indirect fire capability.

STANDARD: The platoon assists the battalion's linkup with the other unit at the time and place specified in the OPORD/FRAGO, and completes all necessary coordination. The platoon sustains no personnel or equipment losses due to friendly fire. The platoon maintains situational awareness and monitors FM communications and/or digital communications. Time required to plan and implement is increased when operating in MOPP 4.

EVENT COMPONENTS:
1. Platoon commander plans to assist linkup.
2. Plan for face to face meeting with stationary unit commander or designated representative, if possible.
3. Establish time and place for meeting.
4. Establish information to be exchanged during meeting.
5. Brief battalion commander on situation and receive approval for meeting and information exchange.
6. If face to face meeting not possible makes contact with stationary force via radio.
7. Understand command relationship between the forces performing the linkup.
8. Platoon commander meets/coordinates with stationary unit commander or representative.
9. Exchange information to include: enemy and friendly situations, schemes of maneuver, control measures, locations and types of obstacles, fire support plan, air defense control measures, recognition signals, and CEOI information.
10. Platoon commander establishes a linkup point with the stationary force commander or designated representative.

11. The platoon recons the route from its parent battalion location to designated linkup point.
12. Platoon commander ensures stationary force has occupied the linkup point before the time stated in the order.
13. Platoon commander ensures that correct recognition signals are used.
14. The platoon returns to its parent battalion and briefs the battalion commander/staff on the linkup.
15. Identify route to the linkup point and its physical characteristics.
16. Relay information exchanged with stationary force.
17. The platoon leads the battalion to the linkup point.
18. The platoon facilitates the linkup.
19. The battalion halts a safe distance from the linkup point in a covered and concealed position (linkup rally point), and establishes local security.
20. The battalion commander establishes communications with the stationary unit, if not under radio-listening silence.
21. The battalion commander issues final instructions and contingency plans to the platoon commander.
22. The platoon performs the initial linkup.
23. The platoon departs the battalion position.
24. The platoon maintains communications with the battalion.
25. The platoon commander verifies the linkup point and positions the security element in covered and concealed positions that overwatch the linkup point.
26. The platoon commander signals the stationary unit.
27. The platoon commander does not block the security element's fires while approaching the linkup point.
28. The platoon commander links up with the members from the stationary unit and exchanges oral authentication by the time stated in the order.
29. The platoon commander conducts final coordination with the stationary unit.
30. The battalion links up.
31. The platoon commander guides the stationary unit contact team to the battalion.
32. The stationary unit contact team then guides the moving unit to the linkup point to complete the linkup.
33. The stationary unit contact team alerts its main body before guiding the moving unit to the linkup point.
34. The stationary unit's guides direct the moving unit into its assigned section of the defensive perimeter.
35. The moving unit commander coordinates with the stationary unit commander and assigns tasks and sectors to his companies based on the coordination.
36. The linking units continue the mission under the guidance of the commander designated by high headquarters.

PREREQUISITE EVENTS:
SCT-TAC-5802

REFERENCES:
1. FM 3-20.98 Reconnaissance Platoon
2. FM 3-90.1 Tank and Mechanized Infantry Company Team
3. FM 3-90.2 Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force
4. MCWP 3-12 Marine Corps Tank Employment
5. NAVMC 3500.87 Infantry Training & Readiness Manual

SCT-TAC-5805: Assist in a Passage of Lines

SUPPORTED MET(S): 4

EVALUATION-CODED: NO **SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL:** 12 months

DESCRIPTION: The Scout platoon provides assistance while it is in stationary defensive positions. This can occur after the platoon has consolidated on an objective or has occupied a BP. Coordinating instructions may be in the form of a battalion OPORD or a FRAGO issued over the radio. The platoon commander may or may not have coordinated directly with the passing unit. If the platoon is to provide guides to assist the passing unit, he selects the personnel and briefs them on the points of coordination. The guides are responsible for linking up with and guiding the passing unit through the passage lane and for closing obstacles as necessary. Control of direct fires is a critical role for the element that is assisting the passage of lines. In a forward passage, the stationary unit engages known enemy targets until the passing unit moves past the RFL.

CONDITION: The Scout platoon is stationary and is in a hasty or deliberate defensive battle position as part of a battalion position. The platoon receives an OPORD and supporting overlays to assist the passage of another force through the battalion position. Contact is possible. The passing force is either to the rear of the platoon and will conduct a forward passage of lines or is fighting a defensive battle forward of the platoon and must conduct a rearward passage through the platoon. The unit establishes communications and digital connectivity (if applicable), with subordinate, adjacent, and higher headquarters, and is passing information in accordance with (IAW) the standard operating procedure (SOP). Some iterations of this task are performed in limited visibility. Some iterations of this task are performed in MOPP 4.

STANDARD: The platoon assists the passing force so that no personnel or equipment losses are inflicted due to fratricide and no breaches of security occur.

EVENT COMPONENTS:

1. The platoon commander requests information about the passing unit from the S-3, if it is not covered in the OPORD/FRAGO.
2. Identify composition by type and number of vehicles of passing unit.
3. Identify passage points and passage lanes (primary and alternate).
4. Identify recognition signals and guide activities.
5. Identify location of attack position (forward passage) or assembly area (rearward passage) to be occupied by the passing force.
6. Identify CEOI information.
7. Identify moving unit arrival time at contact points.
8. Identify battle handover procedures (rearward passage only).
9. Identify threat situation.
10. Identify barriers, minefields, and obstacles.
11. The platoon deploys to assist the passage.
12. Establish contact points and/or passage points if so directed by higher headquarters.
13. Establish overwatch positions.
14. Reconnoiter and mark routes for passing unit.
15. Man obstacles the platoon is responsible to execute.

16. The platoon guides passing units.
17. Guide the passing unit along specified routes to the designated location.
18. Reports completion of the passage.
19. Close passage lanes through the obstacle.

PREREQUISITE EVENTS:
SCT-TAC-5804

REFERENCES:
1. FM 3-20.98 Reconnaissance Platoon
2. FM 3-90.1 Tank and Mechanized Infantry Company Team
3. FM 3-90.2 Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force
4. MCWP 3-12 Marine Corps Tank Employment
5. NAVMC 3500.87 Infantry Training & Readiness Manual

SCT-TAC-5806: Conduct a Passage of Lines

SUPPORTED MET(S): 4

EVALUATION-CODED: NO **SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL:** 12 months

DESCRIPTION: A passage of lines is a tactical event associated with battle handover. It is the controlled movement of one unit through the positions of a stationary unit, conducted so that neither unit interferes with the others scheme of maneuver. A passage of lines often becomes necessary because the combat situation does not permit one unit to bypass another unit's position. A unit may either conduct a rearward or forward passage of lines. When a unit moves toward the enemy through a stationary unit, it is considered a forward passage. In a rearward passage, the unit moves away from the enemy through friendly units.

CONDITION: The Scout platoon is conducting tactical operations as part of a battalion task force and receives an OPORD and supporting overlays to conduct either a forward or rearward a passage of lines through a stationary unit. Contact is possible; enemy forces could include disruption, battle, support zone forces, or asymmetrical threat. The unit establishes communications and digital connectivity (if applicable), with subordinate, adjacent, and higher headquarters, and is passing information in accordance with (IAW) the standard operating procedure (SOP). Some iterations of this task are performed in limited visibility. Some iterations of this task are performed in MOPP 4.

STANDARD: The platoon conducts the passage of lines at the time and place specified in the OPORD or FRAGO with no compromise of security. The platoon completes the passage of lines as specified with no friendly casualties or equipment damage due to fratricide.

EVENT COMPONENTS:
1. Platoon commander/platoon sergeant coordinates the passage.
2. Send a representative to the contact point to meet with stationary unit representative.
3. Coordinate composition by type and number of vehicles of passing unit.
4. Coordinate passage points and passage lanes (primary and alternate).
5. Coordinate recognition signals and guide activities.

6. Coordinate attack positions or assembly areas.
7. Coordinate CEOI information.
8. Coordinate moving unit arrival time at contact points.
9. Coordinate procedures for the stationary force to provide combat support/combat service support.
10. Coordinate release points.
11. Coordinate procedure for handover of the battle or threat contact.
12. Coordinate threat situation.
13. Coordinate friendly situation.
14. Coordinate barriers/minefields/obstacles.
15. Platoon executes the passage.
16. Platoon commander issues fragmentary order containing pertinent information for passage execution.
17. Arrive at the contact point at the time specified and display the proper recognition signals.
18. Pick up guides and moves through passage lanes without halting.
19. Employ stationary force indirect fires (as necessary).
20. Use stationary force service support assets (as necessary).
21. Complete the passage by the time specified in the battalion operation order.
22. Report completion of passage to next battalion.

PREREQUISITE EVENTS:
SCT-TAC-5805 SCT-TAC-5804

REFERENCES:
1. FM 3-20.98 Reconnaissance Platoon
2. FM 3-90.1 Tank and Mechanized Infantry Company Team
3. FM 3-90.2 Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force
4. MCO 3500.27B W/ERRATUM Operational Risk Management
5. MCWP 3-12 Marine Corps Tank Employment
6. NAVMC 3500.87 Infantry Training & Readiness Manual

SCT-TAC-5807: Conduct a Relief in Place

SUPPORTED MET(S): 4

EVALUATION-CODED: NO **SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL:** 12 months

DESCRIPTION: Relief in place is an operation in which one unit replaces another unit in combat. It may be accomplished in offensive or defensive operations. Its primary purpose is to sustain the combat effectiveness of committed units. For the Scout platoon, the relief operation may entail such tasks as serving as road guides for the supported unit, performing liaison with the relieved unit, or participating in the relief with its parent unit.

CONDITION: The Scout platoon is conducting tactical operations as part of a battalion task force and receives an OPORD and supporting overlays to conduct a relief in place as either the relieving or relieved unit. Coordination may or may not be completed. Enemy contact is not likely. Some iterations of this task are performed in limited visibility. Some iterations of this task are performed in MOPP 4.

STANDARD: The platoon performs the relief in place IAW the OPORD and the commander's guidance. The platoon conducts linkup with the relieving or relieved unit and exchanges required information. The platoon completes the relief in place by the time specified in the OPORD and avoids exposing the units to the enemy detection. The platoon performs continuous observation of the sector of fire (defensive relief). The platoon sustains no personnel or equipment losses due to friendly fire. The platoon maintains situational awareness by monitoring digital communications displays and FM communications. Time required to plan and implement is increased when operating in MOPP 4.

EVENT COMPONENTS:
1. Platoon commander coordinates for the relief.
2. Determine assembly areas for element before or after relief.
3. Determine sequence of vehicle relief.
4. Determine what equipment, if any, will be switched.
5. Enforce effective camouflage, minimal radio communications, and light and noise discipline.
6. Participate in parent unit's deception plan.
7. Coordinate actions if threat contact is made during the relief.
8. Coordinate for assumption or turn-over of combat support assets.
9. Platoon prepares for the relief.
10. Prepare equipment for quick removal or for swap with incoming/outgoing element.
11. Prepare necessary sector sketches, minefield records, and prestocked supplies for transfer to incoming element.
12. Make a reconnaissance of new positions.
13. Report preparations are complete for the relief.
14. Platoon conducts the relief.
15. Meet incoming/outgoing element at a designated point.
16. Guide incoming element to new position in the determined sequence of relief.
17. Effect transfer of equipment, if required.
18. Outgoing element leader/commander remains in charge until the entire incoming element is in place and prepared to assume the mission.
19. Accept responsibility for section sectors of observation.
20. Report completion of relief.
21. Report outgoing element is clear of old area of responsibility.

PREREQUISITE EVENTS:
SCT-TAC-5802

REFERENCES:
1. FM 3-20.98 Reconnaissance Platoon
2. FM 3-90.1 Tank and Mechanized Infantry Company Team
3. FM 3-90.2 Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force
4. MCWP 3-12 Marine Corps Tank Employment
5. NAVMC 3500.87 Infantry Training & Readiness Manual

SCT-TAC-5808: Conduct a Screen

SUPPORTED MET(S): 4

EVALUATION-CODED: YES **SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL:** 12 months

DESCRIPTION: The Scout platoon conducts screen missions to provide early warning of threat approach and to provide real-time information, reaction time, and maneuver space for the main body. Operating over an extended area, the platoon fights only for self-protection within its capabilities and to deny threat elements close-in observation of the main body.

CONDITION: The Scout platoon is conducting operations as part of a battalion task force and receives an operations order (OPORD) and/or fragmentary order (FRAGO) to conduct a screen. The order includes all applicable overlays or graphics. The initial screen line, lateral boundaries, and rear boundary or phase lines (PL) are established and provided by higher headquarters. Contact is possible. The unit establishes communications and digital connectivity (if applicable), with subordinate, adjacent, and higher headquarters, and is passing information in accordance with (IAW) the standard operating procedure (SOP). The unit is provided guidance on the rules of engagement (ROE) and rules of interaction (ROI). Coalition forces and noncombatants may be present in the operational environment. Some iterations of this task are performed in limited visibility. Some iterations of this task are performed in MOPP 4.

STANDARD: The platoon conducts the screen IAW the SOP, the order, and battalion commander's guidance. The platoon allows no enemy ground element to pass through the screen undetected and unreported. The platoon maintains continuous surveillance, detects all enemy activity in the area of operations (AO), provides early warning to the screened unit, maintains contact with the enemy, and reports any activity in the AO. The platoon maintains contact with the battalion task force and any security forces/platoons operating on its flanks. The platoon destroys or repels all enemy reconnaissance patrols, and harasses the enemy using available systems and support. The platoon complies with the ROE and ROI. No friendly unit suffers casualties or equipment damage as a result of fratricide.

EVENT COMPONENTS:

1. Platoon deploys to screen location.
2. Use appropriate formation and technique of movement specified in operation order.
3. Platoon establishes screen.
4. Reconnoiter/select specific locations.
5. Report actual OP locations to battalion.
6. Establish local security.
7. Improve positions.
8. Coordinate observation/fields of fire by making contact with adjacent OPs.
9. Confirm indirect fire plan.
10. Emplace hasty obstacles (if applicable).
11. Platoon sergeant reconnoiters subsequent screen lines.
12. Platoon conducts screening operations.
13. Maintain continuous surveillance of all named areas of interest or avenues of approach into sector.
14. Provide early warning of threat approach.
15. Conduct irregularly scheduled mounted or dismounted patrols between OPs to cover dead space.
16. Platoon detects all threat elements entering the platoon sector.
17. Identify, report, and maintain contact with reconnaissance patrols.
18. In coordination with other combat element, destroy reconnaissance patrols (if required).

19. Maintain contact with the threat until ordered to break contact.
20. Impede and harass the threat by controlled use of artillery fires.
21. Platoon displaces to a subsequent screen line.
22. Platoon commander requests permission to displace.
23. Displace most threatened OPs first.
24. Continue to adjust indirect fires.
25. Maintain contact with advancing threat elements.
26. Report when set on subsequent screen line.
27. Platoon commander keeps battalion informed.

PREREQUISITE EVENTS:
SCT-TAC-5802

REFERENCES:
1. FM 3-20.98 Reconnaissance Platoon
2. FM 3-90.1 Tank and Mechanized Infantry Company Team
3. FM 3-90.2 Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force
4. MCWP 3-12 Marine Corps Tank Employment
5. NAVMC 3500.87 Infantry Training & Readiness Manual

SCT-TAC-5809: Conduct Actions on Contact

SUPPORTED MET(S): 2, 5

EVALUATION-CODED: NO **SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL:** 12 months

DESCRIPTION: Standardized actions made by a unit when contact with the enemy is gained. The contact can be near or far. Contact requires immediate actions: deploy, report, and develop the situation.

CONDITION: The Scout platoon is conducting tactical operations as part of a battalion task force. It makes contact with an enemy force by receipt of direct/indirect fires, by direct observation, or from reports sent to, or coming from higher headquarters. Some iterations of this task are performed in limited visibility. Some iterations of this task are performed in MOPP 4.

STANDARD: The platoon identifies and reports the enemy unit or position before the enemy fires on the main body. The platoon must fix the threat forces; recommend a course of action to the commander while retaining sufficient combat power and freedom to maneuver to successfully continue the mission. The platoon reports the enemy and friendly situation and avoids decisive engagement and sustains no personnel or equipment losses due to friendly fire. The platoon maintains situational awareness by monitoring digital communications displays and FM communications. Time required to plan and implement is increased when operating in MOPP 4. No more than one vehicle/crew may be lost to Threat fire.

EVENT COMPONENTS:
1. Element deploys and reports (SALUTE).
2. Scouts who are engaged return fire and find hide positions.
3. All scouts that see or are engaged by threat elements send an accurate spot report to the platoon commander.
4. Element develops the situation.
5. Platoon commander moves to a position where he can best observe the

situation.
6. Section in contact gathers information about threat position and equipment.
7. Section not in contact moves to flanks of threat position to further refine information about the threat.
8. Platoon commander correctly reports activity of threat IAW SALUTE format.
9. Platoon commander makes an assessment of threat activity within his sector.
10. Platoon commander determines covered and concealed approaches into the flank of the threat position(s) through reports from the sections.
11. Platoon commander chooses a course of action.

PREREQUISITE EVENTS:
SCT-TAC-5802

REFERENCES:
1. FM 3-20.98 Reconnaissance Platoon
2. FM 3-90.1 Tank and Mechanized Infantry Company Team
3. FM 3-90.2 Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force
4. MCWP 3-12 Marine Corps Tank Employment
5. NAVMC 3500.87 Infantry Training & Readiness Manual

SCT-TAC-5810: Conduct a Tactical Road March

SUPPORTED MET(S): 4

EVALUATION-CODED: NO **SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL:** 12 months

DESCRIPTION: As part of a battalion task force, a scout platoon may perform various duties during a road march: manning traffic control points (TCP), serving as road guides or as a quartering party, or conducting route reconnaissance.

CONDITION: The Scout platoon receives an OPORD/FRAGO complete with supporting graphics to conduct a tactical road march as part of a battalion task force. The order specifies the arrival time at the SP as well as the march speed, interval, and order of march. All planning and preparations are complete, including reconnaissance to determine the time-distance factor to the SP. Enemy contact is not expected. Some iterations of this task are performed in limited visibility. Some iterations of this task are performed in MOPP 4.

STANDARD: The platoon moves through the SP, checkpoints, and RP at times specified in the OPORD/FRAGO. The platoon moves IAW OPORD/FRAGO and completes movement to the designated location. The platoon sustains no personnel or equipment losses due to friendly fire. The platoon maintains situational awareness and monitors FM communications and/or digital communications. Time required to plan and implement is increased when operating in MOPP 4.

EVENT COMPONENTS:
1. Platoon commander plans the mission IAW troop-leading procedures.
2. If not already specified, determine speed and interval.
3. Choose appropriate formation, either column or staggered column or

movement by squads.
4. Platoon/squads reconnoiter route to the SP.
5. Determine suitability of the route and travel time to the SP.
6. Platoon/squads cross SP/LD.
7. Depart the assembly area at the appropriate time to cross the SP at the +/- time specified in the operation order.
8. Cross the SP at the speed, interval, and formation specified in the operation order.
9. Platoon/squads maintain security during movement.
10. Maintain 360-degree air guards and all-around local security through crew sectors of observation and weapon's orientation.
11. Maintain contact with lead, flank, or rear security elements of larger march unit (if appropriate).
12. Platoon/squads perform actions at scheduled halt.
13. Clear the route by assuming a coil or herringbone.
14. Establish all-around security.
15. Accomplish the actions planned for in the operation order/movement plan.
16. Perform maintenance as time permits.
17. Place dismounted OPs on key terrain surrounding the platoon position.
18. Platoon/squads perform actions at unscheduled halts.
19. Clear the route by assuming a coil or herringbone.
20. Immediately seek the cause of the halt.
21. Platoon commander determines a course of action.
22. Platoon commander reports to battalion, if appropriate.
23. Continue movement.
24. Platoon/squads clear the RP.
25. Arrive at the designated RP and continues movement.
26. Complete movement in accordance with operation order.

REFERENCES:
1. FM 3-20.98 Reconnaissance Platoon
2. FM 3-90.1 Tank and Mechanized Infantry Company Team
3. FM 3-90.2 Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force
4. MCWP 3-12.1 (FM 17-15) Tank Platoon
5. NAVMC 3500.87 Infantry Training & Readiness Manual

CHAPTER 8

COLLECTIVE TRAINING

AT-TOW/SCOUT CREW LEVEL GUNNERY TABLES

	PARAGRAPH	PAGE
PURPOSE	8001	8-2
EVENT CODING	8002	8-2
ADMINISTRATIVE NOTES	8003	8-2
COLLECTIVE DESCRIPTION/CORE CAPABILITY	8004	8-3
INDEX OF COLLECTIVE EVENTS BY FUCTIONAL AREA	8005	8-3
CREW LEVEL COLLECTIVE EVENTS	8006	8-4

CHAPTER 8

COLLECTIVE TRAINING

AT-TOW/SCOUT CREW LEVEL GUNNERY TABLES

8001. PURPOSE. This chapter contains all AT-TOW and Scout crew level unit events as executed through TOW missile/machine gunnery tables. These tables illustrate the relationship between unit competencies (Mission Essential Tasks (METs) and unit training (Collective events). Unit training managers can isolate all training relevant to each Crew Collective event and devise training to support their competencies as needed. Lastly, this chapter serves as the primary method to qualify and grade the anti-armor missile and machine gunnery skills of the AT-TOW and Scout platoons organic to the Tank Battalion.

8002. EVENT CODING. Events in the T&R manual are depicted with a 12 field alphanumeric system, i.e. XXXX-XXXX-XXXX. This chapter utilizes the following methodology:

a. Field one - Each event starts with "TOW" indicating that the event is for the Anti-Tank TOW unit organic to the Tank Battalion in the Infantry Occupational Field. These tables are applicable to the Scout platoon but are not labeled "SCT" to minimize duplication in the manual. The Collective Event title for all gunnery tables will begin with "Conduct TOW/Scout Gunnery Table".

b. Field two - This field is alpha characters indicating a functional area. The functional area used at the Crew level is:

GNRY - Gunnery

c. Field three - This field provides unit level at which the event is accomplished and numerical sequencing.

8003. ADMINISTRATIVE NOTES. Each Event contains a paragraph that describes internal and external Support Requirements the unit and Marines will need to complete the event. Ranges/Training Areas are described in this section with plain-language description. They are also described using the Range/Facility Codes that identify the type of range and/or training area needed to accomplish the Event. Marines can use the codes to find information about available ranges at their geographic location by using the web-based Range/Training Area Management System (see TECOM website). Ultimate use of the Range/Training Area Code is to relate ranges to readiness by identifying those Events that cannot be accomplished at a certain location due to lack of ranges.

8004. COLLECTIVE DESCRIPTION/CORE CAPABILITY

1. Engages stationary targets from a stationary position utilizing the M2 .50 caliber heavy barrel machinegun, MK-19 machinegun, M249 squad automatic weapon, or HMMWV mounted TOW missile.

2. Engages moving targets from a stationary position utilizing the M2 .50 caliber heavy barrel machinegun, MK-19 machinegun, M249 squad automatic weapon, or HMMWV mounted TOW missile.

3. Engages multiple stationary targets from a stationary position utilizing the M2 .50 caliber heavy barrel machinegun, MK-19 machinegun, M249 squad automatic weapon, or HMMWV mounted TOW missile.

4. Engages multiple stationary targets on the move utilizing the M2 .50 caliber heavy barrel machinegun, MK-19 machinegun, M249 squad automatic weapon, or HMMWV mounted TOW missile.

5. Engages multiple moving targets from a stationary position utilizing the M2 .50 caliber heavy barrel machinegun, MK-19 machinegun, M249 squad automatic weapon, or HMMWV mounted TOW missile.

6. Engages multiple moving targets on the move utilizing the M2 .50 caliber heavy barrel machinegun, MK-19 machinegun, M249 squad automatic weapon, or HMMWV mounted TOW missile.

7. Engages targets in daylight and limited visibility conditions.

8. Engages targets under nuclear, biological, and chemical (NBC) conditions.

8005. INDEX OF COLLECTIVE EVENTS BY FUNCTIONAL AREA

Event Code	Eval Code	Event	Page
TOW-GNRY-3101		Conduct TOW/Scout Table I	8-4
TOW-GNRY-3102		Conduct TOW/Scout Table II	8-5
TOW-GNRY-3103		Conduct TOW/Scout Table III	8-7
TOW-GNRY-3104		Conduct TOW/Scout Table IV	8-9
TOW-GNRY-3105		Conduct TOW/Scout Table V	8-10
TOW-GNRY-3106		Conduct TOW/Scout Table VI	8-12
TOW-GNRY-3107		Conduct TOW/Scout Table VII	8-14
TOW-GNRY-3108		Conduct TOW/Scout Table VIII	8-15

8006. CREW LEVEL COLLECTIVE EVENTS

TOW-GNRY-3101: Conduct TOW/Scout Table I

SUPPORTED MET(S): 3, 5

EVALUATION-CODED: NO **SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL:** 6 months

DESCRIPTION: TOW/Scout Table I is designed to train vehicle crews to acquire and engage a stationary target from a stationary position utilizing the vehicle mounted TOW system or machinegun during daylight operations.

CONDITION: Engage a stationary target from a defensive position utilizing the HMMWV mounted TOW weapon system, M2 caliber .50 heavy barrel machine gun, or MK 19 machinegun.

STANDARD: Crew must obtain hits on 80 percent of targets engaged with TOW system/machineguns to qualify engagement.

EVENT COMPONENTS:

1. Scenario #1A: During daylight operations, defend battle position 1 and engage a stationary vehicle target at unknown range with TOW missile.
2. Scenario #2A: During daylight operations, defend battle position 2 and engage a stationary vehicle target at unknown range with TOW missile.
3. Scenario #3A: During daylight operations, defend battle position 3 and engage a stationary vehicle target at unknown range with TOW missile.
4. Scenario #4A: During daylight operations, defend battle position 4 and engage a stationary vehicle target at unknown range with TOW missile.
5. Scenario #1B: Zero HMMWV mounted M2 caliber .50 heavy barrel machinegun.
6. Scenario #2B: During daylight operations, defend battle position 1 and engage a stationary vehicle or troops target at unknown range with M2 caliber .50 heavy barrel machinegun.
7. Scenario #3B: During daylight operations, defend battle position 2 and engage a stationary vehicle or troops target at unknown range with M2 caliber .50 heavy barrel machinegun.
8. Scenario #4B: During daylight operations, defend battle position 3 and engage a stationary vehicle or troops target at unknown range with M2 caliber .50 heavy barrel machinegun.
9. Scenario #5B: During daylight operations, defend battle position 4 and engage a stationary vehicle or troops target at unknown range with M2 caliber .50 heavy barrel machinegun.
10. Scenario #1C: During daylight operations, defend battle position 1 and engage a stationary vehicle or troops target at unknown range with MK 19 machinegun.
11. Scenario #2C: During daylight operations, defend battle position 2 and engage a stationary vehicle or troops target at unknown range with MK 19 machinegun.
12. Scenario #3C: During daylight operations, defend battle position 3 and engage a stationary vehicle or troops target at unknown range with MK 19 machinegun.
13. Scenario #4C: During daylight operations, defend battle position 4 and engage a stationary vehicle or troops target at unknown range with MK 19 machinegun.

RELATED EVENTS:

0302-DEF-1305	0331-MK19-1103	0352-EMPL-1302
0352-EMPL-1301	0331-HMG-1012	0331-HMG-1011
0331-HMG-1010	0331-HMG-1009	0331-HMG-1008
0331-HMG-1007	0331-HMG-1006	0331-HMG-1005
0352-TOW-1104	0352-TOW-1103	0352-TOW-1102
0352-TOW-1101	0352-TOW-1204	0352-TOW-1203
0352-TOW-1202	0352-TOW-1201	0352-TOW-1108
0352-TOW-1107	0352-TOW-1106	0352-TOW-1105
0331-MK19-1109	0331-MK19-1108	0331-MK19-1104
0331-MK19-1104	0352-EMPL-2300	

REFERENCES:

1. FM 17-12-8 Light Cavalry Gunnery
2. FM 17-97 Cavalry Troop
3. FM 3-20.98 Reconnaissance Platoon
4. FM 3-20.12 Tank Gunnery
5. FM 3-22.34 TOW Weapon System
6. MCO 3500.27B W/ERRATUM Operational Risk Management
7. MCWP 3-15.1 Machine Guns and Machine Gun Gunnery
8. NAVMC 3500.87 Infantry Training & Readiness Manual

SUPPORT REQUIREMENTS:

ORDNANCE:

DODIC	Quantity
B576 Cartridge, 40mm Practice M385A1 Sub	64 per crew
A576 Cartridge, Caliber .50 4 API M8/1 AP	408 per crew
L592 Simulator, Anti-Tank Launcher (TOW)	4 per crew

RANGE/TRAINING AREA:
Facility Code 17721 Tank/Fighting Vehicle Multipurpose Range Complex

MISCELLANEOUS:

ADMINISTRATIVE INSTRUCTIONS: TOW/Scout Table 1 ammunition requirements are based on 4 vehicle crews for 4 separate engagement scenarios.

TOW-GNRY-3102: Conduct TOW/Scout Table II

SUPPORTED MET(S): 3, 5

EVALUATION-CODED: NO **SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL:** 6 months

DESCRIPTION: TOW/Scout Table II is designed to train crews to engage a moving target from a stationary position with a vehicle mounted TOW system or machinegun during daylight operations.

CONDITION: Engage a moving target from a defensive position utilizing the HMMWV mounted TOW weapon system, M2 caliber .50 heavy barrel machinegun, or MK 19 machinegun.

STANDARD: Crew must obtain hits on 80 percent of targets engaged with TOW system/machineguns to qualify engagement.

EVENT COMPONENTS:

1. Scenario #1A: During daylight operations, defend battle position 1 and engage a moving vehicle target at unknown range with TOW missile.
2. Scenario #2A: During daylight operations, defend battle position 2 and engage a moving vehicle target at unknown range with TOW missile.
3. Scenario #3A: During daylight operations, defend battle position 3 and engage a moving vehicle target at unknown range with TOW missile.
4. Scenario #4A: During daylight operations, defend battle position 4 and engage a moving vehicle target at unknown range with TOW missile.
5. Scenario #1B: During daylight operations, defend battle position 1 and engage a moving vehicle or troops target at unknown range with M2 caliber .50 heavy barrel machinegun.
6. Scenario #2B: During daylight operations, defend battle position 2 and engage a moving vehicle or troops target at unknown range with M2 caliber .50 heavy barrel machinegun.
7. Scenario #3B: During daylight operations, defend battle position 3 and engage a moving vehicle or troops target at unknown range with M2 caliber .50 heavy barrel machinegun.
8. Scenario #4B: During daylight operations, defend battle position 4 and engage a moving vehicle or troops target at unknown range with M2 caliber .50 heavy barrel machinegun.
9. Scenario #1C: During daylight operations, defend battle position 1 and engage a moving vehicle or troops target at unknown range with MK 19 machinegun.
10. Scenario #2C: During daylight operations, defend battle position 2 and engage a moving vehicle or troops target at unknown range with MK 19 machinegun.
11. Scenario #3C: During daylight operations, defend battle position 3 and engage a moving vehicle or troops target at unknown range with MK 19 machinegun.
12. Scenario #4C: During daylight operations, defend battle position 4 and engage a moving vehicle or troops target at unknown range with MK 19 machinegun.

RELATED EVENTS:

0302-DEF-1305	0331-MK19-1103	0352-EMPL-1302
0352-EMPL-1301	0331-HMG-1012	0331-HMG-1011
0331-HMG-1010	0331-HMG-1009	0331-HMG-1008
0331-HMG-1007	0331-HMG-1006	0331-HMG-1005
0352-TOW-1204	0352-TOW-1203	0352-TOW-1202
0352-TOW-1201	0352-TOW-1108	0352-TOW-1107
0352-TOW-1106	0352-TOW-1105	0352-TOW-1104
0352-TOW-1103	0352-TOW-1102	0352-TOW-1101
0331-MK19-1109	0331-MK19-1108	0331-MK19-1104
0331-MK19-1104	0352-EMPL-2300	

REFERENCES:

1. FM 17-12-8 Light Cavalry Gunnery
2. FM 17-97 Cavalry Troop
3. FM 3-20.98 Reconnaissance Platoon
4. FM 3-20.12 Tank Gunnery
5. FM 3-22.34 TOW Weapon System

6. MCO 3500.27B W/ERRATUM Operational Risk Management
7. MCWP 3-15.1 Machine Guns and Machine Gun Gunnery
8. NAVMC 3500.87 Infantry Training & Readiness Manual

SUPPORT REQUIREMENTS:

ORDNANCE:

DODIC		Quantity
L592	Simulator, Anti-Tank Launcher (TOW)	4 per crew
A576	Cartridge, Caliber .50 4 API M8/1 AP	200 per crew
B584	Cartridge, 40mm Practice M918 Linked	64 per crew

RANGE/TRAINING AREA:
Facility Code 17721 Tank/Fighting Vehicle Multipurpose Range Complex

---

TOW-GNRY-3103: Conduct TOW/Scout Table III

SUPPORTED MET(S): 3, 5

EVALUATION-CODED: NO **SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL:** 6 months

DESCRIPTION: TOW/Scout Table III is designed to train crews to engage multiple stationary targets from a stationary position or on the move with vehicle mounted TOW system or machineguns during daylight operations.

CONDITION: Engage multiple stationary targets from a defensive position or on the move utilizing the HMMWV mounted TOW weapon system, M2 caliber .50 heavy barrel machinegun, MK 19 machinegun, or M249 SAW.

STANDARD: Crew must obtain hits on 80 percent of targets engaged with TOW system/machineguns to qualify engagement.

EVENT COMPONENTS:

1. Scenario #1A: During daylight operations, defend battle position 1 and engage multiple stationary vehicle or troop targets at unknown range with TOW missile or M249 SAW.
2. Scenario #2A: During daylight operations, attack and engage multiple stationary vehicle or troop targets at unknown range with TOW missile or M249 SAW.
3. Scenario #3A: During daylight operations, defend battle position 3 and engage multiple stationary vehicle or troop targets at unknown range with TOW missile or M249 SAW.
4. Scenario #4A: During daylight operations, attack and engage multiple stationary vehicle or troop targets at unknown range with TOW missile or M249 SAW.
5. Scenario #1B: During daylight operations, defend battle position 1 and engage multiple stationary vehicle or troop targets at unknown range with M2 caliber .50 heavy barrel machinegun.
6. Scenario #2B: During daylight operations, attack and engage multiple stationary vehicle or troop targets at unknown range with M2 caliber .50 heavy barrel machinegun.
7. Scenario #3B: During daylight operations, defend battle position 3 and engage multiple stationary vehicle or troop targets at unknown range with M2 caliber .50 heavy barrel machinegun.

8. Scenario #4B: During daylight operations, attack and engage multiple stationary vehicle or troop targets at unknown range with M2 caliber .50 heavy barrel machinegun.
9. Scenario #1C: During daylight operations, defend battle position 1 and engage multiple stationary vehicle or targets at unknown range with MK 19 machinegun.
10. Scenario #2C: During daylight operations, attack along lane 2 and engage multiple stationary vehicle or troop targets at unknown range with MK 19 machinegun.
11. Scenario #3C: During daylight operations, defend battle position 3 and engage multiple stationary vehicle or troop targets at unknown range with MK 19 machinegun.
12. Scenario #4C: During daylight operations, attack along lane 4 and engage multiple stationary vehicle or troop targets at unknown range with MK 19 machinegun.

RELATED EVENTS:

0302-DEF-1305	0331-MK19-1103	0352-EMPL-1302
0352-EMPL-1301	0331-HMG-1012	0331-HMG-1011
0331-HMG-1010	0331-HMG-1009	0331-HMG-1008
0331-HMG-1007	0331-HMG-1006	0331-HMG-1005
0311-M249-2125	0311-M249-2124	0311-M249-1127
0311-M249-1124	0311-M249-1122	0311-M249-1121
0352-TOW-1204	0352-TOW-1203	0352-TOW-1202
0352-TOW-1201	0352-TOW-1108	0352-TOW-1107
0352-TOW-1106	0352-TOW-1105	0352-TOW-1104
0352-TOW-1103	0352-TOW-1102	0352-TOW-1101
0331-MK19-1109	0331-MK19-1108	0331-MK19-1104
0331-MK19-1104	0352-EMPL-2300	

REFERENCES:

1. FM 17-12-8 Light Cavalry Gunnery
2. FM 17-97 Cavalry Troop
3. FM 3-20.98 Reconnaissance Platoon
4. FM 3-20.12 Tank Gunnery
5. FM 3-22.34 TOW Weapon System
6. MCO 3500.27B W/ERRATUM Operational Risk Management
7. MCWP 3-15.1 Machine Guns and Machine Gun Gunnery
8. NAVMC 3500.87 Infantry Training & Readiness Manual

SUPPORT REQUIREMENTS:

ORDNANCE:

DODIC	Quantity
L592 Simulator, Anti-Tank Launcher (TOW)	2 per crew
A064 Cartridge, 5.56mm 4 Ball M855/1 Trac	200 per crew
B584 Cartridge, 40mm Practice M918 Linked	64 per crew
A576 Cartridge, Caliber .50 4 API M8/1 AP	200 per crew

RANGE/TRAINING AREA:

Facility Code 17721 Tank/Fighting Vehicle Multipurpose Range Complex

TOW-GNRY-3104: Conduct TOW/Scout Table IV

SUPPORTED MET(S): 2, 3, 5

EVALUATION-CODED: NO **SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL:** 6 months

DESCRIPTION: TOW/Scout Table IV is designed to train crews to engage multiple moving targets from a stationary position or on the move utilizing vehicle mounted TOW systems or machineguns during daylight operations.

CONDITION: Engage multiple moving targets from a defensive position or on the move utilizing the HMMWV mounted TOW weapon system, M2 caliber .50 heavy barrel machinegun, MK 19 machinegun, or M249 SAW.

STANDARD: Crew must obtain hits on 80 percent of targets engaged with TOW system/machineguns to qualify engagement.

EVENT COMPONENTS:

1. Scenario #1A: During daylight operations, defend battle position 1 and engage multiple moving vehicle or troop targets at unknown range with TOW missile or M249 SAW.
2. Scenario #2A: During daylight operations, attack and engage multiple moving vehicle or troop targets at unknown range with TOW missile or M249 SAW.
3. Scenario #3A: During daylight operations, defend battle position 3 and engage multiple moving vehicle or troop targets at unknown range with TOW missile or M249 SAW.
4. Scenario #4A: During daylight operations, attack and engage multiple moving vehicle or troop targets at unknown range with TOW missile or M249 SAW.
5. Scenario #1B: During daylight operations, defend battle position 1 and engage multiple moving vehicle or troop targets at unknown range with M2 caliber .50 heavy barrel machinegun.
6. Scenario #2B: During daylight operations, attack and engage multiple moving vehicle or troop targets at unknown range with M2 caliber .50 heavy barrel machinegun.
7. Scenario #3B: During daylight operations, defend battle position 3 and engage multiple moving vehicle or troop targets at unknown range with M2 caliber .50 heavy barrel machinegun.
8. Scenario #4B: During daylight operations, attack and engage multiple moving vehicle or troop targets at unknown range with M2 caliber .50 heavy barrel machinegun.
9. Scenario #1C: During daylight operations, defend battle position 1 and engage multiple moving vehicle or troop targets at unknown range with MK 19 machinegun.
10. Scenario #2C: During daylight operations, attack and engage multiple moving vehicle or troop targets at unknown range with MK 19 machinegun.
11. Scenario #3C: During daylight operations, defend battle position 3 and engage multiple moving vehicle or troop targets at unknown range with MK 19 machinegun.
12. Scenario #4C: During daylight operations, attack and engage multiple moving vehicle or troop targets at unknown range with MK 19 machinegun.

RELATED EVENTS:

0302-OFF-1205	0331-MK19-1103	0352-EMPL-2300
0352-EMPL-1302	0352-EMPL-1301	0331-HMG-1012
0331-HMG-1011	0331-HMG-1010	0331-HMG-1009
0331-HMG-1008	0331-HMG-1007	0331-HMG-1006
0331-HMG-1005	0311-M249-2125	0311-M249-2124
0311-M249-1127	0311-M249-1124	0311-M249-1122
0311-M249-1121	0352-TOW-1204	0352-TOW-1203
0352-TOW-1202	0352-TOW-1201	0352-TOW-1108
0352-TOW-1107	0352-TOW-1106	0352-TOW-1105
0352-TOW-1104	0352-TOW-1103	0352-TOW-1102
0352-TOW-1101	0331-MK19-1109	0331-MK19-1108
0331-MK19-1104	0331-MK19-1104	0302-DEF-1305

REFERENCES:

1. FM 17-12-8 Light Cavalry Gunnery
2. FM 17-97 Cavalry Troop
3. FM 3-20.98 Reconnaissance Platoon
4. FM 3-20.12 Tank Gunnery
5. FM 3-22.34 TOW Weapon System
6. MCO 3500.27B W/ERRATUM Operational Risk Management
7. MCWP 3-15.1 Machine Guns and Machine Gun Gunnery
8. NAVMC 3500.87 Infantry Training & Readiness Manual

SUPPORT REQUIREMENTS:

ORDNANCE:

DODIC	Quantity
A576 Cartridge, Caliber .50 4 API M8/1 AP	200 per crew
B584 Cartridge, 40mm Practice M918 Linked	64 per crew
L592 Simulator, Anti-Tank Launcher (TOW)	2 per crew
A064 Cartridge, 5.56mm 4 Ball M855/1 Trac	200 per crew

RANGE/TRAINING AREA:
Facility Code 17721 Tank/Fighting Vehicle Multipurpose Range Complex

---

TOW-GNRY-3105: Conduct TOW/Scout Table V

SUPPORTED MET(S): 2, 3, 5

EVALUATION-CODED: NO **SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL:** 6 months

DESCRIPTION: TOW/Scout Table V is designed to train crews to engage multiple stationary targets from a stationary position or on the move utilizing vehicle mounted TOW systems or machinegun during limited visibility operations.

CONDITION: Engage a stationary target from a defensive position or on the move utilizing the HMMWV mounted TOW system, M2 caliber .50 heavy barrel machine gun, MK 19 machinegun, or M249 SAW.

STANDARD: Crew must obtain hits on 80 percent of targets engaged with TOW system/machineguns to qualify engagement.

EVENT COMPONENTS:

1. Scenario #1A: During limited visibility operations, defend battle position 1 and engage a stationary vehicle or troop targets at unknown range with TOW missile or M249 SAW.
2. Scenario #2A: During limited visibility operations, attack and engage a stationary vehicle or troop targets at unknown range with TOW missile or M249 SAW.
3. Scenario #3A: During limited visibility operations, defend battle position 3 and engage a stationary vehicle or troop targets at unknown range with TOW missile or M249 SAW.
4. Scenario #4A: During limited visibility operations, attack and engage a stationary vehicle or troop targets at unknown range with TOW missile or M249 SAW.
5. Scenario #1B: During limited visibility operations, defend battle position 1 and engage multiple stationary vehicle or troop targets at unknown range with M2 caliber .50 heavy barrel machinegun.
6. Scenario #2B: During limited visibility operations, attack and engage multiple stationary vehicle or troop targets at unknown range with M2 caliber .50 heavy barrel machinegun.
7. Scenario #3B: During limited visibility operations, defend battle position 3 and engage multiple stationary vehicle or troop targets at unknown range with M2 caliber .50 heavy barrel machinegun.
8. Scenario #4B: During limited visibility operations, attack and engage multiple stationary vehicle or troop targets at unknown range with M2 caliber .50 heavy barrel machinegun.
9. Scenario #1C: During limited visibility operations, defend battle position 1 and engage a stationary vehicle or troop target at unknown range with MK 19 machinegun.
10. Scenario #2C: During limited visibility operations, attack and engage a stationary vehicle or troop target at unknown range with MK 19 machinegun.
11. Scenario #3C: During limited visibility operations, defend battle position 3 and engage a stationary vehicle or troop target at unknown range with MK 19 machinegun.
12. Scenario #4C: During limited visibility operations, attack and engage a stationary vehicle or troop target at unknown range with MK 19 machinegun.

RELATED EVENTS:

0302-OFF-1205	0331-MK19-1103	0352-EMPL-2300
0352-EMPL-1302	0352-EMPL-1301	0331-HMG-1012
0331-HMG-1011	0331-HMG-1010	0331-HMG-1009
0331-HMG-1008	0331-HMG-1007	0331-HMG-1006
0331-HMG-1005	0311-M249-2125	0311-M249-2124
0311-M249-1127	0311-M249-1124	0311-M249-1122
0311-M249-1121	0352-TOW-1204	0352-TOW-1203
0352-TOW-1202	0352-TOW-1201	0352-TOW-1108
0352-TOW-1107	0352-TOW-1106	0352-TOW-1105
0352-TOW-1104	0352-TOW-1103	0352-TOW-1102
0352-TOW-1101	0331-MK19-1109	0331-MK19-1108
0331-MK19-1104	0331-MK19-1104	0302-DEF-1305

REFERENCES:

1. FM 17-12-8 Light Cavalry Gunnery
2. FM 17-97 Cavalry Troop
3. FM 3-20.98 Reconnaissance Platoon
4. FM 3-20.12 Tank Gunnery

5. FM 3-22.34 TOW Weapon System
6. MCO 3500.27B W/ERRATUM Operational Risk Management
7. MCWP 3-15.1 Machine Guns and Machine Gun Gunnery
8. NAVMC 3500.87 Infantry Training & Readiness Manual

SUPPORT REQUIREMENTS:

ORDNANCE:

DODIC		Quantity
A576	Cartridge, Caliber .50 4 API M8/1 AP	200 per crew
B584	Cartridge, 40mm Practice M918 Linked	64 per crew
L592	Simulator, Anti-Tank Launcher (TOW)	2 per crew
A064	Cartridge, 5.56mm 4 Ball M855/1 Trac	100 per crew

RANGE/TRAINING AREA:
Facility Code 17721 Tank/Fighting Vehicle Multipurpose Range Complex

---

TOW-GNRY-3106: Conduct TOW/Scout Table VI

SUPPORTED MET(S): 2, 3, 5

EVALUATION-CODED: NO **SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL:** 6 months

DESCRIPTION: TOW/Scout Table VI is designed to train crews to engage multiple moving targets from a stationary position or on the move utilizing vehicle mounted TOW systems or machineguns during limited visibility operations.

CONDITION: Engage multiple moving targets from a defensive position or on the move utilizing the HMMWV mounted TOW weapon system, M2 caliber .50 heavy barrel machinegun, MK 19 machinegun, or M249 SAW.

STANDARD: Crew must obtain hits on 80 percent of targets engaged with TOW system/machineguns to qualify engagement.

EVENT COMPONENTS:
1. Scenario #1A: During limited visibility operations, defend battle position 1 and engage multiple moving vehicle or troop targets at unknown range with TOW missile or M249 SAW.
2. Scenario #2A: During limited visibility operations, attack and engage multiple moving vehicle or troop targets at unknown range with TOW missile or M249 SAW.
3. Scenario #3A: During limited visibility operations, defend battle position 3 and engage multiple moving vehicle or troop targets at unknown range with TOW missile or M249 SAW.
4. Scenario #4A: During limited visibility operations, attack and engage multiple moving vehicle or troop targets at unknown range with TOW missile or M249 SAW.
5. Scenario #1B: During limited visibility operations, defend battle position 1 and engage multiple moving vehicle or troop targets at unknown range with M2 caliber .50 heavy barrel machinegun.
6. Scenario #2B: During limited visibility operations, attack and engage multiple moving vehicle or troop targets at unknown range with M2 caliber .50 heavy barrel machinegun.

7. Scenario #3B: During limited visibility operations, defend battle position 3 and engage multiple moving vehicle or troop targets at unknown range with M2 caliber .50 heavy barrel machinegun.
8. Scenario #4B: During limited visibility operations, attack and engage multiple moving vehicle or troop targets at unknown range with M2 caliber .50 heavy barrel machinegun.
9. Scenario #1C: During limited visibility operations, defend battle position 1 and engage multiple moving vehicle or troop targets at unknown range with MK 19 machinegun.
10. Scenario #2C: During limited visibility operations, attack and engage multiple moving vehicle or troop targets at unknown range with MK 19 machinegun.
11. Scenario #3C: During limited visibility operations, defend battle position 3 and engage multiple moving vehicle or troop targets at unknown range with MK 19 machinegun.
12. Scenario #4C: During limited visibility operations, attack and engage multiple moving vehicle or troop targets at unknown range with MK 19 machinegun.

RELATED EVENTS:

0302-OFF-1205	0331-MK19-1103	0352-EMPL-2300
0352-EMPL-1302	0352-EMPL-1301	0331-HMG-1012
0331-HMG-1011	0331-HMG-1010	0331-HMG-1009
0331-HMG-1008	0331-HMG-1007	0331-HMG-1006
0331-HMG-1005	0311-M249-2125	0311-M249-2124
0311-M249-1127	0311-M249-1124	0311-M249-1122
0311-M249-1121	0352-TOW-1204	0352-TOW-1203
0352-TOW-1202	0352-TOW-1201	0352-TOW-1108
0352-TOW-1107	0352-TOW-1106	0352-TOW-1105
0352-TOW-1104	0352-TOW-1103	0352-TOW-1102
0352-TOW-1101	0331-MK19-1109	0331-MK19-1108
0331-MK19-1104	0331-MK19-1104	0302-DEF-1305

REFERENCES:

1. FM 17-12-8 Light Cavalry Gunnery
2. FM 17-97 Cavalry Troop
3. FM 3-20.98 Reconnaissance Platoon
4. FM 3-20.12 Tank Gunnery
5. FM 3-22.34 TOW Weapon System
6. MCO 3500.27B W/ERRATUM Operational Risk Management
7. MCWP 3-15.1 Machine Guns and Machine Gun Gunnery
8. NAVMC 3500.87 Infantry Training & Readiness Manual

SUPPORT REQUIREMENTS:

ORDNANCE:

DODIC		Quantity
L592	Simulator, Anti-Tank Launcher (TOW)	2 per crew
A576	Cartridge, Caliber .50 4 API M8/1 AP	200 per crew
B584	Cartridge, 40mm Practice M918 Linked	64 per crew
A064	Cartridge, 5.56mm 4 Ball M855/1 Trac	200 per crew

RANGE/TRAINING AREA:

Facility Code 17721 Tank/Fighting Vehicle Multipurpose Range Complex

TOW-GNRY-3107: Conduct TOW/Scout Table VII

SUPPORTED MET(S): 2, 3, 5

EVALUATION-CODED: NO **SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL:** 6 months

DESCRIPTION: TOW/Scout Table VII is designed to train crews to engage multiple stationary targets from a stationary position or on the move utilizing the vehicle mounted TOW system or machinegun during daylight operations, limited visibility operations, and NBC conditions.

CONDITION: Engage multiple stationary targets from a defensive position or on the move utilizing the HMMWV mounted TOW weapon system, M2 caliber .50 heavy barrel machine gun, MK 19 machinegun, or M249 SAW.

STANDARD: Crew must obtain hits on 80 percent of targets engaged with TOW system/machineguns to qualify engagement.

EVENT COMPONENTS:

1. Scenario #1A: During daylight and limited visibility operations, defend battle position 1 and engage a stationary vehicle or troop targets at unknown range with TOW missile or M249 SAW.
2. Scenario #2A: During daylight and limited visibility operations, attack and engage a stationary vehicle or troop targets at unknown range with TOW missile or M249 SAW.
3. Scenario #3A: During daylight and limited visibility operations, defend battle position 3 and engage a stationary vehicle or troop targets at unknown range with TOW missile or M249 SAW.
4. Scenario #4A: During daylight and limited visibility operations, attack and engage a stationary vehicle or troop targets at unknown range with TOW missile or M249 SAW.
5. Scenario #1B: During daylight and limited visibility operations, defend battle position 1 and engage multiple stationary vehicle or troop targets at unknown range with M2 caliber .50 heavy barrel machinegun.
6. Scenario #2B: During daylight and limited visibility operations, attack and engage multiple stationary vehicle or troop targets at unknown range with M2 caliber .50 heavy barrel machinegun.
7. Scenario #3B: During daylight and limited visibility operations, defend battle position 3 and engage multiple stationary vehicle or troop targets at unknown range with M2 caliber .50 heavy barrel machinegun.
8. Scenario #4B: During daylight and limited visibility operations, attack and engage multiple stationary vehicle or troop targets at unknown range with M2 caliber .50 heavy barrel machinegun.
9. Scenario #1C: During daylight and limited visibility operations, defend battle position 1 and engage a stationary vehicle or troop target at unknown range with MK 19 machinegun.
10. Scenario #2C: During daylight and limited visibility operations, attack and engage a stationary vehicle or troop target at unknown range with MK 19 machinegun.
11. Scenario #3C: During daylight and limited visibility operations, defend battle position 3 and engage a stationary vehicle or troop target at unknown range with MK 19 machinegun.
12. Scenario #4C: During daylight and limited visibility operations, attack and engage a stationary vehicle or troop target at unknown range with MK 19 machinegun.

RELATED EVENTS:

0302-OFF-1205	0331-MK19-1103	0352-EMPL-2300
0352-EMPL-1302	0352-EMPL-1301	0331-HMG-1012
0331-HMG-1011	0331-HMG-1010	0331-HMG-1009
0331-HMG-1008	0331-HMG-1007	0331-HMG-1006
0331-HMG-1005	0311-M249-2125	0311-M249-2124
0311-M249-1127	0311-M249-1124	0311-M249-1122
0311-M249-1121	0352-TOW-1204	0352-TOW-1203
0352-TOW-1202	0352-TOW-1201	0352-TOW-1108
0352-TOW-1107	0352-TOW-1106	0352-TOW-1105
0352-TOW-1104	0352-TOW-1103	0352-TOW-1102
0352-TOW-1101	0331-MK19-1109	0331-MK19-1108
0331-MK19-1104	0331-MK19-1104	0302-DEF-1305

REFERENCES:

1. FM 17-12-8 Light Cavalry Gunnery
2. FM 17-97 Cavalry Troop
3. FM 3-20.98 Reconnaissance Platoon
4. FM 3-20.12 Tank Gunnery
5. FM 3-22.34 TOW Weapon System
6. MCO 3500.27B W/ERRATUM Operational Risk Management
7. MCWP 3-15.1 Machine Guns and Machine Gun Gunnery
8. NAVMC 3500.87 Infantry Training & Readiness Manual

SUPPORT REQUIREMENTS:

ORDNANCE:

DODIC	Quantity
A576 Cartridge, Caliber .50 4 API M8/1 AP	400 per crew
B584 Cartridge, 40mm Practice M918 Linked	128 per crew
A064 Cartridge, 5.56mm 4 Ball M855/1 Trac	400 per crew
L592 Simulator, Anti-Tank Launcher (TOW)	4 per crew

RANGE/TRAINING AREA:
Facility Code 17721 Tank/Fighting Vehicle Multipurpose Range Complex

MISCELLANEOUS:

ADMINISTRATIVE INSTRUCTIONS: TOW/Scout Table VII is executed in NBC conditions and in a day and night run.

TOW-GNRY-3108: Conduct TOW/Scout Table VIII

SUPPORTED MET(S): 2, 3, 5

EVALUATION-CODED: NO **SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL:** 6 months

DESCRIPTION: TOW/Scout Table VIII is designed to train crews to engage multiple moving and stationary targets from a stationary position or on the move utilizing the vehicle mounted TOW system or machinegun during daylight and limited visibility operations.

CONDITION: Engage multiple stationary and moving targets from a defensive position or on the move utilizing the HMMWV mounted TOW weapon system, M2 caliber .50 heavy barrel machine gun, MK 19 machinegun, or M249 SAW.

STANDARD: Crew must obtain hits on 80 percent of targets with TOW system/machineguns to qualify engagement.

EVENT COMPONENTS:

1. Scenario #1A: During daylight and limited visibility operations, defend battle position 1 and engage multiple stationary/moving vehicle or troop targets at unknown range with TOW missile or M249 SAW.
2. Scenario #2A: During daylight and limited visibility operations, attack and engage multiple stationary/moving vehicle or troop targets at unknown range with TOW missile or M249 SAW.
3. Scenario #3A: During daylight and limited visibility operations, defend battle position 3 and engage multiple stationary/moving vehicle or troop targets at unknown range with TOW missile or M249 SAW.
4. Scenario #4A: During daylight and limited visibility operations, attack and engage multiple stationary/moving vehicle or troop targets at unknown range with TOW missile or M249 SAW.
5. Scenario #1B: During daylight and limited visibility operations, defend battle position 1 and engage multiple stationary/moving vehicle or troop targets at unknown range with M2 caliber .50 heavy barrel machinegun.
6. Scenario #2B: During daylight and limited visibility operations, attack and engage multiple stationary/moving vehicle or troop targets at unknown range with M2 caliber .50 heavy barrel machinegun.
7. Scenario #3B: During daylight and limited visibility operations, defend battle position 3 and engage multiple stationary/moving vehicle or troop targets at unknown range with M2 caliber .50 heavy barrel machinegun.
8. Scenario #4B: During daylight and limited visibility operations, attack and engage multiple stationary/moving vehicle or troop targets at unknown range with M2 caliber .50 heavy barrel machinegun.
9. Scenario #1C: During daylight and limited visibility operations, defend battle position 1 and engage a stationary/moving vehicle or troop target at unknown range with MK 19 machinegun.
10. Scenario #2C: During daylight and limited visibility operations, attack and engage a stationary/moving vehicle or troop target at unknown range with MK 19 machinegun.
11. Scenario #3C: During daylight and limited visibility operations, defend battle position 3 and engage a stationary/moving vehicle or troop target at unknown range with MK 19 machinegun.
12. Scenario #4C: During daylight and limited visibility operations, attack and engage a stationary/moving vehicle or troop target at unknown range with MK 19 machinegun.

RELATED EVENTS:

0302-OFF-1205	0331-MK19-1103	0352-EMPL-2300
0352-EMPL-1302	0352-EMPL-1301	0331-HMG-1012
0331-HMG-1011	0331-HMG-1010	0331-HMG-1009
0331-HMG-1008	0331-HMG-1007	0331-HMG-1006
0331-HMG-1005	0311-M249-2125	0311-M249-2124
0311-M249-1127	0311-M249-1124	0311-M249-1122
0311-M249-1121	0352-TOW-1204	0352-TOW-1203
0352-TOW-1202	0352-TOW-1201	0352-TOW-1108
0352-TOW-1107	0352-TOW-1106	0352-TOW-1105

0352-TOW-1104	0352-TOW-1103	0352-TOW-1102
0352-TOW-1101	0331-MK19-1109	0331-MK19-1108
0331-MK19-1104	0331-MK19-1104	0302-DEF-1305

REFERENCES:

1. FM 17-12-8 Light Cavalry Gunnery
2. FM 17-97 Cavalry Troop
3. FM 3-20.98 Reconnaissance Platoon
4. FM 3-20.12 Tank Gunnery
5. FM 3-22.34 TOW Weapon System
6. MCO 3500.27B W/ERRATUM Operational Risk Management
7. MCWP 3-15.1 Machine Guns and Machine Gun Gunnery
8. NAVMC 3500.87 Infantry Training & Readiness Manual

SUPPORT REQUIREMENTS:

ORDNANCE:

DODIC		Quantity
L592	Simulator, Anti-Tank Launcher (TOW)	4 per crew
A576	Cartridge, Caliber .50 4 API M8/1 AP	400 per crew
B584	Cartridge, 40mm Practice M918 Linked	128 per crew
A064	Cartridge, 5.56mm 4 Ball M855/1 Trac	400 per crew

RANGE/TRAINING AREA:
Facility Code 17721 Tank/Fighting Vehicle Multipurpose Range Complex

MISCELLANEOUS:

ADMINISTRATIVE INSTRUCTIONS: TOW/Scout Table VIII is conducted during a day and night run.

TANK T&R MANUAL

CHAPTER 9

INDIVIDUAL TRAINING

1802 TANK OFFICER

	PARAGRAPH	PAGE
PURPOSE	9001	9-2
EVENT CODING	9002	9-2
ADMINISTRATIVE NOTES	9003	9-2
PREREQUISITES	9004	9-2
BILLET DESCRIPTION/CORE CAPABILITIES	9005	9-3
INDEX OF EVENTS BY LEVEL	9006	9-4
1000-LEVEL 1802 INDIVIDUAL EVENTS	9007	9-5
2000-LEVEL 1802 INDIVIDUAL EVENTS	9008	9-155

TANK T&R MANUAL

CHAPTER 9

INDIVIDUAL TRAINING

1802 TANK OFFICER

9001. PURPOSE. The purpose of 1000-level training is to provide the knowledge and skills required to perform as a Tank Officer. 2000-level events are Core Plus events, with initial training settings of either MOJT or through resident/distance learning PME.

9002. EVENT CODING. Events in the T&R manual are depicted with a 12 field alphanumeric system, i.e. XXXX-XXXX-XXXX. This chapter utilizes the following methodology:

a. Field one - Each event in this chapter begins with "1802" indicating that the event is for Tank Officers.

b. Field two - This field is alpha characters indicating a functional area. Functional areas for Tank Officers are:

CBTS - Combat Support	CMDC - Command and Control
CSS - Combat Service Support	EXPD - Expeditionary Operations
GNRY - Gunnery	OTH - Other Operations
TAC - Tactical Operations	VOPS - Vehicle Operations

c. Field three - This field provides numerical sequencing.

9003. ADMINISTRATIVE NOTES. Each Event may contain a paragraph that describes internal and external Support Requirements the unit and Marines will need to complete the event. Ranges/Training Areas are described in this section with plain-language description. They are also described using the Range/Facility Codes that identify the type of range and/or training area needed to accomplish the Event. Marines can use the codes to find information about available ranges at their geographic location by using the web-based Range/Training Area Management System (see TECOM website). Ultimate use of the Range/Training Area Code is to relate ranges to readiness by identifying those Events that cannot be accomplished at a certain location due to lack of ranges.

9004. PREREQUISITES. The Marine Tank Officer will have completed The Basic School (TBS), Quantico, VA and Mounted Officer's Basic Course (MOBC), Ft. Knox, KY.

9005. BILLET DESCRIPTION/CORE CAPABILITIES

CAREER PROGRESSION PHILOSOPHY. The Tank Officer will complete the Mounted Officers Basic Course (MOBC) at Ft. Knox, KY. Upon graduation, the Tank Officer will conduct additional Level 2000 training in a Tank unit in a variety of billets. Level 2 training continues through completion of Career, Intermediate, and Advanced Level Professional Military Education (PME), available through resident, seminar and distance learning courses.

BILLET: Tank Platoon Commander. The Tank Platoon Commander carries out the orders of the Tank Company Commander. He is proficient with all T/O weapons within his platoon. He is responsible for training his unit to perform METs assigned by his company commander's METLs. He is responsible for deployment and tactical employment of his unit. He is responsible for the discipline, morale, and welfare of his unit. A Lieutenant holds the Tank Platoon Commander billet.

Core Capabilities

1. Trains the platoon in the performance of tasks that support company training objectives.
2. Maintains the welfare and discipline of a platoon.
3. Makes operational planning recommendations to the Tank Company Commander.
4. Develops a 5-paragraph operations order to support accomplishment of a tank company's tactical mission.
5. Prepares a map overlay.
6. Prepares platoon reports and briefs.
7. Proficient in use and employment of all weapons organic to a tank platoon.
8. Engages targets utilizing all organic weapon systems on the M1A1 tank.
9. Supervises preventive maintenance checks and services of all platoon tanks and equipment.
10. Utilizes pyrotechnics for signaling and on-board systems for screening.
11. Land navigates to designated points using a topographic map, lensatic compass, protractor, and global positioning equipment while dismounted and mounted.
12. Performs self-aid and buddy aid.
13. Assumes mission oriented protective posture against the effects of chemical and biological agents.
14. Communicates using proper communications procedures with organic wired and wireless communications.
15. Calls for indirect fire.
16. Requests close air support.
17. Integrates supporting fires in accomplishment of an assigned mission.
18. Capable of preparing all stations on the M1A1 tank for operation.
19. Leads the platoon in tactical operations as part of a tank company.
20. Proficient marksman with T/O weapon.
21. Capable of performing operator maintenance for, and is proficient in employment of, the track width mine plow and deep water fording kit.
22. Proficient in proper combat reporting procedures.

9006. INDEX OF EVENTS BY LEVEL

Event Code	Eval Code	Event	Page
		1000 LEVEL	
1802-GNRY-1101 1802-GNRY-1138		Gunnery related individual events	9-5 9-32
1802-CMDC-1201 1802-CMDC-1242		Command and Control individual events	9-32 9-60
1802-VOPS-1301 1802-VOPS-1335		M1A1 tank Vehicle Operations individual events	9-60 9-85
1802-CBTS-1401 1802-CBTS-1411		Combat Support individual events	9-85 9-93
1802-CSS- 1501 1802-CSS- 1513		Combat Service Support individual events	9-93 9-103
1802-EXPD-1601 1802-EXPD-1602		Expeditionary Operations individual events	9-103 9-105
1802-OTH- 1701		Other Operations individual events	9-105 9-106
1802-TAC- 1801 1802-TAC- 1871		Tactical Operations individual events	9-106 9-154
		2000 LEVEL	
1802-GNRY-2100		No Gunnery related individual events	No Entry
1802-CMDC-2201 1802-CMDC-2212		Command and Control individual events	9-155 9-163
1802-VOPS-2301 1802-VOPS-2304		M1A1 tank Vehicle Operations individual events	9-163 9-166
1802-CBTS-2401 1802-CBTS-2421		Combat Support individual events	9-166 9-183
1802-CSS- 2501 1802-CSS- 2512		Combat Service Support individual events	9-183 9-193
1802-EXPD-2601 1802-EXPD-2615		Expeditionary Operations individual events	9-194 9-206
1802-OTH- 2701		Other Operations individual events	9-206 9-207
1802-TAC- 2801 1802-TAC- 2809		Tactical Operations individual events	9-207 9-212

9007. 1000-LEVEL 1802 INDIVIDUAL EVENTS

1802-GNRY-1101: Perform Preventive Maintenance Checks and Services (PMCS) on M240 7.62mm Machine Gun on M1A1 Tank

EVALUATION-CODED: NO **SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL:** 6 months

BILLETS: Platoon Commander

GRADES: 2NDLT, 1STLT

INITIAL TRAINING SETTING: FORMAL

CONDITION: Given an M1A1 tank, M240 7.62mm machine gun, and appropriate cleaning equipment.

STANDARD: Per the references.

PERFORMANCE STEPS:
1. Conduct a safety check on the weapon, ensuring that it is safe for disassembly.
2. Disassemble the weapon.
3. Inspect, clean, and lubricate the components.
4. Record worn or defective parts in equipment record jacket, tag defective parts and inform armorer.
5. Assemble the weapon.
6. Conduct a function check.

REFERENCES:
1. FM 3-20.12 Tank Gunnery
2. MCO 3500.27B W/ERRATUM Operational Risk Management
3. MCWP 3-15.1 Machine Guns and Machine Gun Gunnery
4. TM 9-1005-313-10 Maintenance Manual, 7.62mm Machinegun M240G
5. TM 9-2350-264-10-1 Operator's Manual, Operator Controls, PMCS, and Operation Under Usual Conditions, Volume 1 of 2, Tank, Combat, Full-Tracked: 120-MM Gun, M1A1 2350-01-087-1095 General Abrams
6. TM 9-2350-264-10-2 Operator's Manual, Unusual Conditions, Troubleshooting, and Maintenance, Volume 2 of 2, Tank, Combat, Full-Tracked: 120-MM, M1A1 2350-01-087-1095, General Abrams

---

1802-GNRY-1102: Engage Targets with M240 Machine Gun from Loader's Station on M1A1 Tank

EVALUATION-CODED: NO **SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL:** 12 months

BILLETS: Platoon Commander

GRADES: 2NDLT

INITIAL TRAINING SETTING: FORMAL

CONDITION: Given a moving or stationary M1A1 tank with crew, loaded M240 machine gun mounted at loader's station, ammunition, and targets within effective range.

STANDARD: Until the targets are suppressed, destroyed, or the order "Cease Fire" is given.

PERFORMANCE STEPS:
1. Adjust loader's seat for standing on.
2. Pull skate lock 90 degrees to center position.
3. Turn azimuth lock counterclockwise several times until loose.
4. Pull out elevation lock pin and twist 1/4-turn to unlock machine gun.
5. Push safety left to "F".
6. Charge the machine gun.
7. Execute short halt if moving.
8. Fire the machine gun; adjust as needed to hit the target.
9. Push safety right to "S".

REFERENCES:
1. FM 3-20.12 Tank Gunnery
2. MCO 3500.27B W/ERRATUM Operational Risk Management
3. MCWP 3-15.1 Machine Guns and Machine Gun Gunnery
4. TM 9-1005-313-10 Maintenance Manual, 7.62mm Machinegun M240G
5. TM 9-2350-264-10-1 Operator's Manual, Operator Controls, PMCS, and Operation Under Usual Conditions, Volume 1 of 2, Tank, Combat, Full-Tracked: 120-MM Gun, M1A1 2350-01-087-1095 General Abrams
6. TM 9-2350-264-10-2 Operator's Manual, Unusual Conditions, Troubleshooting, and Maintenance, Volume 2 of 2, Tank, Combat, Full-Tracked: 120-MM, M1A1 2350-01-087-1095, General Abrams

---

1802-GNRY-1103: Apply Failure-to-Fire Procedures for M240 7.62mm Machine Gun on M1A1 Tank

EVALUATION-CODED: NO **SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL:** 6 months

BILLETS: Platoon Commander

GRADES: 2NDLT, 1STLT, CAPT, MAJ, LTCOL

INITIAL TRAINING SETTING: FORMAL

CONDITION: Given an M1A1 tank, M240 7.62mm machine gun, and appropriate collateral equipment.

STANDARD: Per the references.

PERFORMANCE STEPS:
1. Alert crew by announcing "STOPPAGE".
2. Pull bolt to rear and visually inspect chamber.
3. Release bolt and attempt to fire.
4. Make sure trigger operating lever is correctly adjusted.
5. Reload and attempt to fire.
6. If weapon still does not fire, clear weapon and troubleshoot.

REFERENCES:
1. FM 3-20.12 Tank Gunnery
2. MCO 3500.27B W/ERRATUM Operational Risk Management
3. MCWP 3-15.1 Machine Guns and Machine Gun Gunnery

4. TM 9-1005-313-10 Maintenance Manual, 7.62mm Machinegun M240G
5. TM 9-2350-264-10-1 Operator's Manual, Operator Controls, PMCS, and Operation Under Usual Conditions, Volume 1 of 2, Tank, Combat, Full-Tracked: 120-MM Gun, M1A1 2350-01-087-1095 General Abrams
6. TM 9-2350-264-10-2 Operator's Manual, Unusual Conditions, Troubleshooting, and Maintenance, Volume 2 of 2, Tank, Combat, Full-Tracked: 120-MM, M1A1 2350-01-087-1095, General Abrams

---

1802-GNRY-1104: Engage Targets with Coaxial Machine Gun from Commander's Station on M1A1 Tank

EVALUATION-CODED: NO **SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL:** 6 months

BILLETS: Platoon Commander

GRADES: 2NDLT, 1STLT, CAPT, MAJ, LTCOL

INITIAL TRAINING SETTING: FORMAL

CONDITION: Given a stationary M1A1 tank with a three-man crew, 7.62mm ammunition, and targets.

STANDARD: Until the targets are suppressed or destroyed.

PERFORMANCE STEPS:
1. Acquire and identify target.
2. Use the tank commander's power control handle to lay the center of the GPS reticle on target.
3. Lase to the target.
4. Inspect the GPS symbols for multiple returns or malfunction.
5. Move GUN SELECT switch to COAX.
6. Announce "FROM MY POSITION" and fire.
7. Cease fire when targets have been suppressed or destroyed, and announce "TC COMPLETE."

REFERENCES:
1. FM 3-20.12 Tank Gunnery
2. MCO 3500.27B W/ERRATUM Operational Risk Management
3. MCWP 3-15.1 Machine Guns and Machine Gun Gunnery
4. TM 9-1005-313-10 Maintenance Manual, 7.62mm Machinegun M240G
5. TM 9-2350-264-10-1 Operator's Manual, Operator Controls, PMCS, and Operation Under Usual Conditions, Volume 1 of 2, Tank, Combat, Full-Tracked: 120-MM Gun, M1A1 2350-01-087-1095 General Abrams
6. TM 9-2350-264-10-2 Operator's Manual, Unusual Conditions, Troubleshooting, and Maintenance, Volume 2 of 2, Tank, Combat, Full-Tracked: 120-MM, M1A1 2350-01-087-1095, General Abrams

---

1802-GNRY-1105: Perform Preventive Maintenance Checks and Services (PMCS) on M48 .50 Caliber HB Machine Gun on M1A1 Tank

EVALUATION-CODED: NO **SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL:** 6 months

BILLETS: Platoon Commander

GRADES: 2NDLT, 1STLT, CAPT, MAJ, LTCOL

INITIAL TRAINING SETTING: FORMAL

CONDITION: Given an M1A1 tank, M48 .50 cal HB machine gun, and appropriate cleaning equipment.

STANDARD: Per the references.

PERFORMANCE STEPS:
1. Conduct a safety check on the weapon, ensuring that it is safe for disassembly.
2. Disassemble the weapon.
3. Inspect, clean, and lubricate the components.
4. Record worn or defective parts in equipment record jacket, tag defective parts and inform armorer.
5. Assemble the weapon.
6. Conduct a function check.

REFERENCES:
1. FM 3-20.12 Tank Gunnery
2. MCO 3500.27B W/ERRATUM Operational Risk Management
3. MCWP 3-15.1 Machine Guns and Machine Gun Gunnery
4. TM 9-1005-213-10 Machine Gun, Caliber .50, Browning
5. TM 9-2350-264-10-1 Operator's Manual, Operator Controls, PMCS, and Operation Under Usual Conditions, Volume 1 of 2, Tank, Combat, Full-Tracked: 120-MM Gun, M1A1 2350-01-087-1095 General Abrams
6. TM 9-2350-264-10-2 Operator's Manual, Unusual Conditions, Troubleshooting, and Maintenance, Volume 2 of 2, Tank, Combat, Full-Tracked: 120-MM, M1A1 2350-01-087-1095, General Abrams

---

1802-GNRY-1106: Set Headspace and Timing on M48 .50 Caliber HB Machine Gun on M1A1 Tank

EVALUATION-CODED: NO **SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL:** 6 months

BILLETS: Platoon Commander

GRADES: 2NDLT, 1STLT, CAPT, MAJ, LTCOL

INITIAL TRAINING SETTING: FORMAL

CONDITION: Given an M1A1 tank, M48 .50 cal HB machine gun, and appropriate collateral equipment.

STANDARD: Per the references.

PERFORMANCE STEPS:
1. Conduct safety check on weapon.
2. Set headspace.
3. Set timing.

REFERENCES:
1. FM 3-20.12 Tank Gunnery
2. MCO 3500.27B W/ERRATUM Operational Risk Management
3. MCWP 3-15.1 Machine Guns and Machine Gun Gunnery
4. TM 9-1005-213-10 Machine Gun, Caliber .50, Browning
5. TM 9-2350-264-10-1 Operator's Manual, Operator Controls, PMCS, and Operation Under Usual Conditions, Volume 1 of 2, Tank, Combat, Full-Tracked: 120-MM Gun, M1A1 2350-01-087-1095 General Abrams
6. TM 9-2350-264-10-2 Operator's Manual, Unusual Conditions, Troubleshooting, and Maintenance, Volume 2 of 2, Tank, Combat, Full-Tracked: 120-MM, M1A1 2350-01-087-1095, General Abrams

---

1802-GNRY-1107: Install M48 .50 Caliber HB Machine Gun on M1A1 Tank

EVALUATION-CODED: NO **SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL:** 6 months

BILLETS: Platoon Commander

GRADES: 2NDLT, 1STLT, CAPT, MAJ, LTCOL

INITIAL TRAINING SETTING: FORMAL

CONDITION: Given an M1A1 tank, M48 .50 caliber HB machine gun, and appropriate collateral equipment.

STANDARD: Per the references.

PERFORMANCE STEPS:
1. Clear machine gun.
2. Pull front and rear mounting pins from mount.
3. Put machine gun receiver in mount.
4. Ensure butterfly trigger is under roller.
5. Install front and rear mounting pins.
6. Adjust roller on trigger as necessary.
7. Install barrel, set headspace and timing.
8. Check equilibrator.
9. Adjust equilibrator if necessary.
10. Set machine gun to safety to the left until "F" can be seen.
11. Charge the machine gun.
12. Set SAFE/ARMED switch to ARMED position, check ARMED light is lit.
13. Grasp CWS handle and push button on top of handle to test machine gun firing mechanism. A click should be heard, if not notify unit maintenance.
14. Set machine gun safety so that "S" can be seen.
15. Set SAFE/ARMED switch to SAFE position, make sure ARMED light is not lit.
16. Repeat this process when mounting M240 machine gun.

REFERENCES:
1. FM 3-20.12 Tank Gunnery
2. MCO 3500.27B W/ERRATUM Operational Risk Management
3. MCWP 3-15.1 Machine Guns and Machine Gun Gunnery
4. TM 9-1005-213-10 Machine Gun, Caliber .50, Browning
5. TM 9-2350-264-10-1 Operator's Manual, Operator Controls, PMCS, and Operation Under Usual Conditions, Volume 1 of 2, Tank, Combat, Full-

Tracked: 120-MM Gun, M1A1 2350-01-087-1095 General Abrams
6. TM 9-2350-264-10-2 Operator's Manual, Unusual Conditions, Troubleshooting, and Maintenance, Volume 2 of 2, Tank, Combat, Full-Tracked: 120-MM, M1A1 2350-01-087-1095, General Abrams

---

1802-GNRY-1108: Boresight M48 .50 Caliber Machine Gun on M1A1 Tank

EVALUATION-CODED: NO **SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL:** 6 months

BILLETS: Platoon Commander

GRADES: 2NDLT, 1STLT, CAPT, MAJ, LTCOL

INITIAL TRAINING SETTING: FORMAL

CONDITION: Given an M1A1 tank with crew, SL-3 items, a cleared and mounted M48 .50 caliber machine gun, and references.

STANDARD: So that the vertical and horizontal set screws are tight.

PERFORMANCE STEPS:
1. Position tank on level ground.
2. Select a boresight target with a well-defined right angle at a range as near 500 meters as possible.
3. Lase on target using commander's handle, if possible, to confirm range to boresight target.
4. Ensure that the weapon is clear.
5. Align center of barrel on target's defined right angle.
6. Loosen setscrew to allow control of horizontal adjustment control screw.
7. Adjust horizontal adjustment control screw, placing vertical line of boresight cross on left edge of target.
8. Tighten setscrew.
9. Loosen setscrew to allow control of vertical adjustment control screw.
10. Adjust setscrew to allow control of vertical adjustment control screw.
11. Tighten setscrew.

REFERENCES:
1. FM 3-20.12 Tank Gunnery
2. MCO 3500.27B W/ERRATUM Operational Risk Management
3. MCWP 3-15.1 Machine Guns and Machine Gun Gunnery
4. TM 08953A-10/1-3 Operator's Manual for Boresighting and Zeroing M1A1 Tank Armament
5. TM 9-1005-213-10 Machine Gun, Caliber .50, Browning
6. TM 9-2350-264-10-1 Operator's Manual, Operator Controls, PMCS, and Operation Under Usual Conditions, Volume 1 of 2, Tank, Combat, Full-Tracked: 120-MM Gun, M1A1 2350-01-087-1095 General Abrams
7. TM 9-2350-264-10-2 Operator's Manual, Unusual Conditions, Troubleshooting, and Maintenance, Volume 2 of 2, Tank, Combat, Full-Tracked: 120-MM, M1A1 2350-01-087-1095, General Abrams

---

1802-GNRY-1109: Load M48 .50 Caliber HB Machine Gun on M1A1 Tank

EVALUATION-CODED: NO **SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL:** 6 months

BILLETS: Platoon Commander

GRADES: 2NDLT, 1STLT, CAPT, MAJ, LTCOL

INITIAL TRAINING SETTING: FORMAL

CONDITION: Given an M1A1 tank, M48 .50 caliber HB machine gun, "dummy" training ammunition, and appropriate collateral equipment.

STANDARD: Per the references.

PERFORMANCE STEPS:
1. Load ammunition can into cradle.
2. Load machine gun.
3. Secure ammunition box latch.

REFERENCES:
1. FM 3-20.12 Tank Gunnery
2. MCO 3500.27B W/ERRATUM Operational Risk Management
3. MCWP 3-15.1 Machine Guns and Machine Gun Gunnery
4. TM 9-1005-213-10 Machine Gun, Caliber .50, Browning
5. TM 9-2350-264-10-1 Operator's Manual, Operator Controls, PMCS, and Operation Under Usual Conditions, Volume 1 of 2, Tank, Combat, Full-Tracked: 120-MM Gun, M1A1 2350-01-087-1095 General Abrams
6. TM 9-2350-264-10-2 Operator's Manual, Unusual Conditions, Troubleshooting, and Maintenance, Volume 2 of 2, Tank, Combat, Full-Tracked: 120-MM, M1A1 2350-01-087-1095, General Abrams

---

1802-GNRY-1110: Zero M48 .50 Caliber Machine Gun on M1A1 Tank

EVALUATION-CODED: NO **SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL:** 6 months

BILLETS: Platoon Commander

GRADES: 2NDLT, 1STLT, CAPT, MAJ, LTCOL

INITIAL TRAINING SETTING: FORMAL

CONDITION: Given a loaded and boresighted M48 .50 caliber machine gun mounted on an M1A1 tank, crew, target at 500 meters, 50 rounds of .50 caliber ammunition, and the references.

STANDARD: So that the aim point is centered on the beaten zone.

PERFORMANCE STEPS:
1. Move the butterfly trigger safety until "F" can be seen.
2. Alert crew on intercom by announcing "CALIBER .50".
3. Lay 500 meter aim point in CWS sight on center of the 500 meter target.
4. Set SAFE/ARMED switch to ARMED position then let go and make sure ARMED light is lit.
5. Alert crew on intercom by announcing "CALIBER .50 ON THE WAY".
6. Fire a burst of 10-20 rounds.
7. Look at beaten zone on target in relation to aim point on sight reticle.
8. Set SAFE/ARMED switch to SAFE position and then let go and make sure ARMED

light is not lit.
9. If aim point in sight reticle is centered on beaten zone, zeroing is complete, if not, proceed to next step.
10. Without moving machine gun or CWS sight, align aim point in sight reticle to center of beaten zone.
11. Repeat steps 3 through 9 until aim point on sight reticle is centered on beaten zone.
12. Move butterfly trigger until "S" can be seen.

REFERENCES:
1. FM 3-20.12 Tank Gunnery
2. MCO 3500.27B W/ERRATUM Operational Risk Management
3. MCWP 3-15.1 Machine Guns and Machine Gun Gunnery
4. TM 08953A-10/1-3 Operator's Manual for Boresighting and Zeroing M1A1 Tank Armament
5. TM 9-1005-213-10 Machine Gun, Caliber .50, Browning
6. TM 9-2350-264-10-1 Operator's Manual, Operator Controls, PMCS, and Operation Under Usual Conditions, Volume 1 of 2, Tank, Combat, Full-Tracked: 120-MM Gun, M1A1 2350-01-087-1095 General Abrams
7. TM 9-2350-264-10-2 Operator's Manual, Unusual Conditions, Troubleshooting, and Maintenance, Volume 2 of 2, Tank, Combat, Full-Tracked: 120-MM, M1A1 2350-01-087-1095, General Abrams

---

1802-GNRY-1111: Engage Targets with M48 .50 Caliber Machine Gun on M1A1 Tank

EVALUATION-CODED: NO **SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL:** 6 months

BILLETS: Platoon Commander

GRADES: 2NDLT, 1STLT, CAPT, MAJ, LTCOL

INITIAL TRAINING SETTING: FORMAL

CONDITION: Given a stationary M1A1 tank, mounted and loaded M48 .50 caliber machine gun, and targets.

STANDARD: Until the targets are suppressed or destroyed.

PERFORMANCE STEPS:
1. Move butterfly trigger safety until "F" can be seen.
2. Set SAFE/ARMED switch to ARMED position.
3. Lay aiming point on target.
4. Alert crew on intercom by announcing "CALIBER .50".
5. Fire commander's weapon.
6. When all firing is complete, announce "TC COMPLETE."
7. Set SAFE/ARMED switch to SAFE position.
8. Move butterfly trigger safety until "S" can be seen.

REFERENCES:
1. FM 3-20.12 Tank Gunnery
2. MCO 3500.27B W/ERRATUM Operational Risk Management
3. TM 9-1005-213-10 Machine Gun, Caliber .50, Browning
4. TM 9-2350-264-10-1 Operator's Manual, Operator Controls, PMCS, and Operation Under Usual Conditions, Volume 1 of 2, Tank, Combat, Full-

Tracked: 120-MM Gun, M1A1 2350-01-087-1095 General Abrams
5. TM 9-2350-264-10-2 Operator's Manual, Unusual Conditions, Troubleshooting, and Maintenance, Volume 2 of 2, Tank, Combat, Full-Tracked: 120-MM, M1A1 2350-01-087-1095, General Abrams

---

1802-GNRY-1112: Apply Failure-to-Fire Procedures for M48 .50 Caliber HB Machine Gun on M1A1 Tank

EVALUATION-CODED: NO **SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL:** 6 months

BILLETS: Platoon Commander

GRADES: 2NDLT, 1STLT, CAPT, MAJ, LTCOL

INITIAL TRAINING SETTING: FORMAL

CONDITION: Given an M1A1 tank, M48 .50 caliber HB machine gun, which has failed to fire, and appropriate collateral equipment.

STANDARD: Per the references.

PERFORMANCE STEPS:
1. Turn turret power off before attempting to inspect the weapon.
2. Determine whether there is a stoppage or a malfunction.
3. Charge the weapon and attempt to fire.
4. If the weapon fires, continue the mission.
5. If the weapon fails to fire, follow the required safety procedures and inspect the weapon.
6. Conduct appropriate corrective action as necessary.

REFERENCES:
1. FM 3-20.12 Tank Gunnery
2. MCO 3500.27B W/ERRATUM Operational Risk Management
3. MCWP 3-15.1 Machine Guns and Machine Gun Gunnery
4. TM 9-1005-213-10 Machine Gun, Caliber .50, Browning
5. TM 9-2350-264-10-1 Operator's Manual, Operator Controls, PMCS, and Operation Under Usual Conditions, Volume 1 of 2, Tank, Combat, Full-Tracked: 120-MM Gun, M1A1 2350-01-087-1095 General Abrams
6. TM 9-2350-264-10-2 Operator's Manual, Unusual Conditions, Troubleshooting, and Maintenance, Volume 2 of 2, Tank, Combat, Full-Tracked: 120-MM, M1A1 2350-01-087-1095, General Abrams

---

1802-GNRY-1113: Conduct Loader Prepare-to-Fire Checks and Services on M1A1 Tank

EVALUATION-CODED: NO **SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL:** 12 months

BILLETS: Platoon Commander

GRADES: 2NDLT

INITIAL TRAINING SETTING: FORMAL

CONDITION: Given a stationary M1A1 tank with crew and SL-3 items.

STANDARD: Per the references.

PERFORMANCE STEPS:
1. Stow ammunition, or check ammunition stowage if previously stowed.
2. Ensure loader's M240 machine gun mounting is secure; check operation of the mount.
3. Position loader's guards and safety guard frame for firing.
4. Operate breech operating group manually; ensure there is no binding of breechblock; check for wear, nicks, dirt or corrosion; clean and lubricate.
5. Remove and wring oil from recoil fluid collector sponge located in tray beneath gun mount.
6. Check replenisher.
7. Report deficiencies to organizational maintenance.

REFERENCES:
1. FM 3-20.12 Tank Gunnery
2. MCO 3500.27B W/ERRATUM Operational Risk Management
3. TM 9-2350-264-10-1 Operator's Manual, Operator Controls, PMCS, and Operation Under Usual Conditions, Volume 1 of 2, Tank, Combat, Full-Tracked: 120-MM Gun, M1A1 2350-01-087-1095 General Abrams
4. TM 9-2350-264-10-2 Operator's Manual, Unusual Conditions, Troubleshooting, and Maintenance, Volume 2 of 2, Tank, Combat, Full-Tracked: 120-MM, M1A1 2350-01-087-1095, General Abrams

---

1802-GNRY-1114: Conduct Gunner Prepare-to-Fire Checks and Services on M1A1 Tank

EVALUATION-CODED: NO **SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL:** 6 months

BILLETS: Platoon Commander

GRADES: 2NDLT

INITIAL TRAINING SETTING: FORMAL

CONDITION: Given a stationary M1A1 tank with crew and SL-3 items.

STANDARD: Per the references.

PERFORMANCE STEPS:
1. Conduct zero pressure check.
2. Check GPS.
3. Check GAS.
4. Conduct TIS checkout.
5. Conduct computer self-test.
6. Conduct computer data check.
7. Conduct crosswind sensor check.
8. Conduct firing circuit test.
9. Mount gunner's M240.
10. Check coax ammunition, stowage, and feed chute.

REFERENCES:
1. FM 3-20.12 Tank Gunnery
2. MCO 3500.27B W/ERRATUM Operational Risk Management
3. TM 9-2350-264-10-1 Operator's Manual, Operator Controls, PMCS, and Operation Under Usual Conditions, Volume 1 of 2, Tank, Combat, Full-Tracked: 120-MM Gun, M1A1 2350-01-087-1095 General Abrams
4. TM 9-2350-264-10-2 Operator's Manual, Unusual Conditions, Troubleshooting, and Maintenance, Volume 2 of 2, Tank, Combat, Full-Tracked: 120-MM, M1A1 2350-01-087-1095, General Abrams

---

1802-GNRY-1115: Boresight 120mm Gun on M1A1 Tank

EVALUATION-CODED: NO **SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL:** 6 months

BILLETS: Platoon Commander

GRADES: 2NDLT, 1STLT, CAPT, MAJ, LTCOL

INITIAL TRAINING SETTING: FORMAL

CONDITION: Given an M1A1 tank with crew, SL-3 items, M27A1 Muzzle Boresight Device (MBD), boresight target, and references.

STANDARD: So that the sights are aligned with the main gun, including initial alignment of the Muzzle Reference Sensor (MRS).

PERFORMANCE STEPS:
1. Prepare to boresight.
2. Boresight GPS.
3. Align MRS.
4. Align TIS.
5. Boresight GAS.

REFERENCES:
1. FM 3-20.12 Tank Gunnery
2. MCO 3500.27B W/ERRATUM Operational Risk Management
3. TM 08953A-10/1-3 Operator's Manual for Boresighting and Zeroing M1A1 Tank Armament
4. TM 9-2350-264-10-1 Operator's Manual, Operator Controls, PMCS, and Operation Under Usual Conditions, Volume 1 of 2, Tank, Combat, Full-Tracked: 120-MM Gun, M1A1 2350-01-087-1095 General Abrams
5. TM 9-2350-264-10-2 Operator's Manual, Unusual Conditions, Troubleshooting, and Maintenance, Volume 2 of 2, Tank, Combat, Full-Tracked: 120-MM, M1A1 2350-01-087-1095, General Abrams

---

1802-GNRY-1116: Zero 120mm Gun on M1A1 Tank

EVALUATION-CODED: NO **SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL:** 6 months

BILLETS: Platoon Commander

GRADES: 2NDLT, 1STLT, CAPT, MAJ, LTCOL

INITIAL TRAINING SETTING: FORMAL

CONDITION: Given a stationary, boresighted, operational M1A1 tank on level ground, crew, 9 rounds of HEAT TP-T, 9 rounds of TPCSDS-T 120mm ammunition, zeroing target at a range of 500 meters, and references.

STANDARD: So that center of impact of the last three rounds fired is within .25 mils of the aiming point.

PERFORMANCE STEPS:
1. Prepare for zero.
2. Fire for zero.
3. Fire for confirmation.
4. Align TIS.
5. Align gas.
6. Record data.

REFERENCES:
1. FM 3-20.12 Tank Gunnery
2. MCO 3500.27B W/ERRATUM Operational Risk Management
3. TM 08953A-10/1-3 Operator's Manual for Boresighting and Zeroing M1A1 Tank Armament
4. TM 9-2350-264-10-1 Operator's Manual, Operator Controls, PMCS, and Operation Under Usual Conditions, Volume 1 of 2, Tank, Combat, Full-Tracked: 120-MM Gun, M1A1 2350-01-087-1095 General Abrams
5. TM 9-2350-264-10-2 Operator's Manual, Unusual Conditions, Troubleshooting, and Maintenance, Volume 2 of 2, Tank, Combat, Full-Tracked: 120-MM, M1A1 2350-01-087-1095, General Abrams

---

1802-GNRY-1117: Conduct Failure-to-Fire Procedures for M1A1 Tank Main Gun

EVALUATION-CODED: NO **SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL:** 6 months

BILLETS: Platoon Commander

GRADES: 2NDLT, 1STLT, CAPT, MAJ, LTCOL

INITIAL TRAINING SETTING: FORMAL

CONDITION: Given an M1A1 tank with all crew stations set for normal mode operation, crew, SL-3 items, and a main gun failure-to-fire (misfire).

STANDARD: Per the references.

PERFORMANCE STEPS:
1. Announce "ON THE WAY".
2. Attempt to fire using the electric trigger.
3. Gun did not fire, announce, "MISFIRE".
4. Announce "ON THE WAY".
5. Attempt to fire using the manual firing device (blasting machine).
6. Gun did not fire, announce, "MISFIRE".
7. Perform crew procedures, as appropriate.
8. Keep main gun aimed at the target and the GPCH palm switch depressed.
9. If a fault was identified during the loader's checks, announce "ON THE

WAY" and attempt to fire using GPCH. If round did not fire announce, "MISFIRE" and immediately attempt to fire using manual firing device (blasting machine). If the gun failed to fire, announce, "MISFIRE" and move GUN SELECT switch to TRIGGER SAFE. If no faults were found during the loader's checks, move the GUN SELECT switch to TRIGGER SAFE.

10. Announce "MISFIRE".
11. If the round still failed to fire the loader will leave the SAFE/ARMED lever in the ARMED position.
12. Perform crew procedures as appropriate.
13. Move GUN SELECT switch to the MAIN position.
14. Announce "ON THE WAY" and attempt to fire using any electrical trigger.
15. If the gun still fails to fire, announce, "MISFIRE".
16. Immediately attempt to fire using the manual firing device (blasting machine).
17. If the gun still fails to fire, announce, "MISFIRE".
18. Move GUN SELECT switch to the TRIGGER SAFE position.
19. Perform the crew procedures as appropriate.

REFERENCES:

1. FM 3-20.12 Tank Gunnery
2. MCO 3500.27B W/ERRATUM Operational Risk Management
3. TM 9-2350-264-10-1 Operator's Manual, Operator Controls, PMCS, and Operation Under Usual Conditions, Volume 1 of 2, Tank, Combat, Full-Tracked: 120-MM Gun, M1A1 2350-01-087-1095 General Abrams
4. TM 9-2350-264-10-2 Operator's Manual, Unusual Conditions, Troubleshooting, and Maintenance, Volume 2 of 2, Tank, Combat, Full-Tracked: 120-MM, M1A1 2350-01-087-1095, General Abrams

---

1802-GNRY-1118: Engage Targets with 120mm Main Gun from Gunner's Station on M1A1 Tank

EVALUATION-CODED: NO **SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL:** 12 months

BILLETS: Platoon Commander

GRADES: 2NDLT

INITIAL TRAINING SETTING: FORMAL

CONDITION: Given a moving or stationary M1A1 tank with crew, ammunition, one or more stationary or moving targets, a fire command, and the references.

STANDARD: Until each target is suppressed or destroyed within 5 seconds.

PERFORMANCE STEPS:

1. Set FIRE MODE switch to NORMAL and GUN SELECT switch to MAIN.
2. Select ammunition, or ensure correct reticle is in GAS.
3. Identify target.
4. Switch to 10X magnification if precision engagement.
5. Place aiming point or proper range line on center mass of target.
6. Lase and relay on center mass if precision engagement.
7. Announce "ON THE WAY" and fire.
8. Employ reengage method as needed.
9. Employ gunner's standard adjustment as needed.

REFERENCES:
1. FM 3-20.12 Tank Gunnery
2. MCO 3500.27B W/ERRATUM Operational Risk Management
3. TM 9-2350-264-10-1 Operator's Manual, Operator Controls, PMCS, and Operation Under Usual Conditions, Volume 1 of 2, Tank, Combat, Full-Tracked: 120-MM Gun, M1A1 2350-01-087-1095 General Abrams
4. TM 9-2350-264-10-2 Operator's Manual, Unusual Conditions, Troubleshooting, and Maintenance, Volume 2 of 2, Tank, Combat, Full-Tracked: 120-MM, M1A1 2350-01-087-1095, General Abrams

---

1802-GNRY-1119: Engage Targets with 120mm Main Gun from Commander's Weapon Station on M1A1 Tank

EVALUATION-CODED: NO **SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL:** 6 months

BILLETS: Platoon Commander

GRADES: 2NDLT, 1STLT, CAPT, MAJ, LTCOL

INITIAL TRAINING SETTING: FORMAL

CONDITION: Given a stationary or moving M1A1 tank with crew, 120mm ammunition, one or more moving or stationary targets, and the references.

STANDARD: Using precision and battlesight gunnery techniques.

PERFORMANCE STEPS:
1. Prepare the tank for three-man crew operations.
2. Issue a fire command by announcing "LOAD (type of ammunition)" and, at the same time, lay the main gun for direction.
3. Ensure the AMMUNITION SELECT switch is set to the announced ammunition.
4. Lay center mass of the target.
5. Lase to target or press MANUAL RANGE BATTLE SGT button to ensure the indexed range was displayed.
6. Listen for "UP" from loader, announce "ON THE WAY" and fire.

REFERENCES:
1. FM 3-20.12 Tank Gunnery
2. MCO 3500.27B W/ERRATUM Operational Risk Management
3. TM 9-2350-264-10-1 Operator's Manual, Operator Controls, PMCS, and Operation Under Usual Conditions, Volume 1 of 2, Tank, Combat, Full-Tracked: 120-MM Gun, M1A1 2350-01-087-1095 General Abrams
4. TM 9-2350-264-10-2 Operator's Manual, Unusual Conditions, Troubleshooting, and Maintenance, Volume 2 of 2, Tank, Combat, Full-Tracked: 120-MM, M1A1 2350-01-087-1095, General Abrams

---

1802-GNRY-1120: Conduct After-Firing Checks and Services on M1A1 Tank

EVALUATION-CODED: NO **SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL:** 12 months

BILLETS: Platoon Commander

GRADES: 2NDLT

INITIAL TRAINING SETTING: FORMAL

CONDITION: Given a stationary M1A1 tank with crew, SL 3 items, and references.

STANDARD: So that all deficiencies are identified and corrected if authorized, or reported to organizational maintenance if not authorized.

PERFORMANCE STEPS:
1. Clean and lubricate the M48 .50 caliber machinegun.
2. Clean and lubricate the M240 7.62mm machinegun(s).
3. Service the 120mm gun tube.
4. Service the breech group.
5. Remove and ring oil from recoil fluid residue collector sponge located in tray beneath gun mount.
6. Inspect the main gun mount.
7. Inspect ammunition stowage.
8. Clear smoke grenade launcher discharger tube drain holes in base with a stiff wire.

REFERENCES:
1. FM 3-20.12 Tank Gunnery
2. MCO 3500.27B W/ERRATUM Operational Risk Management
3. TM 9-1005-213-10 Machine Gun, Caliber .50, Browning
4. TM 9-1005-313-10 Maintenance Manual, 7.62mm Machinegun M240G
5. TM 9-2350-264-10-1 Operator's Manual, Operator Controls, PMCS, and Operation Under Usual Conditions, Volume 1 of 2, Tank, Combat, Full-Tracked: 120-MM Gun, M1A1 2350-01-087-1095 General Abrams
6. TM 9-2350-264-10-2 Operator's Manual, Unusual Conditions, Troubleshooting, and Maintenance, Volume 2 of 2, Tank, Combat, Full-Tracked: 120-MM, M1A1 2350-01-087-1095, General Abrams

---

1802-GNRY-1121: Determine Range Using Laser Rangefinder System on M1A1 Tank

EVALUATION-CODED: NO **SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL:** 6 months

BILLETS: Platoon Commander

GRADES: 2NDLT, 1STLT, CAPT, MAJ, LTCOL

INITIAL TRAINING SETTING: FORMAL

CONDITION: Given a moving or stationary M1A1 tank with crew, target at a range between 200 and 7,990 meters, and references.

STANDARD: Within 10 meters.

PERFORMANCE STEPS:
1. Remove laser safety guard.
2. Ensure laser RANGE switch is set to SAFE position; if not, set laser RANGE switch to SAFE position; both the fault symbol "F" in GPS and the FIRE CONTROL MALFUNTION light on commander's panel should be off; if not, conduct computer self-test.
3. Set RANGE switch to either of the ARM positions.

4. Using gunner's handles while looking through GPS, lay either the GPS or TIS reticle on the target.
5. Squeeze either or both palm switches on gunner's handles and press down and release either or both LRF pushbuttons.
6. If a "multiple returns" indication appears in GPS view or commander's GPS extension view, the commander should check the target, estimate the range, and decide which ARM position should be used or re-lay the reticle on target and lase again.
7. Enter range data manually using CCP or MANUAL RANGE BATTLE SGT switch, as needed.
8. Install laser safety guard.
9. Note: Ranges less than 200 meters can be inputted to accommodate canister round if the selection switch is set to CAN or GUN SELECT switch to COAX.

REFERENCES:
1. FM 3-20.12 Tank Gunnery
2. MCO 3500.27B W/ERRATUM Operational Risk Management
3. TM 9-2350-264-10-1 Operator's Manual, Operator Controls, PMCS, and Operation Under Usual Conditions, Volume 1 of 2, Tank, Combat, Full-Tracked: 120-MM Gun, M1A1 2350-01-087-1095 General Abrams
4. TM 9-2350-264-10-2 Operator's Manual, Unusual Conditions, Troubleshooting, and Maintenance, Volume 2 of 2, Tank, Combat, Full-Tracked: 120-MM, M1A1 2350-01-087-1095, General Abrams

---

1802-GNRY-1122: Operate Gunner's Primary Sight (GPS)

EVALUATION-CODED: NO **SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL:** 6 months

BILLETS: Platoon Commander

GRADES: 2NDLT, 1STLT, CAPT, MAJ, LTCOL

INITIAL TRAINING SETTING: FORMAL

CONDITION: Given a stationary M1A1 tank with crew and a target.

STANDARD: Per the references.

PERFORMANCE STEPS:
1. Power up gunner's station.
2. Conduct GPS functional check.
3. Set DEFROSTER switch to ON, as needed.
4. Adjust brightness of reticle.
5. Conduct PANEL LIGHTS TEST periodically and adjust panel lights as needed.
6. Check MRS adjustment.
7. Focus reticle in GPS eyepiece.
8. Set FIRE CONTROL MODE switch to desired position.
9. Null out reticle drift.
10. Turn FLTR/CLEAR/SHTR switch to desired position.
11. Set GUN SELECT switch to desired position; when GUN SELECT switch is set to MAIN, set AMMUNITION SELECT switch to desired ammunition.
12. Move MAGNIFICATION lever to desired position.

REFERENCES:
1. FM 3-20.12 Tank Gunnery
2. MCO 3500.27B W/ERRATUM Operational Risk Management
3. TM 9-2350-264-10-1 Operator's Manual, Operator Controls, PMCS, and Operation Under Usual Conditions, Volume 1 of 2, Tank, Combat, Full-Tracked: 120-MM Gun, M1A1 2350-01-087-1095 General Abrams
4. TM 9-2350-264-10-2 Operator's Manual, Unusual Conditions, Troubleshooting, and Maintenance, Volume 2 of 2, Tank, Combat, Full-Tracked: 120-MM, M1A1 2350-01-087-1095, General Abrams

---

1802-GNRY-1123: Operate Thermal Imaging System (TIS)

EVALUATION-CODED: NO **SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL:** 6 months

BILLETS: Platoon Commander

GRADES: 2NDLT, 1STLT, CAPT, MAJ, LTCOL

INITIAL TRAINING SETTING: FORMAL

CONDITION: Given a stationary M1A1 tank with crew, target at 50 meters distance, and references.

STANDARD: So that a clear sharp image of the target is observed.

PERFORMANCE STEPS:
1. Power up gunner's station.
2. Set THERMAL MODE switch to STBY.
3. Check that TRU READY light comes on within 5-15 minutes after THERMAL MODE switch is set to STBY; if it does not come on within 15 minutes, notify organizational maintenance.
4. When TRU READY light comes on, set THERMAL MODE switch to ON.
5. Set FLTR/CLEAR/SHTR switch to SHTR.
6. Open GPS ballistic doors.
7. Set THERMAL MAGNIFICATION to desired position.
8. Set POLARITY switch to WHITE HOT or BLACK HOT position as desired.
9. Adjust reticle and symbols in GPS eyepiece as desired.
10. Lay reticle in GPS eyepiece on target.
11. Turn SENSITIVITY knob until target is clear.
12. Turn CONTRAST knob to get best image of target.
13. If FAULT light comes on during operations, notify organizational maintenance.
14. Push and turn FOCUS knob to get sharpest image of target.
15. When operation of TIS is completed set THERMAL MODE switch to desired position.
16. Set FLTR/CLEAR/SHTR switch to CLEAR and close right ballistic door if TIS will not be used immediately.

REFERENCES:
1. FM 3-20.12 Tank Gunnery
2. MCO 3500.27B W/ERRATUM Operational Risk Management
3. TM 9-2350-264-10-1 Operator's Manual, Operator Controls, PMCS, and Operation Under Usual Conditions, Volume 1 of 2, Tank, Combat, Full-Tracked: 120-MM Gun, M1A1 2350-01-087-1095 General Abrams

4. TM 9-2350-264-10-2 Operator's Manual, Unusual Conditions, Troubleshooting, and Maintenance, Volume 2 of 2, Tank, Combat, Full-Tracked: 120-MM, M1A1 2350-01-087-1095, General Abrams

---

1802-GNRY-1124: Operate Gunner's Auxiliary Sight (GAS)

EVALUATION-CODED: NO **SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL:** 6 months

BILLETS: Platoon Commander

GRADES: 2NDLT, 1STLT, CAPT, MAJ, LTCOL

INITIAL TRAINING SETTING: FORMAL

CONDITION: Given a stationary M1A1 tank with crew, target, and references.

STANDARD: To identify the range mark and sighting point for each reticle.

PERFORMANCE STEPS:
1. Power up gunner's station.
2. Turn reticle select knob to APFSDS.
3. Adjust reticle brightness knob as needed.
4. Look in GAS eyepiece to verify proper reticle.
5. Find the SABOT sighting reticle point.
6. Turn reticle select knob to HEAT.
7. Look in GAS eyepiece to verify proper reticle.
8. Find the HEAT sighting reticle point.
9. Turn FILTER knob as necessary to use GAS filter.

REFERENCES:
1. FM 3-20.12 Tank Gunnery
2. MCO 3500.27B W/ERRATUM Operational Risk Management
3. TM 9-2350-264-10-1 Operator's Manual, Operator Controls, PMCS, and Operation Under Usual Conditions, Volume 1 of 2, Tank, Combat, Full-Tracked: 120-MM Gun, M1A1 2350-01-087-1095 General Abrams
4. TM 9-2350-264-10-2 Operator's Manual, Unusual Conditions, Troubleshooting, and Maintenance, Volume 2 of 2, Tank, Combat, Full-Tracked: 120-MM, M1A1 2350-01-087-1095, General Abrams

---

1802-GNRY-1125: Reload M1A1 Tank Main Gun

EVALUATION-CODED: NO **SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL:** 6 months

BILLETS: Platoon Commander

GRADES: 2NDLT, 1STLT, CAPT, MAJ, LTCOL

INITIAL TRAINING SETTING: FORMAL

CONDITION: Given a stationary M1A1 tank with crew and main gun ammunition.

STANDARD: Per the references.

PERFORMANCE STEPS:
1. Check replenisher.
2. Adjust loader's seat for loading.
3. Have gunner unlock gun travel lock.
4. Unlock turret lock.
5. Open breechblock manually.
6. Position loader's guards and safety guard frame for firing.
7. Ensure GUN/TURRET DRIVE switch is in EL UNCPL position when loading.
8. Ensure SAFE/ARMED handle is in SAFE position, stub base deflector moves down to allow loading of main gun, and MAIN GUN STATUS SAFE light is lit.
9. Set TURRET BLOWER switch to ON.
10. Remove desired round from standard rack or swing rack.
11. Ram round forcibly into main gun breech so base of round trips extractors and breechblock closes.
12. Clear the path of recoil.
13. Place the SAFE/ARMED handle in the ARMED (up) position.
14. Ensure yellow ARMED light is lit and announce "UP."

REFERENCES:
1. FM 3-20.12 Tank Gunnery
2. MCO 3500.27B W/ERRATUM Operational Risk Management
3. TM 9-2350-264-10-1 Operator's Manual, Operator Controls, PMCS, and Operation Under Usual Conditions, Volume 1 of 2, Tank, Combat, Full-Tracked: 120-MM Gun, M1A1 2350-01-087-1095 General Abrams
4. TM 9-2350-264-10-2 Operator's Manual, Unusual Conditions, Troubleshooting, and Maintenance, Volume 2 of 2, Tank, Combat, Full-Tracked: 120-MM, M1A1 2350-01-087-1095, General Abrams

---

1802-GNRY-1126: Unload Stuck Round on M1A1 Tank

EVALUATION-CODED: NO **SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL:** 12 months

BILLETS: Platoon Commander

GRADES: 2NDLT

INITIAL TRAINING SETTING: FORMAL

CONDITION: Given a stationary M1A1 tank with main gun, round stuck in gun chamber, crew, and SL-3 items.

STANDARD: Per the references.

PERFORMANCE STEPS:
1. Move SAFE/ARMED handle to safe position.
2. Remove stub base deflector.
3. If round cannot be removed by hand, manually close and open breechblock.
4. Lower main gun.
5. Put tarpaulin or other suitable material behind main gun breech to catch stuck round.
6. Put rammer-staff into muzzle end of main gun until bell housing is against round.
7. Pull on rope to push round out of chamber. If round will not come out, notify organizational maintenance.

8. Ensure main gun chamber and tube are clear of powder. If not, clean main gun tube.
9. Close breechblock manually and install stub base deflector.

REFERENCES:
1. FM 3-20.12 Tank Gunnery
2. MCO 3500.27B W/ERRATUM Operational Risk Management
3. TM 9-2350-264-10-1 Operator's Manual, Operator Controls, PMCS, and Operation Under Usual Conditions, Volume 1 of 2, Tank, Combat, Full-Tracked: 120-MM Gun, M1A1 2350-01-087-1095 General Abrams
4. TM 9-2350-264-10-2 Operator's Manual, Unusual Conditions, Troubleshooting, and Maintenance, Volume 2 of 2, Tank, Combat, Full-Tracked: 120-MM, M1A1 2350-01-087-1095, General Abrams

---

1802-GNRY-1127: Unload Stuck Stub Base on M1A1 Tank

EVALUATION-CODED: NO **SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL:** 12 months

BILLETS: Platoon Commander

GRADES: 2NDLT

INITIAL TRAINING SETTING: FORMAL

CONDITION: Given a stationary M1A1 tank with a stub base that did not extract after round was fired, crew, and SL-3 items.

STANDARD: Per the references.

PERFORMANCE STEPS:
1. Move SAFE/ARMED handle to SAFE (down) position.
2. Lift lever on stub base deflector.
3. If spent stub base cannot be removed from gun chamber by hand, manually close and open the breechblock.
4. If spent stub base still does not extract, place extractor tool on stub base and pry or pull stub base from gun chamber.
5. Put lever down on stub base deflector.
6. If spent stub base still does not extract, conduct UNLOAD STUCK ROUND procedure.

REFERENCES:
1. FM 3-20.12 Tank Gunnery
2. MCO 3500.27B W/ERRATUM Operational Risk Management
3. TM 9-2350-264-10-1 Operator's Manual, Operator Controls, PMCS, and Operation Under Usual Conditions, Volume 1 of 2, Tank, Combat, Full-Tracked: 120-MM Gun, M1A1 2350-01-087-1095 General Abrams
4. TM 9-2350-264-10-2 Operator's Manual, Unusual Conditions, Troubleshooting, and Maintenance, Volume 2 of 2, Tank, Combat, Full-Tracked: 120-MM, M1A1 2350-01-087-1095, General Abrams

---

1802-GNRY-1128: Perform Preventive Maintenance Checks and Services on M257 Grenade Launcher System

EVALUATION-CODED: NO **SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL:** 12 months

BILLETS: Platoon Commander

GRADES: 2NDLT

INITIAL TRAINING SETTING: FORMAL

CONDITION: Given an M1A1 tank, appropriate collateral materials, and cleaning gear.

STANDARD: Per the references.

PERFORMANCE STEPS:
1. Clean tube, especially electrical contact at base.
2. Report discrepancies to organizational maintenance.

REFERENCES:
1. FM 3-20.12 Tank Gunnery
2. MCO 3500.27B W/ERRATUM Operational Risk Management
3. TM 9-2350-264-10-1 Operator's Manual, Operator Controls, PMCS, and Operation Under Usual Conditions, Volume 1 of 2, Tank, Combat, Full-Tracked: 120-MM Gun, M1A1 2350-01-087-1095 General Abrams
4. TM 9-2350-264-10-2 Operator's Manual, Unusual Conditions, Troubleshooting, and Maintenance, Volume 2 of 2, Tank, Combat, Full-Tracked: 120-MM, M1A1 2350-01-087-1095, General Abrams

---

1802-GNRY-1129: Load M257 Grenade Launcher System

EVALUATION-CODED: NO **SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL:** 12 months

BILLETS: Platoon Commander

GRADES: 2NDLT

INITIAL TRAINING SETTING: FORMAL

CONDITION: Given an M1A1 tank and appropriate collateral materials.

STANDARD: Per the references.

PERFORMANCE STEPS:
1. Set the TURRET POWER switch to OFF.
2. Remove covers from grenade dischargers.
3. Check grenade discharger tubes for dirt or sharp objects and clean as required.
4. Insert grenades into tubes.
5. Turn each grenade 1/4 to 1/2 turn clockwise to ensure a solid electrical connection.
6. Replace covers if required.

REFERENCES:
1. FM 3-20.12 Tank Gunnery
2. MCO 3500.27B W/ERRATUM Operational Risk Management
3. TM 9-2350-264-10-1 Operator's Manual, Operator Controls, PMCS, and Operation Under Usual Conditions, Volume 1 of 2, Tank, Combat, Full-Tracked: 120-MM Gun, M1A1 2350-01-087-1095 General Abrams
4. TM 9-2350-264-10-2 Operator's Manual, Unusual Conditions, Troubleshooting, and Maintenance, Volume 2 of 2, Tank, Combat, Full-Tracked: 120-MM, M1A1 2350-01-087-1095, General Abrams

---

1802-GNRY-1130: Fire M257 Grenade Launcher System

EVALUATION-CODED: NO **SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL:** 12 months

BILLETS: Platoon Commander

GRADES: 2NDLT, 1STLT, CAPT, MAJ, LTCOL

INITIAL TRAINING SETTING: FORMAL

CONDITION: Given an M1A1 tank, and appropriate collateral materials.

STANDARD: Per the references.

PERFORMANCE STEPS:
1. Announce "GRENADE LAUNCHER" and traverse the turret to desired direction of fire.
2. Fire the grenades.

REFERENCES:
1. FM 3-20.12 Tank Gunnery
2. MCO 3500.27B W/ERRATUM Operational Risk Management
3. TM 9-2350-264-10-1 Operator's Manual, Operator Controls, PMCS, and Operation Under Usual Conditions, Volume 1 of 2, Tank, Combat, Full-Tracked: 120-MM Gun, M1A1 2350-01-087-1095 General Abrams
4. TM 9-2350-264-10-2 Operator's Manual, Unusual Conditions, Troubleshooting, and Maintenance, Volume 2 of 2, Tank, Combat, Full-Tracked: 120-MM, M1A1 2350-01-087-1095, General Abrams

---

1802-GNRY-1131: Apply Failure-to-Fire Procedures on M257 Grenade Launcher System

EVALUATION-CODED: NO **SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL:** 12 months

BILLETS: Platoon Commander

GRADES: 2NDLT, 1STLT, CAPT, MAJ, LTCOL

INITIAL TRAINING SETTING: FORMAL

CONDITION: Given an M1A1 tank and appropriate collateral materials.

STANDARD: Per the references.

PERFORMANCE STEPS:
1. Set TURRET POWER to "OFF".
2. Check to ensure grenades are properly seated.
3. Point turret in safe direction.
4. Attempt to fire again.

REFERENCES:
1. FM 3-20.12 Tank Gunnery
2. MCI 18.44 M1A1 Armament and Ammunition
3. TM 9-2350-264-10-1 Operator's Manual, Operator Controls, PMCS, and Operation Under Usual Conditions, Volume 1 of 2, Tank, Combat, Full-Tracked: 120-MM Gun, M1A1 2350-01-087-1095 General Abrams
4. TM 9-2350-264-10-2 Operator's Manual, Unusual Conditions, Troubleshooting, and Maintenance, Volume 2 of 2, Tank, Combat, Full-Tracked: 120-MM, M1A1 2350-01-087-1095, General Abrams

---

1802-GNRY-1132: Unload M257 Grenade Launcher System

EVALUATION-CODED: NO **SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL:** 12 months

BILLETS: Platoon Commander

GRADES: 2NDLT

INITIAL TRAINING SETTING: FORMAL

CONDITION: Given an M1A1 tank and appropriate collateral materials.

STANDARD: Per the references.

PERFORMANCE STEPS:
1. Set TURRET POWER to "OFF".
2. Remove grenades from tubes.
3. Replace covers.

REFERENCES:
1. FM 3-20.12 Tank Gunnery
2. MCO 3500.27B W/ERRATUM Operational Risk Management
3. TM 9-2350-264-10-1 Operator's Manual, Operator Controls, PMCS, and Operation Under Usual Conditions, Volume 1 of 2, Tank, Combat, Full-Tracked: 120-MM Gun, M1A1 2350-01-087-1095 General Abrams
4. TM 9-2350-264-10-2 Operator's Manual, Unusual Conditions, Troubleshooting, and Maintenance, Volume 2 of 2, Tank, Combat, Full-Tracked: 120-MM, M1A1 2350-01-087-1095, General Abrams

---

1802-GNRY-1133: Conduct Screening Test of M1A1 Main Gun

EVALUATION-CODED: NO **SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL:** 6 months

BILLETS: Platoon Commander

GRADES: 2NDLT, 1STLT, CAPT, MAJ, LTCOL

INITIAL TRAINING SETTING: FORMAL

CONDITION: Given an M1A1 tank with crew, ammunition, a range suitable for conducting the required firing, and references.

STANDARD: To ensure the tank can fire accurately using the fleet zero (CCF) method of calibration.

PERFORMANCE STEPS:
1. Establish proofing team.
2. Establish screening targets.
3. Conduct screening test.
4. Determine mean point of impact and individual tank CCF.
5. Screen under unusual conditions as required.
6. Boresight the .50 caliber machine gun.
7. Boresight the coaxial machine gun.
8. Zero the .50 caliber machine gun.
9. Zero the coaxial machine gun.

REFERENCES:
1. FM 3-20.12 Tank Gunnery
2. MCO 3500.27B W/ERRATUM Operational Risk Management
3. TM 08953A-10/1-3 Operator's Manual for Boresighting and Zeroing M1A1 Tank Armament
4. TM 9-2350-264-10-1 Operator's Manual, Operator Controls, PMCS, and Operation Under Usual Conditions, Volume 1 of 2, Tank, Combat, Full-Tracked: 120-MM Gun, M1A1 2350-01-087-1095 General Abrams
5. TM 9-2350-264-10-2 Operator's Manual, Unusual Conditions, Troubleshooting, and Maintenance, Volume 2 of 2, Tank, Combat, Full-Tracked: 120-MM, M1A1 2350-01-087-1095, General Abrams

---

1802-GNRY-1134: Zero M240 Coaxial Machine Gun on M1A1 Tank

EVALUATION-CODED: NO **SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL:** 6 months

BILLETS: Platoon Commander

GRADES: 2NDLT, 1STLT, CAPT, MAJ, LTCOL

INITIAL TRAINING SETTING: FORMAL

CONDITION: Given a stationary M1A1 tank on level ground, crew, mounted and loaded M240 coaxial machinegun, 50 rounds of 7.62mm ammunition, clearly defined visible target at a range of 800 meters, and references.

STANDARD: So the reticle aiming point is centered in the strike area.

PERFORMANCE STEPS:
1. Sight through the GPS eyepiece. Using GPCH, lay the reticle aiming point on the target.
2. Lase to target or manually input 800 meter range.
3. Fire a burst of 20-30 rounds. Mentally note the center-of-impact of the bullet strike area. Do not change the lay of the gun or reticle. Keep the GPCH centered.

4. Without disturbing the lay of the gun, release the gunner's handle.
5. Open the CCP door. Move the CCP power switch to the on position.
6. Without disturbing the lay of the gun, press the BORESIGHT push button; the push button will illuminate.
7. Move the RETICLE ADJUST toggle switch up (U), down (D), left (L), or right (R), as needed, to center the reticle aiming point to within 3 mils of the strike area.
8. Press the ENTER push button. The BORESIGHT push button light will go out. The boresight information is stored in the computer.
9. Without disturbing the lay of the gun, press the ZERO push button; the push button will illuminate.
10. Move the RETICLE ADJUST toggle switch up (U), down (D), left (L), or right (R), as needed, to center the reticle aiming point to within 3 mils of the strike area.
11. Without disturbing the lay of the gun (keep the gunner's handles centered), fire another burst of 20-30 rounds.
12. Press the ENTER push button. The ZERO push button light will go out. The zero information is stored in the computer. Repeat step 1 only, then go to step 12.
13. If the reticle aiming point is centered in the strike area, the coax machine gun is zeroed; repeat step 9. Record the zero setting in the display, and go to step 14. If the reticle aiming point is not centered in the strike area, repeat steps 9 through 13.
14. Press the ENTER push button. The ZERO push button light will go out. The zero information is stored in the computer. Repeat step 1 only, then go to step 12.
15. Close and latch the CCP door.

REFERENCES:

1. FM 3-20.12 Tank Gunnery
2. MCO 3500.27B W/ERRATUM Operational Risk Management
3. MCWP 3-15.1 Machine Guns and Machine Gun Gunnery
4. TM 08953A-10/1-3 Operator's Manual for Boresighting and Zeroing M1A1 Tank Armament
5. TM 9-1005-313-10 Maintenance Manual, 7.62mm Machinegun M240G
6. TM 9-2350-264-10-1 Operator's Manual, Operator Controls, PMCS, and Operation Under Usual Conditions, Volume 1 of 2, Tank, Combat, Full-Tracked: 120-MM Gun, M1A1 2350-01-087-1095 General Abrams
7. TM 9-2350-264-10-2 Operator's Manual, Unusual Conditions, Troubleshooting, and Maintenance, Volume 2 of 2, Tank, Combat, Full-Tracked: 120-MM, M1A1 2350-01-087-1095, General Abrams

---

1802-GNRY-1135: Engage Targets with Coaxial Machine Gun from Commander's Station on M1A1 Tank

EVALUATION-CODED: NO **SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL:** 6 months

BILLETS: Platoon Commander

GRADES: 2NDLT, 1STLT, CAPT, MAJ, LTCOL

INITIAL TRAINING SETTING: FORMAL

CONDITION: Given a stationary M1A1 tank with a three man crew, 7.62mm ammunition, targets, and references.

STANDARD: Until the targets are suppressed or destroyed.

PERFORMANCE STEPS:
1. Acquire and identify target.
2. Use the tank commander's power control handle to lay the center of the GPS reticle on target.
3. Lase to the target.
4. Inspect the GPS symbols for multiple returns or malfunction.
5. Move GUN SELECT switch to COAX.
6. Announce "FROM MY POSITION" and fire.
7. Cease fire when targets are suppressed or destroyed, and announce "TC COMPLETE".

REFERENCES:
1. FM 3-20.12 Tank Gunnery
2. MCO 3500.27B W/ERRATUM Operational Risk Management
3. MCWP 3-15.1 Machine Guns and Machine Gun Gunnery
4. TM 9-1005-313-10 Maintenance Manual, 7.62mm Machinegun M240G
5. TM 9-2350-264-10-1 Operator's Manual, Operator Controls, PMCS, and Operation Under Usual Conditions, Volume 1 of 2, Tank, Combat, Full-Tracked: 120-MM Gun, M1A1 2350-01-087-1095 General Abrams
6. TM 9-2350-264-10-2 Operator's Manual, Unusual Conditions, Troubleshooting, and Maintenance, Volume 2 of 2, Tank, Combat, Full-Tracked: 120-MM, M1A1 2350-01-087-1095, General Abrams

---

1802-GNRY-1136: Engage Targets with Coaxial Machine Gun from Gunner's Station on M1A1 Tank

EVALUATION-CODED: NO **SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL:** 12 months

BILLETS: Platoon Commander

GRADES: 2NDLT

INITIAL TRAINING SETTING: FORMAL

CONDITION: Given a moving or stationary M1A1 tank with crew, 7.62mm ammunition, targets within effective range, and references.

STANDARD: Until targets are suppressed, destroyed, or the order "CEASE FIRE" is given.

PERFORMANCE STEPS:
1. Set GUN SELECT switch on GPS to COAX.
2. Use gunner's handles or hydraulic pump handle and manual drive handle to lay center of GPS reticle on target.
3. Fire coaxial machine gun.
4. Gunner changes coaxial machine gun barrel as necessary.
5. Gunner conducts immediate action on coaxial machine gun as necessary.
6. Direct loader to empty spent case collection box.

REFERENCES:
1. FM 3-20.12 Tank Gunnery
2. MCO 3500.27B W/ERRATUM Operational Risk Management
3. MCWP 3-15.1 Machine Guns and Machine Gun Gunnery
4. TM 9-1005-313-10 Maintenance Manual, 7.62mm Machinegun M240G
5. TM 9-2350-264-10-1 Operator's Manual, Operator Controls, PMCS, and Operation Under Usual Conditions, Volume 1 of 2, Tank, Combat, Full-Tracked: 120-MM Gun, M1A1 2350-01-087-1095 General Abrams
6. TM 9-2350-264-10-2 Operator's Manual, Unusual Conditions, Troubleshooting, and Maintenance, Volume 2 of 2, Tank, Combat, Full-Tracked: 120-MM, M1A1 2350-01-087-1095, General Abrams

---

1802-GNRY-1137: Stow Ordnance in M1A1 Tank

EVALUATION-CODED: NO **SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL:** 12 months

BILLETS: Platoon Commander

GRADES: 2NDLT

INITIAL TRAINING SETTING: FORMAL

CONDITION: Given a stationary M1A1 tank that requires an initial load or resupply of ordnance, 120mm main gun ammunition, 7.62 ammunition, caliber .50 ammunition, UK L8A1 RP smoke grenades, hand grenades, and references.

STANDARD: So all main gun rounds are in proper ammunition compartments, secured by spring clips on each rack, identified by appropriate round plunger disks, and with all small arms ammunition secured in locations designated in the loading plan.

PERFORMANCE STEPS:
1. Stow 6 rounds of 120mm ammunition in the hull ammunition compartment (Caution: do not stow M865 TPCSDS-T in the hull stowage compartment).
2. Stow 17 rounds of 120mm ammunition in the ready ammunition compartment.
3. Stow 17 rounds of 120mm ammunition in the semi-ready ammunition compartment.
4. Stow all small arms ammunition in accordance with the load plan.

REFERENCES:
1. FM 3-20.12 Tank Gunnery
2. MCO 3500.27B W/ERRATUM Operational Risk Management
3. TM 9-2350-264-10-1 Operator's Manual, Operator Controls, PMCS, and Operation Under Usual Conditions, Volume 1 of 2, Tank, Combat, Full-Tracked: 120-MM Gun, M1A1 2350-01-087-1095 General Abrams
4. TM 9-2350-264-10-2 Operator's Manual, Unusual Conditions, Troubleshooting, and Maintenance, Volume 2 of 2, Tank, Combat, Full-Tracked: 120-MM, M1A1 2350-01-087-1095, General Abrams

---

1802-GNRY-1138: Conduct Armament Accuracy Checks

EVALUATION-CODED: NO **SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL:** 1 month

BILLETS: Platoon Commander

GRADES: 2NDLT

INITIAL TRAINING SETTING: FORMAL

CONDITION: Given an M1A1 tank, a crew, the appropriate collateral equipment, and references.

STANDARD: To ensure the fire control system is operational.

PERFORMANCE STEPS:
1. Check main accumulator pressure.
2. Check power elevation and elevation cylinder.
3. Check fault indicator.
4. Check special input.
5. Check ballistic solution.
6. Check muzzle reference system.

REFERENCES:
1. FM 3-20.12 Tank Gunnery
2. MCO 3500.27B W/ERRATUM Operational Risk Management
3. TM 9-2350-264-10-1 Operator's Manual, Operator Controls, PMCS, and Operation Under Usual Conditions, Volume 1 of 2, Tank, Combat, Full-Tracked: 120-MM Gun, M1A1 2350-01-087-1095 General Abrams
4. TM 9-2350-264-10-2 Operator's Manual, Unusual Conditions, Troubleshooting, and Maintenance, Volume 2 of 2, Tank, Combat, Full-Tracked: 120-MM, M1A1 2350-01-087-1095, General Abrams

---

1802-CMDC-1201: Conduct Terrain Analysis

EVALUATION-CODED: NO **SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL:** 12 months

BILLETS: Platoon Commander

GRADES: 2NDLT, 1STLT, CAPT, MAJ

INITIAL TRAINING SETTING: FORMAL

CONDITION: Given a tank unit, supported infantry unit, an operations order defining the battle space and mission, tactical scenario, map of the battle space, specified threat, and references.

STANDARD: To determine the effects of the environment on friendly and enemy operations.

PERFORMANCE STEPS:
1. Define the battlespace to include: area of interest, area of influence, and area of operations.
2. Determine each of the following in the Area of Operations (AO), to include their effect on operations: observation and fields of fire, avenues of approach, key terrain to include decisive terrain, obstacles, and cover and concealment.
3. Determine key features of local weather and its effect on operations, to include: Beginning Morning Nautical Twilight (BMNT), Ending Evening Nautical Twilight (EENT), moon rise, moon set, percent illumination,

temperature (high/low), precipitation by type and amount, wind (directions and speed), fog and cloud ceiling, and weather effecting amphibious operations as necessary.

REFERENCES:
1. FM 21-26 Map Reading and Land Navigation
2. FM 3-20.15 Tank Platoon
3. MCO 3500.27B W/ERRATUM Operational Risk Management
4. MCRP 2-12A Intelligence Preparation of the Battlefield (IPB)
5. MCWP 3-12 Marine Corps Tank Employment

1802-CMDC-1202: Conduct Threat Analysis

EVALUATION-CODED: NO **SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL:** 12 months

BILLETS: Platoon Commander

GRADES: 2NDLT, 1STLT, CAPT, MAJ

INITIAL TRAINING SETTING: FORMAL

CONDITION: Given a tank unit, supported infantry unit, an operations order defining the battle space and mission, tactical scenario, map of the battle space, specified threat, and references.

STANDARD: To develop an assessment of the threat's capabilities and intentions within the Area of Interest (AI).

PERFORMANCE STEPS:
1. Determine enemy order of battle.
2. Determine enemy composition and disposition.
3. Identify likely enemy positions.
4. Determine enemy capabilities and limitations.
5. Determine enemy's most likely course of action.
6. Determine enemy's most dangerous course of action.

REFERENCES:
1. FM 3-20.15 Tank Platoon
2. GTA 17-2-13 Armored Vehicle Recognition Cards
3. MCO 3500.27B W/ERRATUM Operational Risk Management
4. MCRP 2-12A Intelligence Preparation of the Battlefield (IPB)
5. MCWP 3-12 Marine Corps Tank Employment

1802-CMDC-1203: Conduct Intelligence Preparation of the Battlefield

EVALUATION-CODED: NO **SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL:** 12 months

BILLETS: Platoon Commander

GRADES: 2NDLT, 1STLT, CAPT, MAJ

INITIAL TRAINING SETTING: FORMAL

CONDITION: Given a tank unit, supported infantry unit, an operations order defining the battle space and mission, tactical scenario, map of the battle space, specified threat, and references.

STANDARD: To develop a Modified Combined Operations Overlay (MCOO) and graphically depict all available intelligence within the Area of Interest (AI).

PERFORMANCE STEPS:
1. On a map of the operational area, define the battlespace to include: area of interest, area of influence, and area of operation.
2. Conduct terrain analysis.
3. Conduct weather analysis.
4. Conduct threat analysis.
5. Develop MCOO to graphically depict the integration of the above information.

REFERENCES:
1. FM 3-20.15 Tank Platoon
2. FM 5-33 Terrain Analysis
3. MCO 3500.27B W/ERRATUM Operational Risk Management
4. MCRP 2-12A Intelligence Preparation of the Battlefield (IPB)
5. MCRP 5-12A Operational Terms and Symbols
6. MCWP 3-12 Marine Corps Tank Employment
7. MCWP 5-1 Marine Corps Planning Process

1802-CMDC-1204: Identify Combat Vehicles and Helicopters

EVALUATION-CODED: NO **SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL:** 6 months

BILLETS: Platoon Commander

GRADES: 2NDLT, 1STLT, CAPT, MAJ, LTCOL

INITIAL TRAINING SETTING: FORMAL

CONDITION: Given slides, mock-ups, drawings, or models of vehicles and helicopters visible for 10 seconds.

STANDARD: So that crewman identify at minimum 18 of 20 vehicles and helicopters.

PERFORMANCE STEPS:
1. Determine the type of vehicle: tracked, wheeled, helicopter
2. Determine the role of the vehicle on the battlefield: reconnaissance and security, main battle tank, personnel carrier, artillery/fire support, engineer (bridging, pontoon, breaching, earth moving, etc.), air defense, NBC, combat service support (supply, medical, etc.), and command and control.
3. Determine main armament: caliber of weapon(s), effective range(s)
4. Determine the identifying characteristics of the vehicle: overall silhouette, suspension, turret/weapons system, antenna systems, and other distinguishing characteristics.
5. State the nomenclature of the vehicle.

REFERENCES:
1. FM 1-402 Aviator's Recognition Manual
2. FM 3-20.12 Tank Gunnery
3. FM 3-20.15 Tank Platoon
4. GTA 17-2-13 Armored Vehicle Recognition Cards
5. GTA 17-2-9 Combat Vehicle Identification
6. MCO 3500.27B W/ERRATUM Operational Risk Management
7. MCWP 3-12 Marine Corps Tank Employment

MISCELLANEOUS:

ADMINISTRATIVE INSTRUCTIONS: A minimum of five U.S. vehicles and helicopters (mixed) (no more than three helicopters per test) will be selected from U.S. armored vehicles and combat helicopters currently in use. A minimum of four slides must be of thermal views.

1802-CMDC-1205: Execute Intelligence Collection Effort

EVALUATION-CODED: NO **SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL:** 12 months
BILLETS: Platoon Commander

GRADES: 2NDLT, 1STLT, CAPT

INITIAL TRAINING SETTING: FORMAL
CONDITION: Given a tank unit, supported infantry unit, an operations order defining the battle space and mission, tactical scenario, map of the battlespace, specified threat, list of Commander's Critical Information Requirements (CCIR), specified threat, and references.

STANDARD: To process and evaluate information from collection agencies for dissemination to higher, adjacent, and subordinate units.

PERFORMANCE STEPS:
1. Process enemy prisoners of war in accordance with unit SOP and specific instructions; forward any relevant information to higher.
2. Process captured enemy documents in accordance with unit SOP and specific instructions; forward any relevant information to higher.
3. Consolidate and validate to the extent possible reports from reconnaissance assets; forward any relevant information to higher.

REFERENCES:
1. FM 3-20.15 Tank Platoon
2. GTA 17-2-13 Armored Vehicle Recognition Cards
3. GTA 17-2-9 Combat Vehicle Identification
4. MCO 3500.27B W/ERRATUM Operational Risk Management
5. MCRP 2-12A Intelligence Preparation of the Battlefield (IPB)
6. MCRP 2-25A Reconnaissance Reports Guide
7. MCWP 3-12 Marine Corps Tank Employment

1802-CMDC-1206: Execute Information Dissemination Plan

EVALUATION-CODED: NO **SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL:** 12 months

BILLETS: Platoon Commander

GRADES: 2NDLT, 1STLT, CAPT

INITIAL TRAINING SETTING: FORMAL

CONDITION: Given a tank unit, supported infantry unit, an operations order defining the battle space and mission, tactical scenario, map of the battlespace, specified threat, and references.

STANDARD: To publish all relevant intelligence after proper processing to higher, adjacent, supporting and subordinate units.

PERFORMANCE STEPS:
1. Systematically record information for ease of study and comparison and identify any information shortfalls.
2. Evaluate information collected as to: pertinence, reliability of source, accuracy and timeliness.
3. Isolate significant elements of information with respect to current mission and operations.

REFERENCES:
1. FM 3-20.15 Tank Platoon
2. MCO 3500.27B W/ERRATUM Operational Risk Management
3. MCWP 3-12 Marine Corps Tank Employment

1802-CMDC-1207: Execute Deception Plan

EVALUATION-CODED: NO **SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL:** 12 months

BILLETS: Platoon Commander

GRADES: 2NDLT, 1STLT, CAPT

INITIAL TRAINING SETTING: FORMAL

CONDITION: Given a tank unit, supported infantry unit, an operations order defining the battlespace and mission, tactical scenario, map of the battlespace, specified threat, and references.

STANDARD: Per the references.

PERFORMANCE STEPS:
1. Employ passive and active camouflage measures.
2. Enforce EMCON procedures.
3. Execute specific measures assigned in support of deception plan.

REFERENCES:
1. FM 3-20.15 Tank Platoon
2. FM 5-20 Camouflage
3. MCO 3500.27B W/ERRATUM Operational Risk Management
4. MCWP 2-6 Counterintelligence
5. MCWP 3-12 Marine Corps Tank Employment

1802-CMDC-1208: Supervise Processing of Enemy Prisoners of War

EVALUATION-CODED: NO **SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL:** 12 months

BILLETS: Platoon Commander

GRADES: 2NDLT, 1STLT, CAPT

INITIAL TRAINING SETTING: FORMAL

CONDITION: Given a tank unit, supported infantry unit, an operations order, unit SOP prescribing EPW handling procedures, tactical scenario, specified threat and references.

STANDARD: Per the references.

PERFORMANCE STEPS:
1. Establish EPW handling teams and procedures for the unit in accordance with the unit SOP and specific mission guidance.
2. Supervise the search of EPWs.
3. Ensure weapons, documents, and equipment are tagged and forwarded to higher headquarters.
4. Supervise segregation of EPWs into appropriate groups.
5. Maintain silence among prisoners.
6. Coordinate movement of EPWs through chain of command.

REFERENCES:
1. FM 3-20.15 Tank Platoon
2. MCO 3500.27B W/ERRATUM Operational Risk Management
3. MCRP 4-11.8C Enemy Prisoners of War and Civilian Internees
4. MCWP 3-12 Marine Corps Tank Employment

1802-CMDC-1209: Supervise Processing of Captured Documents

EVALUATION-CODED: NO **SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL:** 12 months

BILLETS: Platoon Commander

GRADES: 2NDLT, 1STLT, CAPT

INITIAL TRAINING SETTING: FORMAL

CONDITION: Given a tank unit, supported infantry unit, an operations order, unit SOP prescribing captured document handling procedures, tactical scenario, specified threat, and references.

STANDARD: Per the references.

PERFORMANCE STEPS:
1. Establish EPW handling teams and procedures for the unit in accordance with the unit SOP and specific mission guidance.
2. Ensure documents are tagged and forwarded to higher headquarters.

REFERENCES:
1. FM 3-20.15 Tank Platoon
2. MCO 3500.27B W/ERRATUM Operational Risk Management
3. MCRP 4-11.8C Enemy Prisoners of War and Civilian Internees
4. MCWP 2-6 Counterintelligence
5. MCWP 3-12 Marine Corps Tank Employment

1802-CMDC-1210: Conduct Map Reconnaissance

EVALUATION-CODED: NO **SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL:** 12 months

BILLETS: Platoon Commander

GRADES: 2NDLT, 1STLT, CAPT

INITIAL TRAINING SETTING: FORMAL

CONDITION: Given a tank unit, an operations order defining the battlespace, specified threat, map of the battlespace, and references.

STANDARD: By analyzing the area of operation in terms of the military aspects of terrain and identify any terrain or structure that may affect the mission.

PERFORMANCE STEPS:
1. Orient map and identify the area of operation.
2. Identify graphic control measures on the map.
3. Identify key terrain features in area of operation.
4. Identify advantageous observation points and fields of fire.
5. Analyze available cover and concealment.
6. Identify natural and man-made obstacles.
7. Identify available routes of travel.
8. Analyze available avenues of approach.
9. Identify known and planned friendly positions.
10. Mark known and suspected enemy positions on the map.

REFERENCES:
1. FM 21-26 Map Reading and Land Navigation
2. FM 3-20.15 Tank Platoon
3. FM 5-33 Terrain Analysis
4. MCO 3500.27B W/ERRATUM Operational Risk Management
5. MCWP 3-12 Marine Corps Tank Employment

1802-CMDC-1211: Analyze Operations Order

EVALUATION-CODED: NO **SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL:** 12 months

BILLETS: Platoon Commander

GRADES: 2NDLT, 1STLT, CAPT

INITIAL TRAINING SETTING: FORMAL

CONDITION: Given a tank unit, supported unit, an operations order, tactical scenario, specified threat, and references.

STANDARD: To determine tactical responsibilities of the M1A1 tank unit.

PERFORMANCE STEPS:

1. Determine commander's intent and desired end state and their impact on the unit.
2. Conduct detailed analysis of battle space to include area of interest, area of influence, and area of operations.
3. Conduct terrain analysis to determine the effect on the scheme of maneuver: obstacles (natural and man made), avenues of approach, key terrain, decisive terrain, observation and fields of fire, and cover and concealment.
4. Conduct threat analysis to include: composition and disposition, specifically look at armored, anti armor, and mine threat posed by the enemy, capabilities and limitations, actions in the last 24 hours, and most likely and dangerous courses of action.
5. Determine Commander's Critical Information Requirements (CCIRs).
6. Request any information for provided in the order.
7. Determine any restraints and/or constraints.
8. Determine assumptions.
9. Identify tasks: specified, implied, and essential.
10. Develop estimate of supportability for unit.
11. Determine any additional resources required to accomplish the mission as assigned.
12. Determine any additional training or rehearsals required, to include safety briefings and orientation training.
13. Determine current and anticipated mechanical readiness of unit.
14. Determine logistical support requirements.
15. Determine command and control requirements.

REFERENCES:

1. FM 3-20.15 Tank Platoon
2. MCO 3500.27B W/ERRATUM Operational Risk Management
3. MCWP 3-12 Marine Corps Tank Employment
4. MCWP 5-1 Marine Corps Planning Process

1802-CMDC-1212: Conduct Estimate of Supportability

EVALUATION-CODED: NO **SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL:** 12 months

BILLETS: Platoon Commander

GRADES: 2NDLT, 1STLT, CAPT

INITIAL TRAINING SETTING: FORMAL

CONDITION: Given a tank unit, supported unit, an operations order, tactical scenario, specified threat, and references.

STANDARD: To develop courses of action and support the operations order.

PERFORMANCE STEPS:
1. Analyze operations order.
2. Determine unit tasks (specified and implied).
3. Determine unit capabilities and limitations.
4. Develop courses of action based on the ability of the unit to support them.

REFERENCES:
1. FM 3-20.15 Tank Platoon
2. MCO 3500.27B W/ERRATUM Operational Risk Management
3. MCWP 3-12 Marine Corps Tank Employment

1802-CMDC-1213: Advise Supported Unit Commander on Employment of M1A1 Tanks

EVALUATION-CODED: NO **SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL:** 12 months

BILLETS: Platoon Commander

GRADES: 2NDLT, 1STLT, CAPT

INITIAL TRAINING SETTING: FORMAL

CONDITION: Given a tank unit, supported unit, an operations order, tactical scenario involving mechanized operations, specified threat, and references.

STANDARD: In order to maximize support provided.

PERFORMANCE STEPS:
1. Conduct mission analysis and determine the missions and task assignments for the various elements.
2. Advise the unit commander and his staff on ability of tanks to support each course of action based on: current and anticipated mechanical readiness of unit, orientation and mission specific unit training required, task organization of unit to support the scheme of maneuver, effects of terrain and weather on maneuverability and sustainability, effects of enemy obstacle plan on maneuverability and sustainability, effects of enemy armor and anti-armor assets on units, logistics requirements of unit to support scheme of maneuver, command and control assets organic to the unit, effects of enemy NBC operations on unit.
3. Recommend solutions to any limiting factors or alternate courses of action as required.
4. Advise supported unit commander on M1A1 tank movement techniques.

REFERENCES:
1. FM 3-20.15 Tank Platoon
2. MCO 3500.27B W/ERRATUM Operational Risk Management
3. MCWP 3-12 Marine Corps Tank Employment

1802-CMDC-1214: Develop Operations Order

EVALUATION-CODED: NO **SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL:** 12 months

BILLETS: Platoon Commander

GRADES: 2NDLT, 1STLT, CAPT

INITIAL TRAINING SETTING: FORMAL

CONDITION: Given a tank unit, supported unit, higher unit's operations order, tactical scenario, specified threat, and references.

STANDARD: To support the mission of the supported unit.

PERFORMANCE STEPS:
1. Develop Scheme of Maneuver
2. Develop Scheme of Fire
3. Develop Scheme of Mobility/Countermobility/Survivability
4. Develop Scheme of Logistical Support
5. Develop Scheme of Communications Support

REFERENCES:
1. FM 3-20.15 Tank Platoon
2. MCO 3500.27B W/ERRATUM Operational Risk Management
3. MCWP 3-12 Marine Corps Tank Employment
4. MCWP 5-1 Marine Corps Planning Process

1802-CMDC-1215: Task Organize M1A1 Tank Unit

EVALUATION-CODED: NO **SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL:** 12 months

BILLETS: Platoon Commander

GRADES: 2NDLT, 1STLT, CAPT

INITIAL TRAINING SETTING: FORMAL

CONDITION: Given a tank unit, supported unit, higher unit's operations order, tactical scenario, specified threat, and references.

STANDARD: To support the mission of the supported unit.

PERFORMANCE STEPS:
1. Analyze the supported unit's operations order and determine the tasks to be performed, the elements to be supported, and the lift requirements of each.
2. Make recommendations to supported unit commander and staff on task organization for mission accomplishment.
3. Issue order to subordinate AAV elements identifying the units they will be supporting, defining the type of support role/relationship between them and the supported unit, and assigning them their specific missions.

REFERENCES:
1. FM 3-20.15 Tank Platoon
2. MCO 3500.27B W/ERRATUM Operational Risk Management
3. MCWP 3-12 Marine Corps Tank Employment

1802-CMDC-1216: Issue Operations Order

EVALUATION-CODED: NO **SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL:** 12 months

BILLETS: Platoon Commander

GRADES: 2NDLT, 1STLT, CAPT

INITIAL TRAINING SETTING: FORMAL

CONDITION: Given a tank unit, supported unit, an operations order, tactical scenario, and specified threat.

STANDARD: Per the references.

PERFORMANCE STEPS:
1. Assemble subordinate element leaders and other key personnel and take role call to ensure that all required personnel are present.
2. Verify local time with commander's watch.
3. Orient personnel on map, terrain model, etc.
4. Direct personnel to "Hold all questions until the end".
5. Review Situation: terrain, weather, friendly, and enemy.
6. Issue Mission statement.
7. Review Execution.
8. Review Administration and Logistics.
9. Review Command and Signals.

REFERENCES:
1. FM 3-20.15 Tank Platoon
2. MCO 3500.27B W/ERRATUM Operational Risk Management
3. MCWP 3-12 Marine Corps Tank Employment
4. MCWP 5-1 Marine Corps Planning Process

1802-CMDC-1217: Conduct Rehearsals

EVALUATION-CODED: NO **SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL:** 12 months

BILLETS: Platoon Commander

GRADES: 2NDLT, 1STLT, CAPT

INITIAL TRAINING SETTING: FORMAL

CONDITION: Given a tank unit, supported unit, an operations order, tactical scenario, and specified threat.

STANDARD: Per the references.

PERFORMANCE STEPS:
1. Determine the type of rehearsal most appropriate to your situation: special rehearsal, map rehearsal, communication rehearsal, key leader rehearsal, sand table or terrain model rehearsal, or force-on-force rehearsal.
2. Determine and publish the time line for the rehearsal based on METT-TSL.

3. Ensure preparation of rehearsal materials or areas.
4. Conduct roll call.
5. Conduct orientation on rehearsal materials if applicable.
6. Conduct rehearsal.
7. Conduct critique of rehearsal.
8. Modify operations order as appropriate based on rehearsal critique.

REFERENCES:
1. FM 3-20.15 Tank Platoon
2. MCO 3500.27B W/ERRATUM Operational Risk Management
3. MCWP 3-12 Marine Corps Tank Employment

1802-CMDC-1218: Communicate Using M1A1 Tank Communication Equipment

EVALUATION-CODED: NO **SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL:** 12 months

BILLETS: Platoon Commander

GRADES: 2NDLT, 1STLT, CAPT

INITIAL TRAINING SETTING: FORMAL

CONDITION: Given an M1A1 tank, a crew, an M1A1 tank unit, and references.

STANDARD: By conducting intercom and inter-vehicle communications.

PERFORMANCE STEPS:
1. Prepare the communications equipment for operations.
2. Operate the Combat Vehicle Crewman's (CVC) helmet.
3. Operate the vehicle intercom system.
4. Operate the audio frequency amplifier.
5. Operate the receiver/transmitters in plain and covered mode.
6. Operate the receiver/transmitters in frequency hopping and single channel mode.
7. Secure communication equipment from operation.

REFERENCES:
1. FM 3-20.15 Tank Platoon
2. MCO 3500.27B W/ERRATUM Operational Risk Management
3. MCWP 3-12 Marine Corps Tank Employment
4. TM 11-5810-256-OP-4 Operating Procedures for COMSECEQ TSEC/KY-57 in Tracked Vehicles
5. TM 11-5820-890-10-1 Operator Manual for SINCGARS Ground Combat Net Radio
6. TM 9-2350-264-10-1 Operator's Manual, Operator Controls, PMCS, and Operation Under Usual Conditions, Volume 1 of 2, Tank, Combat, Full-Tracked: 120-MM Gun, M1A1 2350-01-087-1095 General Abrams
7. TM 9-2350-264-10-2 Operator's Manual, Unusual Conditions, Troubleshooting, and Maintenance, Volume 2 of 2, Tank, Combat, Full-Tracked: 120-MM, M1A1 2350-01-087-1095, General Abrams

---

1802-CMDC-1219: Communicate Using AAVC7A1 Communication Equipment

EVALUATION-CODED: NO **SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL:** 12 months

BILLETS: Platoon Commander

GRADES: 2NDLT, 1STLT, CAPT, MAJ, LTCOL

INITIAL TRAINING SETTING: FORMAL

CONDITION: Given an AAVC7A1 with crew, a complete staff and set of operators, and references.

STANDARD: By conducting intercom and inter-vehicle communications from all crew and staff stations.

PERFORMANCE STEPS:
1. Operate and trouble shoot MSQ 115 system.
2. Transmit on designated command and control circuits when directed by the supported unit commander.
3. Operate the crew's radios.
4. Operate the vehicle intercom system.
5. Operate static telephone lines when in a static situation.
6. Assist embarked staff on MSQ 115 system operations.
7. Secure communications equipment from operation.

REFERENCES:
1. MCO 3500.27B W/ERRATUM Operational Risk Management
2. TM 07268B-10/1A Assault Amphibious Vehicle, Command, Model 7A1, AAVC7A1 Supplement to TM 09674A-10/3
3. TM 11-5810-256-OP-4 Operating Procedures for COMSECEQ TSEC/KY-57 in Tracked Vehicles
4. TM 11-5820-890-10-1 Operator Manual for SINCGARS Ground Combat Net Radio

---

1802-CMDC-1220: Control Radio Communications

EVALUATION-CODED: NO **SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL:** 12 months

BILLETS: Platoon Commander

GRADES: 2NDLT, 1STLT, CAPT

INITIAL TRAINING SETTING: FORMAL

CONDITION: Given an M1A1 tank unit, a supported unit, operations order, tactical scenario, specified threat, current Communications-Electronic Operating Instruction (CEOI), and references.

STANDARD: By establishing a net, controlling units that enter and leave the net, and control all transmission on that net.

PERFORMANCE STEPS:
1. Ensure that all elements have the authorized SC frequency, frequency hopping (FH) data and COMSEC instructions input into their radios.
2. Perform NCS duties and open the net.
3. Update FH data using electronic remote fill (ERF) as needed.
4. Conduct late net entry as needed.
5. Enforce standard radio procedures including: use only approved

radiotelephone procedures, keep transmission to under 15 seconds, encode and decode all critical messages, use challenge and reply authentication in accordance with CEOI, use lowest possible power settings and directional antennas, and submit MIJI reports within 5 minutes after attempted jamming.
6. Coordinate with supported unit or supported unit communications officer for call signs and frequencies.
7. Distribute daily call signs and frequencies to all stations on net.
8. Establish self as net control, authorizing stations to become operational on net using unit organic communications equipment.
9. Enforce listening silence.
10. Recognize electronic countermeasures (ECM) and implement electronic counter countermeasures (ECCM) under the guidance of the communications officer.

REFERENCES:
1. FM 3-20.15 Tank Platoon
2. MCO 3500.27B W/ERRATUM Operational Risk Management
3. MCWP 3-12 Marine Corps Tank Employment
4. TM 9-2350-264-10-1 Operator's Manual, Operator Controls, PMCS, and Operation Under Usual Conditions, Volume 1 of 2, Tank, Combat, Full-Tracked: 120-MM Gun, M1A1 2350-01-087-1095 General Abrams
5. TM 9-2350-264-10-2 Operator's Manual, Unusual Conditions, Troubleshooting, and Maintenance, Volume 2 of 2, Tank, Combat, Full-Tracked: 120-MM, M1A1 2350-01-087-1095, General Abrams

---

1802-CMDC-1221: Communicate Using Visual Signals

EVALUATION-CODED: NO **SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL:** 12 months

BILLETS: Platoon Commander

GRADES: 2NDLT

INITIAL TRAINING SETTING: FORMAL

CONDITION: Given a tank unit, supported unit, an operations order, tactical scenario, specified threat, and references.

STANDARD: Per the references.

PERFORMANCE STEPS:
1. Communicate using hand and arm signals to control vehicles.
2. Communicate using flashlights to control vehicles.
3. Communicate using flags to control vehicles.
4. Identify standard flags, lights, and markers used to control armored vehicles.

REFERENCES:
1. FM 21-60 Visual Signals
2. FM 3-20.15 Tank Platoon
3. MCO 3500.27B W/ERRATUM Operational Risk Management
4. MCWP 3-12 Marine Corps Tank Employment

1802-CMDC-1222: Conduct Unit Mission without Communications

EVALUATION-CODED: NO **SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL:** 12 months

BILLETS: Platoon Commander

GRADES: 2NDLT, 1STLT, CAPT

INITIAL TRAINING SETTING: FORMAL

CONDITION: Given a tank unit, supported unit, an operations order, tactical scenario, specified threat, and references.

STANDARD: Per the references.

PERFORMANCE STEPS:
1. Establish "no communications plan" as part of OPORD/FRAGO.
2. Employ alternate control methods in the absence of radio communications.
3. Continue mission in accordance with commander's intent maintaining focus on the desired end state.

REFERENCES:
1. FM 21-60 Visual Signals
2. FM 3-20.15 Tank Platoon
3. MCO 3500.27B W/ERRATUM Operational Risk Management
4. MCWP 3-12 Marine Corps Tank Employment

1802-CMDC-1223: Navigate From an M1A1 Tank

EVALUATION-CODED: NO **SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL:** 12 months

BILLETS: Platoon Commander

GRADES: 2NDLT, 1STLT, CAPT, MAJ, LTCOL

INITIAL TRAINING SETTING: FORMAL

CONDITION: Given an M1A1 tank, operations order, a tactical scenario, specified threat, training area, and references.

STANDARD: Using map and terrain analysis and reporting all control measures along the route.

PERFORMANCE STEPS:
1. Plan the route to move from terrain feature to terrain feature, considering the tactical aspects and ease of movement of the route.
2. Use terrain features as checkpoints as the vehicle moves along the route.
3. Follow the terrain features using terrain driving techniques.
4. Determine approximate directions of the various segments of the route.
5. Determine total distance for the route and distance between checkpoints.
6. Make written or mental notes to remember terrain features as they are being passed.
7. Occasionally look to the rear to familiarize yourself with the view of the terrain if you must retrace the route.

8. Use GPS/PLRS when available to augment your navigation.

REFERENCES:
1. FM 21-26 Map Reading and Land Navigation
2. FM 21-60 Visual Signals
3. FM 3-20.15 Tank Platoon
4. FM 5-33 Terrain Analysis
5. MCO 3500.27B W/ERRATUM Operational Risk Management
6. MCWP 3-12 Marine Corps Tank Employment

1802-CMDC-1224: Control Unit Maneuver Elements

EVALUATION-CODED: NO **SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL:** 12 months

BILLETS: Platoon Commander

GRADES: 2NDLT, 1STLT, CAPT

INITIAL TRAINING SETTING: FORMAL

CONDITION: Given a tank, an operations order, tactical scenario, specified threat, training area, and references.

STANDARD: Employing the appropriate movement techniques based on terrain, mission, and threat analysis in order to minimize exposure to enemy observation and fire and maximize the security and speed of the unit formation.

PERFORMANCE STEPS:
1. Maintain control over maneuver elements, designate lead and trail elements, move with the elements that allows best control of the operation, determine mode of movement (traveling, traveling overwatch, bounding overwatch), ensure elements maintain dispersion laterally and in depth, ensure visual contact is maintained between adjacent vehicles, ensure each vehicle moves by separate, covered, and concealed route if possible.
2. Maintain detailed plot on location of all elements.
3. Ensure subordinate elements use internal methods of maneuver control.
4. Ensure subordinate elements assigned special missions are controlled.
5. Ensure operational reports are included in reports control system.

REFERENCES:
1. FM 21-26 Map Reading and Land Navigation
2. FM 21-60 Visual Signals
3. FM 3-20.15 Tank Platoon
4. FM 5-33 Terrain Analysis
5. MCO 3500.27B W/ERRATUM Operational Risk Management
6. MCWP 3-12 Marine Corps Tank Employment

1802-CMDC-1225: Control Unit Fire and Maneuver

EVALUATION-CODED: NO **SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL:** 12 months

BILLETS: Platoon Commander

GRADES: 2NDLT, 1STLT, CAPT

INITIAL TRAINING SETTING: FORMAL

CONDITION: Given a tank unit, an operations order, tactical scenario, specified threat, training area, and references.

STANDARD: While employing the appropriate movement techniques based on terrain, mission, and threat analysis in order to minimize exposure to enemy observation and fire and maximize the security and speed of the unit formation.

PERFORMANCE STEPS:
1. Control unit/team maneuver.
2. Designate engagement criteria.
3. Designate weapons orientation.
4. Designate weapons status.
5. Coordinate unit fire and maneuver as appropriate.

REFERENCES:
1. FM 21-26 Map Reading and Land Navigation
2. FM 21-60 Visual Signals
3. FM 3-20.15 Tank Platoon
4. FM 5-33 Terrain Analysis
5. MCO 3500.27B W/ERRATUM Operational Risk Management
6. MCWP 3-12 Marine Corps Tank Employment

1802-CMDC-1226: Direct Unit Fires

EVALUATION-CODED: NO **SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL:** 12 months

BILLETS: Platoon Commander

GRADES: 2NDLT, 1STLT, CAPT

INITIAL TRAINING SETTING: FORMAL

CONDITION: Given an M1A1 tank unit, a supported unit, operations order, tactical scenario, training area, and references.

STANDARD: To provide timely and accurate fires on the targets.

PERFORMANCE STEPS:
1. Assess the situation.
2. Determine priority targets.
3. Determine fire pattern for the unit.
4. Select technique of fire.
5. Issue clear and concise fire command.
6. Adjust fires as appropriate.
7. Terminate engagement.

REFERENCES:
1. FM 3-20.15 Tank Platoon
2. MCO 3500.27B W/ERRATUM Operational Risk Management
3. MCWP 3-12 Marine Corps Tank Employment

1802-CMDC-1227: Coordinate Unit Fire Plan with Supported Unit Commander

EVALUATION-CODED: NO **SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL:** 12 months

BILLETS: Platoon Commander

GRADES: 2NDLT, 1STLT, CAPT

INITIAL TRAINING SETTING: FORMAL

CONDITION: Given an M1A1 tank unit, a supported unit, operations order, tactical scenario, training area, and references.

STANDARD: To support the overall mission based on the terrain in the given training area.

PERFORMANCE STEPS:
1. Integrate unit fire plan with associated dismounted infantry and engineers attached to the company/team; ensure that indirect fire capability of vehicle's is used to cover major direct fire dead spaces.
2. Advise supported unit commander on options for the employment of unit fires: as mounted outposts, as mounted reserve force, and in direct support of supported units.

REFERENCES:
1. FM 3-20.15 Tank Platoon
2. MCO 3500.27B W/ERRATUM Operational Risk Management
3. MCWP 3-12 Marine Corps Tank Employment

1802-CMDC-1228: Prepare a Sketch Card

EVALUATION-CODED: NO **SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL:** 12 months

BILLETS: Platoon Commander

GRADES: 2NDLT

INITIAL TRAINING SETTING: FORMAL

CONDITION: Given an M1A1 tank, a tactical scenario, training area, and references.

STANDARD: For an M1A1 tank based on the terrain in the given training area.

PERFORMANCE STEPS:
1. Indicate the position of the vehicle.
2. Indicate unit sector or engagement area.
3. Indicate Target Reference Points (TRP).

4. Indicate range lines, trigger pints, and break points.
5. Indicate friendly Observation Points (OP).
6. Indicate obstacles (if used).
7. Indicate any indirect fire targets, including Final Protective Fires (FPF), if allocated.
8. Indicate position of vehicles on immediate flanks.
9. Indicate weapons dead spaces.
10. Indicate date range card was made.

REFERENCES:
1. FM 3-20.15 Tank Platoon
2. FM 5-33 Terrain Analysis
3. MCO 3500.27B W/ERRATUM Operational Risk Management
4. MCWP 3-12 Marine Corps Tank Employment

1802-CMDC-1229: Prepare a Unit Fire Plan Sketch

EVALUATION-CODED: NO **SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL:** 12 months

BILLETS: Platoon Commander

GRADES: 2NDLT, 1STLT, CAPT

INITIAL TRAINING SETTING: FORMAL

CONDITION: Given an M1A1 tank unit, a tactical scenario, training area, and references.

STANDARD: Based on the range cards for the individual vehicles.

PERFORMANCE STEPS:
1. Collect and verify the sketch cards for the unit.
2. Integrate the sketch cards into single plan, including vehicle positions and important terrain features.
3. Integrate any supporting arms assets available.
4. Make one copy for the unit and one copy for the supported unit commander.

REFERENCES:
1. FM 3-20.15 Tank Platoon
2. FM 5-33 Terrain Analysis
3. MCO 3500.27B W/ERRATUM Operational Risk Management
4. MCWP 3-12 Marine Corps Tank Employment

1802-CMDC-1230: Supervise Implementation of Operational Safety Procedures

EVALUATION-CODED: NO **SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL:** 12 months

BILLETS: Platoon Commander

GRADES: 2NDLT, 1STLT, CAPT, MAJ, LTCOL

INITIAL TRAINING SETTING: FORMAL

CONDITION: Given a tank unit, supported unit, an operations order, tactical scenario, training area, and references.

STANDARD: Per the references.

PERFORMANCE STEPS:
1. Ensure that all personnel receive orientation and safety brief in assembly area prior to the conduct of active operations.
2. Ensure that all items for recovery operations are serviceable and properly stowed on the vehicle.

REFERENCES:
1. FM 3-20.15 Tank Platoon
2. MCO 3500.27B W/ERRATUM Operational Risk Management
3. MCWP 3-12 Marine Corps Tank Employment
4. TM 9-2350-264-10-1 Operator's Manual, Operator Controls, PMCS, and Operation Under Usual Conditions, Volume 1 of 2, Tank, Combat, Full-Tracked: 120-MM Gun, M1A1 2350-01-087-1095 General Abrams
5. TM 9-2350-264-10-2 Operator's Manual, Unusual Conditions, Troubleshooting, and Maintenance, Volume 2 of 2, Tank, Combat, Full-Tracked: 120-MM, M1A1 2350-01-087-1095, General Abrams

---

1802-CMDC-1231: Communicate Using AN/VRC-92A Radio on M1A1 Tank

EVALUATION-CODED: NO **SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL:** 12 months

BILLETS: Platoon Commander

GRADES: 2NDLT, 1STLT, CAPT, MAJ, LTCOL

INITIAL TRAINING SETTING: FORMAL

CONDITION: Given an AN/VRC-92 radio set mounted for operation and communications-electronics operation instructions (CEOI).

STANDARD: Per the references.

PERFORMANCE STEPS:
1. Check with net control station (NCS) or communications electronics operating instruction (CEOI) for authorized single channel (SC) frequencies or frequency hopping (FH) data.
2. Conduct pre-mission check.
3. Load FH (local fill).
4. When NCS directs net opening, listen to and follow commands carefully.
5. If net is to be opened in cypher text (CT), load COMSEC keys (local fill). The NCS will tell you in which channel to store COMSEC keys.
6. During net operations, update FH data using electronic remote fill (ERF) as needed.
7. Use CUE to contact NCS when you are not an active member of that net, or if you are operating in single channel (SC) and wish to contact a FH net as needed.
8. Conduct late net entry as required.

REFERENCES:
1. FM 3-20.15 Tank Platoon
2. MCO 3500.27B W/ERRATUM Operational Risk Management
3. MCWP 3-12 Marine Corps Tank Employment
4. TM 11-5820-890-10-1 Operator Manual for SINCGARS Ground Combat Net Radio
5. TM 9-2350-264-10-1 Operator's Manual, Operator Controls, PMCS, and Operation Under Usual Conditions, Volume 1 of 2, Tank, Combat, Full-Tracked: 120-MM Gun, M1A1 2350-01-087-1095 General Abrams
6. TM 9-2350-264-10-2 Operator's Manual, Unusual Conditions, Troubleshooting, and Maintenance, Volume 2 of 2, Tank, Combat, Full-Tracked: 120-MM, M1A1 2350-01-087-1095, General Abrams

---

1802-CMDC-1232: Maintain AN/VRC-12 or AN/VRC-92A Radio Set

EVALUATION-CODED: NO **SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL:** 12 months

BILLETS: Platoon Commander

GRADES: 2NDLT

INITIAL TRAINING SETTING: FORMAL

CONDITION: Given an AN/VRC-12 or AN/VRC-92 radio set, vehicle with mounting equipment installed, clean lint free cloth, eraser, PM brush, and references.

STANDARD: So that the system is functional, clean, all components are present, and all operator preventive maintenance is performed.

PERFORMANCE STEPS:
1. Inspect radio accessories. Check cables (where visible) for cuts, cracks, and breaks; ensure cable connectors are clean and securely attached to cables; ensure audio connector O-rings are in good condition; clean audio connectors with PM eraser; inspect for corrosion.
2. Inspect mounting or radio; check for loose nuts, bolts, and screws; ensure guide pins are straight; ensure unused underside receptacles are covered; ensure grounding straps are secured; ensure vent port area is free of obscuration.
3. Wipe the radio set and accessories free of dust, dirt, grease, etc.
4. Turn tuner knobs back and forth several times to prevent corrosion buildup on the tuner contacts.
5. If a switch has dents, ensure each position has a solid feel to it.
6. Ensure pull-and turn switches cannot move to a guarded position without first being pulled out.
7. Ensure each control moves smoothly while being operated.
8. Ensure all knobs are secure on there shafts.
9. Clean connector jacks on the face of the radios and intercom boxes with PM eraser.
10. Conduct function check.

REFERENCES:
1. MCO 3500.27B W/ERRATUM Operational Risk Management
2. TM 11-5820-401-10-2 Operator's Manual (VRC-12)
3. TM 11-5820-890-10-1 Operator Manual for SINCGARS Ground Combat Net Radio
4. TM 9-2350-264-10-1 Operator's Manual, Operator Controls, PMCS, and

Operation Under Usual Conditions, Volume 1 of 2, Tank, Combat, Full-Tracked: 120-MM Gun, M1A1 2350-01-087-1095 General Abrams

5. TM 9-2350-264-10-2 Operator's Manual, Unusual Conditions, Troubleshooting, and Maintenance, Volume 2 of 2, Tank, Combat, Full-Tracked: 120-MM, M1A1 2350-01-087-1095, General Abrams

---

1802-CMDC-1233: Employ Operations Security

EVALUATION-CODED: NO **SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL:** 12 months

BILLETS: Platoon Commander

GRADES: 2NDLT, 1STLT, CAPT, MAJ, LTCOL

INITIAL TRAINING SETTING: FORMAL

CONDITION: Given an M1A1 tank unit, a supported unit, operations order, tactical scenario, specified threat, training area, appropriate collateral equipment, and references.

STANDARD: To minimize exposure to enemy observation and fire, to include light, noise, and movement discipline.

PERFORMANCE STEPS:

1. Identify potential friendly vulnerabilities to enemy intelligence operations.
2. Develop possible security and deception measures to limit vulnerabilities.
3. Develop counter reconnaissance effort to defeat enemy intelligence activities.
4. Develop and enforce passive measures to defeat enemy intelligence activities, including: maximum use of cover and concealment, camouflage discipline, and noise and light discipline.
5. Establish security elements and patrols.
6. Conduct movement, CSS operations, and rehearsals during limited visibility as much as possible.
7. Limit movement in, around, and between positions as much as possible.
8. Employ remote transmission sites as appropriate.
9. Develop electronic countermeasures to include alternate frequencies, authentication procedures, and anti jamming procedures.
10. Employ deception measures as directed by higher headquarters.
11. Employ wire communications to the fullest extent possible.
12. Defend against mines and booby traps.

REFERENCES:

1. DoDD 2000.12 DoD Antiterrorism/Force Protection (AT/FP) Program
2. FM 3-20.15 Tank Platoon
3. MCO 3500.27B W/ERRATUM Operational Risk Management
4. MCWP 3-12 Marine Corps Tank Employment

1802-CMDC-1234: Develop Unit Training Schedule

EVALUATION-CODED: NO **SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL:** 12 months

BILLETS: Platoon Commander

GRADES: 2NDLT, 1STLT, CAPT

INITIAL TRAINING SETTING: FORMAL

CONDITION: Given unit mission guidelines from higher headquarters, Battalion Commander's guidance, and references.

STANDARD: To include individual and team MOS related training resources available and environmental constraints on training; publish as a Battalion Order intended to support unit mission, increase unit readiness, and support Marine Corps training policy.

PERFORMANCE STEPS:
1. Analyze guidance from higher headquarters.
2. Extract training requirements necessary for unit readiness.
3. Review current training directives/policies.
4. Make any changes necessary to increase training efficiency and improve unit readiness.
5. Determine individual or unit proficiencies and deficiencies.
6. Determine instructional settings, methods, and media.
7. Specify when and where training will occur.
8. Schedule facilities and ranges as appropriate.
9. Specify instructors and evaluators.
10. Provide administrative guidance and coordination as appropriate.
11. Submit for approval if required.
12. Publish training directives/policies when finalized and approved.

REFERENCES:
1. FM 3-20.15 Tank Platoon
2. MCO 3500.27B W/ERRATUM Operational Risk Management
3. MCRP 3-0A Unit Training Management Guide
4. MCRP 3-0B How to Conduct Training
5. MCWP 3-12 Marine Corps Tank Employment
6. MCWP 5-1 Marine Corps Planning Process

1802-CMDC-1235: Conduct Unit Training

EVALUATION-CODED: NO **SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL:** 12 months

BILLETS: Platoon Commander

GRADES: 2NDLT, 1STLT, CAPT, MAJ

INITIAL TRAINING SETTING: FORMAL

CONDITION: Given an M1A1 tank unit's training schedule, Battalion Commander's guidance, a tank unit, appropriate training ranges and materials, and references.

STANDARD: For the period covered so that the training objectives are met.

PERFORMANCE STEPS:

1. Prepare for instruction by assigning instructors, securing appropriate resources, preparing training materials, and rehearsing as required.
2. Introduce the subject and give the relevance and conceptual framework of the training.
3. Present the learning outcome, method of training, and method of evaluation.
4. Pretest the Marines on the subject matter.
5. Present the instruction.
6. Demonstrate performance of the material being covered.
7. Require Marines to practice the behavior cited in the training objective.
8. Provide feedback on the success or failure of the Marines' performance test.
9. Post-test the Marines.
10. Provide feedback on the success or failure of the Marines' performance test.
11. Allow Marines to critique the training.
12. Present the summary and closing instructions.

REFERENCES:

1. FM 3-20.15 Tank Platoon
2. MCO 3500.27B W/ERRATUM Operational Risk Management
3. MCRP 3-0A Unit Training Management Guide
4. MCRP 3-0B How to Conduct Training
5. MCWP 3-12 Marine Corps Tank Employment
6. MCWP 5-1 Marine Corps Planning Process

1802-CMDC-1236: Supervise Unit Training

EVALUATION-CODED: NO **SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL:** 12 months

BILLETS: Platoon Commander

GRADES: 2NDLT, 1STLT, CAPT

INITIAL TRAINING SETTING: FORMAL

CONDITION: Given a unit's training schedule, training directives from the supported unit (division), commander's guidance, and references.

STANDARD: For the period covered as directed by the commander.

PERFORMANCE STEPS:

1. Ensure personnel receive sufficient instruction in MOS/military skills in accordance with the standards set forth in this publication.
2. Ensure exercises simulate actual combat conditions.
3. Ensure local conditions and specific unit functions are incorporated into exercise development.
4. Ensure integration of training with unit mission.
5. Ensure safety regulations and considerations are applied; stop training if safety is compromised.
6. Evaluate how well Marines accomplish their duties; determine individual/unit training needs and if responsibilities should be increased or decreased.

7. Identify training deficiencies and outline procedures to correct deficiencies or schedule required training.

REFERENCES:
1. FM 3-20.15 Tank Platoon
2. MCO 3500.27B W/ERRATUM Operational Risk Management
3. MCRP 3-0A Unit Training Management Guide
4. MCRP 3-0B How to Conduct Training
5. MCWP 3-12 Marine Corps Tank Employment
6. MCWP 5-1 Marine Corps Planning Process

1802-CMDC-1237: Evaluate MOS Related Training Effectiveness

EVALUATION-CODED: NO **SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL:** 12 months

BILLETS: Platoon Commander

GRADES: 2NDLT, 1STLT, CAPT

INITIAL TRAINING SETTING: FORMAL

CONDITION: Given an M1A1 tank unit's training schedule, training directives from the supported unit (division), Battalion Commander's guidance, and references.

STANDARD: For the period directed by the commander.

PERFORMANCE STEPS:
1. Evaluate performance to determine whether Marines can meet the standard after training.
2. Evaluate preparation based on indicators observed during training.
3. Critique individual and collective training standards.
4. Note the results of performance evaluations of individuals in appropriate records as determined by unit SOP.
5. Record the results of collective training in after action reports (AAR) or appropriate records as determined by unit SOP.
6. Make recommendations as to future training needs or changes in the training.

REFERENCES:
1. FM 3-20.15 Tank Platoon
2. MCO 3500.27B W/ERRATUM Operational Risk Management
3. MCRP 3-0A Unit Training Management Guide
4. MCRP 3-0B How to Conduct Training
5. MCWP 3-12 Marine Corps Tank Employment
6. MCWP 5-1 Marine Corps Planning Process

1802-CMDC-1238: Conduct a Route Reconnaissance

EVALUATION-CODED: NO **SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL:** 12 months

BILLETS: Platoon Commander

GRADES: 2NDLT, 1STLT, CAPT

INITIAL TRAINING SETTING: FORMAL

CONDITION: Given an M1A1 tank unit with trained infantry or engineer support, operations order directing a route reconnaissance, a tactical scenario with enemy contact unlikely, specified threat, training area suitable for mechanized operations, and references.

STANDARD: To report on the trafficability for all classes of vehicles and personnel, the suitability of bridges, tunnels, fording sites, and any key or decisive terrain dominating the route.

PERFORMANCE STEPS:
1. Issue a warning order to the unit upon receipt of the order.
2. Conduct mission analysis.
3. Request any additional information or assets not originally provided in the OPORD.
4. Coordinate with the unit directing the route reconnaissance for frequencies and call signs, pass words, recognition signals, fire support, MEDEVACS, threat information, and passage of friendly lines prior to conducting the reconnaissance.
5. Brief the unit on the mission.
6. Pass the SP at the designated time, reporting to the supported unit.
7. Assess the trafficability of the route to all classes of vehicles and personnel in accordance with the engineering reports format; trained infantry or engineers are essential to this step.
8. Assess the serviceability of tunnels, bridges, and fording sites along the route; trained infantry or engineers are essential to this step.
9. Assess any key or decisive terrain dominating the route; determine whether the terrain is in the hands of the enemy.
10. Report all control points and major events as they develop.
11. Upon return to the supported unit, prepare a route reconnaissance overlay and a compilation of all site surveys conducted.

REFERENCES:
1. FM 21-26 Map Reading and Land Navigation
2. FM 3-20.15 Tank Platoon
3. MCO 3500.27B W/ERRATUM Operational Risk Management
4. MCWP 3-12 Marine Corps Tank Employment

1802-CMDC-1239: Conduct an Area Reconnaissance

EVALUATION-CODED: NO **SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL:** 12 months

BILLETS: Platoon Commander

GRADES: 2NDLT, 1STLT, CAPT

INITIAL TRAINING SETTING: FORMAL

CONDITION: Given an M1A1 tank unit with trained infantry or engineer support, operations order directing an area reconnaissance, a tactical

scenario with enemy contact unlikely, specified threat, training area suitable for mechanized operations, and references.

STANDARD: To report on the trafficability of any route for all classes of vehicles and personnel, the suitability of bridges, tunnels, fording sites, and any key or decisive terrain dominating the area.

PERFORMANCE STEPS:
1. Issue a warning order to the unit upon receipt of the order.
2. Conduct mission analysis.
3. Request any additional information or assets not originally provided in the OPORD.
4. Coordinate with the unit directing the route reconnaissance for frequencies and call signs, pass words, recognition signals, fire support, MEDEVACS, threat information, and passage of friendly lines prior to conducting the reconnaissance.
5. Brief the unit on the mission.
6. Pass the SP at the designated time, reporting to the supported unit.
7. Assess the trafficability of the route to all classes of vehicles and personnel in accordance with the engineering reports format; trained infantry or engineers are essential to this step.
8. Assess the serviceability of tunnels, bridges, and fording sites along the route; trained infantry or engineers are essential to this step.
9. Assess any key or decisive terrain dominating the route; determine whether the terrain is in the hands of the enemy.
10. Report all control points and major events as they develop.
11. Report on the disposition and composition of any enemy forces encountered; do not become engaged.
12. Upon return to the supported unit, prepare a route reconnaissance overlay and a compilation of all site surveys conducted.

REFERENCES:
1. FM 21-26 Map Reading and Land Navigation
2. FM 3-20.15 Tank Platoon
3. MCO 3500.27B W/ERRATUM Operational Risk Management
4. MCWP 3-12 Marine Corps Tank Employment

1802-CMDC-1240: Conduct a Zone Reconnaissance

EVALUATION-CODED: NO **SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL:** 12 months

BILLETS: Platoon Commander

GRADES: 2NDLT, 1STLT, CAPT

INITIAL TRAINING SETTING: FORMAL

CONDITION: Given an M1A1 tank unit with trained infantry or engineer support, operations order requiring a reconnaissance in zone, a tactical scenario with enemy contact unlikely, specified threat, training area suitable for mechanized operations, and references.

STANDARD: To report on the trafficability of the route(s) for all classes of vehicles and personnel, the suitability of bridges, tunnels, fording sites,

any enemy positions encountered, and key or decisive terrain dominating the zone.

PERFORMANCE STEPS:

1. Issue a warning order to the unit upon receipt of the order.
2. Conduct mission analysis.
3. Request any additional information or assets not originally provided in the OPORD.
4. Coordinate with the unit directing the reconnaissance in zone for frequencies and call signs, pass words, recognition signals, fire support, MEDEVACS, threat information, and passage of friendly lines prior to conducting the reconnaissance.
5. Brief the unit on the mission.
6. Pass the SP at the designated time, reporting to the supported unit.
7. Assess the trafficability of the route to all classes of vehicles and personnel in accordance with the engineering reports format; trained infantry or engineers are essential to this step.
8. Assess the serviceability of tunnels, bridges, and fording sites along the route; trained infantry or engineers are essential to this step.
9. Assess any key or decisive terrain dominating the route. Determine whether the terrain is in the hands of the enemy.
10. Report all control points and major events as they develop.
11. Report on the disposition and composition of any enemy forces encountered; do not become engaged.
12. Upon return to the supported unit, prepare a route reconnaissance overlay and a compilation of all site surveys conducted.

REFERENCES:

1. FM 21-26 Map Reading and Land Navigation
2. FM 3-20.15 Tank Platoon
3. MCO 3500.27B W/ERRATUM Operational Risk Management
4. MCWP 3-12 Marine Corps Tank Employment

1802-CMDC-1241: Establish a Mounted Observation Post

EVALUATION-CODED: NO **SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL:** 12 months

BILLETS: Platoon Commander

GRADES: 2NDLT

INITIAL TRAINING SETTING: FORMAL

CONDITION: Given an M1A1 tank unit, a supported infantry unit, operations order directing the establishment of a hasty defense and the employment of mounted observation posts, tactical scenario with a fluid enemy situation, specified threat, training area suitable for mechanized operations, and references.

STANDARD: To provide early warning of enemy patrols and provide depth to the hasty defense.

PERFORMANCE STEPS:

1. Coordinate with main element to establish their fire plan, obstacle plan,

frequencies and call signs, and passage through their lines.
2. Move forward to covered and concealed position that allows observation of assigned sector.
3. Camouflage vehicle.
4. Maintain alert status.
5. Minimize operating vehicle systems or engines.
6. At night minimize movement, use of lights, and keep radio volume low.

REFERENCES:
1. FM 3-20.15 Tank Platoon
2. MCO 3500.27B W/ERRATUM Operational Risk Management
3. MCWP 3-12 Marine Corps Tank Employment

1802-CMDC-1242: Establish a Dismounted Observation Post

EVALUATION-CODED: NO **SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL:** 12 months

BILLETS: Platoon Commander

GRADES: 2NDLT

INITIAL TRAINING SETTING: FORMAL

CONDITION: Given an M1A1 tank unit, a supported infantry unit, operations order directing the employment of dismounted observation posts as part of the security for an assembly area, tactical scenario, specified threat, training area suitable for mechanized operations, and references.

STANDARD: To provide early warning of enemy patrols and provide depth to the hasty defense.

PERFORMANCE STEPS:
1. Coordinate with main element to establish their fire plan, obstacle plan, frequencies and call signs, and passage through their lines.
2. Task organize personnel from unit to dismount their vehicles and function as observation post.
3. Conduct passage of friendly lines and move to position.
4. Establish Observation post in covered and concealed position that allows observation of assigned sector.
5. Establish communications, preferably by wire, with friendly unit.
6. Maintain alert status.
7. At night minimize movement, use of lights, and keep radio volume low.

REFERENCES:
1. FM 3-20.15 Tank Platoon
2. MCO 3500.27B W/ERRATUM Operational Risk Management
3. MCWP 3-12 Marine Corps Tank Employment

1802-VOPS-1301: Conduct Before, During, and After-Operation Checks and Services on M1A1 Tank

EVALUATION-CODED: NO **SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL:** 12 months

BILLETS: Platoon Commander

GRADES: 2NDLT

INITIAL TRAINING SETTING: FORMAL

CONDITION: Given a stationary M1A1 tank with crew, SL-3 items, clean rags and references.

STANDARD: By isolating and identifying all deficiencies, correcting them if authorized, and reporting any deficiencies that cannot be corrected by operator maintenance to organizational maintenance.

PERFORMANCE STEPS:

1. Inspect vehicle overall for leaks, tampering, damage, or missing parts.
2. Inspect quick-release pins.
3. Inspect fire extinguisher system.
4. Inspect driver's controls and instruments.
5. Inspect gunner's coaxial machine gun.
6. Inspect loader's machine gun.
7. Inspect .50 caliber machine gun.
8. Inspect parking brake system hydraulic pressure.
9. Inspect hydraulic system oil reservoir.
10. Inspect commander's panel.
11. Inspect auxiliary hydraulic pump.
12. Inspect night vision driver's viewer.
13. Inspect power-gun/turret control.
14. Inspect Gunner's Primary Sight (GPS).
15. Inspect commander's GPS extension.
16. Inspect Gunner's Auxiliary Sight (GAS).
17. Inspect loader's panel.
18. Inspect turret ammunition storage.
19. Inspect crew station NBC equipment.
20. Inspect NBC back up system.
21. Inspect drain port.
22. Inspect transmission oil.
23. Inspect engine oil.
24. Inspect engine compartment fire extinguisher sensor.
25. Inspect electro-mechanical fuel system (EMFS) and lines.
26. Inspect engine hydraulics and heat sensor.
27. Inspect radio intercom system.
28. Inspect loader's panel.
29. Inspect personnel heater.
30. Inspect breech group.
31. Inspect battery bus box.
32. Report deficiencies to organizational maintenance.

REFERENCES:

1. MCO 3500.27B W/ERRATUM Operational Risk Management
2. TM 9-2350-264-10-1 Operator's Manual, Operator Controls, PMCS, and Operation Under Usual Conditions, Volume 1 of 2, Tank, Combat, Full-Tracked: 120-MM Gun, M1A1 2350-01-087-1095 General Abrams
3. TM 9-2350-264-10-2 Operator's Manual, Unusual Conditions, Troubleshooting, and Maintenance, Volume 2 of 2, Tank, Combat, Full-Tracked: 120-MM, M1A1 2350-01-087-1095, General Abrams

1802-VOPS-1302: Prepare Driver's Station on M1A1 Tank for Operation

EVALUATION-CODED: NO **SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL:** 12 months

BILLETS: Platoon Commander

GRADES: 2NDLT

INITIAL TRAINING SETTING: FORMAL

CONDITION: Given a stationary M1A1 tank with crew.

STANDARD: Per the references.

PERFORMANCE STEPS:
1. Enter the driver's station.
2. Power up hull systems.
3. Adjust dome light.
4. Check inflatable seal.
5. Conduct intercom check.
6. Adjust seat.
7. Adjust periscopes.
8. Adjust hatch.
9. Adjust steer-throttle control.
10. Close drain valve.
11. Check percent power or mission capability power.

REFERENCES:
1. MCO 3500.27B W/ERRATUM Operational Risk Management
2. TM 9-2350-264-10-1 Operator's Manual, Operator Controls, PMCS, and Operation Under Usual Conditions, Volume 1 of 2, Tank, Combat, Full-Tracked: 120-MM Gun, M1A1 2350-01-087-1095 General Abrams
3. TM 9-2350-264-10-2 Operator's Manual, Unusual Conditions, Troubleshooting, and Maintenance, Volume 2 of 2, Tank, Combat, Full-Tracked: 120-MM, M1A1 2350-01-087-1095, General Abrams

---

1802-VOPS-1303: Secure Driver's Station on M1A1 Tank

EVALUATION-CODED: NO **SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL:** 12 months

BILLETS: Platoon Commander

GRADES: 2NDLT

INITIAL TRAINING SETTING: FORMAL

CONDITION: Given a stationary M1A1 tank with crew.

STANDARD: Per the references.

PERFORMANCE STEPS:
1. Power down hull system.
2. Close driver's hatch.
3. Have turret crewmember position main gun over back deck and lock turret

lock.
4. Exit tank through loader's hatch.

REFERENCES:
1. MCO 3500.27B W/ERRATUM Operational Risk Management
2. TM 9-2350-264-10-1 Operator's Manual, Operator Controls, PMCS, and Operation Under Usual Conditions, Volume 1 of 2, Tank, Combat, Full-Tracked: 120-MM Gun, M1A1 2350-01-087-1095 General Abrams
3. TM 9-2350-264-10-2 Operator's Manual, Unusual Conditions, Troubleshooting, and Maintenance, Volume 2 of 2, Tank, Combat, Full-Tracked: 120-MM, M1A1 2350-01-087-1095, General Abrams

---

1802-VOPS-1304: Prepare Loader's Station on M1A1 Tank for Operation

EVALUATION-CODED: NO **SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL:** 12 months

BILLETS: Platoon Commander

GRADES: 2NDLT

INITIAL TRAINING SETTING: FORMAL

CONDITION: Given a stationary M1A1 tank and M240 machine gun.

STANDARD: Per the references.

PERFORMANCE STEPS:
1. Open loader's hatch
2. Erect crosswind sensor.
3. Install loader's machine gun.
4. Enter loader's station.
5. Power up loader's station.
6. Conduct intercom check.
7. Adjust loader's seat.
8. Adjust loader's hatch.
9. Position loader's guards and safety guard frame for firing.

REFERENCES:
1. MCO 3500.27B W/ERRATUM Operational Risk Management
2. TM 9-2350-264-10-1 Operator's Manual, Operator Controls, PMCS, and Operation Under Usual Conditions, Volume 1 of 2, Tank, Combat, Full-Tracked: 120-MM Gun, M1A1 2350-01-087-1095 General Abrams
3. TM 9-2350-264-10-2 Operator's Manual, Unusual Conditions, Troubleshooting, and Maintenance, Volume 2 of 2, Tank, Combat, Full-Tracked: 120-MM, M1A1 2350-01-087-1095, General Abrams

---

1802-VOPS-1305: Secure Loader's Station on M1A1 Tank

EVALUATION-CODED: NO **SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL:** 12 months

BILLETS: Platoon Commander

GRADES: 2NDLT

INITIAL TRAINING SETTING: FORMAL

CONDITION: Given a stationary M1A1 tank.

STANDARD: Per the references.

PERFORMANCE STEPS:
1. Stow loader's guards and safety guard frame.
2. Power down loader's station.
3. Remove loader's machine gun.
4. Stow crosswind sensor.
5. Remove antennas.
6. Close and lock loader's hatch.

REFERENCES:
1. MCO 3500.27B W/ERRATUM Operational Risk Management
2. TM 9-2350-264-10-1 Operator's Manual, Operator Controls, PMCS, and Operation Under Usual Conditions, Volume 1 of 2, Tank, Combat, Full-Tracked: 120-MM Gun, M1A1 2350-01-087-1095 General Abrams
3. TM 9-2350-264-10-2 Operator's Manual, Unusual Conditions, Troubleshooting, and Maintenance, Volume 2 of 2, Tank, Combat, Full-Tracked: 120-MM, M1A1 2350-01-087-1095, General Abrams

---

1802-VOPS-1306: Prepare Gunner's Station on M1A1 Tank for Operation

EVALUATION-CODED: NO **SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL:** 6 months

BILLETS: Platoon Commander

GRADES: 2NDLT, 1STLT, CAPT, MAJ, LTCOL

INITIAL TRAINING SETTING: FORMAL

CONDITION: Given a stationary M1A1 tank with crew and M240 machinegun.

STANDARD: Per the references.

PERFORMANCE STEPS:
1. Enter gunner's station.
2. Adjust dome light.
3. Conduct intercom check.
4. Install coaxial machine gun.
5. Adjust gunner's seat.
6. Adjust brow pads.
7. Position chest rest for firing.
8. Power up gunner's station.
9. Conduct main accumulator pressure check.
10. Conduct GPS functional check and adjustments.
11. Conduct computer self test and computer data check.
12. Conduct TIS checkout.
13. Conduct GAS adjustments.
14. Test fire control system.

REFERENCES:
1. MCO 3500.27B W/ERRATUM Operational Risk Management
2. TM 9-2350-264-10-1 Operator's Manual, Operator Controls, PMCS, and Operation Under Usual Conditions, Volume 1 of 2, Tank, Combat, Full-Tracked: 120-MM Gun, M1A1 2350-01-087-1095 General Abrams
3. TM 9-2350-264-10-2 Operator's Manual, Unusual Conditions, Troubleshooting, and Maintenance, Volume 2 of 2, Tank, Combat, Full-Tracked: 120-MM, M1A1 2350-01-087-1095, General Abrams

---

1802-VOPS-1307: Secure Gunner's Station on M1A1 Tank

EVALUATION-CODED: NO **SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL:** 6 months

BILLETS: Platoon Commander

GRADES: 2NDLT, 1STLT, CAPT, MAJ, LTCOL

INITIAL TRAINING SETTING: FORMAL

CONDITION: Given a stationary M1A1 tank.

STANDARD: Per the references.

PERFORMANCE STEPS:
1. Remove coaxial machine gun.
2. Power down gunner's station.

REFERENCES:
1. MCO 3500.27B W/ERRATUM Operational Risk Management
2. TM 9-2350-264-10-1 Operator's Manual, Operator Controls, PMCS, and Operation Under Usual Conditions, Volume 1 of 2, Tank, Combat, Full-Tracked: 120-MM Gun, M1A1 2350-01-087-1095 General Abrams
3. TM 9-2350-264-10-2 Operator's Manual, Unusual Conditions, Troubleshooting, and Maintenance, Volume 2 of 2, Tank, Combat, Full-Tracked: 120-MM, M1A1 2350-01-087-1095, General Abrams

---

1802-VOPS-1308: Prepare Commander's Station on M1A1 Tank for Operation

EVALUATION-CODED: NO **SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL:** 6 months

BILLETS: Platoon Commander

GRADES: 2NDLT, 1STLT, CAPT, MAJ, LTCOL

INITIAL TRAINING SETTING: FORMAL

CONDITION: Given a stationary M1A1 tank, .50 caliber M48 HB machine gun or M240 machine gun.

STANDARD: Per the references.

PERFORMANCE STEPS:
1. Enter tank commander's station.
2. Position commander's arm guard.
3. Power up commander's station and turret.
4. Conduct intercom check.
5. Adjust commander's seat.
6. Adjust commander's hatch.
7. Adjust commander's platforms.
8. Install commander's weapon.
9. Conduct Position Location Reporting System (PLRS) checkout.
10. Adjust commander's GPS extension.

REFERENCES:
1. MCO 3500.27B W/ERRATUM Operational Risk Management
2. TM 9-2350-264-10-1 Operator's Manual, Operator Controls, PMCS, and Operation Under Usual Conditions, Volume 1 of 2, Tank, Combat, Full-Tracked: 120-MM Gun, M1A1 2350-01-087-1095 General Abrams
3. TM 9-2350-264-10-2 Operator's Manual, Unusual Conditions, Troubleshooting, and Maintenance, Volume 2 of 2, Tank, Combat, Full-Tracked: 120-MM, M1A1 2350-01-087-1095, General Abrams

---

1802-VOPS-1309: Secure Commander's Station on M1A1 Tank

EVALUATION-CODED: NO **SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL:** 6 months

BILLETS: Platoon Commander

GRADES: 2NDLT, 1STLT, CAPT, MAJ, LTCOL

INITIAL TRAINING SETTING: FORMAL

CONDITION: Given a stationary M1A1 tank.

STANDARD: Per the references.

PERFORMANCE STEPS:
1. Remove commander's weapon.
2. Secure commander's station and turret.
3. Power down commander's station and turret.

REFERENCES:
1. MCO 3500.27B W/ERRATUM Operational Risk Management
2. TM 9-2350-264-10-1 Operator's Manual, Operator Controls, PMCS, and Operation Under Usual Conditions, Volume 1 of 2, Tank, Combat, Full-Tracked: 120-MM Gun, M1A1 2350-01-087-1095 General Abrams
3. TM 9-2350-264-10-2 Operator's Manual, Unusual Conditions, Troubleshcoting, and Maintenance, Volume 2 of 2, Tank, Combat, Full-Tracked: 120-MM, M1A1 2350-01-087-1095, General Abrams

---

1802-VOPS-1310: Refuel an M1A1 Tank

EVALUATION-CODED: NO **SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL:** 12 months

BILLETS: Platoon Commander

GRADES: 2NDLT

INITIAL TRAINING SETTING: FORMAL

CONDITION: Given an M1A1 tank and a fuel source.

STANDARD: Per the references.

PERFORMANCE STEPS:
1. Make sure tank is parked on level ground.
2. Shut down engine.
3. Tell turret crew member to traverse turret as required for fueling.
4. Tell another crew member to get portable fire extinguisher from left turret stowage box.
5. Clean around fuel tank filler cover with clean rag.
6. Lift pin out of bracket, then pull out pin.
7. Lift fuel tank cover.
8. Clean fuel tank filler cap, fuel filler neck, and drain tube if equipped, with clean rag.
9. Turn fuel tank filler cap counterclockwise using handle.
10. Lift fuel tank filler cap from fuel tank filler neck.
11. Tell another crew member to point nozzle on portable fire extinguisher at fuel tank filler neck.
12. Put fuel nozzle from fuel source into fuel tank filler neck.
13. Pump fuel into fuel tank until fuel is about 1 inch below top of strainer flange.
14. Secure fuel tank filler cap.

REFERENCES:
1. FM 3-20.15 Tank Platoon
2. MCO 3500.27B W/ERRATUM Operational Risk Management
3. MCWP 3-12 Marine Corps Tank Employment
4. TM 9-2350-264-10-1 Operator's Manual, Operator Controls, PMCS, and Operation Under Usual Conditions, Volume 1 of 2, Tank, Combat, Full-Tracked: 120-MM Gun, M1A1 2350-01-087-1095 General Abrams
5. TM 9-2350-264-10-2 Operator's Manual, Unusual Conditions, Troubleshooting, and Maintenance, Volume 2 of 2, Tank, Combat, Full-Tracked: 120-MM, M1A1 2350-01-087-1095, General Abrams

---

1802-VOPS-1311: Operate M1A1 Tank In Extreme Cold

EVALUATION-CODED: NO **SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL:** 12 months

BILLETS: Platoon Commander

GRADES: 2NDLT, 1STLT, CAPT

INITIAL TRAINING SETTING: FORMAL

CONDITION: Given an M1A1 tank.

STANDARD: Per the references.

PERFORMANCE STEPS:

1. Prepare vehicle for cold weather operations in accordance with FM 9-207.
2. Perform hydraulic zero pressure check to bring hydraulic system pressure to zero.
3. Set TURRET POWER switch on commander's panel to "OFF".
4. Attempt to start engine normally; if engine starts go to step 11; if ABORT light on drivers master panel lights, turn off ABORT light and then go to step 5.
5. Press and hold PUSH TO START pushbutton for about 3 seconds and then let go.
6. Press and hold PUSH TO START pushbutton again and hold until green STARTED light lights, but no longer than 2 minutes and then let go.
7. If engine starts go to step 1; if engine does not start, wait 3 minutes and go to step 8.
8. Set and hold STARTER ONLY switch to ENGAGED for 20-30 seconds and then let go.
9. Wait until engine stops turning and RPM gage shows 0 RPM.
10. Make three more attempts repeating steps 6 through 9. If engine still does not start, notify unit maintenance.
11. Wait 2 minutes and then have loader set turret networks box circuit breaker CB3 to ON and reset LAMP RESET button on TNB.
12. Check engine indicators.
13. Check warning lights.
14. Check hydraulics.
15. Check caution lights.
16. Drive tank in snow and extreme cold weather.

REFERENCES:

1. FM 3-20.15 Tank Platoon
2. FM 9-207 Operations and Maintenance of Ordnance Materiel in Cold Weather
3. MCO 3500.27B W/ERRATUM Operational Risk Management
4. MCWP 3-12 Marine Corps Tank Employment
5. TM 9-2350-264-10-1 Operator's Manual, Operator Controls, PMCS, and Operation Under Usual Conditions, Volume 1 of 2, Tank, Combat, Full-Tracked: 120-MM Gun, M1A1 2350-01-087-1095 General Abrams
6. TM 9-2350-264-10-2 Operator's Manual, Unusual Conditions, Troubleshooting, and Maintenance, Volume 2 of 2, Tank, Combat, Full-Tracked: 120-MM, M1A1 2350-01-087-1095, General Abrams

---

1802-VOPS-1312: Maintain Air Induction System on M1A1 Tank

EVALUATION-CODED: NO **SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL:** 12 months

BILLETS: Platoon Commander

GRADES: 2NDLT

INITIAL TRAINING SETTING: FORMAL

CONDITION: Given an M1A1 tank with crew and SL-3 items.

STANDARD: Per the references.

PERFORMANCE STEPS:
1. Traverse turret to service precleaner.
2. Clean sponson air intake grilles.
3. Open precleaner covers.
4. Open top deck left grille doors.
5. Service precleaner.
6. Close top deck left grille doors.
7. Close precleaner covers.

REFERENCES:
1. MCO 3500.27B W/ERRATUM Operational Risk Management
2. TM 9-2350-264-10-1 Operator's Manual, Operator Controls, PMCS, and Operation Under Usual Conditions, Volume 1 of 2, Tank, Combat, Full-Tracked: 120-MM Gun, M1A1 2350-01-087-1095 General Abrams
3. TM 9-2350-264-10-2 Operator's Manual, Unusual Conditions, Troubleshooting, and Maintenance, Volume 2 of 2, Tank, Combat, Full-Tracked: 120-MM, M1A1 2350-01-087-1095, General Abrams

---

1802-VOPS-1313: Adjust Track Tension on M1A1 Tank

EVALUATION-CODED: NO **SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL:** 12 months

BILLETS: Platoon Commander

GRADES: 2NDLT

INITIAL TRAINING SETTING: FORMAL

CONDITION: Given an M1A1 tank with crew, parked on ground level, SL-3 items, and references.

STANDARD: So that grease flows out of release valve and the tank is ready to be maneuvered.

PERFORMANCE STEPS:
1. Open number one skirt.
2. Clean threads on adjusting link.
3. Clean relief valve and adjusting link grease fitting.
4. Back out lock screw 3 1/2 turns.
5. Pump grease into grease fitting until grease spurts out of relief valve.
6. Screw locking nut along threads with spanner wrench until loosely seated against tube.
7. Close number one skirt.
8. Repeat steps for other side of track.
9. Start engine, drive rearward about 20 feet, drive forward about 20 feet, and then set transmission shift control to N and coast to a stop.
10. Shut down engine (instruct driver to be prepared to apply parking brake).
11. Open number one skirt.
12. Pump grease into fitting until grease flows out of relief valve.
13. Screw locknut along threads with spanner wrench until slot is in line with lock screw.
14. Tighten screw.
15. Release pressure on relief valve.
16. Close number one skirt.

17. Repeat performance steps 11 through 16 for the other side of the tank.

REFERENCES:
1. MCO 3500.27B W/ERRATUM Operational Risk Management
2. TM 9-2350-264-10-1 Operator's Manual, Operator Controls, PMCS, and Operation Under Usual Conditions, Volume 1 of 2, Tank, Combat, Full-Tracked: 120-MM Gun, M1A1 2350-01-087-1095 General Abrams
3. TM 9-2350-264-10-2 Operator's Manual, Unusual Conditions, Troubleshooting, and Maintenance, Volume 2 of 2, Tank, Combat, Full-Tracked: 120-MM, M1A1 2350-01-087-1095, General Abrams

---

1802-VOPS-1314: Inspect Hydraulics on M1A1 Tank

EVALUATION-CODED: NO **SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL:** 12 months

BILLETS: Platoon Commander

GRADES: 2NDLT

INITIAL TRAINING SETTING: FORMAL

CONDITION: Given an M1A1 tank with crew and references.

STANDARD: To identify and correct maintenance deficiencies within authorized maintenance level, and report any deficiencies that cannot be corrected by authorized maintenance level to organizational maintenance.

PERFORMANCE STEPS:
1. Remove engine access cover.
2. Inspect engine hydraulics.
3. Install engine access cover.
4. Open top deck right grille doors.
5. Inspect heat exchanger.
6. Close top deck right grille.
7. Inspect hull hydraulics.
8. Power charge manual elevation accumulator.
9. Manually charge manual elevation accumulator.
10. Bleed air from traverse hydraulics.

REFERENCES:
1. MCO 3500.27B W/ERRATUM Operational Risk Management
2. TM 9-2350-264-10-1 Operator's Manual, Operator Controls, PMCS, and Operation Under Usual Conditions, Volume 1 of 2, Tank, Combat, Full-Tracked: 120-MM Gun, M1A1 2350-01-087-1095 General Abrams
3. TM 9-2350-264-10-2 Operator's Manual, Unusual Conditions, Troubleshooting, and Maintenance, Volume 2 of 2, Tank, Combat, Full-Tracked: 120-MM, M1A1 2350-01-087-1095, General Abrams

---

1802-VOPS-1315: Maintain the M1A1 Tank 120mm Main Gun

EVALUATION-CODED: NO **SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL:** 12 months

BILLETS: Platoon Commander

GRADES: 2NDLT

INITIAL TRAINING SETTING: FORMAL

CONDITION: Given an M1A1 tank with crew, SL-3 items, clean dry rags, CLP, sponge, and references.

STANDARD: So that all operator preventive maintenance is performed.

PERFORMANCE STEPS:
1. Clean and service bore evacuator.
2. Clean and service main gun tube.
3. Clean and service stub base deflector.
4. Remove the breechblock.
5. Clean and inspect the breechblock.
6. Install the breechblock.
7. Adjust the operating CAM.
8. Conduct a firing circuit test.

REFERENCES:
1. MCO 3500.27B W/ERRATUM Operational Risk Management
2. TM 9-2350-264-10-1 Operator's Manual, Operator Controls, PMCS, and Operation Under Usual Conditions, Volume 1 of 2, Tank, Combat, Full-Tracked: 120-MM Gun, M1A1 2350-01-087-1095 General Abrams
3. TM 9-2350-264-10-2 Operator's Manual, Unusual Conditions, Troubleshooting, and Maintenance, Volume 2 of 2, Tank, Combat, Full-Tracked: 120-MM, M1A1 2350-01-087-1095, General Abrams

---

1802-VOPS-1316: Maintain M1A1 Tank Periscopes

EVALUATION-CODED: NO **SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL:** 12 months

BILLETS: Platoon Commander

GRADES: 2NDLT

INITIAL TRAINING SETTING: FORMAL

CONDITION: Given an M1A1 tank with crew, SL-3 items, and clean water, lens cleaning solution, lens tissue, a camel's hair PM brush, and references.

STANDARD: So that the driver's washer fluid reservoir is filled with the prescribed solution; all periscope optical surfaces, windows, and mirrors are free of grease and dirt; and any damage to periscopes is reported to organizational maintenance.

PERFORMANCE STEPS:
1. Service driver's periscope washer fluid reservoir.
2. Remove periscope.
3. Check periscope for cracks or cloudiness.
4. Wipe carefully with clean rag (mounting surfaces of periscopes and their mounts must be free of dirt).
5. Install periscope.
6. Clean windows and mirrors.

7. Clean sight lenses.
8. Report any damage to periscope or windows to organizational maintenance.

REFERENCES:
1. MCO 3500.27B W/ERRATUM Operational Risk Management
2. TM 9-2350-264-10-1 Operator's Manual, Operator Controls, PMCS, and Operation Under Usual Conditions, Volume 1 of 2, Tank, Combat, Full-Tracked: 120-MM Gun, M1A1 2350-01-087-1095 General Abrams
3. TM 9-2350-264-10-2 Operator's Manual, Unusual Conditions, Troubleshooting, and Maintenance, Volume 2 of 2, Tank, Combat, Full-Tracked: 120-MM, M1A1 2350-01-087-1095, General Abrams

---

1802-VOPS-1317: Replace Track Shoe on M1A1 Tank

EVALUATION-CODED: NO **SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL:** 12 months

BILLETS: Platoon Commander

GRADES: 2NDLT

INITIAL TRAINING SETTING: FORMAL

CONDITION: Given an M1A1 tank with damaged track shoe, crew, SL-3 items, and replacement track shoe.

STANDARD: Per the references.

PERFORMANCE STEPS:
1. Position the unserviceable track shoe midway between the number one roadwheel and the idler wheel.
2. Open necessary skirt panels (number 1, 4 and 6 as applicable).
3. Release track tension.
4. Install the track connecting fixtures if more than one shoe is to be replaced.
5. Disconnect the track and remove the damaged shoe.
6. Install the track shoe and track.
7. Remove the track connecting fixtures if used.
8. Adjust the track tension.
9. Close the skirts.

REFERENCES:
1. MCO 3500.27B W/ERRATUM Operational Risk Management
2. TM 9-2350-264-10-1 Operator's Manual, Operator Controls, PMCS, and Operation Under Usual Conditions, Volume 1 of 2, Tank, Combat, Full-Tracked: 120-MM Gun, M1A1 2350-01-087-1095 General Abrams
3. TM 9-2350-264-10-2 Operator's Manual, Unusual Conditions, Troubleshooting, and Maintenance, Volume 2 of 2, Tank, Combat, Full-Tracked: 120-MM, M1A1 2350-01-087-1095, General Abrams

---

1802-VOPS-1318: Replace Thrown Track on M1A1 Tank

EVALUATION-CODED: NO **SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL:** 12 months

BILLETS: Platoon Commander

GRADES: 2NDLT

INITIAL TRAINING SETTING: FORMAL

CONDITION: Given an M1A1 tank with thrown track and crew, SL-3 items, and 75-foot 3/4" diameter rope.

STANDARD: Per the references.

PERFORMANCE STEPS:
1. Walk the track into position.
2. If track can be walked on, adjust track tension and continue mission.
3. If track is thrown and cannot be walked on. disconnect track.
4. Prepare to install track.
5. Check suspension for damage and serviceability.
6. Check track parts for damage and serviceability.
7. Install track torque binder.
8. Get tank onto track.
9. Get track onto drive sprocket.
10. Move track over idler wheel.
11. Connect track and adjust tension.
12. Remove track torque binder and continue mission.

REFERENCES:
1. MCO 3500.27B W/ERRATUM Operational Risk Management
2. TM 9-2350-264-10-1 Operator's Manual, Operator Controls, PMCS, and Operation Under Usual Conditions, Volume 1 of 2, Tank, Combat, Full-Tracked: 120-MM Gun, M1A1 2350-01-087-1095 General Abrams
3. TM 9-2350-264-10-2 Operator's Manual, Unusual Conditions, Troubleshooting, and Maintenance, Volume 2 of 2, Tank, Combat, Full-Tracked: 120-MM, M1A1 2350-01-087-1095, General Abrams

---

1802-VOPS-1319: Service Batteries on M1A1 Tank

EVALUATION-CODED: NO **SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL:** 12 months

BILLETS: Platoon Commander

GRADES: 2NDLT

INITIAL TRAINING SETTING: FORMAL

CONDITION: Given an M1A1 tank with all stations shut down, dry rags, grease, and SL-3 items.

STANDARD: Per the references.

PERFORMANCE STEPS:
1. Open battery covers.
2. Clean tops of batteries with clean rag.
3. Move rubber boots off terminals.
4. Check for evidence of corrosion, arcing, rust, or looseness; if found,

notify organizational maintenance.
5. Ensure felt washers are on terminals; if missing, notify organizational maintenance.
6. Check insulation on all cables; if cracked, cut, or rubbed through, notify organizational maintenance.
7. If all batteries are in good condition, apply light coat of grease to each terminal, put rubber boots back in place, install plastic cover, swing clamps in place over cover and close battery covers.

REFERENCES:
1. MCO 3500.27B W/ERRATUM Operational Risk Management
2. TM 9-2350-264-10-1 Operator's Manual, Operator Controls, PMCS, and Operation Under Usual Conditions, Volume 1 of 2, Tank, Combat, Full-Tracked: 120-MM Gun, M1A1 2350-01-087-1095 General Abrams
3. TM 9-2350-264-10-2 Operator's Manual, Unusual Conditions, Troubleshooting, and Maintenance, Volume 2 of 2, Tank, Combat, Full-Tracked: 120-MM, M1A1 2350-01-087-1095, General Abrams

---

1802-VOPS-1320: Troubleshoot M1A1 Tank

EVALUATION-CODED: NO **SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL:** 12 months

BILLETS: Platoon Commander

GRADES: 2NDLT

INITIAL TRAINING SETTING: FORMAL

CONDITION: Given an M1A1 tank with a malfunction, crew, and references.

STANDARD: To isolate and identify any malfunctions, correct if authorized, and report to organizational maintenance as necessary.

PERFORMANCE STEPS:
1. Determine the symptom or malfunction.
2. Locate symptom or malfunction in TM 9-2350-264-10-2.
3. Conduct troubleshooting procedures.

REFERENCES:
1. MCO 3500.27B W/ERRATUM Operational Risk Management
2. TM 9-2350-264-10-1 Operator's Manual, Operator Controls, PMCS, and Operation Under Usual Conditions, Volume 1 of 2, Tank, Combat, Full-Tracked: 120-MM Gun, M1A1 2350-01-087-1095 General Abrams
3. TM 9-2350-264-10-2 Operator's Manual, Unusual Conditions, Troubleshooting, and Maintenance, Volume 2 of 2, Tank, Combat, Full-Tracked: 120-MM, M1A1 2350-01-087-1095, General Abrams

---

1802-VOPS-1321: Slave Start M1A1 Tank

EVALUATION-CODED: NO **SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL:** 12 months

BILLETS: Platoon Commander

GRADES: 2NDLT

INITIAL TRAINING SETTING: FORMAL

CONDITION: Given an M1A1 tank with dead batteries, crew, and the appropriate collateral equipment.

STANDARD: Per the references.

PERFORMANCE STEPS:
1. Prepare dead tank.
2. Prepare live tank.
3. Start dead tank.

REFERENCES:
1. MCO 3500.27B W/ERRATUM Operational Risk Management
2. TM 9-2350-264-10-1 Operator's Manual, Operator Controls, PMCS, and Operation Under Usual Conditions, Volume 1 of 2, Tank, Combat, Full-Tracked: 120-MM Gun, M1A1 2350-01-087-1095 General Abrams
3. TM 9-2350-264-10-2 Operator's Manual, Unusual Conditions, Troubleshooting, and Maintenance, Volume 2 of 2, Tank, Combat, Full-Tracked: 120-MM, M1A1 2350-01-087-1095, General Abrams

---

1802-VOPS-1322: Operate M1A1 Tank on Land

EVALUATION-CODED: NO **SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL:** 12 months

BILLETS: Platoon Commander

GRADES: 2NDLT, 1STLT, CAPT, MAJ, LTCOL

INITIAL TRAINING SETTING: FORMAL

CONDITION: Given an M1A1 tank, a training area to support land driving, and the references.

STANDARD: Without losing control of the vehicle at any time, applying emergency procedures as required, and continuously observing the forward terrain for possible enemy targets and likely friendly firing positions.

PERFORMANCE STEPS:
1. Perform preoperations checks.
2. Properly start the tank.
3. Check operating systems to ensure vehicle is functioning properly.
4. Ensure all stations are properly prepared.
5. Ensure that the crews operate the vehicle on land, driving in reverse and pivoting the vehicle as required.
6. Ensure that the crews perform during operations checks as required.
7. Ensure that the crews drive up and down hills as required.
8. Ensure that the crews drive over obstacles as required.
9. Ensure that the crews drive across ditches as required.
10. Ensure that the crews use evasive driving techniques as required.
11. Ensure that the crews drive at night, with and without lights, with and without night vision devices, as required.

12. Ensure that the crews stop the vehicle properly.
13. Ensure that the crews perform after operations checks.

REFERENCES:
1. FM 3-20.15 Tank Platoon
2. MCO 3500.27B W/ERRATUM Operational Risk Management
3. MCWP 3-12 Marine Corps Tank Employment
4. TM 9-2350-264-10-1 Operator's Manual, Operator Controls, PMCS, and Operation Under Usual Conditions, Volume 1 of 2, Tank, Combat, Full-Tracked: 120-MM Gun, M1A1 2350-01-087-1095 General Abrams
5. TM 9-2350-264-10-2 Operator's Manual, Unusual Conditions, Troubleshooting, and Maintenance, Volume 2 of 2, Tank, Combat, Full-Tracked: 120-MM, M1A1 2350-01-087-1095, General Abrams

---

1802-VOPS-1323: Recover Mired M1A1 Tank

EVALUATION-CODED: NO **SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL:** 12 months

BILLETS: Platoon Commander

GRADES: 2NDLT

INITIAL TRAINING SETTING: FORMAL

CONDITION: Given an M1A1 tank unit, a disabled M1A1 tank capable of being towed, and references.

STANDARD: Using self recovery techniques or other M1A1 tanks if necessary.

PERFORMANCE STEPS:
1. Prepare mired vehicle for towing.
2. Prepare towing vehicle.
3. Attach tow cables or tow bar.
4. Use additional vehicles if required.

REFERENCES:
1. FM 3-20.15 Tank Platoon
2. MCO 3500.27B W/ERRATUM Operational Risk Management
3. MCRP 3-13.1B Manual for the Track Combat Vehicle Driver
4. MCRP 4-11.4A Battle Damage Assessment and Repair
5. MCRP 4-24A Vehicle Recovery Operations
6. MCWP 3-12 Marine Corps Tank Employment
7. TM 9-2350-264-10-1 Operator's Manual, Operator Controls, PMCS, and Operation Under Usual Conditions, Volume 1 of 2, Tank, Combat, Full-Tracked: 120-MM Gun, M1A1 2350-01-087-1095 General Abrams
8. TM 9-2350-264-10-2 Operator's Manual, Unusual Conditions, Troubleshooting, and Maintenance, Volume 2 of 2, Tank, Combat, Full-Tracked: 120-MM, M1A1 2350-01-087-1095, General Abrams

---

1802-VOPS-1324: Supervise M1A1 Tank Recovery Operations

EVALUATION-CODED: NO **SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL:** 12 months

BILLETS: Platoon Commander

GRADES: 2NDLT, 1STLT, CAPT

INITIAL TRAINING SETTING: FORMAL

CONDITION: Given an M1A1 tank unit, a disabled M1A1 tank capable of being towed, and references.

STANDARD: Using self recovery techniques or other M1A1 tanks.

PERFORMANCE STEPS:
1. Locate the disabled vehicle and establish local security.
2. Conduct estimate of the situation to determine: situation of the vehicle (mired, disabled, overturned), the condition of the vehicle (can operate once recovered, can be repaired on site, must be towed to collection point), and most appropriate recovery method (self, like, other).
3. Mired tank: attempt self recovery, use other tank(s), and use tank recovery vehicles.
4. Disabled tank: use other tank(s), use tank recovery vehicle.
5. Overturned tank: use other tanks, use tank recovery vehicles.
6. Conduct repairs as appropriate.
7. Rig vehicle for towing to collection point if repairs can return the vehicle to operational status.

REFERENCES:
1. FM 3-20.15 Tank Platoon
2. MCO 3500.27B W/ERRATUM Operational Risk Management
3. MCRP 3-13.1B Manual for the Track Combat Vehicle Driver
4. MCRP 4-11.4A Battle Damage Assessment and Repair
5. MCRP 4-24A Vehicle Recovery Operations
6. MCWP 3-12 Marine Corps Tank Employment
7. TM 9-2350-264-10-1 Operator's Manual, Operator Controls, PMCS, and Operation Under Usual Conditions, Volume 1 of 2, Tank, Combat, Full-Tracked: 120-MM Gun, M1A1 2350-01-087-1095 General Abrams
8. TM 9-2350-264-10-2 Operator's Manual, Unusual Conditions, Troubleshooting, and Maintenance, Volume 2 of 2, Tank, Combat, Full-Tracked: 120-MM, M1A1 2350-01-087-1095, General Abrams

---

1802-VOPS-1325: Evacuate Wounded Crewmember from Each Crew Station

EVALUATION-CODED: NO **SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL:** 6 months

BILLETS: Platoon Commander

GRADES: 2NDLT, 1STLT, CAPT, MAJ, LTCOL

INITIAL TRAINING SETTING: FORMAL

CONDITION: Given an M1A1 tank, a crew with a wounded crewmember, and a tactical scenario.

STANDARD: Per the references.

PERFORMANCE STEPS:

1. Stop the vehicle, preferably in a covered and concealed position.
2. Determine the extent of the crewman's injuries and stabilize him as much as possible.
3. Determine the best method for evacuating the wounded crewmember, either up and through the driver's, loader's, or commander's hatch.
4. If evacuating him up and through a hatch, have a second crewmember assist from below, while using the helo lifting strap on the crewman's uniform to raise him clear of the hatch. Lower him over the side of the vehicle to the second crewman waiting to assist.
5. Move the injured crewman to a covered position and continue first aid as appropriate.
6. Evacuate the injured crewman in accordance with the operations order or unit SOP.

REFERENCES:

1. FM 3-20.15 Tank Platoon
2. MCO 3500.27B W/ERRATUM Operational Risk Management
3. MCWP 3-12 Marine Corps Tank Employment
4. TM 9-2350-264-10-1 Operator's Manual, Operator Controls, PMCS, and Operation Under Usual Conditions, Volume 1 of 2, Tank, Combat, Full-Tracked: 120-MM Gun, M1A1 2350-01-087-1095 General Abrams
5. TM 9-2350-264-10-2 Operator's Manual, Unusual Conditions, Troubleshooting, and Maintenance, Volume 2 of 2, Tank, Combat, Full-Tracked: 120-MM, M1A1 2350-01-087-1095, General Abrams

---

1802-VOPS-1326: Direct Hasty Demolition

EVALUATION-CODED: NO **SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL:** 12 months

BILLETS: Platoon Commander

GRADES: 2NDLT, 1STLT, CAPT

INITIAL TRAINING SETTING: FORMAL

CONDITION: Given a disabled M1A1 tank, an operations order directing destruction of vehicles to prevent enemy use within 15 minutes, a tactical scenario involving enemy contact within 20 minutes, a specified threat, and references.

STANDARD: To prevent enemy use.

PERFORMANCE STEPS:

1. Establish local security around disabled vehicle.
2. Determine amount of time available to conduct repair or salvage operations.
3. If speed is essential or enemy pressure is present prepare vehicle for hasty demolition by: removing all wounded and dead personnel from vehicle, removing any personal weapons and equipment, disable fire suppression system, and clear all radios if time permits.
4. Have all personnel and vehicles move at least 500 meters from disabled vehicle.
5. Have designated vehicle(s) fire into engine compartment until onboard

ammunition and fuel ignite or explode.

REFERENCES:
1. FM 3-20.15 Tank Platoon
2. MCO 3500.27B W/ERRATUM Operational Risk Management
3. MCRP 3-13.1B Manual for the Track Combat Vehicle Driver
4. MCRP 4-11.4A Battle Damage Assessment and Repair
5. MCWP 3-12 Marine Corps Tank Employment
6. TM 750-244-4-2 Destruction of Army Material to Prevent Enemy Use
7. TM 9-2350-264-10-1 Operator's Manual, Operator Controls, PMCS, and Operation Under Usual Conditions, Volume 1 of 2, Tank, Combat, Full-Tracked: 120-MM Gun, M1A1 2350-01-087-1095 General Abrams
8. TM 9-2350-264-10-2 Operator's Manual, Unusual Conditions, Troubleshooting, and Maintenance, Volume 2 of 2, Tank, Combat, Full-Tracked: 120-MM, M1A1 2350-01-087-1095, General Abrams

---

1802-VOPS-1327: Direct Deliberate Demolition

EVALUATION-CODED: NO **SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL:** 12 months

BILLETS: Platoon Commander

GRADES: 2NDLT, 1STLT, CAPT

INITIAL TRAINING SETTING: FORMAL

CONDITION: Given a disabled M1A1 tank, an operations order directing the destruction of vehicles to prevent enemy use, a tactical scenario involving enemy contact within two hours, a specified threat, and references.

STANDARD: To prevent enemy use.

PERFORMANCE STEPS:
1. Establish local security around disabled vehicle.
2. Determine amount of time available to conduct repair or salvage operations.
3. If enemy contact is not likely within two hours prepare vehicle for deliberate demolition by: removing all wounded and dead personnel from vehicle, removing any personal weapons and equipment, destroy/remove sight/fire control equipment, destroy/remove vehicle records, destroy/remove ammunition, destroy/remove communications equipment, and disable fire suppression system.
4. Have all personnel and vehicles move at least 500 meters from disabled vehicle.
5. Have designated vehicle(s) fire into engine compartment until onboard ammunition and fuel ignite or explode or use thermite grenade.

REFERENCES:
1. FM 3-20.15 Tank Platoon
2. MCO 3500.27B W/ERRATUM Operational Risk Management
3. MCRP 3-13.1B Manual for the Track Combat Vehicle Driver
4. MCRP 4-11.4A Battle Damage Assessment and Repair
5. MCWP 3-12 Marine Corps Tank Employment
6. TM 750-244-4-2 Destruction of Army Material to Prevent Enemy Use

7. TM 9-2350-264-10-1 Operator's Manual, Operator Controls, PMCS, and Operation Under Usual Conditions, Volume 1 of 2, Tank, Combat, Full-Tracked: 120-MM Gun, M1A1 2350-01-087-1095 General Abrams
8. TM 9-2350-264-10-2 Operator's Manual, Unusual Conditions, Troubleshooting, and Maintenance, Volume 2 of 2, Tank, Combat, Full-Tracked: 120-MM, M1A1 2350-01-087-1095, General Abrams

---

1802-VOPS-1328: Tow M1A1 Tank

EVALUATION-CODED: NO **SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL:** 12 months

BILLETS: Platoon Commander

GRADES: 2NDLT

INITIAL TRAINING SETTING: FORMAL

CONDITION: Given an M1A1 tank capable of being towed, two M1A1's capable of towing or suitable tank recovery vehicle, crews, tow bar, appropriate collateral equipment, and a training area suitable for mechanized operations.

STANDARD: Per the references.

PERFORMANCE STEPS:
1. Prepare disabled tank for towing.
2. Prepare towing tank for towing.
3. Attach tow bar or tow cables between vehicles.
4. Employ brake vehicle as necessary.

REFERENCES:
1. FM 3-20.15 Tank Platoon
2. MCO 3500.27B W/ERRATUM Operational Risk Management
3. MCWP 3-12 Marine Corps Tank Employment
4. TM 9-2350-264-10-1 Operator's Manual, Operator Controls, PMCS, and Operation Under Usual Conditions, Volume 1 of 2, Tank, Combat, Full-Tracked: 120-MM Gun, M1A1 2350-01-087-1095 General Abrams
5. TM 9-2350-264-10-2 Operator's Manual, Unusual Conditions, Troubleshooting, and Maintenance, Volume 2 of 2, Tank, Combat, Full-Tracked: 120-MM, M1A1 2350-01-087-1095, General Abrams

---

1802-VOPS-1329: Extinguish Tank Fire

EVALUATION-CODED: NO **SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL:** 12 months

BILLETS: Platoon Commander

GRADES: 2NDLT

INITIAL TRAINING SETTING: FORMAL

CONDITION: Given an M1A1 tank with crew and a scenario with a simulated vehicle fire.

STANDARD: Per the references.

PERFORMANCE STEPS:
1. Operate engine compartment fire extinguisher in the automatic mode.
2. Operate crew compartment fire extinguisher in the automatic mode.

REFERENCES:
1. FM 3-20.15 Tank Platoon
2. MCO 3500.27B W/ERRATUM Operational Risk Management
3. TM 9-2350-264-10-1 Operator's Manual, Operator Controls, PMCS, and Operation Under Usual Conditions, Volume 1 of 2, Tank, Combat, Full-Tracked: 120-MM Gun, M1A1 2350-01-087-1095 General Abrams
4. TM 9-2350-264-10-2 Operator's Manual, Unusual Conditions, Troubleshooting, and Maintenance, Volume 2 of 2, Tank, Combat, Full-Tracked: 120-MM, M1A1 2350-01-087-1095, General Abrams

---

1802-VOPS-1330: Conduct Bustle Hit Drill

EVALUATION-CODED: NO **SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL:** 12 months

BILLETS: Platoon Commander

GRADES: 2NDLT, 1STLT, CAPT

INITIAL TRAINING SETTING: FORMAL

CONDITION: Given an M1A1 tank with crew, a training area suitable for mechanized operations, and a scenario involving a hit to the turret bustle.

STANDARD: Per the references.

PERFORMANCE STEPS:
1. Don protective masks.
2. Turn on vehicle particulate filter system.
3. Use overpressure system as applicable.
4. Rotate turret to position gun tube over the side of the vehicle.
5. Wait inside the tank for at least 60 minutes.
6. Move with hatches open to maintenance collection point.

REFERENCES:
1. FM 3-20.12 Tank Gunnery
2. FM 3-20.15 Tank Platoon
3. MCO 3500.27B W/ERRATUM Operational Risk Management
4. MCWP 3-12 Marine Corps Tank Employment
5. TM 9-2350-264-10-1 Operator's Manual, Operator Controls, PMCS, and Operation Under Usual Conditions, Volume 1 of 2, Tank, Combat, Full-Tracked: 120-MM Gun, M1A1 2350-01-087-1095 General Abrams
6. TM 9-2350-264-10-2 Operator's Manual, Unusual Conditions, Troubleshooting, and Maintenance, Volume 2 of 2, Tank, Combat, Full-Tracked: 120-MM, M1A1 2350-01-087-1095, General Abrams

---

1802-VOPS-1331: Conduct Abandon Tank Drill

EVALUATION-CODED: NO **SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL:** 12 months

BILLETS: Platoon Commander

GRADES: 2NDLT, 1STLT, CAPT, MAJ, LTCOL

INITIAL TRAINING SETTING: FORMAL

CONDITION: Given an M1A1 tank with crew, a training area suitable for mechanized operations, a scenario involving a hit to the turret bustle, and references.

STANDARD: To evacuate the crew in the event of a hit to the turret bustle.

PERFORMANCE STEPS:

1. TC reports crew status.
2. TC commands abandon tank-assemble right/left/rear.
3. Driver announces clear so that turret can be traversed.
4. TC traverses turret to 3 o'clock, levels gun, and sets radio to unused frequency.
5. Loader opens breech and removes round from main gun.
6. TC removes backplate from .50 caliber machinegun and places it in main gun breach.
7. Gunner removes backplate from coaxial machinegun and places it in main gun breach.
8. TC secures protective mask, individual weapon, rations, and SOI.
9. Gunner secures protective mask, individual weapon, rations, and all grenades to include thermite grenades.
10. Loader secures protective mask, individual weapon, M4 rifle, ammunition, rations, and loader's mittens.
11. Driver secures protective mask, individual weapon, ammunition, and rations.
12. TC places SOI in breach and receives two thermite grenades from gunner.
13. Gunner passes two thermite grenades to TC and two thermite grenades to loader.
14. Loader places one thermite grenade in breech and stands by.
15. Driver ruptures heater fuel line, turns on heater, and dismounts tank.
16. TC secures M4 rifle, exits through TC's hatch and moves to back deck.
17. Gunner exits through TC's hatch, secures loader's machinegun and two boxes of ammunition and dismounts tank.
18. TC opens right grille doors to expose fuel cell.
19. Gunner moves to area announced by TC and establishes security watch.
20. Driver moves to area announced by TC and establishes security watch.
21. TC commands "PULL PIN".
22. Loader, on command, pulls pin on remaining thermite grenade, places it in the breech, and closes the breech.
23. TC pulls pin on one grenade as loader exits tank and places both grenades on top of fuel cell.
24. Loader exits through loader's hatch and dismounts tank.
25. TC dismounts tank and conducts personnel accountability.
26. Loader moves to location announced by TC and provides security watch.

REFERENCES:
1. FM 3-20.15 Tank Platoon
2. MCO 3500.27B W/ERRATUM Operational Risk Management
3. MCWP 3-12 Marine Corps Tank Employment
4. TM 9-2350-264-10-1 Operator's Manual, Operator Controls, PMCS, and Operation Under Usual Conditions, Volume 1 of 2, Tank, Combat, Full-Tracked: 120-MM Gun, M1A1 2350-01-087-1095 General Abrams
5. TM 9-2350-264-10-2 Operator's Manual, Unusual Conditions, Troubleshooting, and Maintenance, Volume 2 of 2, Tank, Combat, Full-Tracked: 120-MM, M1A1 2350-01-087-1095, General Abrams

---

1802-VOPS-1332: Operate Driver's Night Vision Enhancer

EVALUATION-CODED: NO **SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL:** 12 months

BILLETS: Platoon Commander

GRADES: 2NDLT

INITIAL TRAINING SETTING: FORMAL

CONDITION: Given a tank unit, supported unit, an operations order, tactical scenario involving night or limited visibility, specified threat, training area, appropriate collateral equipment, and the references.

STANDARD: Per the references.

PERFORMANCE STEPS:
1. Conduct preoperations checks and services.
2. Install Driver's Night Vision Enhancer (DVE) in driver's station.
3. Connect power cable from tank to DVE and turn Night Periscope switch to "ON" on the driver's master panel.
4. Ensure sight is centered on hatch prior to vehicle operation.
5. Focus field of view prior to vehicle operation.

REFERENCES:
1. FM 3-20.15 Tank Platoon
2. MCO 3500.27B W/ERRATUM Operational Risk Management
3. MCWP 3-12 Marine Corps Tank Employment
4. TM 9-2350-264-10-1 Operator's Manual, Operator Controls, PMCS, and Operation Under Usual Conditions, Volume 1 of 2, Tank, Combat, Full-Tracked: 120-MM Gun, M1A1 2350-01-087-1095 General Abrams
5. TM 9-2350-264-10-2 Operator's Manual, Unusual Conditions, Troubleshooting, and Maintenance, Volume 2 of 2, Tank, Combat, Full-Tracked: 120-MM, M1A1 2350-01-087-1095, General Abrams

---

1802-VOPS-1333: Operate Night Vision Goggles

EVALUATION-CODED: NO **SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL:** 12 months

BILLETS: Platoon Commander

GRADES: 2NDLT, 1STLT, CAPT, MAJ, LTCOL

INITIAL TRAINING SETTING: FORMAL

CONDITION: Given a tank unit, supported unit, an operations order, tactical scenario involving night or limited visibility, specified threat, training area, pair of night vision goggles, and appropriate collateral equipment.

STANDARD: Per the references.

PERFORMANCE STEPS:
1. Conduct preoperational checks.
2. Prepare goggles for operation.
3. Operate the goggles.
4. Shutdown and stow the goggles.

REFERENCES:
1. FM 3-20.15 Tank Platoon
2. MCO 3500.27B W/ERRATUM Operational Risk Management
3. MCRP 3-35A Multi-Service TTP for Night and Adverse Weather Operations
4. TM 11-5855-262-10 Operator's Manual, AN/PVS-7

1802-VOPS-1334: Maintain Driver's Night Vision Enhancer

EVALUATION-CODED: NO **SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL:** 12 months

BILLETS: Platoon Commander

GRADES: 2NDLT

INITIAL TRAINING SETTING: FORMAL

CONDITION: Given a Driver's Night Vision Enhancer (DVE) mounted in a tank, alcohol, lens cleaning solution, lens tissue, and references.

STANDARD: To ensure all grease and dirt is removed from the optical surface, lenses are dry, and any damage to the night vision viewer is reported to organizational maintenance.

PERFORMANCE STEPS:
1. Flush surfaces of lenses with alcohol.
2. Soak lens tissue using cleaning solution.
3. Apply solution to lenses dabbing lightly until surface is evenly covered.
4. Wait 1 to 3 minutes for solution to loosen heavy dirt (do not allow solution to dry) and flush solution away with alcohol.
5. Repeat solution application as needed to clean dirty optics.
6. Clean lenses in small section by applying cleaning solution and gently wiping with clean tissue.
7. Rinse lenses with alcohol; dry lenses by wiping lightly in a single direction with clean lens tissue.
8. Report any damage to organizational maintenance.

REFERENCES:
1. MCO 3500.27B W/ERRATUM Operational Risk Management
2. TM 9-2350-264-10-1 Operator's Manual, Operator Controls, PMCS, and Operation Under Usual Conditions, Volume 1 of 2, Tank, Combat, Full-

Tracked: 120-MM Gun, M1A1 2350-01-087-1095 General Abrams
3. TM 9-2350-264-10-2 Operator's Manual, Unusual Conditions, Troubleshooting, and Maintenance, Volume 2 of 2, Tank, Combat, Full-Tracked: 120-MM, M1A1 2350-01-087-1095, General Abrams

---

1802-VOPS-1335: Maintain Night Vision Goggles

EVALUATION-CODED: NO **SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL:** 12 months

BILLETS: Platoon Commander

GRADES: 2NDLT

INITIAL TRAINING SETTING: FORMAL

CONDITION: Given night vision goggles with carrying case, clean lint-free cloths, lens tissue, clean water, and references.

STANDARD: By inspecting all components and performing authorized maintenance.

PERFORMANCE STEPS:
1. Inspect goggles and carrier.
2. Inspect optical surfaces for dirt, fingerprints, chips, or cracks.
3. Inspect exterior surface for damage.
4. Inspect battery compartment for corrosion, defective battery cap spring.
5. Inspect eye relief adjustment to ensure free movement.
6. Rotate diopter adjustment rings and check for free motion.
7. Inspect interpupillary adjustment and ensure that minoculars can be freely moved farther apart and closer together.
8. Rotate focus knob and check for free movement.
9. Inspect rotary switch. Inspect mechanical action of the switch.
10. Inspect head mount assembly for holes, cracks, defective fasteners.
11. Clean carrying case.

REFERENCES:
1. MCO 3500.27B W/ERRATUM Operational Risk Management
2. TM 11-5855-262-10 Operator's Manual, AN/PVS-7

1802-CBTS-1401: Employ Fire Support

EVALUATION-CODED: NO **SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL:** 12 months

BILLETS: Company Commander, Company Executive Officer, Platoon Commander

GRADES: 2NDLT, 1STLT, CAPT

INITIAL TRAINING SETTING: FORMAL

CONDITION: Given an M1A1 tank unit, supported unit, supporting artillery unit, an operations order, tactical scenario, training area, and references.

STANDARD: To support the ground scheme of maneuver.

PERFORMANCE STEPS:
1. Determine available fire support assets.
2. Determine fire support requirements.
3. Establish communication with the supporting agency.
4. Request fires from supporting agency.
5. Adjust fires as needed.
6. Complete mission.

REFERENCES:
1. FM 3-20.15 Tank Platoon
2. MCO 3500.27B W/ERRATUM Operational Risk Management
3. MCWP 3-12 Marine Corps Tank Employment
4. MCWP 3-16 Fire Support Coordination
5. MCWP 3-42.1 Fire Support in MAGTF Operations

1802-CBTS-1402: Operate NBC System on M1A1 Tank

EVALUATION-CODED: NO **SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL:** 12 months

BILLETS: Platoon Commander

GRADES: 2NDLT, 1STLT, CAPT, MAJ, LTCOL

INITIAL TRAINING SETTING: FORMAL

CONDITION: Given an M1A1 tank, a field protective mask, air cooled vest, tactical scenario involving an NBC threat, and references.

STANDARD: So the crew is offered maximum protection, the mission is continued, communications are reestablished, and the system remains fully operational.

PERFORMANCE STEPS:
1. Don protective mask.
2. Put CVC helmet on over mask and adjust mike boom to be in the front of mask.
3. Put on air cooled vest as needed.
4. Connect mask canister to break away air duct socket.
5. Connect vest air hose to air duct socket and turn valve to open position as needed.
6. If main NBC system is unusable, and you need NBC breathing air protection, use NBC back up system.
7. Troubleshoot NBC backup system.

REFERENCES:
1. FM 3-20.15 Tank Platoon
2. MCO 3500.27B W/ERRATUM Operational Risk Management
3. MCWP 3-12 Marine Corps Tank Employment
4. TM 9-2350-264-10-1 Operator's Manual, Operator Controls, PMCS, and Operation Under Usual Conditions, Volume 1 of 2, Tank, Combat, Full-Tracked: 120-MM Gun, M1A1 2350-01-087-1095 General Abrams
5. TM 9-2350-264-10-2 Operator's Manual, Unusual Conditions, Troubleshooting, and Maintenance, Volume 2 of 2, Tank, Combat, Full-Tracked: 120-MM, M1A1 2350-01-087-1095, General Abrams

---

1802-CBTS-1403: Maintain Field Protective Mask

EVALUATION-CODED: NO **SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL:** 12 months

BILLETS: Platoon Commander

GRADES: 2NDLT

INITIAL TRAINING SETTING: FORMAL

CONDITION: Given a field protective mask, appropriate collateral materials, cleaning gear, and references.

STANDARD: To ensure serviceability in a field environment.

PERFORMANCE STEPS:
1. Disassemble field protective mask.
2. Clean and inspect hood.
3. Clean and inspect mask face.
4. Clean and inspect eye pieces.
5. Clean and inspect one way valves.
6. Clean and inspect mask webbing.
7. Clean and inspect mask interior and components.
8. Clean and inspect collateral components.

REFERENCES:
1. FM 3-100 NBC Operations
2. FM 3-20.15 Tank Platoon
3. FM 3-3 Chemical and Biological Contamination Avoidance
4. MCO 3500.27B W/ERRATUM Operational Risk Management
5. MCRP 3-37.2A Chemical and Biological Contamination Avoidance
6. MCRP 3-37A NBC Field Handbook
7. MCWP 3-12 Marine Corps Tank Employment
8. MCWP 3-37.1 Chemical Operations Principles and Fundamentals
9. TM 3-4240-300-10-1 Operators Manual for Chemical - Biological Mask M40

1802-CBTS-1404: Plan Mobility/Countermobility/Survivability Operations

EVALUATION-CODED: NO **SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL:** 12 months

BILLETS: Platoon Commander

GRADES: 2NDLT, 1STLT, CAPT

INITIAL TRAINING SETTING: FORMAL

CONDITION: Given an M1A1 tank unit, a supported unit, operations order, tactical scenario, specified threat, training area, and references.

STANDARD: To support the commander's intent and scheme of maneuver/defense.

PERFORMANCE STEPS:
1. Coordinate employment of mobility in support of mobility operations.
2. Coordinate employment of tanks in construction, observation, and

suppression of obstacles in support of countermobility operations.
3. Coordinate with supported unit for engineering support required by tank units as part of survivability operations.

REFERENCES:
1. FM 3-20.15 Tank Platoon
2. FM 5-100 Engineers in Combat Operations
3. FM 5-101 Mobility
4. FM 5-102 Countermobility
5. FM 5-103 Survivability
6. MCO 3500.27B W/ERRATUM Operational Risk Management
7. MCWP 3-12 Marine Corps Tank Employment
8. MCWP 3-17 Engineer Operations
9. MCWP 5-1 Marine Corps Planning Process

1802-CBTS-1405: Conduct Reconnaissance of an Obstacle

EVALUATION-CODED: NO **SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL:** 12 months

BILLETS: Platoon Commander

GRADES: 2NDLT

INITIAL TRAINING SETTING: FORMAL

CONDITION: Given an M1A1 tank unit, operations order, a tactical scenario, specified threat, and training area.

STANDARD: Per the reference.

PERFORMANCE STEPS:
1. Establish security element overwatching obstacle.
2. Conduct reconnaissance, physical or visual, to determine: size and perimeter of obstacle(s), location of enemy units observing obstacle(s), composition of obstacle(s), possible gaps in obstacle(s), and by pass routes around obstacle(s).
3. Conduct combat reporting as appropriate.

REFERENCES:
1. FM 5-170 Engineer Reconnaissance
2. MCO 3500.27B W/ERRATUM Operational Risk Management

1802-CBTS-1406: Conduct Reconnaissance of a Minefield

EVALUATION-CODED: NO **SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL:** 12 months

BILLETS: Platoon Commander

GRADES: 2NDLT, 1STLT, CAPT

INITIAL TRAINING SETTING: FORMAL

CONDITION: Given an M1A1 tank unit, a supported unit, operations order directing an attack on an enemy position, tactical scenario involving an enemy minefield along the axis of attack, specified threat, and training area.

STANDARD: Per the references.

PERFORMANCE STEPS:
1. Establish security element overwatching minefield.
2. Conduct reconnaissance, physical or visual, to determine: size and perimeter of minefield, location of enemy units observing minefield, composition of minefield, possible gaps in minefield, and by pass routes around minefield.
3. Conduct combat reporting as appropriate.

REFERENCES:
1. FM 5-170 Engineer Reconnaissance
2. MCO 3500.27B W/ERRATUM Operational Risk Management

1802-CBTS-1407: Cross a Minefield

EVALUATION-CODED: NO **SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL:** 12 months

BILLETS: Platoon Commander

GRADES: 2NDLT, 1STLT, CAPT

INITIAL TRAINING SETTING: FORMAL

CONDITION: Given an M1A1 tank unit, a supported unit, operations order directing an attack on an enemy position, tactical scenario involving an enemy minefield along the axis of attack, specified threat, and training area.

STANDARD: Per the references.

PERFORMANCE STEPS:
1. Establish security element overwatching minefield.
2. Conduct reconnaissance, physical or visual, of minefield.
3. Cross minefield within marked lanes maintaining interval and speed.
4. Conduct combat reporting as appropriate.

REFERENCES:
1. FM 3-20.15 Tank Platoon
2. FM 5-101 Mobility
3. MCO 3500.27B W/ERRATUM Operational Risk Management
4. MCWP 3-12 Marine Corps Tank Employment

1802-CBTS-1408: Direct Unit Crossing Minefield

EVALUATION-CODED: NO **SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL:** 12 months

BILLETS: Platoon Commander

GRADES: 2NDLT, 1STLT, CAPT

INITIAL TRAINING SETTING: FORMAL

CONDITION: Given an M1A1 tank unit, a supported unit, operations order directing an attack on an enemy position, tactical scenario involving an enemy minefield along the axis of attack, specified threat, training area, and references.

STANDARD: Per the references.

PERFORMANCE STEPS:
1. Establish security element overwatching minefield.
2. Conduct reconnaissance, physical or visual, of minefield.
3. Ensure unit crosses minefield within marked lanes maintaining interval and speed.
4. Conduct combat reporting as appropriate.

REFERENCES:
1. FM 3-20.15 Tank Platoon
2. MCO 3500.27B W/ERRATUM Operational Risk Management
3. MCWP 3-12 Marine Corps Tank Employment

1802-CBTS-1409: Conduct a Hasty Breach

EVALUATION-CODED: NO **SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL:** 12 months

BILLETS: Platoon Commander

GRADES: 2NDLT, 1STLT, CAPT

INITIAL TRAINING SETTING: FORMAL

CONDITION: Given an M1A1 tank unit, a supported unit, operations order directing a movement to contact, tactical scenario involving an obstacle that can not be bypassed and a time line that does not permit a deliberate breach, specified threat, training area, and references.

STANDARD: By securing the near side of the obstacle, breaching the obstacle, marking the breach, securing the far side of the obstacle, and moving through the obstacle.

PERFORMANCE STEPS:
1. Identify the obstacle.
2. Establish local security.
3. Suppress enemy overwatch positions with direct and indirect fire by support force.
4. Conduct a hasty reconnaissance of the obstacle.
5. Determine bypass route if possible.
6. Develop a plan for breaching the obstacle using assets organic to the unit.
7. Issue FRAGO.
8. Coordinate the actions of the Breach force elements: support: overwatch, security, suppression; breach: breach, proof, mark; Assault: move through

breach, secure far side for follow-on operations.
9. Obscure obstacle/minefield with smoke if possible (support force).
10. Use mechanical means to breach obstacle(s).
11. Use manual means to breach obstacle(s) if mechanical means are unavailable or vehicles become casualties during operations.
12. Move unit to far side of breach and establish local security or resume movement as appropriate.
13. Mark the minefield location and breach site (breach force).
14. Conduct combat reporting as appropriate.

REFERENCES:
1. FM 3-20.15 Tank Platoon
2. FM 90-13-1 Combined Arms Breaching Operations
3. MCO 3500.27B W/ERRATUM Operational Risk Management
4. MCWP 3-12 Marine Corps Tank Employment
5. MCWP 3-17.3 MAGTF Breaching Operations

1802-CBTS-1410: Participate in a Deliberate Breach

EVALUATION-CODED: NO **SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL:** 12 months

BILLETS: Platoon Commander

GRADES: 2NDLT, 1STLT, CAPT

INITIAL TRAINING SETTING: FORMAL

CONDITION: Given an M1A1 tank unit with organic mobility assets, a supported infantry unit, associated engineer units, operations order directing the deliberate breach of enemy obstacles that can not be bypassed, tactical scenario involving enemy forces defending an obstacle, specified threat, training area, and references.

STANDARD: Of enemy obstacle within 45 minutes of initiation with no more than 30 percent casualties, securing the far side of the breach and allowing for the passage of friendly units.

PERFORMANCE STEPS:
1. Analyze the mission, enemy, troops and fire support available, time space and logistics (METT-TC).
2. Identify the type of breaching operation (assault or covert) and the number of lanes required to allow the passage of the ground combat element (GCE) and combat service support element (CSS).
3. Identify intelligence requirements to the S-2/G-2.
4. Identify and evaluate potential breach sites.
5. Conduct reconnaissance to the lowest level possible.
6. Conduct threat analysis of enemy forces covering the breach site and possible reserves.
7. Task organize engineer personnel and equipment within the assault breach force.
8. Plan, prioritize, and recommend fire support requirements to support the plan.
9. Develop battle drills (individual/unit) to rehearse the breach of a complex obstacle.

10. Support force establishes overwatch position.
11. Breach force establishes breach site security.
12. Breach force conducts breach to include: securing near side of breach, breaching obstacle, routes and lanes are proofed, marking routes and lanes, clearing defending enemy forces from obstacle, and securing far side of obstacle.
13. Assault force moves through breach and destroys enemy forces capable of sealing breach site to include local counterattacks.
14. Conduct combat reporting as appropriate.

REFERENCES:
1. FM 3-20.15 Tank Platoon
2. FM 90-13-1 Combined Arms Breaching Operations
3. FM 90-7 Combined Arms Obstacle Integration
4. MCO 3500.27B W/ERRATUM Operational Risk Management
5. MCWP 3-12 Marine Corps Tank Employment
6. MCWP 3-17.3 MAGTF Breaching Operations

1802-CBTS-1411: Supervise Preparation of Tank Fighting Positions

EVALUATION-CODED: NO **SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL:** 12 months

BILLETS: Platoon Commander

GRADES: 2NDLT, 1STLT, CAPT

INITIAL TRAINING SETTING: FORMAL

CONDITION: Given an M1A1 tank unit, a supported infantry unit, operations order directing a deliberate defensive position, tactical scenario with limited enemy activity for the next twenty-four hours, specified threat, training area suitable for mechanized operations, and references.

STANDARD: To include primary, alternate, and supplementary positions; establish and rehearse routes between them; employ camouflage, vehicle range cards and element fire sketches, use of wire communications between vehicles, enforce noise and light discipline in accordance with the defensive scheme contained in the operations order and in accordance with the references.

PERFORMANCE STEPS:
1. Ensure establishment of vehicle position within perimeter in accordance with guidance from above and unit SOP; use terrain for maximum cover and concealment; maintain mutual support with other vehicles in element; minimize movement forward of the position; avoid disturbing natural vegetation as much as possible.
2. Ensure the identification of alternate and supplementary position in accordance with guidance from element commander.
3. Ensure the marking of primary positions for use in day and night; positions must be marked so that vehicle can depart to conduct rehearsals and maintenance and return to the same position in order to use the same range card.
4. Ensure that the unit conducts rehearses movement to alternate and supplementary positions; marking both for use in day and night conditions and producing range cards for each position.

5. Ensure the use of camouflage in primary position; make maximum use of natural resources, employing camouflage net as necessary.
6. Install wire communications between vehicles as directed; bury all wires to avoid getting them caught in the suspension when vehicles move.
7. Enforce light and noise discipline; ensure minimal movement between positions.
8. Coordinate the fire plan by providing: common target reference points, principal directions of fire, supporting arms control measures, engagement criteria, and disengagement criteria.

REFERENCES:
1. FM 3-20.15 Tank Platoon
2. MCO 3500.27B W/ERRATUM Operational Risk Management
3. MCWP 3-12 Marine Corps Tank Employment

1802-CSS-1501: Supervise Preventive Maintenance Checks and Services of M1A1 Tank Unit

EVALUATION-CODED: NO **SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL:** 12 months

BILLETS: Platoon Commander

GRADES: 2NDLT, 1STLT, CAPT

INITIAL TRAINING SETTING: FORMAL

CONDITION: Given an M1A1 tank unit, appropriate collateral equipment, and references.

STANDARD: To include 1st echelon preventive maintenance, inspection, documentation and the conduct of 2nd and 3rd echelon corrective maintenance, routine services on vehicles, optical devices, tools and test equipment, communications equipment and calibration.

PERFORMANCE STEPS:
1. Ensure that all collateral materials for all items are inventoried, repaired, or replaced as necessary on a regular basis.
2. Ensure that all 1st echelon Preventative Maintenance Checks and Services (PMCS) are conducted in accordance with the references.
3. Ensure that all items requiring calibration are serviced according to their technical manuals.
4. Ensure that all communications equipment is inspected and serviced in accordance with the appropriate technical manuals.
5. Ensure that corrective maintenance efforts are properly documented in accordance with the manuals.
6. Ensure that all optical devices are serviced in accordance with the unit service schedule and the references.
7. Ensure that all required inspections, services, and repairs are conducted on all weapons organic to the unit.

REFERENCES:
1. MCO 3500.27B W/ERRATUM Operational Risk Management
2. TM 9-2350-264-10-1 Operator's Manual, Operator Controls, PMCS, and Operation Under Usual Conditions, Volume 1 of 2, Tank, Combat, Full-

Tracked: 120-MM Gun, M1A1 2350-01-087-1095 General Abrams
3. TM 9-2350-264-10-2 Operator's Manual, Unusual Conditions, Troubleshooting, and Maintenance, Volume 2 of 2, Tank, Combat, Full-Tracked: 120-MM, M1A1 2350-01-087-1095, General Abrams

---

1802-CSS-1502: Conduct Vehicle Inspection of M1A1 Tank Unit

EVALUATION-CODED: NO **SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL:** 12 months

BILLETS: Platoon Commander

GRADES: 2NDLT, 1STLT, CAPT

INITIAL TRAINING SETTING: FORMAL

CONDITION: Given an M1A1 tank unit, appropriate collateral equipment, and references.

STANDARD: To ensure accountability, serviceability, and operational readiness.

PERFORMANCE STEPS:
1. Inspect collateral material for accountability, serviceability, and cleanliness; ensure that all items are accounted for on inventory forms; ensure that all missing or unserviceable items are reflected on the DPR.
2. Inspect the tank for serviceability and cleanliness; ensure that all systems are fully operational; ensure that any mechanical defects are noted on the appropriate vehicle's ERO, that higher echelons are notified of work requiring their assistance, that all required parts are noted on the unit's DPR; ensure that all required services have been conducted and noted in the vehicles records.
3. Inspect the weapon(s) for serviceability and cleanliness; ensure that the weapon(s) are fully operational; ensure that any mechanical defects are noted on the appropriate ERO, that higher echelons are notified of work requiring their assistance, that all required parts are noted on the unit's DPR; ensure that all required services have been conducted and noted in the weapons' records.
4. Inspect the communication system for cleanliness and serviceability, to include the crew's CVC helmets; ensure that any defects are noted on the appropriate ERO, that higher echelons are notified of work requiring their assistance, that all required parts are noted on the unit's DPR.
5. Inspect the vehicle's optics for cleanliness and serviceability, to include the crew's CVC helmets; ensure that any defects are noted on the appropriate ERO, that higher echelons are notified of work requiring their assistance, that all required parts are noted on the unit's DPR.

REFERENCES:
1. FM 3-20.15 Tank Platoon
2. MCO 3500.27B W/ERRATUM Operational Risk Management
3. TM 11-5855-249-10 Operator's Manual for Viewer, Drivers Night Vision System, AN/VVS-2
4. TM 11-5855-262-10 Operator's Manual, AN/PVS-7
5. TM 115820-890-10-1 Operator's Manual, SINCGARS Ground Combat Net ICOM
6. TM 9- Operator's Manual, 7.62mm Machinegun M240G
7. TM 9-1005-213-10 Machine Gun, Caliber .50, Browning

8. TM 9-1005-313-10 Maintenance Manual, 7.62mm Machinegun M240G
9. TM 9-2350-264-10-1 Operator's Manual, Operator Controls, PMCS, and Operation Under Usual Conditions, Volume 1 of 2, Tank, Combat, Full-Tracked: 120-MM Gun, M1A1 2350-01-087-1095 General Abrams
10. TM 9-2350-264-10-2 Operator's Manual, Unusual Conditions, Troubleshooting, and Maintenance, Volume 2 of 2, Tank, Combat, Full-Tracked: 120-MM, M1A1 2350-01-087-1095, General Abrams

---

1802-CSS-1503: Inspect Ordnance Vehicle Logbook

EVALUATION-CODED: NO **SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL:** 12 months

BILLETS: Platoon Commander

GRADES: 2NDLT, 1STLT, CAPT

INITIAL TRAINING SETTING: FORMAL

CONDITION: Given an M1A1 tank, ordnance vehicle logbook, and references.

STANDARD: For accurate entries.

PERFORMANCE STEPS:
1. Inventory log book to ensure that it is complete.
2. Verify that the inspector block has been properly signed on NAVMC 10392, Ordnance Vehicle Military Acceptance Record.
3. Ensure that NAVMC 10393, Ordnance Vehicle Daily Log contains appropriate entries and signatures.
4. Ensure that NAVMC 10394, Ordnance Vehicle Monthly Log contains appropriate entries and signatures.
5. Ensure that NAVMC 10398, Ordnance Vehicle Service Record contains appropriate entries and signatures.
6. Ensure that NAVMC 10401, Ordnance Vehicle Overhaul and Rebuild Record contains appropriate entries and signatures.

REFERENCES:
1. MCO 3500.27B W/ERRATUM Operational Risk Management
2. MCO P4790.2 MIMMS Field Procedures Manual
3. TM 4700-15/1 Marine Corps Ground Equipment Record Procedures

---

1802-CSS-1504: Monitor Daily Progress Report

EVALUATION-CODED: NO **SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL:** 12 months

BILLETS: Platoon Commander

GRADES: 2NDLT, 1STLT, CAPT, MAJ, LTCOL

INITIAL TRAINING SETTING: FORMAL

CONDITION: Given an M1A1 tank unit, open ERO and EROSL, a current DPR, and references.

STANDARD: So the commander may be briefed accurately on the current status of the unit's maintenance activities, at minimum on a weekly basis, and ensuring all entries on DPR are current and correct.

PERFORMANCE STEPS:
1. Obtain (DPR) which is no more than five days old.
2. Verify job status of all EROs .
3. Ensure EROs reflecting a "short parts" status have parts on order or EROSLs being processed.
4. Annotate on the EROSL those parts and transactions that appear on the DPR; ensure that all remaining parts or transaction on the EROSL are submitted to the supply source for action at the next unit reconciliation.
5. Ensure that there are no parts on order that reflect a higher FAD status than that of the ERO.
6. Ensure that all EROs have a valid category and priority for the work being requested.
7. Ensure that all EROs have valid priorities and indicator codes.
8. Brief unit commander on the DPR as required.

REFERENCES:
1. MCO 3500.27B W/ERRATUM Operational Risk Management
2. MCO P4790.2 MIMMS Field Procedures Manual
3. TM 11-5855-249-10 Operator's Manual for Viewer, Drivers Night Vision System, AN/VVS-2
4. TM 115820-890-10-1 Operator's Manual, SINCGARS Ground Combat Net ICOM
5. TM 4700-15/1 Marine Corps Ground Equipment Record Procedures
6. TM 9-2350-264-10-1 Operator's Manual, Operator Controls, PMCS, and Operation Under Usual Conditions, Volume 1 of 2, Tank, Combat, Full-Tracked: 120-MM Gun, M1A1 2350-01-087-1095 General Abrams
7. TM 9-2350-264-10-2 Operator's Manual, Unusual Conditions, Troubleshooting, and Maintenance, Volume 2 of 2, Tank, Combat, Full-Tracked: 120-MM, M1A1 2350-01-087-1095, General Abrams

---

1802-CSS-1505: Maintain Weapon Record Data

EVALUATION-CODED: NO **SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL:** 12 months

BILLETS: Platoon Commander

GRADES: 2NDLT, 1STLT, CAPT

INITIAL TRAINING SETTING: FORMAL

CONDITION: Given a tank, firing usage/weapon service data to enter, NAVMC 10558, NAVMC 10558A, and references.

STANDARD: To ensure a record of rounds fired and historical data on every tank T/E weapon is kept current.

PERFORMANCE STEPS:
1. Maintain NAVMC 10558, Weapon Record Book, Part I: enter information in the Summary Sheet, weapon component performance, when applicable; enter information in the record assignments when applicable.

2. Maintain NAVMC 10558a, Weapon Record Book, Part II: enter information in the Unit Commander's Record when applicable.

REFERENCES:
1. MCO 3500.27B W/ERRATUM Operational Risk Management
2. TM 4700-15/1 Marine Corps Ground Equipment Record Procedures
3. TM 9-2350-264-10-1 Operator's Manual, Operator Controls, PMCS, and Operation Under Usual Conditions, Volume 1 of 2, Tank, Combat, Full-Tracked: 120-MM Gun, M1A1 2350-01-087-1095 General Abrams
4. TM 9-2350-264-10-2 Operator's Manual, Unusual Conditions, Troubleshooting, and Maintenance, Volume 2 of 2, Tank, Combat, Full-Tracked: 120-MM, M1A1 2350-01-087-1095, General Abrams

---

1802-CSS-1506: Initiate a Work Request

EVALUATION-CODED: NO **SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL:** 12 months

BILLETS: Platoon Commander

GRADES: 2NDLT, 1STLT, CAPT

INITIAL TRAINING SETTING: FORMAL

CONDITION: Given a tank requiring maintenance action.

STANDARD: Per the references.

PERFORMANCE STEPS:
1. Review ERO information in TM 4700-15/1.
2. Enter Serial No. if turned in if different from below (if applicable).
3. Enter Y to indicate an ORF (Operational Readiness Float) exchange is desired if the RDD (Required Delivery Date) cannot be met; enter N if no exchange is desired (block 11).
4. Enter Organization Doing Repairs or to which the equipment is being evacuated (if applicable).
5. Enter DEST.AC (Designation Activity) (if applicable/blocks 12-16).
6. Enter request No. (if applicable/blocks 17-20).
7. Enter DCD (Deadline Control Date) (if applicable/blocks 21-24).
8. Enter ECH (Echelon) of repair (block 25).
9. Enter serial Number of equipment (if applicable/blocks 26-35).
10. Enter Job ID from current edition of the Marine Corps User's Manual, UM 4790-5 (if applicable/blocks 36-37).
11. Enter QTY to be repaired under this ERO (blocks 38-39); ensure that the field is filled.
12. Enter RDD (if applicable/blocks 40-43).
13. Enter Owning Organization.
14. Enter Owner AC (Activity Code) (blocks 44-48).
15. Have authorized person sign Authorized By (Signature) Date block after rest of ERO is completed.
16. Enter Defect code from UM 4790-5 (if applicable/blocks 49-51).
17. Enter PRI (Priority) assigned (blocks 52-53).
18. Enter ID Number (blocks 54-59).
19. Enter Nomenclature.
20. Circle Category Code.

21. Enter JON (Job Order Number) (blocks 63-76).
22. Have authorized person sign Released From Investigation (Signature) block (if applicable).
23. Enter Owner's Phone Number.
24. Enter SEC REP (Secondary Repairable) NSN (if applicable).
25. Enter Remarks section with any other necessary information.
26. Turn in ERO, equipment, and records to maintenance activity; receive yellow copy as receipt.

REFERENCES:
1. MCO 3500.27B W/ERRATUM Operational Risk Management
2. MCO 4400.16 Uniform Material Movement Issue and Priority System (UMMIPS)
3. MCO P4790.2 MIMMS Field Procedures Manual
4. NAVMC 10245 Equipment Repair Order (ERO)
5. TM 4700-15/1 Marine Corps Ground Equipment Record Procedures
6. UM 4790-5 MIMMS AIS, Field Maintenance Procedures

1802-CSS-1507: Prepare an ERO Shopping List (EROSL)

EVALUATION-CODED: NO **SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL:** 12 months

BILLETS: Platoon Commander

GRADES: 2NDLT

INITIAL TRAINING SETTING: FORMAL

CONDITION: Given NAVMC 10925, EROSL (ERO Shopping/transaction List), UM 4790-5, TM 4700-15/1, an active ERO, and a requirement for SL-3 components.

STANDARD: Per the reference.

PERFORMANCE STEPS:
1. Enter ERO number.
2. Enter Unit and Date.
3. Circle appropriate Material Usage Code.
4. Annotate the shop section.
5. Enter the reference source in the letter blank "A."
6. Enter remaining letter blanks as per local SOP.
7. Enter the requisition information using the appropriate template.

REFERENCES:
1. MCO 3500.27B W/ERRATUM Operational Risk Management
2. NAVMC 10925 Equipment Repair Order Shopping List (EROSL)

1802-CSS-1508: Determine Logistics Support Requirements

EVALUATION-CODED: NO **SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL:** 12 months

BILLETS: Platoon Commander

GRADES: 2NDLT, 1STLT, CAPT, MAJ

INITIAL TRAINING SETTING: FORMAL

CONDITION: Given a tank unit, supported unit, specific tactical scenario, an operations order, and references.

STANDARD: To prepare to support tactical operations.

PERFORMANCE STEPS:

1. Determine the command relationship between the tank unit and the supported unit: attached, direct support, or general support.
2. Determine the preventive maintenance support needs of the unit.
3. Determine the corrective maintenance support needs of the unit.
4. Determine messing requirements.
5. Determine Petroleum, Oil, and Lubricant (POL) requirements.
6. Determine ammunition requirements.
7. Determine time requirements for preventive maintenance checks and services.
8. Determine requirements for resupply operations prior to commencing the attack.
9. Determine vehicle status, specifically critical systems: weapons station and weapons, communications, suspension/power train, water drive/operating systems, and by type of vehicle (tank, AAV variants, LAV, engineer vehicles, wheeled vehicles).
10. Determine echelons of repair requiring support.
11. Determine medical/dental requirements.
12. Determine support required from higher elements.
13. Determine likely means of combat service support that will be available based on experience and task organization.
14. Determine personnel requirements by MOS or special skill.
15. Report any critical shortfalls in either equipment, supplies, or personnel.
16. Coordinate efforts and requirements with supporting elements.

REFERENCES:

1. FM 3-20.15 Tank Platoon
2. MCO 3500.27B W/ERRATUM Operational Risk Management
3. MCRP 4-24A Vehicle Recovery Operations
4. MCWP 3-12 Marine Corps Tank Employment
5. MCWP 4-1 Logistics Operations
6. MCWP 4-11 Combat Service Support Operations
7. MCWP 4-11.4 Maintenance Operations

1802-CSS-1509: Advise Supported Unit Commander on M1A1 Tank Unit Logistics Support Requirements

EVALUATION-CODED: NO **SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL:** 12 months

BILLETS: Platoon Commander

GRADES: 2NDLT, 1STLT, CAPT, MAJ

INITIAL TRAINING SETTING: FORMAL

CONDITION: Given a tank unit, supported unit, an operations order, and references.

STANDARD: To assist the supported unit commander's s tactical planning requirements.

PERFORMANCE STEPS:
1. Determine logistics support requirements.
2. Determine organic logistics support capabilities.
3. Determine shortfalls on logistics support requirements.
4. Advise supported unit commander and his staff on any logistics support requirements that the unit can not meet and their potential impact on operations.
5. Recommend courses of action to the support unit commander and his staff to deal with any logistics support requirement shortfalls.

REFERENCES:
1. FM 3-20.15 Tank Platoon
2. MCO 3500.27B W/ERRATUM Operational Risk Management
3. MCRP 4-24A Vehicle Recovery Operations
4. MCWP 3-12 Marine Corps Tank Employment
5. MCWP 4-1 Logistics Operations
6. MCWP 4-11 Combat Service Support Operations
7. MCWP 4-11.4 Maintenance Operations

1802-CSS-1510: Conduct Quartering Party Operations

EVALUATION-CODED: NO **SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL:** 12 months

BILLETS: Platoon Commander

GRADES: 2NDLT, 1STLT, CAPT

INITIAL TRAINING SETTING: FORMAL

CONDITION: Given a tank unit, supported unit, an operations order directing the establishment of an Assembly Area (AA), and references.

STANDARD: To include route reconnaissance and site survey of intended AA, and coordinate movement of unit into AA, providing security prior to and during movement.

PERFORMANCE STEPS:
1. Issue Warning Order to Quartering Party personnel; party should include security detail appropriate to size of AA and enemy activity and representatives from each major element and staff section.
2. Coordinate with unit S-3 and S-4 for details on the location and requirements for the AA, personnel and equipment for the quartering party, fire support coordination to cover the movement to and survey of the site.
3. Task organize Quartering Party.
4. Plan and conduct tactical road march from current location to planned site.
5. Establish security element and conduct patrol of area to determine level of enemy activity in the immediate area.

6. Conduct site survey to determine: ability of Quartering Party and main unit to defend area, trafficability of routes in area, ability of main unit to fit into area with proper dispersion between units and facilities, and proposed locations of elements and facilities within the area.

REFERENCES:
1. FM 3-20.15 Tank Platoon
2. FM 3-20.98 Reconnaissance Platoon
3. MCO 3500.27B W/ERRATUM Operational Risk Management
4. MCWP 3-12 Marine Corps Tank Employment

1802-CSS-1511: Conduct Resupply Operations

EVALUATION-CODED: NO **SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL:** 12 months

BILLETS: Platoon Commander

GRADES: 2NDLT, 1STLT, CAPT, MAJ

INITIAL TRAINING SETTING: FORMAL

CONDITION: Given a tank unit, supported unit, an operations order, and references.

STANDARD: To support the tactical sustainment of the unit.

PERFORMANCE STEPS:
1. Establish local security.
2. Establish method of resupply, tail gate or service station.
3. Establish priorities of resupply by unit, element, and item supplied.
4. Conduct resupply operations without compromising local security or detection by the enemy.
5. Enforce all safety precautions.

REFERENCES:
1. FM 3-20.15 Tank Platoon
2. MCO 3500.27B W/ERRATUM Operational Risk Management
3. MCWP 3-12 Marine Corps Tank Employment
4. MCWP 4-1 Logistics Operations
5. MCWP 4-11 Combat Service Support Operations
6. MCWP 4-11.4 Maintenance Operations
7. MCWP 4-11.7 MAGTF Supply Operations

1802-CSS-1512: Conduct Security Patrols in Support of the Assembly Area

EVALUATION-CODED: NO **SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL:** 12 months

BILLETS: Platoon Commander

GRADES: 2NDLT

INITIAL TRAINING SETTING: FORMAL

CONDITION: Given a tank unit (company or larger), supported unit, an operations order directing the establishment of an assembly area/battalion support area with active security patrols, specified threat involving squad size enemy patrols, training area large enough to establish an Assembly Area (AA), and references.

STANDARD: To support the force protection measures of the unit.

PERFORMANCE STEPS:
1. Analyze patrol order from higher.
2. Coordinate with Camp Commandant for: frequencies, call signs, recognition signals, passage of friendly lines into and out of perimeter, MEDEVACS, fire support, control measures for friendly positions in the area and along the patrol route, friendly obstacle plan, and known enemy positions and activities.
3. Task organize patrol based on estimate of the situation (METT-TC).
4. Issue warning order to patrol group.
5. Conduct equipment checks prior to departing friendly lines.
6. Coordinate with actual element for passage of lines for departure and return.
7. Issue OPORD to patrol.
8. Conduct patrol.
9. Debrief patrol.

REFERENCES:
1. DoDD 2000.12 DoD Antiterrorism/Force Protection (AT/FP) Program
2. FM 3-20.15 Tank Platoon
3. FM 3-90.1 Tank and Mechanized Infantry Company Team
4. MCO 3500.27B W/ERRATUM Operational Risk Management
5. MCRP 3-11.1A Commander's Tactical Handbook
6. MCRP 5-12A Operational Terms and Symbols
7. MCWP 3-12 Marine Corps Tank Employment
8. MCWP 3-41.1 Rear Area Operations

1802-CSS-1513: Supervise Personnel Handling Ammunition

EVALUATION-CODED: NO **SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL:** 12 months

BILLETS: Platoon Commander

GRADES: 2NDLT, 1STLT, CAPT, MAJ

INITIAL TRAINING SETTING: FORMAL

CONDITION: Given a tank unit, specified ammunition allotment, and references.

STANDARD: Ensuring that the required amount of ammunition needed is opened, all safety procedures are followed, and it is properly stowed on the tank.

PERFORMANCE STEPS:
1. Instruct personnel on what types of ammunition and how many rounds of each will be required.
2. Supervise the handling of main gun ammunition.

3. Supervise personnel handling small arms ammunition.
4. Supervise personnel handling smoke grenades.
5. Supervise inventory and expenditure of ammunition.

REFERENCES:
1. FM 3-20.15 Tank Platoon
2. FM 9-13 Ammunition Handbook
3. MCO 3500.27B W/ERRATUM Operational Risk Management
4. MCWP 3-12 Marine Corps Tank Employment
5. TM 9-2350-264-10-1 Operator's Manual, Operator Controls, PMCS, and Operation Under Usual Conditions, Volume 1 of 2, Tank, Combat, Full-Tracked: 120-MM Gun, M1A1 2350-01-087-1095 General Abrams
6. TM 9-2350-264-10-2 Operator's Manual, Unusual Conditions, Troubleshooting, and Maintenance, Volume 2 of 2, Tank, Combat, Full-Tracked: 120-MM, M1A1 2350-01-087-1095, General Abrams

---

1802-EXPD-1601: Assist in Developing the Landing Plan

EVALUATION-CODED: NO **SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL:** 12 months

BILLETS: Platoon Commander

GRADES: 2NDLT, 1STLT, CAPT

INITIAL TRAINING SETTING: FORMAL

CONDITION: Given a tank unit, supported unit, an operations order, specified amphibious ship platform, tactical scenario, specified threat, and references.

STANDARD: So that all associated diagrams, tables, attachments, and overlays are included.

PERFORMANCE STEPS:
1. Conduct Mission Analysis of supported unit's operations order and provide appropriate input.
2. Determine Assault Amphibian lift requirements for assault elements, scheduled waves, on-call waves, and nonscheduled waves.
3. Review Amphibious Vehicle Availability Table to determine the number and periods of availability for each type of AAV assigned to the operation.
4. Determine landing force lift requirements for the ship-to-shore movement in coordination with a review of the Amphibious Vehicle Availability Table, Helicopter Availability Table, and the Landing Craft Availability Table.
5. Consider enemy capabilities to counter surface and/or air assaults.
6. Allow flexibility of on-call and nonscheduled waves.
7. Assign elements to one of five categories in order to indicate their relative priority for landing and to facilitate control of the ship-to-shore movement.
8. Allocate assets for use by subordinate elements, and ensure that the proposed Landing Diagram, Assault Schedule, and Landing Sequence Table are developed concurrently and are mutually compatible.
9. Develop Serial Assignment Table based on task organization for the landing.

10. Develop Landing Craft and Amphibious Vehicle Assignment Table is coordinated with affected units.
11. Develop Assault Landing Table and the Serial Assignment Table, coordinate with appropriate CE.
12. Provide input for Approach Schedule.
13. Develop Debarkation Schedule in coordination with Naval personnel.

REFERENCES:
1. FM 3-20.15 Tank Platoon
2. JCS PUB 3-02 Joint Doctrine for Amphibious Operations
3. JCS PUB 3-02.1 Joint Doctrine for Landing Force Operations
4. LFM 03 Amphibious Embarkation
5. MCO 3500.27B W/ERRATUM Operational Risk Management
6. MCRP 2-12A Intelligence Preparation of the Battlefield (IPB)
7. MCRP 3-31.3A Over the Horizon Surface Operations
8. MCRP 3-31A Military Sealift Command in Support of Amphibious Operations
9. MCRP 3-31B Amphibious Ships and Landing Craft Data Book
10. MCRP 4-11.3D The Naval Beach Group
11. MCWP 3-12 Marine Corps Tank Employment
12. MCWP 3-31.3 Surf Zone Operations
13. MCWP 3-31.5 Ship-to-Shore Movement
14. MCWP 5-1 Marine Corps Planning Process
15. MCWP 5-11 Amphibious Task Force Planning
16. MCWP 5-11.2 The Amphibious Task Force Plan

1802-EXPD-1602: Analyze Landing Plan

EVALUATION-CODED: NO **SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL:** 12 months

BILLETS: Platoon Commander

GRADES: 2NDLT, 1STLT, CAPT, MAJ

INITIAL TRAINING SETTING: FORMAL

CONDITION: Given a tank unit, an operations order, supporting landing plan, specified amphibious ship platform, tactical scenario, specified threat, and references.

STANDARD: To determine its supportability by unit, unique requirements to support the landing plan, coordination with the supported unit staff, and control measures necessary to execute the landing plan.

PERFORMANCE STEPS:
1. Reconcile the Landing Plan with the scheme of maneuver ashore.
2. Examine the Landing Plan Diagram and extract the AAV-borne scheduled waves of the assault.
3. Examine the Approach Schedule and extract the wave schedules.
4. Analyze the Landing Craft and Amphibious Vehicle Assignment Schedule and verify the boat team assignments.
5. Analyze the Serial Assignment Table to determine the group of troop units to be landed on a specified beach at the same time.
6. Analyze the Landing Sequence Table to determine the priority of landing of nonscheduled serials.

7. Analyze the Assault Schedule to determine the composition and timing of waves landing over designated beaches.
8. Analyze the Amphibious Vehicle Availability Table to determine the type, number and ship location of amphibious vehicles which are available to the landing force.
9. Provide the Landing Force and Amphibious Task Force staff members with input for the Amphibious Vehicle Employment Plan.
10. The operations order and landing plan should also contain the following key information: task organization for waves, boat groups, assault schedule, type of launch expected, prelaunch warm up time and sequence, time for undogging, staging of AAVs, frequencies and call signs, radio checks per EMCON, timeline for issuing ammunition and embarking infantry, planned time for launch, launch signals, procedures for vehicle if stalled in well deck, ballast conditions, multiple vehicle launches from a single ship (if planned), simulated launches from multiple ships (if planned), launch interval, launch sequence, boat line location, designation of wave guides and commanders, Navy Control Group command and control, recovery planning if vehicles become disabled, signals for emergency lifting of Naval Gunfire, location of line of departure, beach characteristics, and barriers to landing and enemy defenses expected.

REFERENCES:
1. FM 3-20.15 Tank Platoon
2. JCS PUB 3-02 Joint Doctrine for Amphibious Operations
3. JCS PUB 3-02.1 Joint Doctrine for Landing Force Operations
4. LFM 03 Amphibious Embarkation
5. MCO 3500.27B W/ERRATUM Operational Risk Management
6. MCRP 2-12A Intelligence Preparation of the Battlefield (IPB)
7. MCRP 3-31.3A Over the Horizon Surface Operations
8. MCRP 3-31B Amphibious Ships and Landing Craft Data Book
9. MCRP 4-11.3D The Naval Beach Group
10. MCRP 5-12A Operational Terms and Symbols
11. MCRP 5-12C Marine Corps Supplement to the Department of Defense Dictionary of Military and Associated Terms
12. MCWP 3-12 Marine Corps Tank Employment
13. MCWP 3-31.3 Surf Zone Operations
14. MCWP 3-31.5 Ship-to-Shore Movement
15. MCWP 5-1 Marine Corps Planning Process
16. MCWP 5-11 Amphibious Task Force Planning
17. MCWP 5-11.2 The Amphibious Task Force Plan

1802-OTH-1701: Establish a Checkpoint

EVALUATION-CODED: NO **SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL:** 12 months

BILLETS: Platoon Commander

GRADES: 2NDLT, 1STLT, CAPT

INITIAL TRAINING SETTING: FORMAL

CONDITION: Given an M1A1 tank unit, a supported infantry unit, operations order directing the establishment of a check point, tactical scenario involving enemy activity near the position, specified threat, training area

suitable for mechanized operations, and references.

STANDARD: To control movement through a position.

PERFORMANCE STEPS:
1. Establish vehicle fighting positions as part of overall position; at a minimum establish Target Reference Points (TRPs) by vehicle, element, and unit.
2. Coordinate with dismounts for positions of observations posts, control points, obstacles and patrols.
3. Publish Rules of Engagement (ROE).

REFERENCES:
1. FM 3-20.15 Tank Platoon
2. MCO 3500.27B W/ERRATUM Operational Risk Management
3. MCWP 3-12 Marine Corps Tank Employment

1802-TAC-1801: Employ Terrain Driving Techniques

EVALUATION-CODED: NO **SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL:** 12 months

BILLETS: Platoon Commander

GRADES: 2NDLT, 1STLT, CAPT

INITIAL TRAINING SETTING: FORMAL

CONDITION: Given an M1A1 tank with trained crew, a training area suitable for mechanized operations, and references.

STANDARD: Per the references.

PERFORMANCE STEPS:
1. Use covered and concealed routes.
2. Minimize dust signature.
3. Maintain interval between vehicles.
4. Avoid silhouetting the vehicles.
5. Do not drive forward out of Battle Positions (BPs) or vehicle fighting positions, reverse out of positions to avoid detection.
6. Scan the ground for disturbed earth or out-of-place features that may indicate mines.
7. Select appropriate formation and movement technique.
8. Employ over watch elements whenever possible.

REFERENCES:
1. FM 3-20.15 Tank Platoon
2. MCO 3500.27B W/ERRATUM Operational Risk Management
3. MCWP 3-12 Marine Corps Tank Employment

1802-TAC-1802: Employ Traveling Movement Technique

EVALUATION-CODED: NO **SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL:** 12 months

BILLETS: Platoon Commander

GRADES: 2NDLT, 1STLT, CAPT

INITIAL TRAINING SETTING: FORMAL

CONDITION: Given an M1A tank unit, operations order, a tactical scenario with enemy contact unlikely, specified threat, training area suitable for mechanized operations, and references.

STANDARD: To maintain appropriate vehicle interval and rate of march as terrain allows, maintain security and mutual support between friendly elements, when speed is essential, and enemy contact is unlikely.

PERFORMANCE STEPS:
1. Direct the unit to employ the traveling movement technique.
2. Establish the rate of march and catch up speeds.
3. Establish vehicle interval based on the terrain being covered.
4. Maintain control of the formation, ensuring mutual support between the elements and outboard orientation of weapons.
5. Maintain the formation until the situation requires a change.

REFERENCES:
1. FM 21-60 Visual Signals
2. FM 3-20.15 Tank Platoon
3. MCO 3500.27B W/ERRATUM Operational Risk Management
4. MCWP 3-12 Marine Corps Tank Employment

1802-TAC-1803: Employ Traveling Overwatch Movement Technique

EVALUATION-CODED: NO **SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL:** 12 months

BILLETS: Platoon Commander

GRADES: 2NDLT, 1STLT, CAPT

INITIAL TRAINING SETTING: FORMAL

CONDITION: Given an M1A1 tank unit, operations order, a tactical scenario with enemy contact possible, specified threat, training area suitable for mechanized operations, and references.

STANDARD: To facilitate speed when enemy contact is possible, maintain appropriate vehicle interval and rate of march as terrain allows, and maintain security and mutual support between elements.

PERFORMANCE STEPS:
1. Direct the unit to employ the traveling overwatch movement technique.
2. Establish the rate of march and catch up speeds.
3. Establish vehicle interval based on the terrain being covered.
4. Establish lead element and supporting element(s) within the unit.
5. Maintain control of the formation, ensuring mutual support between the elements and outboard orientation of weapons.
6. Maintain the formation until the situation requires a change.

REFERENCES:
1. FM 21-60 Visual Signals
2. FM 3-20.15 Tank Platoon
3. MCO 3500.27B W/ERRATUM Operational Risk Management
4. MCWP 3-12 Marine Corps Tank Employment

1802-TAC-1804: Employ Bounding Overwatch Movement Technique

EVALUATION-CODED: NO **SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL:** 12 months

BILLETS: Platoon Commander

GRADES: 2NDLT, 1STLT, CAPT

INITIAL TRAINING SETTING: FORMAL

CONDITION: Given an M1A1 tank unit, operations order, a tactical scenario with enemy contact likely, specified threat, training area suitable for mechanized operations, and references.

STANDARD: So the unit maintains appropriate vehicle interval, rate of march as terrain allows, and security and mutual support between elements when enemy contact is likely.

PERFORMANCE STEPS:
1. Direct the unit to employ the bounding overwatch technique.
2. Establish the lead element in an overwatch position, direct the size of the elements to bound (i.e. by vehicle, section, or platoon).
3. Direct the next element in the formation to bound to the next covered and concealed position based on the terrain being covered.
4. When the bounding unit is set and has established overwatch on the probable enemy position, it must indicate to the other elements that it is "set" so that they can begin the next bound.
5. When informed that the first bounding element is set, the next element to bound takes the most concealed and covered route to its next overwatch position, establishes overwatch, and indicates that it is "set" to the rest of the unit.
6. Units must employ the most covered and concealed route to their next position, maintain mutual support during their movement, and determine their most likely next position and route to that position while covering the movement of the bounding unit.
7. Continue with the movement technique until enemy contact is made or the situation changes.

REFERENCES:
1. FM 21-60 Visual Signals
2. FM 3-20.15 Tank Platoon
3. MCO 3500.27B W/ERRATUM Operational Risk Management
4. MCWP 3-12 Marine Corps Tank Employment

1802-TAC-1805: Employ Movement Techniques

EVALUATION-CODED: NO **SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL:** 12 months

BILLETS: Platoon Commander

GRADES: 2NDLT, 1STLT, CAPT

INITIAL TRAINING SETTING: FORMAL

CONDITION: Given an M1A1 tank unit, operations order, a tactical scenario, specified threat, training area suitable for mechanized operations, and the references.

STANDARD: To maintain control and mutual support throughout the movement.

PERFORMANCE STEPS:
1. Conduct an estimate of the situation based on METT-TC.
2. Determine the most appropriate movement technique based on the estimate of the mission, the terrain to be covered, and the likely hood of enemy contact.
3. Use traveling when speed is essential and enemy contact is unlikely.
4. Use traveling overwatch when speed is important and enemy contact is possible.
5. Use bounding overwatch when enemy contact is likely.

REFERENCES:
1. FM 21-60 Visual Signals
2. FM 3-20.15 Tank Platoon
3. MCO 3500.27B W/ERRATUM Operational Risk Management
4. MCWP 3-12 Marine Corps Tank Employment

1802-TAC-1806: Employ Column Formation

EVALUATION-CODED: NO **SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL:** 12 months

BILLETS: Platoon Commander

GRADES: 2NDLT, 1STLT, CAPT

INITIAL TRAINING SETTING: FORMAL

CONDITION: Given an M1A1 tank unit, operations order requiring a tactical road march, a tactical scenario with enemy contact unlikely, specified threat, training area suitable for mechanized operations, and the references.

STANDARD: So the unit maintains appropriate vehicle interval, rate of march as terrain allows, and security and mutual support between elements when enemy contact is likely.

PERFORMANCE STEPS:
1. Direct the unit to employ the column formation during a tactical road march.
2. Establish the lead element, rate of march, and catch up speeds.
3. Establish vehicle interval based on the terrain being covered.
4. Maintain control of the formation, ensuring mutual support between the elements and outboard orientation of weapons.
5. Maintain the formation until the unit completes the movement or the

situation changes.

REFERENCES:
1. FM 21-60 Visual Signals
2. FM 3-20.15 Tank Platoon
3. MCO 3500.27B W/ERRATUM Operational Risk Management
4. MCWP 3-12 Marine Corps Tank Employment

1802-TAC-1807: Employ Staggered Column Formation

EVALUATION-CODED: NO **SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL:** 12 months

BILLETS: Platoon Commander

GRADES: 2NDLT, 1STLT, CAPT

INITIAL TRAINING SETTING: FORMAL

CONDITION: Given an M1A1 tank unit, operations order requiring a tactical road march, a tactical scenario with enemy contact unlikely, terrain that will support the use of a staggered column vice a column, specified threat, training area suitable for mechanized operations, and references.

STANDARD: So the unit maintains appropriate vehicle interval, rate of march as terrain allows, and security and mutual support between elements when enemy contact is likely.

PERFORMANCE STEPS:
1. Direct the unit to employ the staggered column formation during a tactical road march when the terrain allows this rather than the column formation.
2. Establish the lead element, rate of march, and catch up speeds.
3. Establish vehicle interval based on the terrain being covered.
4. Maintain control of the formation, ensuring mutual support between the elements and outboard orientation of weapons.
5. Maintain the formation until the unit completes the movement or the situation changes.

REFERENCES:
1. FM 21-60 Visual Signals
2. FM 3-20.15 Tank Platoon
3. MCO 3500.27B W/ERRATUM Operational Risk Management
4. MCWP 3-12 Marine Corps Tank Employment

1802-TAC-1808: Employ Vee Formation

EVALUATION-CODED: NO **SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL:** 12 months

BILLETS: Platoon Commander

GRADES: 2NDLT, 1STLT, CAPT

INITIAL TRAINING SETTING: FORMAL

CONDITION: Given an M1A1 tank unit, operations order directing a movement to contact, a tactical scenario with enemy contact likely, specified threat, training area suitable for mechanized operations, and references.

STANDARD: To support tactical movement when enemy contact is likely and fire power is required to the direct front and so the unit maintains appropriate vehicle interval, rate of march as terrain allows, and security and mutual support between elements.

PERFORMANCE STEPS:
1. Direct the unit to employ the vee formation during a movement to contact.
2. Establish the lead element, rate of march, and catch up speeds.
3. Establish vehicle interval based on the terrain being covered.
4. Maintain control of the formation, ensuring mutual support between the elements and outboard orientation of weapons.
5. Maintain the formation until the unit completes the movement or the situation changes.

REFERENCES:
1. FM 21-60 Visual Signals
2. FM 3-20.15 Tank Platoon
3. MCO 3500.27B W/ERRATUM Operational Risk Management
4. MCWP 3-12 Marine Corps Tank Employment

1802-TAC-1809: Employ Wedge Formation

EVALUATION-CODED: NO **SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL:** 12 months

BILLETS: Platoon Commander

GRADES: 2NDLT, 1STLT, CAPT

INITIAL TRAINING SETTING: FORMAL

CONDITION: Given an M1A1 tank unit, operations order directing a movement to contact, tactical scenario with enemy contact likely, specified threat, training area suitable for mechanized operations, and references.

STANDARD: To support tactical movement when enemy contact is likely and flexibility is required and so the unit maintains appropriate vehicle interval, rate of march as terrain allows, and security and mutual support between elements.

PERFORMANCE STEPS:
1. Direct the unit to employ the wedge formation during a movement to contact.
2. Establish the lead element, rate of march, and catch up speeds.
3. Establish vehicle interval based on the terrain being covered.
4. Maintain control of the formation, ensuring mutual support between the elements and outboard orientation of weapons.
5. Maintain the formation until the unit completes the movement or the situation changes.

REFERENCES:
1. FM 21-60 Visual Signals
2. FM 3-20.15 Tank Platoon
3. MCO 3500.27B W/ERRATUM Operational Risk Management
4. MCWP 3-12 Marine Corps Tank Employment

1802-TAC-1810: Employ Line Formation

EVALUATION-CODED: NO **SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL:** 12 months

BILLETS: Platoon Commander

GRADES: 2NDLT, 1STLT, CAPT

INITIAL TRAINING SETTING: FORMAL

CONDITION: Given an M1A1 tank unit, operations order directing a movement, a tactical scenario with enemy contact likely, specified threat, training area suitable for mechanized operations, and references.

STANDARD: To support tactical movement when enemy contact is likely and flexibility is not required and so the unit maintains appropriate vehicle interval, rate of march as terrain allows, and security and mutual support between elements.

PERFORMANCE STEPS:
1. Direct the unit to employ the line formation during a movement.
2. Establish the lead element, rate of march, and catch up speeds.
3. Establish vehicle interval based on the terrain being covered.
4. Maintain control of the formation, ensuring mutual support between the elements and outboard orientation of weapons.
5. Maintain the formation until the unit completes the movement or the situation changes.

REFERENCES:
1. FM 21-60 Visual Signals
2. FM 3-20.15 Tank Platoon
3. MCO 3500.27B W/ERRATUM Operational Risk Management
4. MCWP 3-12 Marine Corps Tank Employment

1802-TAC-1811: Employ Echelon Formation

EVALUATION-CODED: NO **SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL:** 12 months

BILLETS: Platoon Commander

GRADES: 2NDLT, 1STLT, CAPT

INITIAL TRAINING SETTING: FORMAL

CONDITION: Given an M1A1 tank unit, operations order directing a movement to contact, a tactical scenario with enemy contact likely, specified threat, training area suitable for mechanized operations, and references.

STANDARD: To support tactical movement when enemy contact is likely and flexibility is required and so the unit maintains appropriate vehicle interval, rate of march as terrain allows, and security and mutual support between elements.

PERFORMANCE STEPS:
1. Direct the unit to employ the echelon formation during a movement to contact.
2. Establish the lead element, rate of march, and catch up speeds.
3. Establish vehicle interval based on the terrain being covered.
4. Maintain control of the formation, ensuring mutual support between the elements and outboard orientation of weapons.
5. Maintain the formation until the unit completes the movement or the situation changes.

REFERENCES:
1. FM 21-60 Visual Signals
2. FM 3-20.15 Tank Platoon
3. MCO 3500.27B W/ERRATUM Operational Risk Management
4. MCWP 3-12 Marine Corps Tank Employment

1802-TAC-1812: Employ Movement Formation

EVALUATION-CODED: NO **SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL:** 12 months

BILLETS: Platoon Commander

GRADES: 2NDLT, 1STLT, CAPT

INITIAL TRAINING SETTING: FORMAL

CONDITION: Given an M1A1 tank unit, operations order directing movement of the unit, a tactical scenario involving likely enemy contact, specified threat, training area suitable for mechanized operations, and references.

STANDARD: To support the tactical movement of the unit based on METT-TC.

PERFORMANCE STEPS:
1. Conduct terrain analysis of movement area.
2. Conduct threat analysis for movement area.
3. Select appropriate movement technique, rate of march, and interval.

REFERENCES:
1. FM 21-60 Visual Signals
2. FM 3-20.15 Tank Platoon
3. MCO 3500.27B W/ERRATUM Operational Risk Management
4. MCWP 3-12 Marine Corps Tank Employment

1802-TAC-1813: Cross a Danger Area

EVALUATION-CODED: NO **SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL:** 12 months

BILLETS: Platoon Commander

GRADES: 2NDLT, 1STLT, CAPT

INITIAL TRAINING SETTING: FORMAL

CONDITION: Given an M1A1 tank unit, operations order, a tactical scenario, specified threat, training area suitable for mechanized operations, and references.

STANDARD: While maintaining security and mutual support between elements and minimizing exposure to enemy observation and fires.

PERFORMANCE STEPS:
1. Establish near side security.
2. Direct an element to cross, conduct reconnaissance of area on far side large enough for entire unit to establish position in, and establish far side security.
3. Upon confirmation by far side security unit, direct the movement of unit across danger area; keep dust signature and exposure time to a minimum.
4. Establish original march formation after all elements have crossed danger area.

REFERENCES:
1. FM 3-20.15 Tank Platoon
2. MCO 3500.27B W/ERRATUM Operational Risk Management
3. MCWP 3-12 Marine Corps Tank Employment

1802-TAC-1814: Conduct Actions on Contact

EVALUATION-CODED: NO **SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL:** 12 months

BILLETS: Platoon Commander

GRADES: 2NDLT, 1STLT, CAPT

INITIAL TRAINING SETTING: FORMAL

CONDITION: Given an M1A1 tank unit, with or without a supported infantry unit, operations order requiring movement, a tactical scenario with enemy contact likely, specified threat, training area suitable for mechanized operations, and references.

STANDARD: To respond to enemy action by maneuvering the unit and conducting battle drills.

PERFORMANCE STEPS:
1. Return fire if applicable.
2. Alert the rest of the unit/element.
3. Report contact to higher headquarters.
4. Develop the situation.
5. Deploy the unit's firepower to establish suppression on enemy positions.
6. Prepare to conduct bypass, hasty attack, or assume to hasty defense.
7. React to contact with enemy forces to the front.
8. React to contact with enemy forces to the right.
9. React to contact with enemy forces to the left.

10. React to contact with enemy forces to the rear.

REFERENCES:
1. FM 21-60 Visual Signals
2. FM 3-20.15 Tank Platoon
3. MCO 3500.27B W/ERRATUM Operational Risk Management
4. MCWP 3-12 Marine Corps Tank Employment

1802-TAC-1815: Conduct Immediate Action Drills

EVALUATION-CODED: NO **SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL:** 12 months

BILLETS: Platoon Commander

GRADES: 2NDLT, 1STLT, CAPT

INITIAL TRAINING SETTING: FORMAL

CONDITION: Given an M1A1 tank unit, with or without a supported infantry unit, operations order requiring movement, a tactical scenario with enemy contact likely, specified threat, training area suitable for mechanized operations, and references.

STANDARD: To respond to enemy action.

PERFORMANCE STEPS:
1. Employ actions against enemy air attack.
2. Employ actions against enemy direct fire.
3. Employ actions against enemy indirect fire.
4. Employ actions against enemy ambush.
5. Employ change formation drills.

REFERENCES:
1. FM 21-60 Visual Signals
2. FM 3-20.15 Tank Platoon
3. MCO 3500.27B W/ERRATUM Operational Risk Management
4. MCWP 3-12 Marine Corps Tank Employment

1802-TAC-1816: Conduct a Tactical Road March

EVALUATION-CODED: NO **SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL:** 12 months

BILLETS: Platoon Commander

GRADES: 2NDLT, 1STLT, CAPT

INITIAL TRAINING SETTING: FORMAL

CONDITION: Given an M1A1 tank unit, with or without a supported infantry unit, operations order, a tactical scenario, specified threat, training area suitable for mechanized operations, and references.

STANDARD: By departing from the SP and moving through subsequent checkpoints and RP's at the stated time, speed, interval, and order of march.

PERFORMANCE STEPS:

1. Develop and issue a FRAGO to the unit. Order should include: routes to RP and SP, order of march, SP and RP locations and times, designation of quartering parties if appropriate, rate of march and catch up speed, vehicle and unit interval, how routes will be marked and by whom, road restrictions, actions on contact, weapons status, scheduled halts, actions at halts, actions for disabled vehicles, designation and responsibilities for trail parties, actions in assembly area prior to departure, friendly units along the route, designation and responsibilities of security elements, fire support plan, and communications plan.
2. Initiate unit movement.
3. Pass and report start, intermediate check points and release points at stated time, speed, interval, and order of march.
4. Ensure that unit adheres to unit SOP.
5. Maintain weapons orientation, air watch, and mutual support.
6. Maintain command and control.
7. Ensure that unit arrives at the Release Point (RP) at the stated time and reports to higher headquarters.
8. Conduct tactical halts as necessary.

REFERENCES:

1. FM 21-26 Map Reading and Land Navigation
2. FM 21-60 Visual Signals
3. FM 3-20.15 Tank Platoon
4. FM 5-33 Terrain Analysis
5. MCO 3500.27B W/ERRATUM Operational Risk Management
6. MCWP 3-12 Marine Corps Tank Employment

1802-TAC-1817: Conduct a Tactical Halt

EVALUATION-CODED: NO **SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL:** 12 months

BILLETS: Platoon Commander

GRADES: 2NDLT, 1STLT, CAPT

INITIAL TRAINING SETTING: FORMAL

CONDITION: Given an M1A1 tank unit, with or without a supported infantry unit, operations order, a tactical scenario, specified threat, training area suitable for mechanized operations, and references.

STANDARD: In a defensible position providing adequate cover and concealment, establishing the appropriate security formation, maintaining local security, and conducting "At Halt" checks for the vehicles.

PERFORMANCE STEPS:

1. Determine a defensible position with adequate cover and concealment to halt the unit.
2. Advise point element to halt at the farthest point in the position and establish security.

3. Direct the appropriate security formation based on the terrain and threat situation.
4. Vehicles discovering maintenance concerns will pass them through the chain of command for action by maintenance personnel.
5. When all checks are completed, the embarked personnel will return to the vehicles; accountability of all personnel is essential.
6. On order, resume the march formation and continue with the mission.

REFERENCES:
1. FM 3-20.15 Tank Platoon
2. MCO 3500.27B W/ERRATUM Operational Risk Management
3. MCWP 3-12 Marine Corps Tank Employment

1802-TAC-1818: Employ Herringbone Formation

EVALUATION-CODED: NO **SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL:** 12 months

BILLETS: Platoon Commander

GRADES: 2NDLT, 1STLT, CAPT

INITIAL TRAINING SETTING: FORMAL

CONDITION: Given an M1A1 tank unit, with or without a supported infantry unit, operations order, a tactical scenario, specified threat, training area suitable for mechanized operations, and references.

STANDARD: So appropriate interval is maintained and to provide mutual support between the unit's elements.

PERFORMANCE STEPS:
1. Determine a defensible position with adequate cover and concealment along the route of march to halt the unit.
2. Direct lead element of unit to halt near the far end of the position and orient on the direction of march.
3. Elements of the unit maintain their interval and orient outboard based on their position within the formation according to unit SOP.
4. The formation should resemble a staggered column, within the limits of the terrain, with the trace elements oriented toward the rear of the column to ensure complete security.
5. On order, the unit resumes the original formation and direction of march.

REFERENCES:
1. FM 21-60 Visual Signals
2. FM 3-20.15 Tank Platoon
3. MCO 3500.27B W/ERRATUM Operational Risk Management
4. MCWP 3-12 Marine Corps Tank Employment

1802-TAC-1819: Employ Coil Formation

EVALUATION-CODED: NO **SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL:** 12 months

BILLETS: Platoon Commander

GRADES: 2NDLT, 1STLT, CAPT

INITIAL TRAINING SETTING: FORMAL

CONDITION: Given an M1A1 tank unit, with or without a supported infantry unit, operations order, a tactical scenario, specified threat, training area suitable for mechanized operations, and references.

STANDARD: To maintain the appropriate interval and provide mutual support between the unit's elements.

PERFORMANCE STEPS:
1. Determine a defensible position with adequate cover and concealment along the route of march to halt the unit.
2. Direct lead element of unit to halt near the far end of the position and orient on the direction of march.
3. Elements of the unit establish themselves in a circular position based on unit SOP and their position within the formation, with the lead element being at the "12 o'clock" position, determining their interval based on the terrain available.
4. The formation should resemble a circle, within the limits of the terrain, with all elements oriented outward to ensure complete security.
5. On order, the unit resumes the original formation and direction of march.

REFERENCES:
1. FM 21-60 Visual Signals
2. FM 3-20.15 Tank Platoon
3. MCO 3500.27B W/ERRATUM Operational Risk Management
4. MCWP 3-12 Marine Corps Tank Employment

1802-TAC-1820: Conduct Convoy Escort

EVALUATION-CODED: NO **SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL:** 12 months

BILLETS: Platoon Commander

GRADES: 2NDLT, 1STLT, CAPT

INITIAL TRAINING SETTING: FORMAL

CONDITION: Given an M1A1 tank platoon, with crews, a supported unit requiring escort, operations order, specified threat, training area suitable for mechanized operations, and references.

STANDARD: Along the prescribed route and all providing all-around security.

PERFORMANCE STEPS:
1. Analyze convoy order; at a minimum the order should emphasize Route of march, order of march, actions at halt, actions in case of vehicle breakdown, actions on contact, chain of command, communications and signal information.
2. Task organize units as part of advance guard, close in protective group, or rear guard.

3. Conduct duties as assigned within the advanced guard, close in protective group, or rear guard.

REFERENCES:
1. FM 3-20.15 Tank Platoon
2. MCO 3500.27B W/ERRATUM Operational Risk Management
3. MCWP 3-12 Marine Corps Tank Employment

1802-TAC-1821: Employ Scanning Techniques

EVALUATION-CODED: NO **SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL:** 12 months

BILLETS: Platoon Commander

GRADES: 2NDLT, 1STLT, CAPT

INITIAL TRAINING SETTING: FORMAL

CONDITION: Given an M1A1 tank unit, a supported unit, operations order, tactical scenario, specific threat, training area, and references.

STANDARD: To identify the next potential covered and concealed position, alternate and supplementary positions, avenues of maneuver, obstacles, possible enemy positions, and weapons signatures.

PERFORMANCE STEPS:
1. Conduct ground search using rapid-scan method.
2. Conduct ground search using slow (50 meter) scan method.
3. Conduct ground search using detailed search method.
4. Conduct air search using horizontal search and scan.
5. Conduct air search using vertical search and scan.

REFERENCES:
1. FM 3-20.12 Tank Gunnery
2. FM 3-20.15 Tank Platoon
3. MCO 3500.27B W/ERRATUM Operational Risk Management
4. MCWP 3-12 Marine Corps Tank Employment

1802-TAC-1822: Camouflage the M1A1 Tank

EVALUATION-CODED: NO **SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL:** 12 months

BILLETS: Platoon Commander

GRADES: 2NDLT

INITIAL TRAINING SETTING: FORMAL

CONDITION: Given an M1A1 tank, a tactical scenario, training area, appropriate collateral equipment, and references.

STANDARD: To avoid detection by ground or air observers with the most appropriate method considering the tactical scenario, natural vegetation, terrain, and weather.

PERFORMANCE STEPS:
1. Assume a position taking maximum advantage of the local terrain to hide the vehicle, especially the suspension.
2. Use natural vegetation to break up the outline of the vehicle.
3. Reduce glare from optics and vision blocks.
4. Enforce noise and light discipline.
5. Employ camouflage netting as necessary.
6. Brush out or cover tracks leading into the position.

REFERENCES:
1. FM 20-3 Camouflage
2. FM 3-20.15 Tank Platoon
3. MCO 3500.27B W/ERRATUM Operational Risk Management
4. MCWP 3-12 Marine Corps Tank Employment

1802-TAC-1823: Supervise use of Camouflage, Cover and Concealment

EVALUATION-CODED: NO **SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL:** 12 months

BILLETS: Platoon Commander

GRADES: 2NDLT, 1STLT, CAPT

INITIAL TRAINING SETTING: FORMAL

CONDITION: Given an M1A1 tank unit, a supported unit, operations order, tactical scenario, training area, appropriate collateral equipment, and references.

STANDARD: With the most appropriate method considering the tactical scenario, natural vegetation, terrain, and weather.

REFERENCES:
1. FM 20-3 Camouflage
2. FM 3-20.15 Tank Platoon
3. MCO 3500.27B W/ERRATUM Operational Risk Management
4. MCWP 3-12 Marine Corps Tank Employment

1802-TAC-1824: Conduct a Mechanized Patrol

EVALUATION-CODED: NO **SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL:** 12 months

BILLETS: Platoon Commander

GRADES: 2NDLT, 1STLT, CAPT

INITIAL TRAINING SETTING: FORMAL

CONDITION: Given an M1A1 tank unit, a supported infantry unit, operations order directing a mechanized patrol, tactical scenario involving a fluid enemy situation allowing the relative easy movement of friendly forces, specified threat, training area suitable for mechanized operations, and references.

STANDARD: To determine the disposition and composition of enemy forces in the area, locate any obstacles to friendly movement along the route, and prevent enemy use of the route.

PERFORMANCE STEPS:
1. Issue warning order.
2. Submit patrol plan to higher headquarters.
3. Issue approved patrol order to unit.
4. Conduct coordination with forward unit prior to departure.
5. Conduct passage of lines.
6. Execute patrol order.
7. Return to friendly position.
8. Conduct after operations checks and services.
9. Debrief the patrol.

REFERENCES:
1. FM 3-20.15 Tank Platoon
2. MCO 3500.27B W/ERRATUM Operational Risk Management
3. MCWP 3-12 Marine Corps Tank Employment

1802-TAC-1825: Conduct a Reconnaissance in Force

EVALUATION-CODED: NO **SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL:** 12 months

BILLETS: Platoon Commander

GRADES: 2NDLT, 1STLT, CAPT

INITIAL TRAINING SETTING: FORMAL

CONDITION: Given an M1A1 tank unit, a supported infantry unit, operations order directing a reconnaissance in force, tactical scenario involving an uncertain enemy situation, specified threat, training area suitable for mechanized operations, and references.

STANDARD: To determine the enemy's composition and disposition, identify his positions, force him to commit his reserves, and determine his most likely course of action.

PERFORMANCE STEPS:
1. Conduct movement to contact, maintaining a sizeable reserve element to develop the situation.
2. Locate the enemy's main defensive system, bypassing and reporting enemy outposts and patrols.
3. Conduct hasty attacks to force the enemy to expose his positions and weapons, especially armor, anti-armor, and artillery units.
4. Employ the reserve element to exploit any gaps in enemy positions and seize key or decisive terrain.
5. Avoid becoming decisively engaged.
6. Conduct combat reporting as required.

REFERENCES:
1. FM 3-20.15 Tank Platoon
2. MCO 3500.27B W/ERRATUM Operational Risk Management

3. MCWP 3-12 Marine Corps Tank Employment

1802-TAC-1826: Conduct a Movement to Contact

EVALUATION-CODED: NO **SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL:** 12 months

BILLETS: Platoon Commander

GRADES: 2NDLT, 1STLT, CAPT

INITIAL TRAINING SETTING: FORMAL

CONDITION: Given an M1A1 tank unit, a supported infantry unit, operations order requiring a movement to contact, tactical scenario with a stationary suspected enemy, specified threat, training area suitable for mechanized operations, and references.

STANDARD: So the unit moves from the SP/FEBA toward the suspected enemy position using the most covered and concealed route, utilizing the movement formation that provides maximum security; and locate, isolate, and report the enemy's main lines.

PERFORMANCE STEPS:
1. Issue a warning order to the unit upon receipt of the order.
2. Conduct mission analysis.
3. Request any additional information or assets not originally provided in the OPORD.
4. Coordinate with the unit directing the route reconnaissance for frequencies and call signs, pass words, recognition signals, fire support, MEDEVACS, threat information, and passage of friendly lines prior to departing the friendly position.
5. Brief the unit on the mission.
6. Pass the SP at the designated time, reporting to the supported unit.
7. Report all control points and major events as they develop.
8. Assess any key or decisive terrain dominating the route; determine whether the terrain is in the hands of the enemy.
9. Report on the disposition and composition of any forward enemy forces encountered; bypass the enemy's combat reconnaissance patrols and outposts.
10. Report on the composition and disposition of the enemy's forces including: forward positions between friendly and enemy main forces, main line of resistance, anti-tank systems by type and location, armored units by type and location, artillery units by type and location, and obstacle and mine fields encountered.

REFERENCES:
1. FM 3-20.15 Tank Platoon
2. MCO 3500.27B W/ERRATUM Operational Risk Management
3. MCWP 3-12 Marine Corps Tank Employment

1802-TAC-1827: Conduct a Meeting Engagement

EVALUATION-CODED: NO **SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL:** 12 months

BILLETS: Platoon Commander

GRADES: 2NDLT, 1STLT, CAPT

INITIAL TRAINING SETTING: FORMAL

CONDITION: Given an M1A1 tank unit, a supported infantry unit, operations order directing a movement to contact, tactical scenario with a stationary suspected enemy, specified threat, training area suitable for mechanized operations, and references.

STANDARD: So that upon contact with the enemy's forces, direct the unit's movement and direct fires in the form of immediate action drills and coordinate supporting arms to breakup enemy formations and degrade his command and control; maintain the initiative through superior fires and movement rates; and destroy or degrade the enemy's forces to the point that he must surrender the initiative and assume the defensive or conduct a retrograde movement.

PERFORMANCE STEPS:

1. Issue a warning order to the unit upon receipt of the order.
2. Conduct mission analysis.
3. Request any additional information or assets not originally provided in the OPORD.
4. Coordinate with the unit directing the route reconnaissance for frequencies and call signs, pass words, recognition signals, fire support, MEDEVACS, threat information, and passage of friendly lines prior to departing the friendly position.
5. Brief the unit on the mission.
6. Pass the SP at the designated time, reporting to the supported unit.
7. Report all control points and major events as they develop.
8. Assess any key or decisive terrain dominating the route; determine whether the terrain is in the hands of the enemy.
9. Direct immediate action drills/actions on contact when making contact with the enemy's forces.
10. Coordinate the unit's fires and maneuvers in order to gain fire superiority and maintain the initiative through superior fires and rates of movement.
11. Coordinate supporting arms fires in order to break up the enemy's formations and disrupt his command and control.
12. Develop the engagement in such a way as to destroy his forces or force him to conduct a retrograde movement from the field.
13. Report on the composition and disposition of the enemy's forces including: forward positions between friendly and enemy main forces, main line of resistance, anti-tank systems by type and location, armored units by type and location, artillery units by type and location, and obstacles and mine fields encountered.

REFERENCES:

1. FM 3-20.15 Tank Platoon
2. MCO 3500.27B W/ERRATUM Operational Risk Management
3. MCWP 3-12 Marine Corps Tank Employment

1802-TAC-1828: Conduct a Bypass

EVALUATION-CODED: NO **SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL:** 12 months

BILLETS: Platoon Commander

GRADES: 2NDLT, 1STLT, CAPT

INITIAL TRAINING SETTING: FORMAL

CONDITION: Given an M1A1 tank unit, a supported infantry unit, operations order directing a movement to contact, tactical scenario with a stationary suspected enemy, specified threat, training area suitable for mechanized operations, and references.

STANDARD: So that the unit moves around an obstacle, position, or enemy force to maintain the momentum of advance.

PERFORMANCE STEPS:
1. Issue FRAGO after initial contact.
2. Identify enemy positions using reconnaissance by observation or fire. Do not become engaged.
3. Set one element of the unit in over watch of the identified enemy position.
4. Maneuver the rest of the unit through the most covered and concealed route available, taking care to minimize exposure to enemy fire and observation.
5. When the maneuvering unit has cleared the enemy position and established overwatch on the enemy, move the original overwatch unit along the same route.
6. Reconstitute the unit and continue with the original mission.
7. Conduct combat reporting as appropriate.

REFERENCES:
1. FM 3-20.15 Tank Platoon
2. MCO 3500.27B W/ERRATUM Operational Risk Management
3. MCWP 3-12 Marine Corps Tank Employment

1802-TAC-1829: Conduct a Mounted Attack

EVALUATION-CODED: NO **SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL:** 12 months

BILLETS: Platoon Commander

GRADES: 2NDLT, 1STLT, CAPT

INITIAL TRAINING SETTING: FORMAL

CONDITION: Given an M1A1 tank unit, a supported infantry unit, operations order directing a movement to contact, tactical scenario with a stationary enemy unit (command and control, artillery, or service support) on a low alert status, specified threat, training area suitable for mechanized operations, and references.

STANDARD: To support the commander's intent and scheme of fire and maneuver.

PERFORMANCE STEPS:

1. Conduct movement to contact.
2. Identify enemy unit during movement to contact.
3. Issue FRAGO to unit, directing amounted attack, assigning sectors of fire and maneuver, limit of advance, dismount/reverse point, and coordinating instructions.
4. Limit the employment of supporting arms to the pursuit of fleeing enemy units and to disrupt potential counterattacks in order to limit fratricide. Based on the speed of a mounted attack, supporting arms fires may not be practicable.
5. Pass through enemy unit using speed, surprise, and shock to limit enemy's reaction.
6. Direct secondary effort after unit reverses direction.
7. Dismount embarked troops based on strength of enemy opposition.
8. Conduct consolidation and reorganization.
9. Report on the composition and disposition of the enemy's forces including: forward positions between friendly and enemy main forces, main line of resistance, anti-tank systems by type and location, armored units by type and location, artillery units by type and location, and obstacles and mine fields encountered.

REFERENCES:

1. FM 3-20.15 Tank Platoon
2. MCO 3500.27B W/ERRATUM Operational Risk Management
3. MCWP 3-12 Marine Corps Tank Employment

1802-TAC-1830: Conduct a Hasty Attack

EVALUATION-CODED: NO **SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL:** 12 months

BILLETS: Platoon Commander

GRADES: 2NDLT, 1STLT, CAPT

INITIAL TRAINING SETTING: FORMAL

CONDITION: Given an M1A1 tank unit, a supported infantry unit, fragmentary order directing a hasty attack, tactical scenario involving a stationary enemy force, specified threat, training area suitable for mechanized operations, and references.

STANDARD: To engage the enemy with resources immediately available to maintain momentum or take advantage of enemy situation.

PERFORMANCE STEPS:

1. Issue Warning Order to unit.
2. Receive and analyze FRAGO from higher unit.
3. Request additional information and support not originally contained in the FRAGO.
4. Issue FRAGO to unit, assigning: known enemy dispositions, time lines, tasks to subordinates, coordinating instructions unique to the attack, control measures required for the attack including time of attack, SP, routes, axis, RP, sectors, phase lines, attack positions, limit of advance, rally points, fire support control measures, and objectives.

5. Initiate unit movement.
6. Conduct unit movement to assault position and coordinate dismounting embarked troops.
7. Provide support by fire as directed within the FRAGO.
8. Secure objective.
9. Consolidate and reorganize unit as necessary, prepare for enemy counterattack.
10. Report all control measures and status of unit at end of attack.

REFERENCES:
1. FM 3-20.15 Tank Platoon
2. MCO 3500.27B W/ERRATUM Operational Risk Management
3. MCWP 3-12 Marine Corps Tank Employment

1802-TAC-1831: Conduct Attack Position Activities

EVALUATION-CODED: NO **SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL:** 12 months

BILLETS: Platoon Commander

GRADES: 2NDLT, 1STLT, CAPT

INITIAL TRAINING SETTING: FORMAL

CONDITION: Given an M1A1 tank unit, a supported infantry unit, operations order directing a deliberate attack, tactical scenario involving a stationary enemy, specified threat, training area suitable for mechanized operations, and references.

STANDARD: To account for unit elements, conduct weapons checks, adopt maneuver formations, and initiate the movement.

PERFORMANCE STEPS:
1. Following passage of friendly lines, move to a covered and concealed position.
2. Account for all elements of the unit.
3. Conduct vehicle checks to determine mechanical casualties during the movement to the attack position; conduct corrective maintenance and reorganization as necessary.
4. Conduct weapons checks as the situation allows.
5. Begin movement toward objective.

REFERENCES:
1. FM 3-20.15 Tank Platoon
2. MCO 3500.27B W/ERRATUM Operational Risk Management
3. MCWP 3-12 Marine Corps Tank Employment

1802-TAC-1832: Conduct Assault Position Activities

EVALUATION-CODED: NO **SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL:** 12 months

BILLETS: Platoon Commander

GRADES: 2NDLT, 1STLT, CAPT

INITIAL TRAINING SETTING: FORMAL

CONDITION: Given an M1A1 tank unit, a supported infantry unit, operations order directing a deliberate attack, tactical scenario involving a stationary enemy, specified threat, training area suitable for mechanized operations, and references.

STANDARD: To account for all elements of the unit, conduct any final coordination or reorganization required, and initiate the assault.

PERFORMANCE STEPS:
1. Move the unit into a covered and concealed position just beyond enemy observation and fire from the unit's objective using the appropriate security formation.
2. Account for all elements of the unit prior to initiating the assault.
3. Provide observation and supporting fires for assault element as they organize for the assault.
4. Conduct any final coordination or reorganization necessary.
5. Initiate assault with supporting fires as appropriate.
6. Displace to attack by fire/support by fire positions in accordance with the operations order.

REFERENCES:
1. FM 3-20.15 Tank Platoon
2. MCO 3500.27B W/ERRATUM Operational Risk Management
3. MCWP 3-12 Marine Corps Tank Employment

1802-TAC-1833: Assault Enemy Positions

EVALUATION-CODED: NO **SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL:** 12 months

BILLETS: Platoon Commander

GRADES: 2NDLT, 1STLT, CAPT

INITIAL TRAINING SETTING: FORMAL

CONDITION: Given an M1A1 tank unit, a supported infantry unit, operations order directing a deliberate attack, tactical scenario involving a stationary enemy, specified threat, training area suitable for mechanized operations, and references.

STANDARD: To destroy enemy forces.

PERFORMANCE STEPS:
1. Establish overwatch elements to provide observation and supporting fires.
2. Employ preparatory fires when appropriate.
3. Move assault elements along designated routes using maximum cover and concealment.
4. Breach enemy obstacles as necessary.
5. Maintain momentum and mutual support as units advance.
6. Employ all weapons according to engagement criteria to destroy the enemy

in detail and eliminate all resistance on the objective.
7. Shift supporting arms as units advance.
8. Move beyond objective to limit of advance.
9. Consolidate unit on objective.
10. Prepare for enemy counterattack.
11. Conduct reorganization, resupply, and evacuations.

REFERENCES:
1. FM 3-20.15 Tank Platoon
2. MCO 3500.27B W/ERRATUM Operational Risk Management
3. MCWP 3-12 Marine Corps Tank Employment

1802-TAC-1834: Conduct Deliberate Attack

EVALUATION-CODED: NO **SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL:** 12 months

BILLETS: Platoon Commander

GRADES: 2NDLT, 1STLT, CAPT

INITIAL TRAINING SETTING: FORMAL

CONDITION: Given an M1A1 tank unit, a supported infantry unit, operations order directing a deliberate attack, tactical scenario with a stationary enemy unit, specified threat, training area suitable for mechanized operations, and references.

STANDARD: To destroy the enemy and/or seize the objective with minimal loss of equipment and personnel.

PERFORMANCE STEPS:
1. Acknowledge receipt of the higher unit's warning order and initiate detailed planning.
2. Issue warning order to subordinate units.
3. Conduct mission analysis. Identify specified, implied, and essential tasks, assumptions, restrictions, and limitations.
4. Request information and support not provided in the operations order.
5. Develop and issue the operations order for the unit.
6. Establish liaison with higher, adjacent and supporting units, as appropriate request direct liaison when appropriate.
7. Conduct rehearsals as time permits.
8. Conduct leaders' reconnaissance as time permits.
9. Coordinate passage of lines with unit in contact with enemy force.
10. Conduct forward passage of lines with unit in contact with enemy force.
11. Cross Line of Departure (LD).
12. Conduct movement to attack/assault positions.
13. Conduct attack/assault position activities.
14. Initiate prepatory fires if included in the operations order.
15. Provide support by fire.
16. Conduct other mission as assigned by the operations order.
17. Conduct breach of enemy obstacle belt as necessary.
18. Assault enemy objectives.
19. Prepare for enemy counterattack.
20. Conduct consolidation and reorganization on the objective.

REFERENCES:
1. FM 3-20.15 Tank Platoon
2. MCO 3500.27B W/ERRATUM Operational Risk Management
3. MCWP 3-12 Marine Corps Tank Employment

1802-TAC-1835: Conduct Attack on Strongpoint

EVALUATION-CODED: NO **SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL:** 12 months

BILLETS: Platoon Commander

GRADES: 2NDLT, 1STLT, CAPT

INITIAL TRAINING SETTING: FORMAL

CONDITION: Given an M1A1 tank unit, a supported infantry unit, operations order directing an attack on an enemy strongpoint, tactical scenario involving an enemy in a prepared position, specified threat, training area suitable for mechanized operations, and references.

STANDARD: To support commander's intent and scheme of maneuver.

PERFORMANCE STEPS:
1. Coordinate movement of embarked troop to the assault position.
2. Provide overwatch and supporting fires while embarked unit forms for attack.
3. Displace to support/attack by fire positions and conduct assigned fire support missions.
4. Conduct other missions as assigned in the operations order.

REFERENCES:
1. FM 3-20.15 Tank Platoon
2. MCO 3500.27B W/ERRATUM Operational Risk Management
3. MCWP 3-12 Marine Corps Tank Employment

1802-TAC-1836: Conduct a Feint

EVALUATION-CODED: NO **SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL:** 12 months

BILLETS: Platoon Commander

GRADES: 2NDLT, 1STLT, CAPT

INITIAL TRAINING SETTING: FORMAL

CONDITION: Given an M1A1 tank unit, a supported infantry unit, operations order directing a feint, tactical scenario involving a known enemy position with reserves, specified threat, training area suitable for mechanized operations, and references.

STANDARD: To deceive the enemy as to the real direction of the main effort, force him to reveal the composition and disposition of his local forces and commit his local reserves.

PERFORMANCE STEPS:
1. Conduct planning along the lines of a deliberate attack, establishing a limit of advance that keep's the unit from becoming engaged in the enemy's obstacle belts or becoming decisively engaged with his main elements.
2. Unit must conduct a limited attack that threatens a vital enemy position in such strength as to convince him that it is a full scale attack.
3. Avoid becoming decisively engaged.
4. Unit disengages from enemy once his reserve elements have been committed, friendly losses exceed 5 per cent, or main attack is successful.

REFERENCES:
1. FM 3-20.15 Tank Platoon
2. MCO 3500.27B W/ERRATUM Operational Risk Management
3. MCWP 3-12 Marine Corps Tank Employment

1802-TAC-1837: Participate in an Exploitation

EVALUATION-CODED: NO **SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL:** 12 months

BILLETS: Platoon Commander

GRADES: 2NDLT, 1STLT, CAPT

INITIAL TRAINING SETTING: FORMAL

CONDITION: Given an M1A1 tank unit, a supported infantry unit, operations order directing the conduct of an exploitation, tactical scenario involving a successful assault on an enemy position and a resulting gap in his positions that allows entry into his rear elements, specified threat, training area suitable for mechanized operations, and references.

STANDARD: To penetrate into the enemy's rear areas and disrupt his command and control and logistics capabilities.

PERFORMANCE STEPS:
1. Conduct mission analysis.
2. Task organize unit.
3. Issue operations order.
4. Cross LD/conduct passage of lines as appropriate.
5. Select movement technique/formation as appropriate.
6. Conduct movement to contact through enemy rear areas.
7. Determine whether to bypass or attack enemy formations as they are encountered.
8. Direct attack on established objectives.
9. Direct consolidation and reorganization on the objective.
10. Direct preparation for continuation of offensive operations.

REFERENCES:
1. FM 3-20.15 Tank Platoon
2. MCO 3500.27B W/ERRATUM Operational Risk Management
3. MCWP 3-12 Marine Corps Tank Employment

1802-TAC-1838: Participate in a Pursuit

EVALUATION-CODED: NO **SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL:** 12 months

BILLETS: Platoon Commander

GRADES: 2NDLT, 1STLT, CAPT

INITIAL TRAINING SETTING: FORMAL

CONDITION: Given an M1A1 tank unit, a supported infantry unit, operations order directing the pursuit of a defeated enemy, tactical scenario involving the successful penetration of an enemy position and the pursuit of remnants of his forces, specified threat, training area suitable for mechanized operations, and references.

STANDARD: To prevent the reorganization of enemy forces.

PERFORMANCE STEPS:
1. Conduct movement to contact, maintaining a sizeable reserve element to develop the situation.
2. Locate the enemy's rear guard elements, bypassing and reporting enemy outposts and patrols.
3. Conduct hasty attacks to force the enemy to expose his positions and weapons, especially armor, anti armor, and artillery units.
4. Employ the reserve element to exploit any gaps in enemy positions and seize key or decisive terrain.
5. Avoid becoming decisively engaged.

REFERENCES:
1. FM 3-20.15 Tank Platoon
2. MCO 3500.27B W/ERRATUM Operational Risk Management
3. MCWP 3-12 Marine Corps Tank Employment

1802-TAC-1839: Serve as a Reserve

EVALUATION-CODED: NO **SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL:** 12 months

BILLETS: Platoon Commander

GRADES: 2NDLT, 1STLT, CAPT

INITIAL TRAINING SETTING: FORMAL

CONDITION: Given an M1A1 tank unit, a supported infantry unit, operations order directing a deliberate attack and assigning a reserve mission to the unit, tactical scenario involving an enemy with sufficient forces to require the commitment of the reserves to seize the objective and complete consolidation, specified threat, training area suitable for mechanized operations, and references.

STANDARD: To disrupt local enemy counterattacks, provide reinforcement to the main effort, and conduct casualty evacuation or resupply operations as the situation develops.

PERFORMANCE STEPS:

1. Coordinate with elements where reserve may be committed.
2. Obtain and update control measures, obstacle plans, and fire support plans of units operating in zones and areas where reserve may be committed.
3. Obtain and update frequencies, call signs, and recognition signals of units operating in zones and areas where reserve may be committed.
4. Establish and maintain liaison with headquarters controlling reserve operations.
5. Conduct reconnaissance of zones and areas where reserve may be committed.
6. Conduct rehearsals of routes to be used during reserve operations to the extent possible.
7. Maintain appropriate alert status as directed by headquarters controlling reserve operations.

REFERENCES:

1. FM 3-20.15 Tank Platoon
2. MCO 3500.27B W/ERRATUM Operational Risk Management
3. MCWP 3-12 Marine Corps Tank Employment

1802-TAC-1840: Conduct an Exfiltration

EVALUATION-CODED: NO **SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL:** 12 months
BILLETS: Platoon Commander

GRADES: 2NDLT, 1STLT, CAPT

INITIAL TRAINING SETTING: FORMAL

CONDITION: Given an M1A1 tank unit, a supported infantry unit, operations order directing an exfiltration by a mechanized force, tactical scenario with a fluid enemy situation and weak forward elements, specified threat, training area suitable for mechanized operations, and references.

STANDARD: To linkup with friendly elements without detection through the maximum use of night/limited visibility and cover and concealment.

PERFORMANCE STEPS:

1. Conduct reconnaissance of enemy positions to determine the following: forward positions, main line of defense, obstacles and mines, gaps in the enemy's defenses, composition and disposition of enemy defenses at objective, potential routes, lanes, assembly areas, rally points, and objectives.
2. Plan exfiltration to include: routes, checkpoints, rally points, sequence of movement, fire support, element size and equipment, and link up with friendly elements.
3. Conduct exfiltration by: maintaining communication, breaking down into elements at designated release points, taking advantage of weaknesses in enemy positions, avoiding enemy contact, ignoring ineffective enemy fires, maintain dispersion and strict noise/light/camouflage discipline, enforcing radio silence, employing artillery and related battlefield noise to mask movement, avoiding enemy contact by halting and hiding, and engaging the enemy only when forced and primarily with indirect fires.

REFERENCES:
1. FM 3-20.15 Tank Platoon
2. MCO 3500.27B W/ERRATUM Operational Risk Management
3. MCWP 3-12 Marine Corps Tank Employment

1802-TAC-1841: Conduct an Infiltration

EVALUATION-CODED: NO **SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL:** 12 months

BILLETS: Platoon Commander

GRADES: 2NDLT, 1STLT, CAPT

INITIAL TRAINING SETTING: FORMAL

CONDITION: Given an M1A1 tank unit, a supported infantry unit, operations order directing an infiltration by a mechanized force, tactical scenario with a fluid enemy situation and weak forward elements, specified threat, training area suitable for mechanized operations, and references.

STANDARD: Through enemy forward positions to his rear areas without detection utilizing maximum use of night/limited visibility and cover and concealment.

PERFORMANCE STEPS:
1. Conduct reconnaissance of enemy positions to determine the following: forward positions, main line of defense, obstacles and mines, gaps in the enemy's defenses, composition and disposition of enemy defenses at objective, and potential routes, lanes, assembly areas, rally points, and objectives.
2. Plan infiltration to include: routes, checkpoints, rally points, sequence of movement, fire support, element size and equipment, and link up with friendly elements.
3. Conduct infiltration by: maintaining communication, breaking down into elements at designated release points, taking advantage of weaknesses in enemy positions, avoiding enemy contact, ignoring ineffective enemy fires, maintain dispersion and strict noise/light/camouflage discipline, enforcing radio silence, employing artillery and related battlefield noise to mask movement, avoiding enemy contact by halting and hiding, and engaging the enemy only when forced and primarily with indirect fires.

REFERENCES:
1. FM 3-20.15 Tank Platoon
2. MCO 3500.27B W/ERRATUM Operational Risk Management
3. MCWP 3-12 Marine Corps Tank Employment

1802-TAC-1842: Conduct a Mechanized Raid

EVALUATION-CODED: NO **SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL:** 12 months

BILLETS: Platoon Commander

GRADES: 2NDLT, 1STLT, CAPT

INITIAL TRAINING SETTING: FORMAL

CONDITION: Given an M1A1 tank unit, a supported infantry unit, operations order directing a mechanized raid on a known enemy position, tactical scenario involving a fluid enemy disposition allowing for movement between his units, specified threat, training area suitable for mechanized operations, and references.

STANDARD: To attack a limited enemy objective and return to friendly positions with minimal loss of personnel and equipment and without becoming decisively engaged.

PERFORMANCE STEPS:
1. Issue operations order.
2. Coordinate passage of lines with friendly unit for both departure and return.
3. Conduct forward passage of lines.
4. Move to objective along the most covered and concealed route possible, avoiding enemy observation and detection as much as possible.
5. Attack and destroy raid objective with minimal loss of friendly elements.
6. Return to friendly units along the most covered and concealed route available, avoiding enemy observation and detection as much as possible.
7. Conduct passage of lines through friendly unit.

REFERENCES:
1. FM 3-20.15 Tank Platoon
2. MCO 3500.27B W/ERRATUM Operational Risk Management
3. MCWP 3-12 Marine Corps Tank Employment

1802-TAC-1843: Conduct a Hasty Ambush

EVALUATION-CODED: NO **SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL:** 12 months

BILLETS: Platoon Commander

GRADES: 2NDLT, 1STLT, CAPT

INITIAL TRAINING SETTING: FORMAL

CONDITION: Given an M1A1 tank unit, a supported infantry unit, operations order directing the unit to secure a specified route or area, tactical scenario involving enemy mechanized patrols in the unit's assigned area, specified threat, training area suitable for mechanized operations, and references.

STANDARD: To destroy enemy patrols and forces, disrupt his efforts to gain information on friendly positions and intentions, and screen the areas forward of the FEBA.

PERFORMANCE STEPS:
1. Identify enemy moving through area of operations.
2. Determine likely route of enemy formations and potential ambush sites along that route that can be used.
3. Issue FRAGO to unit.

4. Position elements of the unit to maintain observation of enemy unit.
5. Direct remaining elements to establish covered and concealed positions at the ambush site.
6. Allow enemy formation to enter ambush site.
7. Trigger ambush with prearranged signal.
8. Destroy enemy elements within the ambush site.
9. Send elements into the ambush site, under cover of over watch element, to search for enemy wounded and important documents.
10. Recovery enemy wounded for treatment and any documentation considered important.
11. Reassemble unit, account for all personnel and equipment, depart unit before enemy reaction force arrives.

REFERENCES:
1. FM 3-20.15 Tank Platoon
2. MCO 3500.27B W/ERRATUM Operational Risk Management
3. MCWP 3-12 Marine Corps Tank Employment

1802-TAC-1844: Conduct a Deliberate Ambush

EVALUATION-CODED: NO **SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL:** 12 months

BILLETS: Platoon Commander

GRADES: 2NDLT, 1STLT, CAPT

INITIAL TRAINING SETTING: FORMAL

CONDITION: Given an M1A1 tank unit, a supported infantry unit, operations order directing the unit to secure a specified route or area, tactical scenario involving enemy mechanized patrols in the unit's assigned area, specified threat, training area suitable for mechanized operations, and references.

STANDARD: To destroy enemy patrols and forces, disrupt his efforts to gain information on friendly positions and intentions, and screen the areas forward of the FEBA.

PERFORMANCE STEPS:
1. Issue warning order for element to prepare for ambush.
2. Conduct map reconnaissance or personal reconnaissance if possible to determine ambush site based on terrain and enemy movement patterns.
3. Conduct passage of lines and move to ambush site.
4. Establish ambush site.
5. Conduct ambush to include searching kill zone for wounded, documents, and equipment.
6. Return to friendly position; ensuring transportation of EPWs and captured documents.

REFERENCES:
1. FM 3-20.15 Tank Platoon
2. MCO 3500.27B W/ERRATUM Operational Risk Management
3. MCWP 3-12 Marine Corps Tank Employment

1802-TAC-1845: Conduct Linkup

EVALUATION-CODED: NO **SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL:** 12 months

BILLETS: Platoon Commander

GRADES: 2NDLT, 1STLT, CAPT

INITIAL TRAINING SETTING: FORMAL

CONDITION: Given an M1A1 tank unit, a supported infantry unit, operations order directing the linkup of two friendly units, tactical scenario with enemy contact unlikely, specified threat, training area suitable for mechanized operations, and references.

STANDARD: As either a stationary or moving unit.

PERFORMANCE STEPS:
1. Establish liaison as appropriate.
2. Exchange frequencies, call signs, recognition signals, and obstacle plans as appropriate.
3. Stationary force assumes responsibility for fire support and local security during linkup.
4. Moving force conducts tactical road march to stationary forces position.
5. Stationary force provides guides and coordinates linkup.
6. Moving force assumes prearranged position.
7. Moving force uses guides and quartering party as appropriate.

REFERENCES:
1. FM 3-20.15 Tank Platoon
2. MCO 3500.27B W/ERRATUM Operational Risk Management
3. MCWP 3-12 Marine Corps Tank Employment

1802-TAC-1846: Conduct a Hasty Defense

EVALUATION-CODED: NO **SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL:** 12 months

BILLETS: Platoon Commander

GRADES: 2NDLT, 1STLT, CAPT

INITIAL TRAINING SETTING: FORMAL

CONDITION: Given an M1A1 tank unit, a supported infantry unit, operations order directing the hasty defense of a position, tactical scenario involving enemy attack on the position, specified threat, training area suitable for mechanized operations, and references.

STANDARD: Against the enemy's attack employing supporting arms, obstacles and mines as time permits, and limited counterattacks as appropriate to disrupt his formations and defeat his assault with minimal loss of personnel and equipment.

PERFORMANCE STEPS:
1. Establish vehicle fighting positions to include fire plans, if time permits. At a minimum establish Target Reference Points (TRPs) by vehicle, element, and unit when conducting the hasty defense of a battle position.
2. Employ supporting arms to disrupt enemy movement and establish suppression in accordance with engagement criteria established in the OPORD/FRAGO.
3. Employ vehicle weapons to destroy enemy troops and vehicles in accordance with engagement criteria established in the OPORD/FRAGO.
4. Displace to alternate, supplementary, and subsequent positions in accordance with disengagement criteria established in the OPORD/FRAGO.
5. Conduct local counterattacks as appropriate.
6. Conduct combat reporting as appropriate.
7. Conduct consolidation and reorganization as appropriate.

REFERENCES:
1. FM 3-20.15 Tank Platoon
2. MCO 3500.27B W/ERRATUM Operational Risk Management
3. MCWP 3-12 Marine Corps Tank Employment

1802-TAC-1847: Displace to Alternate Positions

EVALUATION-CODED: NO **SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL:** 12 months

BILLETS: Platoon Commander

GRADES: 2NDLT, 1STLT, CAPT

INITIAL TRAINING SETTING: FORMAL

CONDITION: Given an M1A1 tank unit, a supported infantry unit, operations order directing the establishment of a defensive position, tactical scenario involving limited enemy activity in the next twenty-four hours, specified threat, training area suitable for mechanized operations, and references.

STANDARD: Along prescribed routes in day and night conditions, placing the vehicle in the prescribed position and validating the range card for that position.

PERFORMANCE STEPS:
1. Establish alternate positions to include range card and fire plan, marking the position for use in day or night, and rehearsing movement to the position.
2. Displace to alternate positions in accordance with disengagement criteria established in the OPORD/FRAGO.

REFERENCES:
1. FM 3-20.15 Tank Platoon
2. MCO 3500.27B W/ERRATUM Operational Risk Management
3. MCWP 3-12 Marine Corps Tank Employment

1802-TAC-1848: Displace to Supplementary Positions

EVALUATION-CODED: NO **SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL:** 12 months

BILLETS: Platoon Commander

GRADES: 2NDLT, 1STLT, CAPT

INITIAL TRAINING SETTING: FORMAL

CONDITION: Given an M1A1 tank unit, a supported infantry unit, operations order directing the establishment of a defensive position, tactical scenario involving limited enemy activity in the next twenty-four hours, specified threat, training area suitable for mechanized operations, and references.

STANDARD: Along prescribed routes in day and night conditions, placing the vehicle in the prescribed position and validating the range card for that position.

PERFORMANCE STEPS:
1. Establish supplementary positions to include range card and fire plan, marking the position for use in day or night, and rehearsing movement to the position.
2. Displace to supplementary positions in accordance with disengagement criteria established in the OPORD/FRAGO.

REFERENCES:
1. FM 3-20.15 Tank Platoon
2. MCO 3500.27B W/ERRATUM Operational Risk Management
3. MCWP 3-12 Marine Corps Tank Employment

1802-TAC-1849: Displace to Subsequent Positions

EVALUATION-CODED: NO **SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL:** 12 months

BILLETS: Platoon Commander

GRADES: 2NDLT, 1STLT, CAPT

INITIAL TRAINING SETTING: FORMAL

CONDITION: Given an M1A1 tank unit, a supported infantry unit, operations order directing the establishment of a defensive position, tactical scenario involving limited enemy activity in the next twenty-four hours, specified threat, training area suitable for mechanized operations, and references.

STANDARD: Along prescribed routes in day and night conditions, placing the vehicle in the prescribed position and validating the range card for that position.

PERFORMANCE STEPS:
1. Establish subsequent positions to include range card and fire plan, marking the position for use in day or night, and rehearsing movement to the position.
2. Displace to subsequent positions in accordance with disengagement criteria established in the OPORD/FRAGO.

REFERENCES:
1. FM 3-20.15 Tank Platoon
2. MCO 3500.27B W/ERRATUM Operational Risk Management
3. MCWP 3-12 Marine Corps Tank Employment

1802-TAC-1850: Defend a Battle Position

EVALUATION-CODED: NO **SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL:** 12 months

BILLETS: Platoon Commander

GRADES: 2NDLT, 1STLT, CAPT

INITIAL TRAINING SETTING: FORMAL

CONDITION: Given an M1A1 tank unit, a supported infantry unit, operations order directing the defense of a battle position, tactical scenario involving a deliberate enemy attack on the battle position, specified threat, training area suitable for mechanized operations, and references.

STANDARD: Against the enemy's deliberate attack employing supporting arms, obstacles and mines, and limited counterattacks as appropriate to disrupt his formations, interdict his supplies and reserves, and defeat his assault with minimal loss of personnel and equipment.

PERFORMANCE STEPS:
1. Establish vehicle fighting positions to include fire plans, if time permits; at a minimum establish Target Reference Points (TRPs) by vehicle, element, and unit when conducting the hasty defense of a battle position.
2. Employ supporting arms to disrupt enemy movement and establish suppression in accordance with engagement criteria established in the OPORD/FRAGO.
3. Employ vehicle weapons to destroy enemy troops and vehicles in accordance with engagement criteria established in the OPORD/FRAGO.
4. Displace to alternate, supplementary, and subsequent positions in accordance with disengagement criteria established in the OPORD/FRAGO.
5. Conduct local counterattacks as appropriate.
6. Conduct combat reporting as appropriate.
7. Conduct consolidation and reorganization as appropriate.
8. Conduct resupply, recovery, and evacuation operations as necessary.
9. Employ obstacles (natural and man made) and mines to disrupt and delay enemy movement in coordination with fire support to destroy his reconnaissance elements and defeat his main attack.

REFERENCES:
1. FM 3-20.15 Tank Platoon
2. MCO 3500.27B W/ERRATUM Operational Risk Management
3. MCWP 3-12 Marine Corps Tank Employment

1802-TAC-1851: Defend a Strongpoint

EVALUATION-CODED: NO **SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL:** 12 months

BILLETS: Platoon Commander

GRADES: 2NDLT, 1STLT, CAPT

INITIAL TRAINING SETTING: FORMAL

CONDITION: Given an M1A1 tank unit, a supported infantry unit, operations order directing the defense of a strongpoint, tactical scenario involving a coordinated enemy attack, specified threat, training area suitable for mechanized operations, and references.

STANDARD: From deliberate attack, forcing the enemy to end the attack by defeating or destroying his forces without allowing penetration of the strongpoint perimeter.

PERFORMANCE STEPS:
1. Establish security element.
2. Establish strongpoint defense on key terrain.
3. Develop integrated obstacle and fire support plan to disrupt enemy formations and destroy his forces outside the perimeter of the strongpoint.
4. Develop survivability plan that allows maneuver, fire support, and CSS assets to survive enemy artillery attacks and remain effective to defend the strongpoint.
5. Defend strongpoint against deliberate attack.

REFERENCES:
1. FM 3-20.15 Tank Platoon
2. MCO 3500.27B W/ERRATUM Operational Risk Management
3. MCWP 3-12 Marine Corps Tank Employment

1802-TAC-1852: Conduct a Positional Defense

EVALUATION-CODED: NO **SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL:** 12 months

BILLETS: Platoon Commander

GRADES: 2NDLT, 1STLT, CAPT

INITIAL TRAINING SETTING: FORMAL

CONDITION: Given an M1A1 tank unit, a supported infantry unit, operations order directing a positional defense, tactical scenario involving a coordinated enemy attack, specified threat, training area suitable for mechanized operations, and references.

STANDARD: Forcing the enemy to end the attack by defeating or destroying his forces without allowing penetration of the defensive position.

PERFORMANCE STEPS:
1. Establish security element to prevent enemy interference with the development of the position.
2. Employ obstacles (natural and man made) and mines to disrupt and delay enemy movement in coordination with fire support to destroy his reconnaissance elements and defeat his main attack.
3. Establish vehicle fighting positions to include fire sketch; at a minimum

establish Target Reference Points (TRPs) by vehicle, element, and unit when conducting the hasty defense of a battle position.
4. Employ vehicle weapons to engage enemy troops and vehicles in accordance with engagement criteria established in the OPORD/FRAGO.
5. Employ supporting arms to disrupt enemy movement and establish suppression in accordance with engagement criteria established in the OPORD/FRAGO.
6. Displace to alternate, supplementary, and subsequent positions in accordance with disengagement criteria established in the OPORD/FRAGO.
7. Conduct local counterattacks as appropriate.
8. Conduct combat reporting as appropriate.
9. Conduct consolidation and reorganization as appropriate.
10. Conduct resupply, recovery, and evacuation operations as necessary.

REFERENCES:
1. FM 3-20.15 Tank Platoon
2. MCO 3500.27B W/ERRATUM Operational Risk Management
3. MCWP 3-12 Marine Corps Tank Employment

1802-TAC-1853: Defend in Sector

EVALUATION-CODED: NO **SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL:** 12 months

BILLETS: Platoon Commander

GRADES: 2NDLT, 1STLT, CAPT

INITIAL TRAINING SETTING: FORMAL

CONDITION: Given an M1A1 tank unit, a supported infantry unit, operations order directing the defense of a sector, tactical scenario involving a deliberate enemy attack, specified threat, training area suitable for mechanized operations, and references.

STANDARD: By employing fire support and obstacle assets with a minimum of maneuver, defeating the enemy attack forward of the original position with minimal loss of personnel, equipment and terrain.

PERFORMANCE STEPS:
1. Establish security element to prevent enemy interference with the development of the position.
2. Establish vehicle and element positions based on scheme of defense.
3. Establish integrated obstacle and fire support plan to defeat or destroy enemy forces within the sector.
4. Establish Target Reference Points (TRPs), decision points, engagement and disengagement criteria for the sector.
5. Direct fires to disrupt, suppress and destroy enemy units.
6. Direct displacement of maneuver and CSS elements as necessary.

REFERENCES:
1. FM 3-20.15 Tank Platoon
2. MCO 3500.27B W/ERRATUM Operational Risk Management
3. MCWP 3-12 Marine Corps Tank Employment

1802-TAC-1854: Conduct a Perimeter Defense

EVALUATION-CODED: NO **SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL:** 12 months

BILLETS: Platoon Commander

GRADES: 2NDLT

INITIAL TRAINING SETTING: FORMAL

CONDITION: Given an M1A1 tank unit, a supported infantry unit, operations order directing a perimeter defense, tactical scenario involving a deliberate enemy attack, specified threat, training area suitable for mechanized operations, and references.

STANDARD: By employing fire support and obstacle assets with minimal maneuver, defeating the enemy attack forward of the original position with minimal loss of personnel, equipment and terrain.

PERFORMANCE STEPS:
1. Establish security element to prevent enemy interference with the development of the position.
2. Establish vehicle and element positions based on scheme of defense.
3. Establish integrated obstacle and fire support plan to defeat or destroy enemy forces within the sector.
4. Establish Target Reference Points (TRPs), decision points, engagement and disengagement criteria for the sector.
5. Direct fires to disrupt, suppress and destroy enemy units.
6. Direct displacement of maneuver and CSS elements as necessary.

REFERENCES:
1. FM 3-20.15 Tank Platoon
2. MCWP 3-12 Marine Corps Tank Employment

1802-TAC-1855: Conduct a Mobile Defense

EVALUATION-CODED: NO **SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL:** 12 months

BILLETS: Platoon Commander

GRADES: 2NDLT, 1STLT, CAPT

INITIAL TRAINING SETTING: FORMAL

CONDITION: Given an M1A1 tank unit, a supported infantry unit, operations order directing a mobile defense, tactical scenario involving a coordinated enemy attack, specified threat, training area suitable for mechanized operations, and references.

STANDARD: Forcing the enemy to end the attack by defeating or destroying his forces without allowing penetration of the defensive position.

PERFORMANCE STEPS:
1. Establish security element to prevent enemy interference with the

development of the position.
2. Employ obstacles (natural and man made) and mines to disrupt and delay enemy movement in coordination with fire support to destroy his reconnaissance elements and defeat his main attack.
3. Establish vehicle fighting positions to include fire sketch; at a minimum establish Target Reference Points (TRPs) by vehicle, element, and unit when conducting the hasty defense of a battle position.
4. Employ vehicle weapons to engage enemy troops and vehicles in accordance with engagement criteria established in the OPORD/FRAGO.
5. Employ supporting arms to disrupt enemy movement and establish suppression in accordance with engagement criteria established in the OPORD/FRAGO.
6. Displace to alternate, supplementary, and subsequent positions in accordance with disengagement criteria established in the OPORD/FRAGO.
7. Conduct local counterattacks as appropriate.
8. Conduct combat reporting as appropriate.
9. Conduct consolidation and reorganization as appropriate.
10. Conduct resupply, recovery, and evacuation operations as necessary.

REFERENCES:
1. FM 3-20.15 Tank Platoon
2. MCO 3500.27B W/ERRATUM Operational Risk Management
3. MCWP 3-12 Marine Corps Tank Employment

1802-TAC-1856: Conduct a Delay

EVALUATION-CODED: NO **SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL:** 12 months

BILLETS: Platoon Commander

GRADES: 2NDLT, 1STLT, CAPT

INITIAL TRAINING SETTING: FORMAL

CONDITION: Given an M1A1 tank unit, a supported infantry unit, operations order directing a delay, tactical scenario involving direct pressure from an enemy force not capable of overwhelming your delaying effort, specified threat, training area suitable for mechanized operations, and references.

STANDARD: So the enemy will be delayed forward of the designated phase line until the time specified in the OPORD and so the unit has enough combat power at the conclusion of the delay to conduct other operations.

PERFORMANCE STEPS:
1. Analyze operations order directing delay.
2. Issue warning order.
3. Develop a plan for the delay that identifies normal defensive operational considerations and designations; additionally a delay should: maximize the use of natural and man made obstacles to disrupt enemy formations and movement and expose him to direct and indirect fires to destroy him forward of the battle positions; supporting arms, in particular smoke, should be used to screen friendly movement as much as possible; disengagement criteria should direct maneuver elements in contact with the enemy to conduct a battle handover with friendly elements in supporting battle positions and displace along designated routes without suffering

significant losses; decisive engagement is to be avoided; and terrain is sacrificed to gain time.
4. Begin movement to defensive positions and preparation for defensive operations.
5. Coordinate with adjacent units to ensure mutual support and prevent enemy from bypassing your position.
6. Establish forward security elements to detect enemy forces while preparing the delay.
7. Conduct reconnaissance of zone, routes, and battle positions.
8. Complete planning and issue operations order for delay.
9. Prepare and occupy delaying positions.
10. Conduct rehearsals as time permits.
11. Delay enemy forces in zone by conducting battle handover between elements in subsequent battle positions and engagement areas.
12. Conduct combat reporting as required.

REFERENCES:
1. FM 3-20.15 Tank Platoon
2. MCO 3500.27B W/ERRATUM Operational Risk Management
3. MCWP 3-12 Marine Corps Tank Employment

1802-TAC-1857: Conduct a Withdrawal

EVALUATION-CODED: NO **SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL:** 12 months

BILLETS: Platoon Commander

GRADES: 2NDLT, 1STLT, CAPT

INITIAL TRAINING SETTING: FORMAL

CONDITION: Given an M1A1 tank unit, a supported infantry unit, operations order directing a withdrawal, tactical scenario involving enemy pressure, specified threat, training area suitable for mechanized operations, and references.

STANDARD: Under enemy pressure with minimum loss of personnel and equipment and breaking contact with enemy forces as directed in the OPORD.

PERFORMANCE STEPS:
1. Analyze operations order directing withdrawal.
2. Issue warning order.
3. Develop a plan for the withdrawal that identifies normal defensive operational considerations and designations; additionally a withdrawal should: establish disengagement criteria for maneuver elements in contact with the enemy to conduct a battle handover with friendly elements in supporting battle positions and displace along designated routes without suffering significant losses; establish routes and other appropriate control measures to allow the unit to conduct a tactical road march with minimal enemy pressure; and establish rear guard force to protect the unit in case of enemy attack.
4. Conduct reconnaissance of zone, routes, and defensive positions with quartering party as appropriate.
5. Complete planning and issue operations order for withdrawal.

6. Execute withdrawal, conducting tactical road march to designated positions.
7. Conduct combat reporting as required.
8. Implement deception plan as appropriate.

REFERENCES:
1. FM 3-20.15 Tank Platoon
2. MCO 3500.27B W/ERRATUM Operational Risk Management
3. MCWP 3-12 Marine Corps Tank Employment

1802-TAC-1858: Conduct a Retirement

EVALUATION-CODED: NO **SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL:** 12 months

BILLETS: Platoon Commander

GRADES: 2NDLT, 1STLT, CAPT

INITIAL TRAINING SETTING: FORMAL

CONDITION: Given an M1A1 tank unit, a supported infantry unit, operations order directing a retirement, tactical scenario involving no enemy activity, specified threat, training area suitable for mechanized operations, and references.

STANDARD: To designated positions as directed by the commander.

PERFORMANCE STEPS:
1. Analyze operations order directing retirement.
2. Issue warning order.
3. Develop movement orders for the unit based on a tactical road march; coordinate with unit providing immediate security between your unit and the enemy, ensure security throughout the movement, coordinate with any friendly units along the route of movement, coordinate with external fire support (naval, air) for support along the route, and establish rear guard/security force to cover the unit's movements.
4. Conduct movement as directed to designated positions.
5. Conduct combat reporting as required.

REFERENCES:
1. FM 3-20.15 Tank Platoon
2. MCO 3500.27B W/ERRATUM Operational Risk Management
3. MCWP 3-12 Marine Corps Tank Employment

1802-TAC-1859: Conduct a Relief in Place

EVALUATION-CODED: NO **SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL:** 12 months

BILLETS: Platoon Commander

GRADES: 2NDLT, 1STLT, CAPT

INITIAL TRAINING SETTING: FORMAL

CONDITION: Given an M1A1 tank unit, a supported infantry unit, operations order directing a relief in place, tactical scenario involving minimal enemy pressure, specified threat, training area suitable for mechanized operations, and references.

STANDARD: Minimizing the possibility of detection by the enemy, and continuing the mission of the relieved unit without loss of combat readiness or security.

PERFORMANCE STEPS:

1. Issue warning order to elements.
2. Analyze OPORD.
3. Establish liaison with other unit.
4. Establish command relationship between the stationary and moving unit; define responsibility for: fire support, barrier plan, controlling movement during relief, and methods and criteria for passing control.
5. Establish schedule of movement that maintains security, unit integrity, and dispersion.
6. Establish routes, assembly areas, positions, and priority of movement along the routes.
7. Coordinate as normal a pattern of activity as possible.
8. Stationary unit provides relief force with detailed defense plan to include: barrier and obstacle plan, minefields, observation and listening post locations, fire support plan, deception plan if applicable, known enemy positions and latest threat assessment.
9. Units exchange communication plan to include: frequencies and call signs, recognition signals (far, near, day, night), challenge and passwords, authentication procedures, reporting procedures and formats, and brevity codes.
10. Coordinate for any supplies being left by stationary unit to include: fuel, ammunition, medical supplies, and engineering materials.
11. Locate a forward CP for the relieving force with the stationary force to facilitate coordination and control.
12. Develop contingency plans for actions in the event of enemy attack prior to, during, and after the completion of the relief.
13. Use guides as necessary.
14. Relieve stationary security elements last in the process.
15. Fire support assets for the stationary unit remain in place to support the entire relief.
16. Account for all personnel and equipment before completing relief.

REFERENCES:

1. FM 3-20.15 Tank Platoon
2. MCO 3500.27B W/ERRATUM Operational Risk Management
3. MCWP 3-12 Marine Corps Tank Employment

1802-TAC-1860: Conduct a Battle Handover

EVALUATION-CODED: NO **SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL:** 12 months

BILLETS: Platoon Commander

GRADES: 2NDLT, 1STLT, CAPT

INITIAL TRAINING SETTING: FORMAL

CONDITION: Given an M1A1 tank unit, a supported infantry unit, another unit with which to conduct the handover, operations order directing the handover between the units, tactical scenario, specified threat, and training area suitable for mechanized operations.

STANDARD: Per the references.

PERFORMANCE STEPS:
1. Establish liaison with stationary/moving unit as appropriate.
2. Coordinate for frequencies, call signs, and recognition signals.
3. Coordinate routes and other control measures.
4. Exchange obstacle and fire support plans.
5. Coordinate for use of guides as necessary.
6. Moving unit approaches and establishes contact with stationary unit.
7. Stationary unit alerts elements of approach of friendly unit, status becomes weapons tight.
8. Stationary unit provides guides through their barriers in order to expedite movement.
9. Stationary unit controls movement and is responsible for coordinating responses to enemy action.
10. Moving unit announces when all elements are cleared of stationary unit.
11. Moving unit enters stationary positions. Stationary unit provides copies of sketch cards, route plans, fire support plans, to new unit.

REFERENCES:
1. FM 3-20.15 Tank Platoon
2. MCO 3500.27B W/ERRATUM Operational Risk Management
3. MCWP 3-12 Marine Corps Tank Employment

1802-TAC-1861: Conduct a Counterattack
EVALUATION-CODED: NO **SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL:** 12 months

BILLETS: Platoon Commander

GRADES: 2NDLT, 1STLT, CAPT

INITIAL TRAINING SETTING: FORMAL

CONDITION: Given an M1A1 tank unit and a supported infantry unit serving as the reserve, operations order directing a counterattack, a tactical scenario involving an enemy force attacking friendly defensive positions, specified threat, training area suitable for mechanized operations, and references.

STANDARD: Against enemy units in order to destroy his attack and preserve friendly defensive positions.

PERFORMANCE STEPS:
1. Develop plan for employment of reserve in a counterattack; the plan should include: frequencies, call signs, and recognition signals of units operating in zones and areas where reserve may be committed, appropriate alert status as directed by headquarters controlling reserve operations,

rehearsals of routes to be used during reserve operations to the extent possible, control measures, obstacle plans, fire support plans, brevity codes to prevent fratricide, and command relationships in the event of counterattack.
2. Issue warning order to reserve element to serve as counterattack.
3. Employ supporting arms to seal the point of enemy penetration and disrupt the enemy formations.
4. Conduct a passage of lines through friendly units to the counterattack forces LOD.
5. Conduct coordinated attack against enemy forces to defeat their efforts and restore the original position.
6. Conduct consolidation and reorganization as appropriate.

REFERENCES:
1. FM 3-20.15 Tank Platoon
2. MCO 3500.27B W/ERRATUM Operational Risk Management
3. MCWP 3-12 Marine Corps Tank Employment

1802-TAC-1862: Conduct a Passage of Lines

EVALUATION-CODED: NO **SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL:** 12 months

BILLETS: Platoon Commander

GRADES: 2NDLT, 1STLT, CAPT

INITIAL TRAINING SETTING: FORMAL

CONDITION: Given an M1A1 tank unit, a stationary unit, operations order directing a passage of lines, tactical scenario involving limited enemy activity, specified threat, training area suitable for mechanized operations, and references.

STANDARD: So that movement does not disrupt the stationary unit's defense and the moving unit is not surprised or disrupted by enemy activity.

PERFORMANCE STEPS:
1. Establish liaison with stationary/moving unit as appropriate; liaison should exchange the following information: designation and types of units to pass, battle handover line location and point or time at which handover is complete, mission for each unit and concept of operations with rationale, NBC contamination information, fire support plans and control measures to include fire control lines transfer, threat assessment, friendly locations (day and night), OPs and patrol routes, lanes, routes, passage points, obstacles (location and types), assembly areas and attack positions, CS and CSS locations by type and mission, and recognition signals and communications plan.
2. Coordinate for use of guides as necessary.
3. Moving unit approaches establishes contact with stationary unit.
4. Stationary unit provides guides through their barriers in order to expedite movement.
5. Stationary unit alerts elements of approach of friendly unit, status becomes weapons tight.
6. Stationary unit controls movement and is responsible for coordinating

responses to enemy action.
7. Moving unit announces when all elements are cleared of stationary position.

REFERENCES:
1. FM 3-20.15 Tank Platoon
2. MCO 3500.27B W/ERRATUM Operational Risk Management
3. MCWP 3-12 Marine Corps Tank Employment

1802-TAC-1863: Conduct a Spoiling Attack

EVALUATION-CODED: NO **SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL:** 12 months

BILLETS: Platoon Commander

GRADES: 2NDLT, 1STLT, CAPT

INITIAL TRAINING SETTING: FORMAL

CONDITION: Given an M1A1 tank unit, a supported infantry unit, operations order directing a spoiling attack, tactical scenario involving an enemy unit accumulating reserves for the purpose of conducting a counterattack, specified threat, training area suitable for mechanized operations, and references.

STANDARD: On the enemy's reserves in order to prevent him from organizing and conducting a counterattack against friendly forces.

PERFORMANCE STEPS:
1. Conduct hasty attack designed to disrupt enemy reserve formations.
2. Do not become decisively engaged.
3. Destroy or disrupt enemy reserve formations in order to prevent them from interfering with the main friendly effort.

REFERENCES:
1. FM 3-20.15 Tank Platoon
2. MCO 3500.27B W/ERRATUM Operational Risk Management
3. MCWP 3-12 Marine Corps Tank Employment

1802-TAC-1864: Conduct Guard Operations

EVALUATION-CODED: NO **SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL:** 12 months

BILLETS: Platoon Commander

GRADES: 2NDLT, 1STLT, CAPT

INITIAL TRAINING SETTING: FORMAL

CONDITION: Given an M1A1 tank unit, an operations order directing guard operations, a tactical scenario, specified threat, training area suitable for mechanized operations, and references.

STANDARD: Against the enemy's attacks to disrupt his formations and prevent his penetration forward of the guard line.

PERFORMANCE STEPS:
1. Establish vehicle fighting positions to include fire plans, if time permits; at a minimum establish Target Reference Points (TRPs) by vehicle, element, and unit when conducting the hasty defense of a battle position.
2. Employ supporting arms to disrupt enemy movement and establish suppression in accordance with engagement criteria established in the OPORD/FRAGO.
3. Employ vehicle weapons to destroy enemy troops and vehicles in accordance with engagement criteria established in the OPORD/FRAGO.
4. Displace to alternate, supplementary, and subsequent positions in accordance with disengagement criteria established in the OPORD/FRAGO.
5. Conduct local counterattacks as appropriate.
6. Conduct combat reporting as appropriate.
7. Conduct consolidation and reorganization as appropriate.

REFERENCES:
1. FM 3-20.15 Tank Platoon
2. FM 3-90.1 Tank and Mechanized Infantry Company Team
3. MCO 3500.27B W/ERRATUM Operational Risk Management
4. MCWP 3-12 Marine Corps Tank Employment

1802-TAC-1865: Conduct Screen Operations

EVALUATION-CODED: NO **SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL:** 12 months

BILLETS: Platoon Commander

GRADES: 2NDLT, 1STLT, CAPT

INITIAL TRAINING SETTING: FORMAL

CONDITION: Given an M1A1 tank unit, operations order directing screen operations, a tactical scenario, specified threat, training area suitable for mechanized operations, and references.

STANDARD: To maintain surveillance on the enemy, provide early warning to the higher commander, and impede and harass the enemy's advance.

PERFORMANCE STEPS:
1. Establish vehicle fighting positions to include fire plans, if time permits; at a minimum establish Target Reference Points (TRPs) by vehicle, element, and unit when conducting the hasty defense of a battle position.
2. Employ supporting arms to disrupt enemy movement and establish suppression in accordance with engagement criteria established in the OPORD/FRAGO.
3. Employ vehicle weapons to destroy enemy troops and vehicles in accordance with engagement criteria established in the OPORD/FRAGO.
4. Displace to alternate, supplementary, and subsequent positions in accordance with disengagement criteria established in the OPORD/FRAGO.
5. Conduct local counterattacks as appropriate.
6. Conduct combat reporting as appropriate.
7. Conduct consolidation and reorganization as appropriate.

REFERENCES:
1. FM 3-20.15 Tank Platoon
2. FM 3-90.1 Tank and Mechanized Infantry Company Team
3. MCO 3500.27B W/ERRATUM Operational Risk Management
4. MCWP 3-12 Marine Corps Tank Employment

1802-TAC-1866: Conduct Reconnaissance by Fire

EVALUATION-CODED: NO **SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL:** 12 months

BILLETS: Platoon Commander

GRADES: 2NDLT, 1STLT, CAPT

INITIAL TRAINING SETTING: FORMAL

CONDITION: Given an M1A1 tank unit, a supported unit, operations order, tactical scenario, training area, and references.

STANDARD: To expose enemy positions.

PERFORMANCE STEPS:
1. Scan area to determine likely enemy positions.
2. Assign element(s) to provide overwatch for unit.
3. Assign element to direct fires at suspected enemy position.
4. Develop situation based on enemy response.

REFERENCES:
1. FM 3-20.15 Tank Platoon
2. MCO 3500.27B W/ERRATUM Operational Risk Management
3. MCWP 3-12 Marine Corps Tank Employment

1802-TAC-1867: Conduct an Attack by Fire

EVALUATION-CODED: NO **SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL:** 12 months

BILLETS: Platoon Commander

GRADES: 2NDLT, 1STLT, CAPT

INITIAL TRAINING SETTING: FORMAL

CONDITION: Given an M1A1tank unit, a supported unit, operations order, tactical scenario, training area, and references.

STANDARD: To support the commander's intent and scheme of maneuver.

PERFORMANCE STEPS:
1. Establish firing position with overwatch or security element.
2. Scan area to determine known enemy positions.
3. Assign appropriate control measures to unit to control: target area/beaten zone, priority of targets, rate of fire, and primary and alternate signals.

4. Engage enemy unit with fires in order to destroy or defeat his forces on the assigned objective.

REFERENCES:
1. FM 3-20.15 Tank Platoon
2. MCO 3500.27B W/ERRATUM Operational Risk Management
3. MCWP 3-12 Marine Corps Tank Employment

1802-TAC-1868: Conduct a Support by Fire

EVALUATION-CODED: NO **SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL:** 12 months

BILLETS: Platoon Commander

GRADES: 2NDLT, 1STLT, CAPT

INITIAL TRAINING SETTING: FORMAL

CONDITION: Given an M1A1 tank unit, a supported unit, operations order, tactical scenario, training area, and references.

STANDARD: To suppress the enemy and allow the supported unit to conduct its mission without casualties from fratricide.

PERFORMANCE STEPS:
1. Establish firing position with overwatch or security element.
2. Scan area to determine known enemy positions.
3. Assign appropriate control measures to unit to control: target area/beaten zone, priority of targets, rate of fire, and primary and alternate signals.
4. Engage enemy unit with fires in order to suppress or neutralize his forces on the assigned objective.
5. Lift or shift fires on order from assaulting element.

REFERENCES:
1. FM 3-20.15 Tank Platoon
2. MCO 3500.27B W/ERRATUM Operational Risk Management
3. MCWP 3-12 Marine Corps Tank Employment

1802-TAC-1869: Advise Supported Unit Commander on Tank Employment in Night/Limited Visibility Operations

EVALUATION-CODED: NO **SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL:** 12 months

BILLETS: Platoon Commander

GRADES: 2NDLT, 1STLT, CAPT

INITIAL TRAINING SETTING: FORMAL

CONDITION: Given an M1A1 tank unit, a supported unit, operations order, tactical scenario involving night or limited visibility conditions, specified threat, training area, appropriate collateral equipment, and references.

STANDARD: To support the commander's intent and scheme of maneuver.

PERFORMANCE STEPS:
1. Advise on night vision capabilities organic to the tank and the unit.
2. Advise on Tactics, Techniques, and Procedures (TTPs), established by the unit for night/limited visibility operations.
3. Advise on control measures required for mechanized forces in night/limited visibility operations.
4. Advise on CSS requirements for night/limited visibility operations.

REFERENCES:
1. FM 3-20.15 Tank Platoon
2. MCO 3500.27B W/ERRATUM Operational Risk Management
3. MCWP 3-12 Marine Corps Tank Employment

1802-TAC-1870: Conduct Night/Limited Visibility Operations

EVALUATION-CODED: NO **SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL:** 12 months

BILLETS: Platoon Commander

GRADES: 2NDLT, 1STLT, CAPT

INITIAL TRAINING SETTING: FORMAL

CONDITION: Given an M1A1 tank unit, a supported unit, operations order, tactical scenario involving night or limited visibility, specified threat, training area, appropriate collateral equipment, and references.

STANDARD: To support the commander's intent and scheme of maneuver.

PERFORMANCE STEPS:
1. Prepare vehicle for night/limited visibility operations according to unit SOP and vehicle TM.
2. Establish command and control procedures for night/limited visibility operations according to the operations order and unit SOP.

REFERENCES:
1. FM 3-20.15 Tank Platoon
2. MCO 3500.27B W/ERRATUM Operational Risk Management
3. MCWP 3-12 Marine Corps Tank Employment

1802-TAC-1871: Advise Supported Unit Commander on Tank Employment in River Crossings

EVALUATION-CODED: NO **SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL:** 12 months

BILLETS: Platoon Commander

GRADES: 2NDLT, 1STLT, CAPT

INITIAL TRAINING SETTING: FORMAL

CONDITION: Given an M1A1 tank unit, a supporting engineer unit, operations order, tactical scenario involving river crossings, specified threat, training area, appropriate collateral equipment, and references.

STANDARD: To support the commander's intent and scheme of maneuver.

PERFORMANCE STEPS:

1. Advise on Tactics, Techniques, and Procedures (TTPs), established by the unit for river crossings.
2. Advise on control measures required for mechanized forces in river crossings.
3. Advise on CSS requirements for river crossings.

REFERENCES:

1. FM 3-20.15 Tank Platoon
2. MCO 3500.27B W/ERRATUM Operational Risk Management
3. MCWP 3-12 Marine Corps Tank Employment
4. MCWP 3-17.1 River-Crossing Operations

9008. 2000-LEVEL 1802 INDIVIDUAL EVENTS

1802-CMDC-2201: Plan Collection of Intelligence

EVALUATION-CODED: NO **SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL:** 12 months

BILLETS: Company Commander

GRADES: CAPT

INITIAL TRAINING SETTING: FORMAL

CONDITION: Given a tank unit, supported infantry unit, an operations order defining the battle space and mission, tactical scenario, map of the battle space, and specified threat.

STANDARD: Per the references.

PERFORMANCE STEPS:
1. Establish Commander's Critical Information Requirements (CCRI); ensure that they are published to the command with reporting instructions.
2. Establish Essential Elements of Friendly Information (EEFI): EEFIs are concise directives with three parts, a positive directive, a qualifying question, statements directing special attention, and ensure that they are published to the command with reporting instructions.
3. Develop intelligence collection worksheet or other systematic method for managing the collection effort.
4. Establish reporting instructions as part of unit SOP or coordinating instructions.
5. Coordinate with unit S-3 for all reconnaissance element taskings.
6. Submit requests for additional information to higher command element or through him to higher, adjacent and supporting commands.
7. Submit requests for additional intelligence assets to higher command element or through him to higher, adjacent and supporting commands.
8. Develop procedures along with the staff for the handling of captured/detained personnel, documents, and equipment; ensure that the procedures are published as part of the unit SOP or coordinating instructions.
9. Report all reconnaissance information to higher headquarters.

REFERENCES:
1. FM 3-20.15 Tank Platoon
2. MCO 3500.27B W/ERRATUM Operational Risk Management
3. MCRP 2-12A Intelligence Preparation of the Battlefield (IPB)
4. MCRP 2-25A Reconnaissance Reports Guide
5. MCWP 3-12 Marine Corps Tank Employment

1802-CMDC-2202: Support Counterintelligence Effort

EVALUATION-CODED: NO **SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL:** 12 months

BILLETS: Company Commander

GRADES: CAPT

INITIAL TRAINING SETTING: FORMAL

CONDITION: Given a tank unit, supported infantry unit, an operations order, tactical scenario, and specified threat.

STANDARD: Per the references.

PERFORMANCE STEPS:
1. Establish local security to include perimeters, listening and observation posts (LP/OP), guards, traffic control points, security patrols as appropriate.
2. Release information on a need-to-know basis only.
3. Employ code symbols for vehicle and equipment as appropriate.
4. Minimize movement.
5. Enforce strict communication procedure/security.
6. Enforce strict camouflage and black-out regulations.
7. Limit movement of civilian personnel near facilities, supply dumps, assembly areas, and rehearsal areas.
8. Use local authorities to control civilian movement whenever possible.
9. Use local authorities and persons known to be friendly as sources of information on enemy activities.

REFERENCES:
1. FM 3-20.15 Tank Platoon
2. MCO 3500.27B W/ERRATUM Operational Risk Management
3. MCWP 2-6 Counterintelligence
4. MCWP 3-12 Marine Corps Tank Employment

1802-CMDC-2203: Employ Marine Corps Planning Process (MCPP)

EVALUATION-CODED: NO **SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL:** 12 months

BILLETS: Battalion Staff Officer, Company Commander, Company Executive Officer, Platoon Commander

GRADES: 2NDLT, 1STLT, CAPT, MAJ, LTCOL

INITIAL TRAINING SETTING: MOJT

CONDITION: Given a tank unit, supported unit, an operations order, specified threat, and references.

STANDARD: To provide the unit commander with viable courses of action and develop the operations order.

PERFORMANCE STEPS:
1. Conduct mission analysis.
2. Develop courses of action.
3. Wargame courses of action.
4. Determine course of action.
5. Develop appropriate staff products, operations plans, orders, annexes, and appendices.
6. Publish the order.

REFERENCES:
1. FM 3-20.15 Tank Platoon
2. MCO 3500.27B W/ERRATUM Operational Risk Management
3. MCWP 3-12 Marine Corps Tank Employment
4. MCWP 5-1 Marine Corps Planning Process

1802-CMDC-2204: Develop Scheme of Intelligence Support

EVALUATION-CODED: NO **SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL:** 12 months

BILLETS: Company Commander, Company Executive Officer, Platoon Commander

GRADES: 2NDLT, 1STLT, CAPT

INITIAL TRAINING SETTING: MOJT

CONDITION: Given a tank unit, supported unit, higher unit's operations order, tactical scenario, specified threat, and references.

STANDARD: Per the references.

PERFORMANCE STEPS:
1. Conduct terrain analysis to determine: obstacles, avenues of approach, key terrain to include decisive terrain, observation and fields of fire, cover and concealment, effects of the above on the scheme of maneuver, and effects on the above on the enemy's options.
2. Conduct analysis of weather to include: Beginning Morning Nautical Twilight (BMNT), Evening Ending Nautical Twilight (EENT), moon rise, moon set, percentage of illumination, temperature high and low, precipitation type and chance, temperature high and low, precipitation type and chance, wind speed and direction, fog and cloud ceiling, sea state to include tide and current, and effects on the above on operations.
3. Conduct threat analysis to include: order of battle (composition, disposition), capabilities especially armor, anti armor, and NBC, limitations especially ammunition and POL supply situation, actions over the last 24 hours, most likely courses of action, and most dangerous courses of action.
4. Develop Modified Combined Operations Overlay (MCOO): mobility corridors by type and known enemy positions.
5. Develop reconnaissance and security plan to include: establishing Named Areas of Interest (NAIs) and Targeted Areas of Interest (TAIs) based on enemy intentions and capabilities, assign intelligence assets (recon, UAV, etc.) to monitor each NAI and TAI, coordinate with fire support agencies to target each TAI, and establish security screen elements.
6. Establish Commander's Critical Information Requirements (CCRI).
7. Establish Essential Elements of Friendly Information (EEFI).

REFERENCES:
1. FM 3-20.15 Tank Platoon
2. MCO 3500.27B W/ERRATUM Operational Risk Management
3. MCRP 2-12A Intelligence Preparation of the Battlefield (IPB)
4. MCRP 2-25A Reconnaissance Reports Guide
5. MCWP 2-6 Counterintelligence
6. MCWP 3-12 Marine Corps Tank Employment

1802-CMDC-2205: Conduct Electronic Countermeasures

EVALUATION-CODED: NO **SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL:** 12 months

BILLETS: Company Commander, Company Executive Officer, Platoon Commander

GRADES: 2NDLT, 1STLT, CAPT

INITIAL TRAINING SETTING: MOJT

CONDITION: Given a tank unit, supported unit, an operations order, tactical scenario, specified threat, and references.

STANDARD: To defeat enemy electronic warfare measures.

PERFORMANCE STEPS:
1. Minimize electronic communications.
2. Employ wire communications when ever possible.
3. Employ encryption methods whenever possible.
4. Notify net control of detection of enemy use of friendly frequencies or procedures.
5. Employ countermeasures when enemy jamming occurs.
6. Employ countermeasure on the SINCGARS radios; make sure the FCTN SWITCH is not set to REM; then set the MODE SWITCH to SC, set the CHAN switch to MAN, CUE, or desired channel (1-6) to be loaded with offset, press FREQ, then ERF/OFST and then CHG/7, continue to press CHG/7 until "00" is displayed, and press FREQ key again to store the OFFSET.

REFERENCES:
1. FM 3-20.15 Tank Platoon
2. MCO 3500.27B W/ERRATUM Operational Risk Management
3. MCWP 3-12 Marine Corps Tank Employment
4. MCWP 6-22 Communications and Information Systems
5. MCWP 6-22A Multiservice Communications Procedures for the Single-Channel Radio (SINCGARS)

1802-CMDC-2206: Conduct Combat Reporting

EVALUATION-CODED: NO **SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL:** 12 months

BILLETS: Company Commander, Company Executive Officer, Platoon Commander

GRADES: 2NDLT, 1STLT, CAPT

INITIAL TRAINING SETTING: MOJT

CONDITION: Given a tank unit, supported unit, an operations order, tactical scenario, specified threat, and references.

STANDARD: Per the references.

PERFORMANCE STEPS:
1. Conduct reporting in accordance with unit SOP or the current operations order.

2. Report all required control measures.
3. Report friendly situation (SITREP) as required by unit SOP or current operations order.
4. Report enemy contact.
5. Report enemy jamming efforts (MIJI report).
6. Report enemy use of nuclear, biological, or chemical weapons (NBC report).
7. Report enemy use of artillery.
8. Report friendly logistical situation as required by unit SOP or current operations order (LOG SUM).
9. Report friendly personnel situation as required by unit SOP or current operations order (PERS SUM).
10. Report on enemy minefields encountered.
11. Report Enemy Prisoners of War (EPWs).
12. Report mass casualties.
13. Conduct MEDEVAC request.
14. Conduct maintenance rapid request.

REFERENCES:
1. FM 3-20.15 Tank Platoon
2. MCO 3500.27B W/ERRATUM Operational Risk Management
3. MCWP 3-12 Marine Corps Tank Employment

1802-CMDC-2207: Establish Combat Operations Center (COC)

EVALUATION-CODED: NO **SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL:** 12 months

BILLETS: Battalion Staff Officer, Company Commander

GRADES: CAPT, MAJ

INITIAL TRAINING SETTING: FORMAL

CONDITION: Given a tank battalion operations section (S-3) staff, supporting elements from the communications section (S-6), appropriate collateral materials, and references.

STANDARD: To direct and support the operations of the tank battalion.

PERFORMANCE STEPS:
1. Organize Combat Operation Center (COC) in accordance with unit SOP. Internal arrangement should allow for: status boards, overlays and situation maps, simultaneous monitoring and integration of maneuver, intelligence, and fire support assets, and briefing of primary staff and commanders.
2. Establish COC staffing with executive or primary staff, special staff, liaison personnel, and supporting personnel.
3. Organize personnel, equipment, and vehicles for 24 hour/all weather operations.
4. Determine location based on defensible position with good communications aspects.
5. Identify alternate COC site and route in the event that the COC must displace quickly.
6. Prepare plans for the establishment of alternate COC per unit SOP.
7. Ensure strict OPSEC/COMSEC during displacement.

8. Employ active and passive security measures to include: camouflage, COMSEC, vehicle and fighting positions, patrols, dispersion, and employ improved positions/dig in as time permits.
9. Establish traffic control measures to limit access and movement in the vicinity of the COC.
10. Establish remote antennae farm.
11. Establish unit journal.
12. Establish message handling procedures within the COC.
13. Establish and maintain unit status board.
14. Coordinate with Logistics Operation Center (LOC) as necessary.

REFERENCES:
1. FM 3-20.15 Tank Platoon
2. MCO 3500.27B W/ERRATUM Operational Risk Management
3. MCWP 3-12 Marine Corps Tank Employment

1802-CMDC-2208: Direct Functions as the Combat Operations Center (COC) Watch Officer

EVALUATION-CODED: NO **SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL:** 12 months

BILLETS: Battalion Staff Officer

GRADES: 2NDLT, 1STLT, CAPT, MAJ

INITIAL TRAINING SETTING: MOJT

CONDITION: Given a tank battalion's Combat Operations Center (COC), supported unit, an operations order, tactical scenario, specified threat, designated watch staff, appropriate collateral materials, and references.

STANDARD: To monitor and direct the operations of the tank battalion.

PERFORMANCE STEPS:
1. Receive thorough watch briefing from the outgoing watch officer.
2. Ensure that COC is set up to allow for command and control of current and future operations.
3. Ensure plan for alternate COC will meet requirements of tactical situation.
4. Develop plan for continuous staffing during shift.
5. Monitor reports and actions of subordinates.
6. Update current situation map.
7. Update information display.
8. Maintain journal.
9. Revise plan and issue orders as situation changes.
10. Complete plan for displacement.
11. Direct displacement.
12. Ensure SITREPs are sent to higher headquarters.
13. Conduct thorough watch briefing with the incoming watch officer.

REFERENCES:
1. FM 3-20.15 Tank Platoon
2. MCO 3500.27B W/ERRATUM Operational Risk Management
3. MCWP 3-12 Marine Corps Tank Employment

1802-CMDC-2209: Maintain TSEC/KY-57 Communications Security Equipment

EVALUATION-CODED: NO **SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL:** 12 months

BILLETS: Company Commander, Company Executive Officer, Platoon Commander

GRADES: 2NDLT, 1STLT, CAPT

INITIAL TRAINING SETTING: FORMAL

CONDITION: Given a tank with antennas installed, silicone compound, clean cloth, PM eraser, PM brush, water, and references.

STANDARD: So that the antennas are clean and functional.

PERFORMANCE STEPS:
1. Remove dust and loose dirt with clean, soft cloth.
2. Remove grease, fungus and ground-in dirt using a cloth dampened with trichlorethane.
3. Clean cable connectors with trichlorethane.
4. Contacts should be wiped with trichlorethane and cleaned with PM brush.
5. Inspect all interconnecting cables for cracks and breaks.
6. Inspect to ensure equipment is securely mounted.

REFERENCES:
1. MCO 3500.27B W/ERRATUM Operational Risk Management
2. TM 11-5810-256-OP-4 Operating Procedures for COMSECEQ TSEC/KY-57 in Tracked Vehicles
3. TM 11-5820-401-10-2 Operator's Manual (VRC-12)
4. TM 11-5820-890-10-1 Operator Manual for SINCGARS Ground Combat Net Radio
5. TM 9-2350-264-10-1 Operator's Manual, Operator Controls, PMCS, and Operation Under Usual Conditions, Volume 1 of 2, Tank, Combat, Full-Tracked: 120-MM Gun, M1A1 2350-01-087-1095 General Abrams
6. TM 9-2350-264-10-2 Operator's Manual, Unusual Conditions, Troubleshooting, and Maintenance, Volume 2 of 2, Tank, Combat, Full-Tracked: 120-MM, M1A1 2350-01-087-1095, General Abrams

---

1802-CMDC-2210: Install a Wire Communications Hot Loop

EVALUATION-CODED: NO **SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL:** 12 months

BILLETS: Company Executive Officer, Platoon Commander

GRADES: 2NDLT, 1STLT

INITIAL TRAINING SETTING: MOJT

CONDITION: Given two or more stationary M1A1 tanks and communication wire WD-1/TT.

STANDARD: So that communications between tanks can be made without emitting radio signals.

PERFORMANCE STEPS:
1. Ensure VEHICLE MASTER POWER switch is set to ON.
2. Turn on Indicator Control CD-82/VRC.
3. Place MAIN POWER switch on the amplifier to INT ONLY position.
4. RADIO TRANS switch may be set to any position, depending on the vehicle station with which communication is desired.
5. Route incoming wire through driver's hatch.
6. Split wire and strip insulation from last 1/2 inch.
7. Connect one wire end to each TEL/REMOTE POST on the Indicator Control CD-82/VRC.
8. Run connected wire to next tank to be connected in the same manner.
9. Conduct a communications check external to the tank to verify that the last loop is operational.

REFERENCES:
1. FM 24-20 Tactical Wire and Cable Techniques
2. FM 3-20.15 Tank Platoon
3. MCO 3500.27B W/ERRATUM Operational Risk Management
4. MCWP 3-12 Marine Corps Tank Employment
5. TM 08636A-14/1 USMC Technical Manual, Intercom Set AN/VIC-2(V)
6. TM 11-5280-890-10-1 Operator's Manual AN/PRC-19
7. TM 9-2350-264-10-1 Operator's Manual, Operator Controls, PMCS, and Operation Under Usual Conditions, Volume 1 of 2, Tank, Combat, Full-Tracked: 120-MM Gun, M1A1 2350-01-087-1095 General Abrams
8. TM 9-2350-264-10-2 Operator's Manual, Unusual Conditions, Troubleshooting, and Maintenance, Volume 2 of 2, Tank, Combat, Full-Tracked: 120-MM, M1A1 2350-01-087-1095, General Abrams

---

1802-CMDC-2211: Perform Duties of Battalion Training Officer

EVALUATION-CODED: NO **SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL:** 12 months

BILLETS: Battalion Staff Officer, Company Commander

GRADES: CAPT, MAJ

INITIAL TRAINING SETTING: FORMAL

CONDITION: Given a tank battalion's TEEP, training directives from the supported unit (division), Battalion Commander's guidance, and references.

STANDARD: To support the unit commander's guidance and supported unit's directives.

PERFORMANCE STEPS:
1. Develop battalion training directives.
2. Develop unit training schedule.
3. Conduct unit training.
4. Supervise unit training.
5. Evaluate MOS related training effectiveness.

REFERENCES:
1. FM 3-20.15 Tank Platoon
2. MCO 3500.27B W/ERRATUM Operational Risk Management

3. MCRP 3-0A Unit Training Management Guide
4. MCRP 3-0B How to Conduct Training
5. MCWP 3-12 Marine Corps Tank Employment
6. MCWP 5-1 Marine Corps Planning Process

1802-CMDC-2212: Develop Battalion Training Directives

EVALUATION-CODED: NO **SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL:** 12 months

BILLETS: Battalion Staff Officer, Company Commander

GRADES: CAPT, MAJ

INITIAL TRAINING SETTING: FORMAL

CONDITION: Given a tank battalion's TEEP, training directives from the supported unit (division), Battalion Commander's guidance, and references.

STANDARD: To support the unit commander's guidance and supported unit's directives.

PERFORMANCE STEPS:
1. Analyze guidance from higher headquarters.
2. Extract training requirements necessary for unit readiness.
3. Review current training directives.
4. Make any changes necessary to increase training efficiency and improve unit readiness.
5. Submit for approval if required.
6. Publish training directives when finalized and approved.

REFERENCES:
1. FM 3-20.12 Tank Gunnery
2. FM 3-90.2 Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force
3. MCO 3500.27B W/ERRATUM Operational Risk Management
4. MCRP 3-0A Unit Training Management Guide
5. MCRP 3-0B How to Conduct Training
6. MCWP 3-12 Marine Corps Tank Employment
7. MCWP 5-1 Marine Corps Planning Process

1802-VOPS-2301: Operate External Auxiliary Power Unit (EAPU)

EVALUATION-CODED: NO **SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL:** 12 months

BILLETS: Company Commander, Company Executive Officer, Platoon Commander

GRADES: 2NDLT, 1STLT, CAPT

INITIAL TRAINING SETTING: MOJT

CONDITION: Given an M1A1 tank equipped with an EAPU, a crew and references.

STANDARD: To provide power to vehicle systems.

PERFORMANCE STEPS:
1. Open control panel access door.
2. Move EAPU START/ON/STOP switch to START and release.
3. Let EAPU engine run for about 2 minutes, have driver turn on vehicle master power, and set OUTPUT POWER ON/OFF switch to ON.
4. Close control panel access door.
5. When auxiliary power is no longer needed, shut down EAPU.
6. Star using low battery procedures when appropriate.
7. Start EAPU using manual start procedures when appropriate.
8. Start EAPU using remote start procedures when appropriate.
9. Start EAPU using slave start procedures when appropriate.

REFERENCES:
1. MCO 3500.27B W/ERRATUM Operational Risk Management
2. TM 9-2350-264-10-1 Operator's Manual, Operator Controls, PMCS, and Operation Under Usual Conditions, Volume 1 of 2, Tank, Combat, Full-Tracked: 120-MM Gun, M1A1 2350-01-087-1095 General Abrams
3. TM 9-2350-264-10-2 Operator's Manual, Unusual Conditions, Troubleshooting, and Maintenance, Volume 2 of 2, Tank, Combat, Full-Tracked: 120-MM, M1A1 2350-01-087-1095, General Abrams

---

1802-VOPS-2302: Operate Missile Countermeasure Device (MCD)

EVALUATION-CODED: NO **SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL:** 12 months

BILLETS: Company Commander, Company Executive Officer, Platoon Commander

GRADES: 2NDLT, 1STLT, CAPT

INITIAL TRAINING SETTING: MOJT

CONDITION: Given an M1A1 tank with crew, a tactical scenario, training area suitable for employment of the MCD, and references.

STANDARD: To defeat threat missiles.

PERFORMANCE STEPS:
1. Remove protective cover and stow beside MCD using straps.
2. Make sure turret power is ON.
3. Ensure MCD CONTROL UTILITY OUTLET indicator lamp on EAPU remote control panel is lit; if lamp does not light, notify unit maintenance.
4. When MCD is no longer needed, shut the system down.

REFERENCES:
1. FM 3-20.15 Tank Platoon
2. MCO 3500.27B W/ERRATUM Operational Risk Management
3. MCWP 3-12 Marine Corps Tank Employment
4. TM 9-2350-264-10-1 Operator's Manual, Operator Controls, PMCS, and Operation Under Usual Conditions, Volume 1 of 2, Tank, Combat, Full-Tracked: 120-MM Gun, M1A1 2350-01-087-1095 General Abrams
5. TM 9-2350-264-10-2 Operator's Manual, Unusual Conditions, Troubleshooting, and Maintenance, Volume 2 of 2, Tank, Combat, Full-Tracked: 120-MM, M1A1 2350-01-087-1095, General Abrams

---

1802-VOPS-2303: Inspect Mine Clearing Blade on M1A1 Tank

EVALUATION-CODED: NO **SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL:** 12 months

BILLETS: Platoon Commander

GRADES: 2NDLT

INITIAL TRAINING SETTING: MOJT

CONDITION: Given an M1A1 tank with mine clearing blade and the reference.

STANDARD: To identify maintenance deficiencies and correct with authorized maintenance, and report any deficiencies that cannot be corrected to organizational maintenance.

PERFORMANCE STEPS:
1. Inspect main wiring harness.
2. Inspect lifting straps.
3. Inspect travel locks.
4. Inspect moldboards.
5. Inspect control box.
6. Check for loose or missing hardware.
7. Report deficiencies to organizational maintenance.

REFERENCES:
1. MCO 3500.27B W/ERRATUM Operational Risk Management
2. TM 5-2590-509-10 Operator's Manual, Mine Clearing Blade for M1, IPM1, or M1A1 Abrams Tank

---

1802-VOPS-2304: Operate Mine Clearing Blade on M1A1 Tank

EVALUATION-CODED: NO **SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL:** 12 months

BILLETS: Platoon Commander

GRADES: 2NDLT

INITIAL TRAINING SETTING: MOJT

CONDITION: Given an M1A1 tank with mine clearing blade, crew, simulated minefield, and references.

STANDARD: So that a mine free lane is established through the minefield.

PERFORMANCE STEPS:
1. Conduct pre-operational checks.
2. Prepare mine clearing blade for operation.
3. Operate mine clearing blade.
4. Conduct post-operational checks.

REFERENCES:
1. FM 3-20.15 Tank Platoon
2. MCO 3500.27B W/ERRATUM Operational Risk Management

3. MCWP 3-12 Marine Corps Tank Employment
4. TM 5-2590-509-10 Operator's Manual, Mine Clearing Blade for M1, IPM1, or M1A1 Abrams Tank

---

1802-CBTS-2401: Adjust Naval Gunfire (NGF)

EVALUATION-CODED: NO **SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL:** 12 months

BILLETS: Company Commander, Company Executive Officer, Platoon Commander

GRADES: 2NDLT, 1STLT, CAPT

INITIAL TRAINING SETTING: MOJT

CONDITION: Given a map of the battle space, scenario in which Naval Gunfire (NGF) spot teams and HF communications are not located with the unit, equipment organic to a Forward Observer (FO) team, communications with the Fire Support Coordination Center (FSCC), supporting ship, and references.

STANDARD: So the Call For Fire (CFF) is transmitted within 60 seconds of target identification and subsequent corrections are sent within 15 seconds of round impact (25 seconds if observer is moving).

PERFORMANCE STEPS:
1. Determine if the target is suitable for Naval Gunfire (NGF).
2. Determine target location within +/- 200 meters of the actual target location.
3. Prepare and transmit the complete Call For Fire (CFF) to either the artillery liaison officer or the NGLO at the Fire Support Coordination Center (FSCC) via the COF net.
4. Transmit subsequent corrections.
5. Engage target using naval gunfire terms and techniques.
6. Initiate Fire For Effect (FFE) when a 200 meter bracket is split for an area target and a 100 meter bracket for a point target.
7. Transmit End Of Mission (EOM) and surveillance.

REFERENCES:
1. ATP-4(D) Allied Spotting Procedures for Naval Gunfire Support
2. FM 3-20.15 Tank Platoon
3. MCO 3500.27B W/ERRATUM Operational Risk Management
4. MCWP 3-12 Marine Corps Tank Employment
5. MCWP 3-16 Fire Support Coordination
6. MCWP 3-16.2 Procedures for the Marine Corps Fire Support
7. MCWP 3-16.6 Supporting Arms Observer, Spotting and Controlling
8. MCWP 3-42.1 Fire Support in MAGTF Operations

1802-CBTS-2402: Direct a Close Air Support (CAS)

EVALUATION-CODED: NO **SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL:** 12 months

BILLETS: Company Commander, Company Executive Officer, Platoon Commander

GRADES: 2NDLT, 1STLT, CAPT

INITIAL TRAINING SETTING: MOJT

CONDITION: Given a scenario involving close air support with no Forward Air Controller (FAC), equipment organic to a Forward Observer (FO) team, attack aircraft with ordnance, an information sheet containing aircraft call sign, mission number, type ordnance load, enemy and friendly situation, attack restrictions, radio frequency, and references.

STANDARD: To suppress, neutralize, or destroy enemy targets.

PERFORMANCE STEPS:
1. Consider the air threat situation.
2. Obtain the commander's approval before sending the Close Air Support (CAS) request.
3. Send immediate requests to the Fire Support Coordination Center (FSCC).
4. Transmit immediate Close Air Support (CAS) requests within 2 minutes of target identification.
5. Plan for and implement Suppression of Enemy Air Defenses (SEAD) as required based on the assessment of the air threat.
6. Transmit the 9 line brief to the pilot when the aircraft reaches the CP.
7. Transmit the Time To Target (TTT) to the pilot after the 9 line brief.
8. Mark the target using artillery, mortars, or Naval Gunfire (NGF); the mark should be within 300 meters of the target and 30 seconds before Time To Target (TTT).
9. Give the pilot final adjustment, in meters, from the marking round (reference point, to the target).
10. Ensure attack aircraft is lined up on proper target before, "CLEARING HOT".
11. Adjust from previous aircraft hits to target giving reference to cardinal headings for follow-on aircraft.
12. Transmit effects of the strike to the aircraft and Fire Support Coordination Center (FSCC), as appropriate.

REFERENCES:
1. FM 3-20.15 Tank Platoon
2. MCO 3500.27B W/ERRATUM Operational Risk Management
3. MCWP 3-12 Marine Corps Tank Employment
4. MCWP 3-16 Fire Support Coordination
5. MCWP 3-16.6 Supporting Arms Observer, Spotting and Controlling
6. MCWP 3-22.2 Suppression of Enemy Air Defenses (SEAD)
7. MCWP 3-23.1 Close Air Support

1802-CBTS-2403: Direct the Operations of the Forward Observer (FO) Team

EVALUATION-CODED: NO **SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL:** 12 months

BILLETS: Company Commander, Company Executive Officer, Platoon Commander

GRADES: 2NDLT, 1STLT, CAPT

INITIAL TRAINING SETTING: MOJT

CONDITION: Given a Forward Observer (FO) team with appropriate equipment, tactical scenario, essential fire support tasks, and references.

STANDARD: To support the ground scheme of maneuver.

PERFORMANCE STEPS:
1. Define the command and control relationship between the Forward Observer (FO) team and the supported maneuver commander.
2. Supervise a Forward Observer (FO) team in various type maneuver organizations (Infantry Company, Mechanized Infantry Company, Tank Company, LAR Company, etc.).
3. Explain five tasks accomplished by the Forward Observer (FO) team.
4. Employ organic equipment authorized to Forward Observer (FO) teams to include: map, OF Fan, terrain sketch, visibility diagram, M2 compass, binoculars, AN/GVS-5A, AN/PRC-119, AN/PAQ-3 MULE, PLGR, and Observer Digital Terminal.
5. Brief the maneuver commander on capabilities of the Forward Observer (FO) team.
6. Supervise the selection and occupation of an OP.

REFERENCES:
1. FM 3-20.15 Tank Platoon
2. MCO 3500.27B W/ERRATUM Operational Risk Management
3. MCWP 3-12 Marine Corps Tank Employment
4. MCWP 3-16 Fire Support Coordination
5. MCWP 3-16.2 Procedures for the Marine Corps Fire Support
6. MCWP 3-16.6 Supporting Arms Observer, Spotting and Controlling

---

1802-CBTS-2404: Conduct Operations in Nuclear Contaminated Environment

EVALUATION-CODED: NO **SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL:** 12 months

BILLETS: Company Commander, Company Executive Officer, Platoon Commander

GRADES: 2NDLT, 1STLT, CAPT

INITIAL TRAINING SETTING: MOJT

CONDITION: Given a tank unit, supported unit, an operations order, supporting landing plan, tactical scenario involving nuclear contamination, specific threat, specific amphibious shipping platform, an open ocean training area capable of supporting amphibious operations, beach suitable for amphibious landings, an inland training area suitable for mechanized operations, and references.

STANDARD: To support higher commander's intent.

PERFORMANCE STEPS:
1. Supervise preparations for operations in nuclear contaminated environment.
2. Establish Mission Oriented Protective Posture (MOPP) status for unit for operations in a nuclear contaminated environment in accordance with intelligence information and unit SOP.
3. Establish and publish radiation dose limits for unit in accordance with instruction from higher and unit SOP.
4. Establish hasty and deliberate decontamination procedures for operations in a nuclear contaminated environment in accordance with unit SOP.
5. Establish monitor/survey teams and procedures for operations in a nuclear

contaminated environment in accordance with unit SOP.
6. Conduct amphibious operations in a nuclear contaminated environment.
7. Conduct offensive operations in a nuclear contaminated environment.
8. Conduct defensive operations in nuclear contaminated environment.

REFERENCES:
1. FM 3-100 NBC Operations
2. FM 3-20.15 Tank Platoon
3. FM 3-3 Chemical and Biological Contamination Avoidance
4. MCO 3500.27B W/ERRATUM Operational Risk Management
5. MCRP 3-37.2B Nuclear Contamination Avoidance
6. MCRP 3-37A NBC Field Handbook
7. MCWP 3-12 Marine Corps Tank Employment
8. MCWP 3-37 MAGTF Nuclear, Biological, and Chemical Defense Operations
9. MCWP 3-37.2 NBC Protection
10. MCWP 3-37.3 NBC Decontamination
11. MCWP 3-37.4 NBC Reconnaissance

1802-CBTS-2405: Ensure Preparation for a Nuclear Attack

EVALUATION-CODED: NO **SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL:** 12 months

BILLETS: Company Commander, Company Executive Officer, Platoon Commander

GRADES: 2NDLT, 1STLT, CAPT

INITIAL TRAINING SETTING: MOJT

CONDITION: Given a tank unit, supported unit, an operations order, tactical scenario involving a warning of imminent nuclear attack, specific threat, training area suitable for mechanized operations, and references.

STANDARD: So the unit survives the attack to the extent possible and is prepared for follow on operations.

PERFORMANCE STEPS:
1. Identify backup command and control procedures.
2. Alert any other units in the area.
3. Remove any food, water, ammunition, etc. stored outside the vehicles and place inside vehicles or other hardened location.
4. Turn off any electronic equipment inside vehicles or other hardened location.
5. Direct all crews to assume designated MOPP level.
6. Position turrets directly away form blast direction, ensure brakes are unlocked and transmissions are in neutral.
7. Ensure all hatches and outside accesses are closed, dogged, and sealed as best as possible.
8. If situation permits, leave the area of imminent blast as quickly as possible. Otherwise continue mission.
9. If situation will not permit leaving area, try to shield the vehicles in rock outcroppings, hillside areas, etc.
10. Ensure the front of the vehicle points toward the expected blast.
11. Position turret directly away form the direction of the expected blast.
12. Lock turret and CWS.

REFERENCES:
1. FM 3-100 NBC Operations
2. FM 3-20.15 Tank Platoon
3. FM 3-3 Chemical and Biological Contamination Avoidance
4. MCO 3500.27B W/ERRATUM Operational Risk Management
5. MCRP 3-37.1A NBC Vulnerability Analysis/Chemical Hazard Assessment Guide
6. MCRP 3-37.2B Nuclear Contamination Avoidance
7. MCRP 3-37A NBC Field Handbook
8. MCWP 3-12 Marine Corps Tank Employment
9. MCWP 3-37 MAGTF Nuclear, Biological, and Chemical Defense Operations
10. MCWP 3-37.2 NBC Protection
11. MCWP 3-37.3 NBC Decontamination

1802-CBTS-2406: Supervise Monitor/Survey Team Activities Following a Nuclear Attack

EVALUATION-CODED: NO **SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL:** 12 months

BILLETS: Company Commander, Company Executive Officer, Platoon Commander

GRADES: 2NDLT, 1STLT, CAPT

INITIAL TRAINING SETTING: MOJT

CONDITION: Given a tank unit, trained monitor/survey teams with proper equipment, supported unit, an operations order, tactical scenario involving a nuclear attack, specific threat, training area suitable for mechanized operations, and references.

STANDARD: To assess unit condition, determine level of contamination, and prepare unit for follow on missions.

PERFORMANCE STEPS:
1. Supervise detection operations to determine the type and extent of contamination.
2. Coordinate activities to minimize contamination.
3. Supervise unmasking.
4. Supervise basic personnel decontamination.
5. Supervise partial unit decontamination.
6. Supervise decontamination of individual equipment.
7. Supervise decontamination of unit equipment, including: crew served weapons and vehicles, ammunition, optical instruments, communications equipment, food and water.

REFERENCES:
1. FM 3-100 NBC Operations
2. FM 3-20.15 Tank Platoon
3. FM 3-3 Chemical and Biological Contamination Avoidance
4. MCO 3500.27B W/ERRATUM Operational Risk Management
5. MCRP 3-37.2B Nuclear Contamination Avoidance
6. MCRP 3-37A NBC Field Handbook
7. MCWP 3-12 Marine Corps Tank Employment
8. MCWP 3-37 MAGTF Nuclear, Biological, and Chemical Defense Operations
9. MCWP 3-37.2 NBC Protection

10. MCWP 3-37.3 NBC Decontamination
11. MCWP 3-37.4 NBC Reconnaissance

1802-CBTS-2407: Direct Crossing of a Nuclear Contaminated Area

EVALUATION-CODED: NO **SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL:** 12 months

BILLETS: Company Commander, Company Executive Officer, Platoon Commander

GRADES: 2NDLT, 1STLT, CAPT

INITIAL TRAINING SETTING: MOJT

CONDITION: Given a tank unit with appropriate monitor survey equipment, supported unit, an operations order directing crossing a nuclear contaminated area, tactical scenario in involving the use of enemy nuclear weapons, specific threat, training area suitable for mechanized operations, and references.

STANDARD: So it will result in the least possible contamination to personnel and equipment.

PERFORMANCE STEPS:
1. Review latest NBC 5 report and/or contamination overlay.
2. Determine the best route for the unit's movement.
3. Provide advance party or reconnaissance team with dose and dose rate limits prior to dispatching them.
4. Prepare vehicles for movement: provide additional shielding if possible, remove all equipment from outside of vehicles and stow it inside, close plenums while crossing contaminated area if weather conditions allow, turn off personnel compartment ventilation fan and close exhaust, close turret vent fan, and close all hatches.
5. Prepare personnel for movement: assume MOPP 4, designate monitor survey teams if they are not already established, and arrange for hydration of personnel prior to and during movement.
6. Guide unit across contaminated area while employing contamination avoidance techniques.
7. Ensure that operational exposure guidance is not exceeded.
8. Determine level of personnel and equipment contamination after clearing contaminated area (using available personnel and monitoring equipment).
9. Establish decontamination priorities and conduct hasty decontamination.
10. Record total dose information and report to higher headquarters.

REFERENCES:
1. FM 3-100 NBC Operations
2. FM 3-20.15 Tank Platoon
3. FM 3-3 Chemical and Biological Contamination Avoidance
4. MCO 3500.27B W/ERRATUM Operational Risk Management
5. MCRP 3-37.2B Nuclear Contamination Avoidance
6. MCRP 3-37A NBC Field Handbook
7. MCWP 3-12 Marine Corps Tank Employment
8. MCWP 3-37 MAGTF Nuclear, Biological, and Chemical Defense Operations
9. MCWP 3-37.2 NBC Protection
10. MCWP 3-37.3 NBC Decontamination

11. MCWP 3-37.4 NBC Reconnaissance

1802-CBTS-2408: Supervise Marking of Nuclear Contaminated Area

EVALUATION-CODED: NO **SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL:** 12 months

BILLETS: Company Commander, Company Executive Officer, Platoon Commander

GRADES: 2NDLT, 1STLT, CAPT

INITIAL TRAINING SETTING: MOJT

CONDITION: Given a tank unit, supported unit, an operations order, tactical scenario involving a nuclear contaminated area, specific threat, training area suitable for mechanized operations, and references.

STANDARD: To minimize risk of contamination to friendly units.

PERFORMANCE STEPS:
1. Ensure that boundaries of contaminated area are identified.
2. Ensure that boundaries are marked with NATO standard markers facing out from contaminated area.
3. Ensure that area is marked with local language markings as required by higher headquarters.
4. Ensure that contaminated area is recorded and reported to higher headquarters.

REFERENCES:
1. FM 3-100 NBC Operations
2. FM 3-20.15 Tank Platoon
3. FM 3-3 Chemical and Biological Contamination Avoidance
4. MCO 3500.27B W/ERRATUM Operational Risk Management
5. MCRP 3-37.2B Nuclear Contamination Avoidance
6. MCRP 3-37A NBC Field Handbook
7. MCWP 3-12 Marine Corps Tank Employment
8. MCWP 3-37 MAGTF Nuclear, Biological, and Chemical Defense Operations
9. MCWP 3-37.2 NBC Protection
10. MCWP 3-37.3 NBC Decontamination
11. MCWP 3-37.4 NBC Reconnaissance

1802-CBTS-2409: Ensure Hasty Decontamination of Unit in Nuclear Contaminated Environment

EVALUATION-CODED: NO **SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL:** 12 months

BILLETS: Company Commander, Company Executive Officer, Platoon Commander

GRADES: 2NDLT, 1STLT, CAPT

INITIAL TRAINING SETTING: MOJT

CONDITION: Given a tank unit, appropriate decontamination equipment, a supported unit, an operations order, tactical scenario involving a nuclear

attack, specific threat, training area suitable for mechanized operations, and references.

STANDARD: To prepare for follow on missions in nuclear contaminated environment.

PERFORMANCE STEPS:

1. Coordinate selection of hasty decontamination site with higher headquarters.
2. Supervise preparation of hasty decontamination site.
3. Supervise operations of hasty decontamination site.
4. Ensure personnel remove gross contamination from individual protective over garments, combat gear, and weapons with sticks or other improvised devices.
5. Supervise personnel in decontaminating individual protective gloves, hood, over boots, combat gear and weapon.
6. Ensure decontaminated weapons are washed with water, dried, and lubricated.
7. Ensure contaminated protective covers covering essential equipment such as ammunition and POL are removed and decontaminated or disposed.
8. Ensure assigned operators/crew members decontaminate their vehicles and/or crew served weapons.
9. Reduce MOPP if decontamination efforts are adequate as determined by radiation detector kits.
10. Close and mark hasty decontamination site.

REFERENCES:

1. FM 3-100 NBC Operations
2. FM 3-20.15 Tank Platoon
3. FM 3-3 Chemical and Biological Contamination Avoidance
4. MCO 3500.27B W/ERRATUM Operational Risk Management
5. MCRP 3-37.2B Nuclear Contamination Avoidance
6. MCRP 3-37A NBC Field Handbook
7. MCWP 3-12 Marine Corps Tank Employment
8. MCWP 3-37 MAGTF Nuclear, Biological, and Chemical Defense Operations
9. MCWP 3-37.2 NBC Protection
10. MCWP 3-37.3 NBC Decontamination
11. MCWP 3-37.4 NBC Reconnaissance

1802-CBTS-2410: Ensure Deliberate Decontamination of Unit in Nuclear Contaminated Environment

EVALUATION-CODED: NO **SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL:** 12 months

BILLETS: Company Commander

GRADES: CAPT

INITIAL TRAINING SETTING: MOJT

CONDITION: Given a tank unit with appropriate monitor/survey equipment, deliberate decontamination team with equipment to support personnel and equipment decontamination, supported unit, an operations order, tactical scenario involving nuclear contamination, specific threat, training area

suitable for mechanized and decontamination operations, and references.

STANDARD: So that equipment and personnel are decontaminated to a condition where the unit is able to resume the mission.

PERFORMANCE STEPS:
1. Coordinate with decontamination team leader as to time of arrival, supplies, and personnel support to be furnished by the contaminated unit, and estimated time of completion.
2. Request route clearance to Personnel Decontamination Station (PDS) and Equipment Decontamination Station (EDS) assembly area.
3. Attach advance party to PDS/EDS.
4. Direct unit movement of main body to PDS/EDS and organize for decontamination processing.
5. Ensure that vehicles are processed through the EDS in accordance to the type and level of contamination.
6. Ensure equipment is monitored for residual contamination.
7. Ensure personnel are processed through the various PDS.
8. Reorganize unit after decontamination is complete in a clean area up wind of residual contamination.
9. Prepare for resumption of mission.

REFERENCES:
1. FM 3-100 NBC Operations
2. FM 3-20.15 Tank Platoon
3. FM 3-3 Chemical and Biological Contamination Avoidance
4. MCO 3500.27B W/ERRATUM Operational Risk Management
5. MCRP 3-37.2B Nuclear Contamination Avoidance
6. MCRP 3-37A NBC Field Handbook
7. MCWP 3-12 Marine Corps Tank Employment
8. MCWP 3-37 MAGTF Nuclear, Biological, and Chemical Defense Operations
9. MCWP 3-37.2 NBC Protection
10. MCWP 3-37.3 NBC Decontamination
11. MCWP 3-37.4 NBC Reconnaissance

1802-CBTS-2411: Conduct Operations in Chemical/Biological Contaminated Environment

EVALUATION-CODED: NO **SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL:** 12 months

BILLETS: Company Commander, Company Executive Officer, Platoon Commander

GRADES: 2NDLT, 1STLT, CAPT

INITIAL TRAINING SETTING: MOJT

CONDITION: Given a tank unit, supported unit, an operations order, supporting landing plan, tactical scenario involving chemical or biological contamination, specific threat, specific amphibious shipping platform, an open ocean training area capable of supporting amphibious operations, beach suitable for amphibious landings, an inland training area suitable for mechanized operations, and references.

STANDARD: In support of the operations order and commander's intent.

PERFORMANCE STEPS:
1. Supervise preparations for operations in chemical/biological contaminated environment.
2. Establish Mission Oriented Protective Posture (MOPP) status for unit for operations in a chemical/biological contaminated environment in accordance with intelligence information and unit SOP.
3. Establish and publish exposure limits for unit in accordance with instruction from higher and unit SOP.
4. Establish hasty and deliberate decontamination procedures for operations in a chemical/biological contaminated environment in accordance with unit SOP.
5. Establish monitor/survey teams and procedures for operations in a chemical/biological contaminated environment in accordance with unit SOP.
6. Conduct amphibious operations in chemical/biological contaminated environment.
7. Conduct offensive operations in chemical/biological contaminated environment.
8. Conduct defensive operations in chemical/biological contaminated environment.

REFERENCES:
1. FM 3-100 NBC Operations
2. FM 3-20.15 Tank Platoon
3. FM 3-3 Chemical and Biological Contamination Avoidance
4. MCO 3500.27B W/ERRATUM Operational Risk Management
5. MCRP 3-37.2B Nuclear Contamination Avoidance
6. MCRP 3-37A NBC Field Handbook
7. MCWP 3-12 Marine Corps Tank Employment
8. MCWP 3-37 MAGTF Nuclear, Biological, and Chemical Defense Operations
9. MCWP 3-37.2 NBC Protection
10. MCWP 3-37.3 NBC Decontamination
11. MCWP 3-37.4 NBC Reconnaissance

1802-CBTS-2412: Supervise Preparation for a Chemical/Biological Attack

EVALUATION-CODED: NO **SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL:** 12 months

BILLETS: Company Commander, Company Executive Officer, Platoon Commander

GRADES: 2NDLT, 1STLT, CAPT

INITIAL TRAINING SETTING: MOJT

CONDITION: Given a tank unit, supported unit, an operations order, tactical scenario involving warning of imminent chemical/biological attack, specific threat including non-persistent chemical agents, training area, and references.

STANDARD: So that unit survives NBC attack to the extent possible and is prepared for follow on operations.

PERFORMANCE STEPS:
1. Identify backup command and control procedures.
2. Alert other units in the area.

3. Remove any food, water, ammunition, etc. stored outside the vehicles and place inside vehicles or other hardened areas.
4. Direct all personnel to assume designated MOPP level.
5. Ensure all hatches and outside accesses are closed, dogged, and sealed as best as possible.

REFERENCES:
1. FM 3-100 NBC Operations
2. FM 3-20.15 Tank Platoon
3. FM 3-3 Chemical and Biological Contamination Avoidance
4. MCO 3500.27B W/ERRATUM Operational Risk Management
5. MCRP 3-37.2A Chemical and Biological Contamination Avoidance
6. MCRP 3-37.2B Nuclear Contamination Avoidance
7. MCRP 3-37A NBC Field Handbook
8. MCRP 4-11.1A Treatment of Chemical Agent Casualties and Conventional Military Chemical Agents
9. MCRP 4-11.1C Treatment of Biological Warfare Agent Casualties
10. MCWP 3-12 Marine Corps Tank Employment
11. MCWP 3-37 MAGTF Nuclear, Biological, and Chemical Defense Operations
12. MCWP 3-37.2 NBC Protection
13. MCWP 3-37.3 NBC Decontamination
14. MCWP 3-37.4 NBC Reconnaissance

1802-CBTS-2413: Supervise Monitor/Survey Team Activities Following a Chemical/Biological Attack

EVALUATION-CODED: NO **SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL:** 12 months

BILLETS: Company Commander

GRADES: CAPT

INITIAL TRAINING SETTING: MOJT

CONDITION: Given a tank unit, trained monitor/survey teams with proper equipment, supported unit, an operations order, tactical scenario involving a chemical/biological attack, specific threat, training area suitable for mechanized operations, and references.

STANDARD: To assess unit condition, determine level of contamination, and prepare unit for follow on missions.

PERFORMANCE STEPS:
1. Supervise detection operations to determine the type and extent of contamination.
2. Coordinate activities to minimize contamination.
3. Supervise unmasking.
4. Supervise basic personnel decontamination.
5. Supervise partial unit decontamination.
6. Supervise decontamination of individual equipment.
7. Supervise decontamination of unit equipment, including: crew served weapons and vehicles, ammunition, optical instruments, communications equipment, food, and water.

REFERENCES:

1. FM 3-100 NBC Operations
2. FM 3-20.15 Tank Platoon
3. FM 3-3 Chemical and Biological Contamination Avoidance
4. MCO 3500.27B W/ERRATUM Operational Risk Management
5. MCRP 3-37.2A Chemical and Biological Contamination Avoidance
6. MCRP 3-37.2B Nuclear Contamination Avoidance
7. MCRP 3-37A NBC Field Handbook
8. MCWP 3-12 Marine Corps Tank Employment
9. MCWP 3-37 MAGTF Nuclear, Biological, and Chemical Defense Operations
10. MCWP 3-37.2 NBC Protection
11. MCWP 3-37.3 NBC Decontamination
12. MCWP 3-37.4 NBC Reconnaissance

1802-CBTS-2414: Direct Crossing of a Chemical/Biological Contaminated Area

EVALUATION-CODED: NO **SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL:** 12 months

BILLETS: Company Commander, Company Executive Officer, Platoon Commander

GRADES: 2NDLT, 1STLT, CAPT

INITIAL TRAINING SETTING: MOJT

CONDITION: Given a tank unit with appropriate monitor survey equipment, supported unit, an operations order directing crossing a chemical/biological contaminated area, tactical scenario involving the use of enemy chemical/biological weapons, specific threat, training area suitable for mechanized operations, and references.

STANDARD: So it will result in the least possible contamination to personnel and equipment.

PERFORMANCE STEPS:

1. Review latest NBC 5 report and/or contamination overlay.
2. Determine the best route for the unit's movement.
3. Provide advance party or reconnaissance team with exposure limits prior to dispatching them.
4. Prepare vehicles for movement: provide additional shielding if possible, remove all equipment from outside of vehicles and stow it inside, close plenums while crossing contaminated area if weather conditions allow, turn off personnel compartment ventilation fan and close exhaust, close turret vent fan, and close all hatches.
5. Prepare personnel for movement: assume MOPP 4, designate monitor survey teams if they are not already established, and arrange for hydration of personnel prior to and during movement.
6. Guide unit across contaminated area while employing contamination avoidance techniques.
7. Ensure that operational exposure guidance is not exceeded.
8. Determine level of personnel and equipment contamination after clearing contaminated area (using available personnel and monitoring equipment).
9. Establish decontamination priorities and conduct hasty decontamination.
10. Record exposure information and report to higher headquarters.

REFERENCES:
1. FM 3-100 NBC Operations
2. FM 3-20.15 Tank Platoon
3. FM 3-3 Chemical and Biological Contamination Avoidance
4. MCO 3500.27B W/ERRATUM Operational Risk Management
5. MCRP 3-37.2B Nuclear Contamination Avoidance
6. MCRP 3-37A NBC Field Handbook
7. MCWP 3-12 Marine Corps Tank Employment
8. MCWP 3-37 MAGTF Nuclear, Biological, and Chemical Defense Operations
9. MCWP 3-37.2 NBC Protection
10. MCWP 3-37.3 NBC Decontamination
11. MCWP 3-37.4 NBC Reconnaissance

1802-CBTS-2415: Supervise Marking of Chemical/Biological Contaminated Area

EVALUATION-CODED: NO **SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL:** 12 months

BILLETS: Company Commander, Company Executive Officer, Platoon Commander

GRADES: 2NDLT, 1STLT, CAPT

INITIAL TRAINING SETTING: MOJT

CONDITION: Given a tank unit, supported unit, an operations order, tactical scenario involving a chemical/biological agent contaminated area, specific threat, training area suitable for mechanized operations, and references.

STANDARD: To minimize risk of contamination to friendly units.

PERFORMANCE STEPS:
1. Ensure that boundaries of contaminated area are identified.
2. Ensure that boundaries are marked with NATO standard markers facing out from contaminated area.
3. Ensure that area is marked with local language markings as required by higher headquarters.
4. Ensure that contaminated area is recorded and reported to higher headquarters.

REFERENCES:
1. FM 3-100 NBC Operations
2. FM 3-20.15 Tank Platoon
3. FM 3-3 Chemical and Biological Contamination Avoidance
4. MCO 3500.27B W/ERRATUM Operational Risk Management
5. MCRP 3-37.2B Nuclear Contamination Avoidance
6. MCRP 3-37A NBC Field Handbook
7. MCWP 3-12 Marine Corps Tank Employment
8. MCWP 3-37 MAGTF Nuclear, Biological, and Chemical Defense Operations
9. MCWP 3-37.2 NBC Protection
10. MCWP 3-37.3 NBC Decontamination
11. MCWP 3-37.4 NBC Reconnaissance

1802-CBTS-2416: Ensure Hasty Decontamination of Unit in Chemical/Biological Contaminated Environment

EVALUATION-CODED: NO **SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL:** 12 months

BILLETS: Company Commander, Company Executive Officer, Platoon Commander

GRADES: 2NDLT, 1STLT, CAPT

INITIAL TRAINING SETTING: MOJT

CONDITION: Given a tank unit, appropriate decontamination equipment, supported unit, an operations order, tactical scenario involving a chemical/biological attack, specific threat, training area suitable for mechanized operations, and references.

STANDARD: To prepare unit for follow on missions in chemical/biological contaminated environment.

PERFORMANCE STEPS:
1. Coordinate selection of hasty decontamination site with higher headquarters.
2. Supervise preparation of hasty decontamination site.
3. Supervise operations of hasty decontamination site.
4. Ensure personnel remove gross contamination from individual protective over garments, combat gear, and weapons with sticks or other improvised devices.
5. Supervise personnel in decontaminating individual protective gloves, hood, over boots, combat gear and weapon.
6. Ensure decontaminated weapons are washed with water, dried, and lubricated.
7. Ensure contaminated protective covers covering essential equipment such as ammunition and POL are removed and decontaminated or disposed.
8. Ensure assigned operators/crew members decontaminate their vehicles and/or crew served weapons.
9. Reduce MOPP if decontamination efforts are adequate as determined by radiation detector kits.
10. Close and mark hasty decontamination site.

REFERENCES:
1. FM 3-100 NBC Operations
2. FM 3-20.15 Tank Platoon
3. FM 3-3 Chemical and Biological Contamination Avoidance
4. MCO 3500.27B W/ERRATUM Operational Risk Management
5. MCRP 3-37.2B Nuclear Contamination Avoidance
6. MCRP 3-37A NBC Field Handbook
7. MCWP 3-12 Marine Corps Tank Employment
8. MCWP 3-37 MAGTF Nuclear, Biological, and Chemical Defense Operations
9. MCWP 3-37.2 NBC Protection
10. MCWP 3-37.3 NBC Decontamination
11. MCWP 3-37.4 NBC Reconnaissance

1802-CBTS-2417: Ensure Deliberate Decontamination of Unit in Chemical/Biological Contaminated Environment

EVALUATION-CODED: NO **SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL:** 12 months

BILLETS: Company Commander

GRADES: CAPT

INITIAL TRAINING SETTING: MOJT

CONDITION: Given a tank unit with appropriate monitor/survey equipment, deliberate decontamination team with equipment to support personnel and equipment decontamination, supported unit, an operations order, tactical scenario involving chemical/biological contamination, specific threat, training area suitable for mechanized and decontamination operations, and references.

STANDARD: So that equipment and personnel are decontaminated to a condition where the unit is able to resume the mission.

PERFORMANCE STEPS:
1. Coordinate with decontamination team leader as to time of arrival, supplies, and personnel support to be furnished by the contaminated unit, and estimated time of completion.
2. Request route clearance to Personnel Decontamination Station (PDS) and Equipment Decontamination Station (EDS) assembly area.
3. Attach advance party to PDS/EDS.
4. Direct unit movement of main body to PDS/EDS and organize for decontamination processing.
5. Ensure that vehicles are processed through the EDS in accordance to the type and level of contamination.
6. Ensure equipment is monitored for residual contamination.
7. Ensure personnel are processed through the various PDS.
8. Reorganize unit after decontamination is complete in a clean area up wind of residual contamination.
9. Prepare for resumption of mission.

REFERENCES:
1. FM 3-100 NBC Operations
2. FM 3-20.15 Tank Platoon
3. FM 3-3 Chemical and Biological Contamination Avoidance
4. MCO 3500.27B W/ERRATUM Operational Risk Management
5. MCRP 3-37.2B Nuclear Contamination Avoidance
6. MCRP 3-37A NBC Field Handbook
7. MCWP 3-12 Marine Corps Tank Employment
8. MCWP 3-37 MAGTF Nuclear, Biological, and Chemical Defense Operations
9. MCWP 3-37.2 NBC Protection
10. MCWP 3-37.3 NBC Decontamination
11. MCWP 3-37.4 NBC Reconnaissance

1802-CBTS-2418: Ensure Exchange of Mission Oriented Protective Posture Equipment as Part of Hasty Decontamination Procedures for Unit

EVALUATION-CODED: NO **SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL:** 12 months

BILLETS: Company Commander, Company Executive Officer, Platoon Commander

GRADES: 2NDLT, 1STLT, CAPT

INITIAL TRAINING SETTING: MOJT

CONDITION: Given a tank unit, supported unit, an operations order directing the exchange of MOPP gear as part of hasty decontamination, tactical scenario involving the use of nuclear weapons or chemical/biological agents, specific threat, training area suitable for mechanized and decontamination operations, and references.

STANDARD: To maximize survivability of unit and the ability to conduct follow on missions.

PERFORMANCE STEPS:
1. Ensure that the site selected is uncontaminated.
2. Ensure adequate materials and sets of MOPP gear are on hand.
3. Issue replacement MOPP gear to each Marine; this uncontaminated gear should be in containers such as plastic bags to prevent contamination prior to use.
4. Ensure Marines are paired into buddy teams.
5. Space the buddy teams around a circle, 1 to 3 meters apart.
6. Brief the Marines on MOPP gear exchange and demonstrate procedures.
7. Stop procedures anytime you suspect contamination has spread to skin or undergarments and decon Marine immediately and then proceed with gear exchange.
8. Ensure MOPP gear exchange occurs.
9. Check for residual contamination.

REFERENCES:
1. FM 3-100 NBC Operations
2. FM 3-20.15 Tank Platoon
3. FM 3-3 Chemical and Biological Contamination Avoidance
4. MCO 3500.27B W/ERRATUM Operational Risk Management
5. MCRP 3-37.2A Chemical and Biological Contamination Avoidance
6. MCRP 3-37.2B Nuclear Contamination Avoidance
7. MCRP 3-37A NBC Field Handbook
8. MCWP 3-12 Marine Corps Tank Employment
9. MCWP 3-37 MAGTF Nuclear, Biological, and Chemical Defense Operations
10. MCWP 3-37.2 NBC Protection
11. MCWP 3-37.3 NBC Decontamination
12. MCWP 3-37.4 NBC Reconnaissance

1802-CBTS-2419: Emplace Hasty Protective Minefields

EVALUATION-CODED: NO **SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL:** 12 months

BILLETS: Platoon Commander

GRADES: 2NDLT

INITIAL TRAINING SETTING: MOJT

CONDITION: Provided a temporary position, mission, personnel, compass, map, protractor, mines, DA Form 1355-1-R, mine detectors, probes, and references.

STANDARD: To tie into existing natural or other manmade obstacles so that enemy movement/maneuvers are fixed, turned, blocked, or disrupted as required by the mission.

PERFORMANCE STEPS:

1. Review the mission, the map of the area, and reconnaissance reports.
2. Determine enemy avenues of approach for armor and/or infantry.
3. Determine location for observation posts.
4. Determine logistical requirements for mine dump.
5. Identify key terrain features forming natural boundaries and obstacles.
6. Set up security.
7. Locate a permanent reference point in front of platoon position.
8. Designate a location for each mine and row marker in at least two rows.
9. Emplace mines as required.
10. Arm the mines.
11. Camouflage the mines.
12. Verify count of all safety pins and clips and turn-in to NCOIC.
13. Submit required reports to higher headquarters (intent, initiation, progress, completion, transfer).
14. Complete DA Form 1355-1-R.
15. Plot an azimuth from the reference point and/or the landmark to the end marker in the last row on the friendly forces side.
16. Identify and disarm the mines.
17. Remove mines.
18. Restore terrain to its natural state.
19. Destroy the minefield record, if required.

REFERENCES:

1. FM 20-32 Mine/Countermine Operations
2. FM 3-20.15 Tank Platoon
3. FM 5-102 Countermobility
4. MCO 3500.27B W/ERRATUM Operational Risk Management
5. MCRP 3-17A Engineer Field Data
6. MCRP 3-17B Engineer Forms and Reports
7. MCWP 3-12 Marine Corps Tank Employment

1802-CBTS-2420: Direct Minefield Marking Party

EVALUATION-CODED: NO **SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL:** 12 months

BILLETS: Platoon Commander

GRADES: 2NDLT

INITIAL TRAINING SETTING: MOJT

CONDITION: Given an M1A1 tank unit, a supported unit, operations order directing an attack on an enemy position, tactical scenario involving an enemy minefield along the axis of attack, specified threat, training area, and references.

STANDARD: Per the references.

PERFORMANCE STEPS:
1. Establish security with overwatch element.
2. Direct marking party to mark area in accordance with unit SOP.
3. Record minefield limits and report to higher headquarters.

REFERENCES:
1. FM 3-20.15 Tank Platoon
2. MCO 3500.27B W/ERRATUM Operational Risk Management
3. MCRP 3-17A Engineer Field Data
4. MCRP 3-17B Engineer Forms and Reports
5. MCWP 3-12 Marine Corps Tank Employment

1802-CBTS-2421: Remove Hasty Minefield

EVALUATION-CODED: NO **SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL:** 12 months

BILLETS: Platoon Commander

GRADES: 2NDLT

INITIAL TRAINING SETTING: MOJT

CONDITION: Given an M1A1 tank unit, a supported unit, operations order, tactical scenario, specified threat, training area, and references.

STANDARD: Per the references.

PERFORMANCE STEPS:
1. Using minefield record, plot azimuth from reference point and/or landmark and locate the last row of the minefield.
2. Identify and disarm the mines.
3. Remove the mines for later use.
4. Destroy the minefield record.
5. Conduct combat reporting as appropriate.

REFERENCES:
1. MCO 3500.27B W/ERRATUM Operational Risk Management
2. MCRP 3-17A Engineer Field Data
3. MCRP 3-17B Engineer Forms and Reports
4. MCWP 3-17 Engineer Operations

1802-CSS-2501: Monitor Unit Table of Organization and Equipment Modification (T/O&E) Procedures

EVALUATION-CODED: NO **SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL:** 12 months

BILLETS: Battalion Staff Officer, Company Commander, Company Executive Officer

GRADES: 1STLT, CAPT, MAJ

INITIAL TRAINING SETTING: MOJT

CONDITION: Given a using unit account, T/O&E, and references.

STANDARD: To ensure the T/E allowances are properly maintained to support the mission.

PERFORMANCE STEPS:
1. Validate unit T/E excesses and deficiencies.
2. Supervise the adjustment of the unit table of equipment.

REFERENCES:
1. MCO 3500.27B W/ERRATUM Operational Risk Management
2. MCO 4400.172 Table of Equipment (T/E) Allowance Change Procedures

---

1802-CSS-2502: Supervise Maintenance Related Programs

EVALUATION-CODED: NO **SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL:** 12 months

BILLETS: Battalion Staff Officer, Company Commander, Company Executive Officer, Platoon Commander

GRADES: 2NDLT, 1STLT, CAPT, MAJ

INITIAL TRAINING SETTING: MOJT

CONDITION: Given a unit's T/O&E and references.

STANDARD: To ensure proper execution of maintenance programs and maintain equipment readiness.

PERFORMANCE STEPS:
1. Supervise the quality control program.
2. Supervise the Replacement and Evacuation program (R&E).
3. Supervise the Recoverable Items Program (RIP).
4. Supervise the Inspect Repair Only As Necessary (IROAN) program.
5. Supervise the Repair and Return (R&R) program.
6. Supervise the Corrosion Prevention and Control Program (CPAC).
7. Supervise the Joint Oil Analysis Program (JOAP).
8. Implement a maintenance inspection program.

REFERENCES:
1. LO/LI Applicable Lubrication Order or Instruction
2. MCO 3500.27B W/ERRATUM Operational Risk Management
3. MCO 4731.1 Oil Analysis Program for Ground Equipment
4. MCO 4790.18 Corrosion Prevention and Control (CPAC) Program
5. MCO 4855.10 Product Quality Deficiency Report (PQDR)
6. MCO 5100.8F Marine Corps Ground Occupational Safety and Health (OSH) Program

7. MCO P4400.82 MIMMS Controlled Item Management Manual
8. MCO P4790.1 MIMMS Introduction Manual
9. MCO P4790.2 MIMMS Field Procedures Manual
10. MCO P4790.3 MIMMS Depot Policy Manual
11. SL-1-2/SL-1-3 Index of Publications Stocked by the USMC
12. SL-3 Major Components of End Items
13. SL-4 Repair, Maintenance, and Management Lists
14. SL-6 MCSL Applications List
15. TI 4710-14/1 Replacement and Evacuation Criteria
16. TI 4731-14/1 Marine Corps Participation in the Joint Oil Analysis Program
17. TM 10209-10/1 Use and Care of Hand Tools & Measuring Tools
18. TM 4700-15/1 Marine Corps Ground Equipment Record Procedures
19. TM 4795-12/1 Organizational Corrosion Prevention and Control Procedures
20. TM 9-2300-422-23&P Army Oil Analysis Sampling Values Army Oil Analysis

---

1802-CSS-2503: Supervise Equipment Maintenance

EVALUATION-CODED: NO **SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL:** 12 months

BILLETS: Company Commander, Company Executive Officer, Platoon Commander

GRADES: 2NDLT, 1STLT, CAPT

INITIAL TRAINING SETTING: MOJT

CONDITION: Given requirement to perform equipment maintenance and references.

STANDARD: To support mission requirements.

PERFORMANCE STEPS:
1. Direct the processing of equipment through the maintenance cycle.
2. Ensure preventive maintenance checks and services (PMCS) requirements are met.
3. Direct the performance of PMCS.
4. Supervise limited technical inspections (LTI) of equipment.
5. Identify maintenance tasks for a given echelon of maintenance.
6. Identify equipment maintenance resource requirements.
7. Ensure corrective maintenance (CM) requirements are met.
8. Direct the performance of (CM).
9. Monitor the use of equipment records and maintenance forms.
10. Monitor layette procedures.
11. Monitor a Pre-Expended Bin (PEB).
12. Direct the information research on maintenance repair parts.
13. Monitor tool control.
14. Monitor the quality of equipment maintenance.

REFERENCES:
1. FM 3-20.15 Tank Platoon
2. MCO 3500.27B W/ERRATUM Operational Risk Management
3. MCO 4855.10 Product Quality Deficiency Report (PQDR)
4. MCO P4790.1 MIMMS Introduction Manual
5. MCO P4790.2 MIMMS Field Procedures Manual
6. MCO P5215.17 USMC Technical Publications System

7. SL-1-2/SL-1-3 Index of Publications Stocked by the USMC
8. SL-3 Major Components of End Items
9. SL-4 Repair, Maintenance, and Management Lists
10. SL-6 MCSL Applications List
11. TAM Table of Authorized Materials
12. TM 4700-15/1 Marine Corps Ground Equipment Record Procedures
13. Applicable Equipment Maintenance Manuals

1802-CSS-2504: Establish Logistics Operations Center (LOC)

EVALUATION-CODED: NO **SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL:** 12 months

BILLETS: Battalion Staff Officer

GRADES: CAPT, MAJ

INITIAL TRAINING SETTING: FORMAL

CONDITION: Given a tank unit, supported unit, tactical scenario, an operations order, training area suitable for mechanized operations, and references.

STANDARD: To supervise the logistical support efforts required to execute tactical operations.

PERFORMANCE STEPS:

1. Organize Logistics Operation Center (LOC) in accordance with unit SOP. Internal arrangement should allow for: status boards, overlays and situation maps, simultaneous monitoring and integration of maneuver and fire support assets, and briefing of primary staff and commanders.
2. Establish LOC staffing with executive or primary staff, special staff, liaison personnel, and supporting personnel.
3. Organize personnel, equipment, and vehicles for 24 hour/all weather operations.
4. Determine location based on defensible position with good communications aspects.
5. Identify alternate LOC site and route in the event that the LOC must displace quickly.
6. Prepare plans for the establishment of alternate LOC per unit SOP.
7. Ensure strict OPSEC/COMSEC during displacement.
8. Employ active and passive security measures to include: camouflage, COMSEC, vehicle and fighting positions, patrols, dispersion, and employ improved positions/dig in as time permits.
9. Establish traffic control measures to limit access and movement in the vicinity of the LOC.
10. Establish remote antenna farm.
11. Establish unit journal.
12. Establish message handling procedures within the LOC.
13. Establish and maintain unit status board.
14. Coordinate Combat Service Support (CSS) Operations.
15. Coordinate with Combat Operation Center (COC) as necessary.

REFERENCES:
1. FM 3-20.15 Tank Platoon
2. MCO 3500.27B W/ERRATUM Operational Risk Management
3. MCRP 4-24A Vehicle Recovery Operations
4. MCWP 3-12 Marine Corps Tank Employment
5. MCWP 4-1 Logistics Operations
6. MCWP 4-11 Combat Service Support Operations
7. MCWP 4-11.4 Maintenance Operations

1802-CSS-2505: Direct Logistics Operations Center (LOC) Operations

EVALUATION-CODED: NO **SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL:** 12 months

BILLETS: Battalion Staff Officer, Company Commander

GRADES: CAPT, MAJ

INITIAL TRAINING SETTING: FORMAL

CONDITION: Given a tank unit, supported unit, tactical scenario, an operations order, training area suitable for mechanized operations, and references.

STANDARD: To coordinate the logistical support required to execute tactical operations.

PERFORMANCE STEPS:
1. Organize Logistics Operation Center (LOC) in accordance with unit SOP, internal arrangement should allow for: status boards, overlays and situation maps, simultaneous monitoring and integration of maneuver and fire support assets, and briefing of primary staff and commanders.
2. Establish LOC staffing with executive or primary staff, special staff, liaison personnel, and supporting personnel.
3. Organize personnel, equipment, and vehicles for 24 hour/all weather operations.
4. Rehearse movement to alternate LOC site and route in the event that the LOC must displace quickly.
5. Review plans for the establishment of alternate LOC per unit SOP.
6. Maintain strict OPSEC/COMSEC during displacement.
7. Employ active and passive security measures to include: camouflage, COMSEC, vehicle and fighting positions, patrols, dispersion, and employ improved positions/dig in as time permits.
8. Enforce traffic control measures to limit access and movement in the vicinity of the LOC.
9. Maintain remote antenna farm.
10. Maintain unit journal.
11. Enforce message handling procedures within the LOC.
12. Maintain unit status board.
13. Coordinate Combat Service Support (CSS) Operations.
14. Coordinate with Combat Operation Center (COC) as necessary.

REFERENCES:
1. FM 3-20.15 Tank Platoon
2. MCO 3500.27B W/ERRATUM Operational Risk Management

3. MCRP 4-24A Vehicle Recovery Operations
4. MCWP 3-12 Marine Corps Tank Employment
5. MCWP 4-1 Logistics Operations
6. MCWP 4-11 Combat Service Support Operations
7. MCWP 4-11.4 Maintenance Operations

1802-CSS-2506: Direct Combat Service Support (CSS) Operations

EVALUATION-CODED: NO **SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL:** 12 months

BILLETS: Battalion Staff Officer, Company Commander, Company Executive Officer

GRADES: 1STLT, CAPT, MAJ

INITIAL TRAINING SETTING: FORMAL

CONDITION: Given a tank unit, supported unit, an operations order, training area suitable for mechanized operations, and references.

STANDARD: To provide the logistical support required to execute the operations order including establishing resupply convoys and their escorts; NBC decontamination teams and locations; resupply operations from logistical trains; recovery, repair, and return of vehicles to units; medical activities; processing Enemy Prisoners of War (EPWs); performing graves registration duties; coordinating morale, welfare, and recreation support.

PERFORMANCE STEPS:

1. Develop scheme of support by phase for the operation.
2. In coordination with the operations officer, establish control measures for each of the following Combat Service Support functions for each phase, including options for NBC "clean"/not contaminated and "dirty"/contaminated situations: battalion support areas, logistics trains assembly areas, LOC locations, UMCPs, ammunition distribution and transfer points, ration/water distribution points, casualty collection and transfer points, graves registration points, supply routes, EPW collection points, medical supply distribution points, equipment and personnel decontamination points, and reissue points.
3. Establish vehicle recovery teams.
4. Establish maintenance contact teams.
5. Establish resupply convoys and their escorts.
6. Establish NBC decontamination teams and locations.
7. Conduct resupply operations from logistics trains.
8. Operate Unit Maintenance Collection Points (UMCP).
9. Direct recovery, repair, and return of vehicles to units.
10. Direct medical activities to include: casualty evacuation, water analysis and purification, food inspections, supervision of preventative measures such as medications, vaccinations, examinations, personal hygiene, and establishment of the Battalion Aid Station (BAS).
11. Process Enemy Prisoners of War (EPWs).
12. Perform graves registration duties.
13. Coordinate morale, welfare, and recreation support.

REFERENCES:
1. FM 3-20.15 Tank Platoon
2. MCO 3500.27B W/ERRATUM Operational Risk Management
3. MCRP 4-24A Vehicle Recovery Operations
4. MCWP 3-12 Marine Corps Tank Employment
5. MCWP 4-1 Logistics Operations
6. MCWP 4-11 Combat Service Support Operations
7. MCWP 4-11.4 Maintenance Operations
8. TM 9-2350-264-10-1 Operator's Manual, Operator Controls, PMCS, and Operation Under Usual Conditions, Volume 1 of 2, Tank, Combat, Full-Tracked: 120-MM Gun, M1A1 2350-01-087-1095 General Abrams

---

1802-CSS-2507: Direct Logistics Trains (LOG TRAINS)

EVALUATION-CODED: NO **SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL:** 12 months

BILLETS: Battalion Staff Officer, Company Commander

GRADES: CAPT, MAJ

INITIAL TRAINING SETTING: FORMAL

CONDITION: Given a tank unit, supported unit, an operations order, specified threat, and references.

STANDARD: To provide the logistical support required to execute tactical operations.

PERFORMANCE STEPS:
1. Determine the CSS requirements for the designated unit and operation: recovery and repair requirements, evacuation requirements, supply requirements by class, and EPW processing requirements.
2. Task organize the trains based on the requirements and the threat analysis.
3. Control movement of the trains on the battlefield in conjunction with the S-3 section; ensure the trains have: fire support throughout the movement, adequate escort for the threat condition, cover and concealment, defensible positions identified preferably out of range of enemy artillery, routes or positions near medical and maintenance collection points and helicopter landing zones, current information on friendly and enemy units in the area, and current CEOI information on friendly units in the area.
4. Perform command and control functions as necessary.
5. Conduct LOGPAC as required.
6. Conduct administrative duties as required, including: mail pick up and delivery and delivery of personnel replacements.
7. Conduct combat reporting as required.

REFERENCES:
1. FM 3-20.15 Tank Platoon
2. MCO 3500.27B W/ERRATUM Operational Risk Management
3. MCRP 4-24A Vehicle Recovery Operations
4. MCWP 3-12 Marine Corps Tank Employment

5. MCWP 4-1 Logistics Operations
6. MCWP 4-11 Combat Service Support Operations
7. MCWP 4-11.4 Maintenance Operations

1802-CSS-2508: Direct Combat Trains

EVALUATION-CODED: NO **SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL:** 12 months

BILLETS: Battalion Staff Officer, Company Commander

GRADES: CAPT, MAJ

INITIAL TRAINING SETTING: FORMAL

CONDITION: Given a tank unit, supported unit, an operations order, and references.

STANDARD: To provide the logistical support required to execute tactical operations.

PERFORMANCE STEPS:
1. Determine the CSS requirements for the designated unit and operation: recovery and repair requirements, evacuation requirements, supply requirements by class, and EPW processing requirements.
2. Task organize the combat trains based on the requirements and the threat analysis.
3. Control movement of the combat trains on the battlefield in conjunction with the S-3 section; ensure the trains have: fire support throughout the movement, adequate escort for the threat condition, cover and concealment, defensible positions identified, route or positions near medical and maintenance collection points, current information on friendly and enemy positions, and current CEOI information on friendly units in the area.
4. Perform command and control functions as necessary.
5. Conduct combat reporting as required.

REFERENCES:
1. FM 3-20.15 Tank Platoon
2. MCO 3500.27B W/ERRATUM Operational Risk Management
3. MCRP 4-24A Vehicle Recovery Operations
4. MCWP 3-12 Marine Corps Tank Employment
5. MCWP 4-1 Logistics Operations
6. MCWP 4-11 Combat Service Support Operations
7. MCWP 4-11.4 Maintenance Operations

1802-CSS-2509: Establish Assembly Area (AA)

EVALUATION-CODED: NO **SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL:** 12 months

BILLETS: Company Commander

GRADES: CAPT

INITIAL TRAINING SETTING: FORMAL

CONDITION: Given a tank unit, supported unit, an operations order directing the establishment of an Assembly Area (AA), and references.

STANDARD: Ensuring that there is local security so that no squad size elements can move within 300 meters of perimeter without detection; vehicle and individual positions are camouflaged within 45 minutes of occupation; there is lateral contact between vehicles; wire communications, vehicle range cards, element fire plan sketches are complete; chemical agent alarms are emplaced; CSS activities re conducted; and planning for subsequent operations is ongoing.

PERFORMANCE STEPS:

1. Issue order to Quartering Party and dispatch them to conduct reconnaissance and preparation of proposed assembly area.
2. Conduct movement of unit to AA in coordination with Quartering Party.
3. Establish priority of work.
4. Establish AA perimeter, maintaining lateral contact between vehicles within the AA and adjoining units.
5. Establish vehicle and individual positions, maintaining mutual support between vehicles, individuals and elements.
6. Establish camouflage within 45 minutes of occupation of the assembly area.
7. Establish wire communications.
8. Establish vehicle range cards, and element fire plan sketches, to include supporting arms.
9. Establish chemical agent alarms.
10. Supervise the conduct of required CSS activities.
11. Conduct planning for subsequent operations.
12. Maintain light and noise discipline.

REFERENCES:

1. FM 3-20.15 Tank Platoon
2. MCO 3500.27B W/ERRATUM Operational Risk Management
3. MCWP 3-12 Marine Corps Tank Employment
4. MCWP 4-1 Logistics Operations
5. MCWP 4-11 Combat Service Support Operations
6. MCWP 4-11.4 Maintenance Operations

1802-CSS-2510: Perform the Duties of Logistics Officer

EVALUATION-CODED: NO **SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL:** 12 months

BILLETS: Battalion Staff Officer, Company Commander

GRADES: CAPT, MAJ

INITIAL TRAINING SETTING: FORMAL

CONDITION: Given the required duties of a logistics officer, commander's guidance, and references.

STANDARD: To support the mission requirements of the unit.

PERFORMANCE STEPS:
1. Organize the logistics section.
2. Determine directive and publication requirements.
3. Establish internal control procedures for maintaining administrative files and records.
4. Review logistics related reports.
5. Prepare staff correspondence pertaining to logistics.
6. Prepare standing operating procedures.
7. Prepare external support requests.
8. Prepare briefing materials on logistics matters.
9. Implement corrective action of discrepancies noted during administrative inspections.
10. Provide oversight for the logistics functional areas of motor transport, supply, equipment maintenance, arms, ammunition and explosives (AA&E), and messing.
11. Ensure Combat Service Support (CSS) MOS proficiency related training is scheduled and conducted.
12. Conduct inspections.
13. Ensure correct use of operational forms and records.
14. Ensure dispatching procedures are correct.

REFERENCES:
1. FM 3-20.12 Tank Gunnery
2. FM 3-20.15 Tank Platoon
3. FM 3-20.98 Reconnaissance Platoon
4. FM 3-90.1 Tank and Mechanized Infantry Company Team
5. FM 3-90.2 Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force
6. FM 3-90.3 Mounted Brigade Combat Team
7. MCO 3500.27B W/ERRATUM Operational Risk Management
8. MCWP 3-12 Marine Corps Tank Employment
9. MCWP 3-15.5 Antiarmor Operations
10. MCWP 5-1 Marine Corps Planning Process

1802-CSS-2511: Coordinate Supply Support Related Functions

EVALUATION-CODED: NO **SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL:** 12 months

BILLETS: Battalion Staff Officer, Company Commander, Company Executive Officer, Platoon Commander

GRADES: 2NDLT, 1STLT, CAPT, MAJ

INITIAL TRAINING SETTING: MOJT

CONDITION: Given support requirement, a unit T/O&E, Equipment Density List (EDL), Sassy Management Unit (SMU) provided generation package database (GENPAK), and references.

STANDARD: To ensure supply support maintenance requirements are accomplished.

PERFORMANCE STEPS:
1. Determine class IX requirements.

2. Validate the generation package (GENPAK) database.
3. Validate the contents of a class IX block for deficiencies.
4. Submit recommended changes to class IX block to SMU.

REFERENCES:
1. MCO 3500.27B W/ERRATUM Operational Risk Management
2. MCO P4790.2 MIMMS Field Procedures Manual
3. SECNAVINST 5500.4 MLSR Reporting
4. UM 4400-124 Sassy Using Unit Procedures
5. UM 4400-15 Organic Property Control

1802-CSS-2512: Establish Logistics Train Site

EVALUATION-CODED: NO **SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL:** 12 months

BILLETS: Battalion Staff Officer, Company Commander

GRADES: CAPT, MAJ

INITIAL TRAINING SETTING: FORMAL

CONDITION: Given a tank unit, supported unit, an operations order, training area suitable for mechanized operations, and references.

STANDARD: To provide the logistical support required to execute the operations order including establishing resupply convoys and their escorts; NBC decontamination teams and locations; resupply operations from logistics trains; recovery, repair, and return of vehicles to units; medical activities; processing Enemy Prisoners of War (EPWs); performing graves registration duties; coordinating morale, welfare, and recreation support.

PERFORMANCE STEPS:
1. Establish the site to include locations for each of the following Combat Service Support functions, including options for NBC "clean"/not contaminated and "dirty"/contaminated situations: Logistics Operations Center (LOC) location, Unit Maintenance Collection Point (UMCP) for vehicles being brought to this site, ammunition, fuel, and ration/water distribution points, Battalion Aid Station (BAS), graves registration point, EPW collection point, medical supply distribution point, equipment and personnel decontamination points, reissue point, and morale, welfare, and recreation support.
2. Establish local security using patrols as necessary.

REFERENCES:
1. FM 3-20.15 Tank Platoon
2. FM 3-90.1 Tank and Mechanized Infantry Company Team
3. MCO 3500.27B W/ERRATUM Operational Risk Management
4. MCRP 4-24A Vehicle Recovery Operations
5. MCWP 3-12 Marine Corps Tank Employment
6. MCWP 4-1 Logistics Operations
7. MCWP 4-11 Combat Service Support Operations
8. MCWP 4-11.4 Maintenance Operations
9. MCWP 4-11.7 MAGTF Supply Operations

1802-EXPD-2601: Develop Landing Plan

EVALUATION-CODED: NO **SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL:** 12 months

BILLETS: Battalion Staff Officer, Company Commander

GRADES: CAPT, MAJ

INITIAL TRAINING SETTING: FORMAL

CONDITION: Given a tank unit, supported unit, an operations order, specified amphibious ship platform, tactical scenario, specified threat, and references.

STANDARD: So that all associated diagrams, tables, attachments, and overlays are included.

PERFORMANCE STEPS:
1. Conduct Mission Analysis of supported unit's operations order.
2. Determine Assault Amphibian lift requirements for assault elements, scheduled waves, on-call waves, and nonscheduled waves.
3. Review Amphibious Vehicle Availability Table to determine the number and periods of availability for each type of AAV assigned to the operation.
4. Determine landing force lift requirements for the ship-to-shore movement in coordination with a review of the Amphibious Vehicle Availability Table, Helicopter Availability Table, and the Landing Craft Availability Table.
5. Consider enemy capabilities to counter surface and/or air assaults.
6. Allow flexibility of on-call and nonscheduled waves.
7. Assign elements to one of five categories in order to indicate their relative priority for landing and to facilitate control of the ship-to-shore movement.
8. Allocate assets for use by subordinate elements, and ensure that the proposed Landing Diagram, Assault Schedule, and Landing Sequence Table are developed concurrently and are mutually compatible.
9. Develop Serial Assignment Table based on task organization for the landing.
10. Develop Landing Craft and Amphibious Vehicle Assignment Table is coordinated with affected units.
11. Develop Helicopter Employment and Assault Landing Table as well as Heliteam Wave and Serial Assignment Table are coordinated with ACE and appropriate CE.
12. Provide input for Approach Schedule.
13. Develop Debarkation Schedule in coordination with Naval personnel.

REFERENCES:
1. JCS PUB 3-02 Joint Doctrine for Amphibious Operations
2. JCS PUB 3-02.1 Joint Doctrine for Landing Force Operations
3. LFM 03 Amphibious Embarkation
4. MCO 3500.27B W/ERRATUM Operational Risk Management
5. MCRP 2-12A Intelligence Preparation of the Battlefield (IPB)
6. MCRP 3-31.3A Over the Horizon Surface Operations
7. MCRP 3-31A Military Sealift Command in Support of Amphibious Operations
8. MCRP 3-31B Amphibious Ships and Landing Craft Data Book
9. MCRP 4-11.3D The Naval Beach Group

10. MCRP 5-12A Operational Terms and Symbols
11. MCWP 3-12 Marine Corps Tank Employment
12. MCWP 3-31.3 Surf Zone Operations
13. MCWP 3-31.5 Ship-to-Shore Movement
14. MCWP 5-1 Marine Corps Planning Process
15. MCWP 5-11 Amphibious Task Force Planning
16. MCWP 5-11.2 The Amphibious Task Force Plan

1802-EXPD-2602: Conduct Amphibious Assault

EVALUATION-CODED: NO **SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL:** 12 months

BILLETS: Company Commander

GRADES: CAPT

INITIAL TRAINING SETTING: FORMAL

CONDITION: Given a tank company, an operations order directing an amphibious assault, supporting landing plan, tactical scenario, specified threat, navigable section of open ocean with a suitable beach, specified amphibious ship type, suitable wave guide/safety boats, and references.

STANDARD: To support higher commander's intent and scheme of maneuver.

PERFORMANCE STEPS:
1. Execute landing plan from preparation phase through launch from amphibious shipping.
2. Conduct waterborne ship-to-shore movement in accordance with landing plan.
3. Assault designated objective in accordance with landing plan.
4. Conduct mechanized operations ashore in order to seize immediate objectives of assault landing.

REFERENCES:
1. FM 3-20.15 Tank Platoon
2. JCS PUB 3-02 Joint Doctrine for Amphibious Operations
3. JCS PUB 3-02.1 Joint Doctrine for Landing Force Operations
4. LFM 03 Amphibious Embarkation
5. MCO 3500.27B W/ERRATUM Operational Risk Management
6. MCRP 3-31.3A Over the Horizon Surface Operations
7. MCRP 3-31B Amphibious Ships and Landing Craft Data Book
8. MCWP 3-12 Marine Corps Tank Employment
9. MCWP 3-31.1 Supporting Arms in Amphibious Operations
10. MCWP 3-31.3 Surf Zone Operations
11. MCWP 3-31.5 Ship-to-Shore Movement
12. MCWP 5-1 Marine Corps Planning Process
13. MCWP 5-11 Amphibious Task Force Planning
14. MCWP 5-11.2 The Amphibious Task Force Plan

1802-EXPD-2603: Conduct Amphibious Withdrawal

EVALUATION-CODED: NO **SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL:** 12 months

BILLETS: Company Commander

GRADES: CAPT

INITIAL TRAINING SETTING: FORMAL

CONDITION: Given a tank company, an operations order directing an amphibious withdrawal, supporting landing plan, tactical scenario, specified threat, navigable section of open ocean with a suitable beach, specified amphibious ship type, suitable wave guide/safety boats, and references.

STANDARD: To support higher commander's intent and scheme of maneuver.

PERFORMANCE STEPS:
1. Emphasize security as focus of effort as well as the accountability of personnel and equipment.
2. Coordinate with covering force.
3. Develop movement plan for elements; plan should minimize traffic congestion and delay at embarkation points.
4. Develop logistics/resupply plan that provides for as much self sufficiency as possible to allow CSS assets to load first.
5. Plan for evacuation of casualties, personnel and mechanical.
6. Coordinate for evacuation of civilians and EPWs.
7. Coordinate for fire support, emphasizing external assets such as naval gunfire and air.
8. Complete withdrawal to amphibious shipping with minimal loss of personnel and equipment.

REFERENCES:
1. FM 3-20.15 Tank Platoon
2. JCS PUB 3-02 Joint Doctrine for Amphibious Operations
3. JCS PUB 3-02.1 Joint Doctrine for Landing Force Operations
4. MCO 3500.27B W/ERRATUM Operational Risk Management
5. MCRP 3-11.1A Commander's Tactical Handbook
6. MCRP 3-31.3A Over the Horizon Surface Operations
7. MCRP 3-31B Amphibious Ships and Landing Craft Data Book
8. MCRP 4-11.3D The Naval Beach Group
9. MCWP 3-12 Marine Corps Tank Employment
10. MCWP 3-31.3 Surf Zone Operations
11. MCWP 3-31.5 Ship-to-Shore Movement
12. MCWP 5-11 Amphibious Task Force Planning
13. MCWP 5-11.2 The Amphibious Task Force Plan

1802-EXPD-2604: Launch from Amphibious Shipping

EVALUATION-CODED: NO **SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL:** 12 months

BILLETS: Company Commander

GRADES: CAPT

INITIAL TRAINING SETTING: FORMAL

CONDITION: Given a tank unit, an operations order, supporting landing plan, tactical scenario, specified threat, navigable section of open ocean with a suitable beach, specified amphibious ship type, suitable wave guide/safety boats, and references.

STANDARD: Per the references.

PERFORMANCE STEPS:
1. Install deep water fording kit as necessary.
2. Conduct pre-water operations checks and services.
3. Ensure water tight integrity of tank.
4. Position vehicle according to guidance from ship's well deck personnel.
5. Dog vehicle on shipping as directed.
6. Disembark from landing craft onto designated beach.

REFERENCES:
1. FM 3-20.15 Tank Platoon
2. MCO 3500.27B W/ERRATUM Operational Risk Management
3. MCRP 3-31B Amphibious Ships and Landing Craft Data Book
4. MCWP 3-12 Marine Corps Tank Employment

1802-EXPD-2605: Participate in Amphibious Assault

EVALUATION-CODED: NO **SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL:** 12 months

BILLETS: Company Commander, Company Executive Officer, Platoon Commander

GRADES: 2NDLT, 1STLT, CAPT

INITIAL TRAINING SETTING: MOJT

CONDITION: Given a tank platoon, an operations order directing an amphibious assault, supporting landing plan, tactical scenario, specified threat, navigable section of open ocean with a suitable beach, specified amphibious ship type, suitable wave guide/safety boats, and references.

STANDARD: To support the higher commander's intent and scheme of maneuver.

PERFORMANCE STEPS:
1. Execute landing plan from preparation phase through launch from amphibious shipping.
2. Conduct waterborne ship-to-shore movement in accordance with landing plan.
3. Assault designated objective in accordance with landing plan.
4. Conduct mechanized operations ashore in order to seize immediate objectives of assault landing.

REFERENCES:
1. FM 3-20.15 Tank Platoon
2. JCS PUB 3-02 Joint Doctrine for Amphibious Operations
3. JCS PUB 3-02.1 Joint Doctrine for Landing Force Operations
4. LFM 03 Amphibious Embarkation
5. MCO 3500.27B W/ERRATUM Operational Risk Management
6. MCRP 3-31.3A Over the Horizon Surface Operations
7. MCRP 3-31B Amphibious Ships and Landing Craft Data Book

8. MCWP 3-12 Marine Corps Tank Employment
9. MCWP 3-31.1 Supporting Arms in Amphibious Operations
10. MCWP 3-31.3 Surf Zone Operations
11. MCWP 3-31.5 Ship-to-Shore Movement
12. MCWP 5-1 Marine Corps Planning Process
13. MCWP 5-11 Amphibious Task Force Planning
14. MCWP 5-11.2 The Amphibious Task Force Plan

1802-EXPD-2606: Participate in Amphibious Withdrawal

EVALUATION-CODED: NO **SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL:** 12 months

BILLETS: Company Commander, Company Executive Officer, Platoon Commander

GRADES: 2NDLT, 1STLT, CAPT

INITIAL TRAINING SETTING: MOJT

CONDITION: Given a tank platoon, an operations order directing an amphibious withdrawal, supporting landing plan, tactical scenario, specified threat, navigable section of open ocean with a suitable beach, specified amphibious ship type, suitable wave guide/safety boats, and references.

STANDARD: To support higher commander's intent and scheme of maneuver.

PERFORMANCE STEPS:
1. Emphasize security as focus of effort as well as the accountability of personnel and equipment.
2. Coordinate with covering force.
3. Develop movement plan for elements; plan should minimize traffic congestion and delay at embarkation points.
4. Develop logistics/resupply plan that provides for as much self sufficiency as possible to allow CSS assets to load first.
5. Plan for evacuation of casualties, personnel and mechanical.
6. Coordinate for evacuation of civilians, and EPWs.
7. Coordinate for fire support, emphasizing external assets such as naval gunfire and air.
8. Complete withdrawal to amphibious shipping with minimal loss of personnel and equipment.

REFERENCES:
1. FM 3-20.15 Tank Platoon
2. JCS PUB 3-02 Joint Doctrine for Amphibious Operations
3. JCS PUB 3-02.1 Joint Doctrine for Landing Force Operations
4. MCO 3500.27B W/ERRATUM Operational Risk Management
5. MCRP 3-11.1A Commander's Tactical Handbook
6. MCRP 3-31.3A Over the Horizon Surface Operations
7. MCRP 3-31B Amphibious Ships and Landing Craft Data Book
8. MCRP 4-11.3D The Naval Beach Group
9. MCWP 3-12 Marine Corps Tank Employment
10. MCWP 3-31.3 Surf Zone Operations
11. MCWP 3-31.5 Ship-to-Shore Movement
12. MCWP 5-11 Amphibious Task Force Planning
13. MCWP 5-11.2 The Amphibious Task Force Plan

1802-EXPD-2607: Install Deepwater Fording Kit on M1A1 Tank

EVALUATION-CODED: NO **SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL:** 12 months

BILLETS: Platoon Commander

GRADES: 2NDLT

INITIAL TRAINING SETTING: MOJT

CONDITION: Given an M1A1 tank with crew, SL-3 items, deep water fording kit (DWFK), and references.

STANDARD: Within 2 hours so that the tank can ford water at depths of 2 meters.

PERFORMANCE STEPS:
1. Install turret and gun tube.
2. Install DWFK nonvented front fuel filler caps.
3. Install 120mm gun plug.
4. Seal coaxial machinegun.
5. Install personnel heater plug.
6. Install NBC ambient air intake door assembly and close door.
7. Remove scallop armor plate.
8. Stow rear intake grille and scallop armor plate.
9. Install forward intake grill.
10. Install 6-inch plugs, scavenge outlet plate, and hooded precleaner.
11. Assemble and install flex hoses and elbows.
12. Close front access cover and install rear access cover.
13. Install 8 inch and 10 inch intake towers.
14. Inspect engine exhaust duct seal.
15. Install exhaust plenum and exhaust tower.
16. Install NBC backup air inlet plug.
17. Install DWFK final drive adapters and vent hoses.
18. Install NBC cooling exhaust plug.
19. Lubricate battery terminal adapters and relay box assembly terminals.
20. Wire fenders.
21. Install wire ropes.
22. Connect cooling exhaust plug wire rope and pin quick-release mechanism.

REFERENCES:
1. FM 3-20.15 Tank Platoon
2. MCO 3500.27B W/ERRATUM Operational Risk Management
3. MCWP 3-12 Marine Corps Tank Employment
4. TM 08953A-14&P Operator's and Unit Maintenance Manual Including Repair Parts and Special Tools List, Deep Water Fording Kit
5. TM 9-2350-264-10-1 Operator's Manual, Operator Controls, PMCS, and Operation Under Usual Conditions, Volume 1 of 2, Tank, Combat, Full-Tracked: 120-MM Gun, M1A1 2350-01-087-1095 General Abrams
6. TM 9-2350-264-10-2 Operator's Manual, Unusual Conditions, Troubleshooting, and Maintenance, Volume 2 of 2, Tank, Combat, Full-Tracked: 120-MM, M1A1 2350-01-087-1095, General Abrams

1802-EXPD-2608: Ford Deep Water with M1A1 Tank

EVALUATION-CODED: NO **SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL:** 12 months

BILLETS: Company Commander, Company Executive Officer, Platoon Commander

GRADES: 2NDLT, 1STLT, CAPT

INITIAL TRAINING SETTING: MOJT

CONDITION: Given an M1A1 tank with crew, installed Deep Water Fording Kit (DWFK), a water obstacle not exceeding a depth of 2 meters, and references.

STANDARD: So that water obstacle is crossed in a time limit of 10 minutes, tank is not damaged, and crew is not injured.

PERFORMANCE STEPS:
1. Inflate turret seal.
2. Close drain valve.
3. If time and mission allow, conduct a thorough final inspection of the tank to make sure that all DWFK components have been installed, and that installation has been done properly.
4. Prepare to ford.
5. Drive tank slowly into water and take care to keep bow wave to a minimum.
6. Drive out of water.
7. Prepare tank for operation after fording.
8. Remove DWFK components.

REFERENCES:
1. FM 3-20.15 Tank Platoon
2. MCO 3500.27B W/ERRATUM Operational Risk Management
3. MCWP 3-12 Marine Corps Tank Employment
4. TM 08953A-14&P Operator's and Unit Maintenance Manual Including Repair Parts and Special Tools List, Deep Water Fording Kit
5. TM 9-2350-264-10-1 Operator's Manual, Operator Controls, PMCS, and Operation Under Usual Conditions, Volume 1 of 2, Tank, Combat, Full-Tracked: 120-MM Gun, M1A1 2350-01-087-1095 General Abrams
6. TM 9-2350-264-10-2 Operator's Manual, Unusual Conditions, Troubleshooting, and Maintenance, Volume 2 of 2, Tank, Combat, Full-Tracked: 120-MM, M1A1 2350-01-087-1095, General Abrams

---

1802-EXPD-2609: Develop Plans to Embark M1A1 Tank Unit

EVALUATION-CODED: NO **SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL:** 12 months

BILLETS: Battalion Staff Officer, Company Commander, Company Executive Officer, Platoon Commander

GRADES: 2NDLT, 1STLT, CAPT, MAJ

INITIAL TRAINING SETTING: MOJT

CONDITION: Given a tank unit, supported unit, list of mission essential equipment, an operations plan, supporting operations order, and references.

STANDARD: To support the operations plan.

PERFORMANCE STEPS:

1. Establish liaison with the Ground Combat Element (GCE) embarkation officer or the Team Embarkation Officer (TEO).
2. Determine logistical requirements for the unit in order to support the operations plan and order.
3. Consider special requirements for the unit based on the type of transportation selected for each movement phase: motor transport, rail transport, aircraft, and shipping.
4. Obtain and consolidate the required loading documents from each unit embarking supplies, cargo, equipment, and personnel.
5. Obtain the unloading priorities and composition of tactical serials from the embarkation team leader.
6. Identify any hazardous material and cargo requiring special handling.
7. Ensure the equipment to be loaded complies with the characteristics of the platform selected.
8. Prepare written plans or appropriate computer embark data. Include: personnel equipment lists, unit equipment lists, manifest lists, hazardous material lists, ammunition requirements, parts requirements, medical supplies.
9. Submit plans and requirements to higher headquarters.
10. Submit list of materials required to complete embarkation preparation.
11. Determine personnel to conduct embarkation and identify any training shortfalls.

REFERENCES:

1. LFM 03 Amphibious Embarkation
2. MCO 3500.27B W/ERRATUM Operational Risk Management
3. MCO P4030.19 Preparation of Hazardous Material for Military Air Shipment
4. MCRP 3-31B Amphibious Ships and Landing Craft Data Book
5. MCRP 4-13.1A Movement of Units in Air Force Aircraft
6. MCWP 3-12 Marine Corps Tank Employment
7. MCWP 4-1 Logistics Operations
8. MCWP 5-1 Marine Corps Planning Process
9. TM 9-2350-264-10-1 Operator's Manual, Operator Controls, PMCS, and Operation Under Usual Conditions, Volume 1 of 2, Tank, Combat, Full-Tracked: 120-MM Gun, M1A1 2350-01-087-1095 General Abrams
10. TM 9-2350-264-10-2 Operator's Manual, Unusual Conditions, Troubleshooting, and Maintenance, Volume 2 of 2, Tank, Combat, Full-Tracked: 120-MM, M1A1 2350-01-087-1095, General Abrams

---

1802-EXPD-2610: Inspect Tank Unit Embarkation Procedures

EVALUATION-CODED: NO **SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL:** 12 months

BILLETS: Battalion Staff Officer, Company Commander, Company Executive Officer, Platoon Commander

GRADES: 2NDLT, 1STLT, CAPT, MAJ

INITIAL TRAINING SETTING: MOJT

CONDITION: Given a tank unit, list of personnel and mission essential equipment to be embarked, an operations plan, supporting operations order, and references.

STANDARD: To include preparation of personnel, cargo, supplies, vehicles, and equipment.

PERFORMANCE STEPS:

1. Ensure that unit embarkation personnel are identified and properly trained.
2. Inspect unit embarkation materials are in compliance with the references including: embark boxes, PALCONs, QUADCONs, packaging materials, hazardous materials packaging and shipping containers, and embark database.
3. Ensure that the unit has adequate embarkation containers and materials to deploy all of its assets.
4. Inspect the supplies and equipment for transportability.
5. Inspect the mobile loading of supplies and equipment.
6. Inspect the building and loading of 463L pallets.
7. Inspect the loading and banding of warehouse pallets.
8. Identify hazardous material and cargo.
9. Inspect equipment center of balance computation.
10. Inspect required documentation.
11. Ensure proper staging of supplies and equipment.

REFERENCES:

1. FM 3-20.15 Tank Platoon
2. FM 55-9 Unit Air Movement Planning
3. LFM 03 Amphibious Embarkation
4. MCO 3500.27B W/ERRATUM Operational Risk Management
5. MCO P4030.19 Preparation of Hazardous Material for Military Air Shipment
6. MCRP 3-31B Amphibious Ships and Landing Craft Data Book
7. MCRP 4-13.1A Movement of Units in Air Force Aircraft
8. MCWP 3-12 Marine Corps Tank Employment
9. MCWP 4-1 Logistics Operations
10. MCWP 5-1 Marine Corps Planning Process
11. TM 9-2350-264-10-1 Operator's Manual, Operator Controls, PMCS, and Operation Under Usual Conditions, Volume 1 of 2, Tank, Combat, Full-Tracked: 120-MM Gun, M1A1 2350-01-087-1095 General Abrams
12. TM 9-2350-264-10-2 Operator's Manual, Unusual Conditions, Troubleshooting, and Maintenance, Volume 2 of 2, Tank, Combat, Full-Tracked: 120-MM, M1A1 2350-01-087-1095, General Abrams

---

1802-EXPD-2611: Supervise Embarkation of Tank Unit onto Aircraft

EVALUATION-CODED: NO **SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL:** 12 months

BILLETS: Battalion Staff Officer, Company Commander, Company Executive Officer, Platoon Commander

GRADES: 2NDLT, 1STLT, CAPT, MAJ

INITIAL TRAINING SETTING: MOJT

CONDITION: Given a tank unit, list of personnel and mission essential equipment to be embarked, an operations plan, supporting operations order, specific aircraft type, and references.

STANDARD: Per the references.

PERFORMANCE STEPS:
1. Supervise coordination with the Departure Airfield Control Group (DACG) and with the Air Force command and control ground personnel.
2. Ensure proper staging of supplies and equipment.
3. Ensure all personnel, cargo, and equipment are properly manifested.
4. Supervise embarkation of personnel and equipment according to loadmaster guidance.

REFERENCES:
1. FM 3-20.15 Tank Platoon
2. MCO 3500.27B W/ERRATUM Operational Risk Management
3. MCO P4030.19 Preparation of Hazardous Material for Military Air Shipment
4. MCWP 3-12 Marine Corps Tank Employment
5. MCWP 4-1 Logistics Operations
6. TM 9-2350-264-10-1 Operator's Manual, Operator Controls, PMCS, and Operation Under Usual Conditions, Volume 1 of 2, Tank, Combat, Full-Tracked: 120-MM Gun, M1A1 2350-01-087-1095 General Abrams
7. TM 9-2350-264-10-2 Operator's Manual, Unusual Conditions, Troubleshooting, and Maintenance, Volume 2 of 2, Tank, Combat, Full-Tracked: 120-MM, M1A1 2350-01-087-1095, General Abrams

---

1802-EXPD-2612: Supervise Embarkation of Tank Unit onto Amphibious Shipping

EVALUATION-CODED: NO **SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL:** 12 months

BILLETS: Battalion Staff Officer, Company Commander, Company Executive Officer, Platoon Commander

GRADES: 2NDLT, 1STLT, CAPT, MAJ

INITIAL TRAINING SETTING: MOJT

CONDITION: Given a tank unit, operations plan, supporting operations order, supporting landing plan, specific amphibious shipping platform, an open ocean training area, and beach suitable for landing operations.

STANDARD: Per the references.

PERFORMANCE STEPS:
1. Establish liaison with higher headquarters and assault shipping staffs as required.
2. Ensure that Team Embarkation Officer (TEO) and the ship's Combat Cargo Officer (CCO) are provided with list of vehicles and equipment to be embarked. Include a detailed listing of any ammunition, pyrotechnics, POL, hazardous materials or items requiring to be secured (communications equipment or weapons) to be embarked.
3. Supervise preparation of personnel, vehicles, and equipment for embarkation in accordance with instructions from the ships personnel and

special regulations governing the materials to be embarked.
4. Supervise movement of personnel, vehicles, equipment, and materials to embarkation points.
5. Supervise embarkation of personnel, vehicles, cargo, and equipment in accordance with embarkation plan and guidance from Ship's Combat Cargo Officer and Ship's personnel.
6. Ensure that all personnel, vehicles, cargo, and equipment is properly manifested and a copy of the manifest is given to the Ship's Combat Cargo Officer.

REFERENCES:
1. FM 3-20.15 Tank Platoon
2. JCS PUB 3-02 Joint Doctrine for Amphibious Operations
3. LFM 03 Amphibious Embarkation
4. MCO 3500.27B W/ERRATUM Operational Risk Management
5. MCO P4030.19 Preparation of Hazardous Material for Military Air Shipment
6. MCRP 3-31B Amphibious Ships and Landing Craft Data Book
7. MCWP 3-12 Marine Corps Tank Employment
8. MCWP 4-1 Logistics Operations
9. MCWP 5-1 Marine Corps Planning Process
10. TM 9-2350-264-10-1 Operator's Manual, Operator Controls, PMCS, and Operation Under Usual Conditions, Volume 1 of 2, Tank, Combat, Full-Tracked: 120-MM Gun, M1A1 2350-01-087-1095 General Abrams
11. TM 9-2350-264-10-2 Operator's Manual, Unusual Conditions, Troubleshooting, and Maintenance, Volume 2 of 2, Tank, Combat, Full-Tracked: 120-MM, M1A1 2350-01-087-1095, General Abrams

---

1802-EXPD-2613: Supervise Embarkation of Tank Unit onto Land Transportation

EVALUATION-CODED: NO **SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL:** 12 months

BILLETS: Battalion Staff Officer, Company Commander, Company Executive Officer, Platoon Commander

GRADES: 2NDLT, 1STLT, CAPT, MAJ

INITIAL TRAINING SETTING: MOJT

CONDITION: Given a tank unit, operations plan, supporting operations order, and specific land transportation platform.

STANDARD: Per the references.

PERFORMANCE STEPS:
1. Establish liaison with higher headquarters and staffs as required.
2. Ensure that Embarkation Officer is provided with list of vehicles and equipment to be embarked; include a detailed listing of any ammunition, pyrotechnics, POL, hazardous materials or items requiring to be secured (communications equipment or weapons) to be embarked.
3. Supervise preparation of personnel, vehicles, and equipment for embarkation in accordance with instructions from embarkation personnel and special regulations governing the materials to be embarked.
4. Supervise movement of personnel, vehicles, equipment, and materials to embarkation points.

5. Supervise embarkation of personnel, vehicles, cargo, and equipment in accordance with embarkation plan and guidance from embarkation personnel.
6. Ensure that all personnel, vehicles, cargo, and equipment is properly manifested and a copy of the manifest is given to the Embarkation Officer.

REFERENCES:
1. FM 3-20.15 Tank Platoon
2. MCO 3500.27B W/ERRATUM Operational Risk Management
3. MCWP 3-12 Marine Corps Tank Employment
4. MCWP 4-1 Logistics Operations
5. MCWP 5-1 Marine Corps Planning Process
6. TM 9-2350-264-10-1 Operator's Manual, Operator Controls, PMCS, and Operation Under Usual Conditions, Volume 1 of 2, Tank, Combat, Full-Tracked: 120-MM Gun, M1A1 2350-01-087-1095 General Abrams
7. TM 9-2350-264-10-2 Operator's Manual, Unusual Conditions, Troubleshooting, and Maintenance, Volume 2 of 2, Tank, Combat, Full-Tracked: 120-MM, M1A1 2350-01-087-1095, General Abrams

---

1802-EXPD-2614: Support Maritime Prepositioning Forces (MPF) Operations Using Automated Information Systems (AIS)

EVALUATION-CODED: NO **SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL:** 12 months

BILLETS: Battalion Staff Officer, Company Commander, Company Executive Officer

GRADES: 1STLT, CAPT, MAJ

INITIAL TRAINING SETTING: MOJT

CONDITION: Given the requirement to support MPF operations, commander's guidance, Operations Plan (OPLAN), access to Automated Information Systems (AIS), and references.

STANDARD: To ensure proper identification of logistics support requirements.

PERFORMANCE STEPS:
1. Participate in MPF planning.
2. Participate in unit marshalling and movement operations.
3. Participate in arrival and assembly operations.
4. Participate in regeneration operations.

REFERENCES:
1. FM 3-20.15 Tank Platoon
2. MCO 3500.27B W/ERRATUM Operational Risk Management
3. MCWP 3-12 Marine Corps Tank Employment
4. NWP 22-10 MPF Operations

1802-EXPD-2615: Plan Transportation Support for a Unit Operation/Deployment

EVALUATION-CODED: NO **SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL:** 12 months

BILLETS: Battalion Staff Officer, Company Commander, Company Executive Officer

GRADES: 1STLT, CAPT, MAJ

INITIAL TRAINING SETTING: MOJT

CONDITION: Given a unit's transportation requirement, operations order, listing of supplies, equipment, personnel, and references.

STANDARD: To ensure sufficient transportation assets are available to support unit deployment.

PERFORMANCE STEPS:
1. Review the operations plan to determine specific transportation requirements.
2. Identify Marine Corps strategic mobility concepts.
3. Identify U.S. Transportation Command (Strategic Mobility) concept.
4. Formulate an embarkation plan.
5. Forecast lift requirements.
6. Provide input regarding Force Deployment Planning and Execution (FDP&E).
7. Prepare requests for transportation.
8. Submit transportation requirements to higher headquarters.
9. Disseminate a movement schedule to the appropriate units.
10. Supervise embarkation/movement staging area.
11. Ensure dispatching procedures are correct.

REFERENCES:
1. FM 3-20.15 Tank Platoon
2. JOINT PUB 3-02 Joint Doctrine for Amphibious Operations
3. JOINT PUB 3-02.2 Joint Doctrine for Amphibious Embarkation
4. MCO 3500.27B W/ERRATUM Operational Risk Management
5. MCO 4500.9 Defense Transportation Regulations
6. MCO 4630.6 Military Airlift Command Requirement
7. MCO P4450.12 Storage and Handling of Hazardous Materials
8. MCO P4600.7 USMC Transportation Manual
9. MCO P5090.2 Environmental Compliance and Protection Manual
10. MCWP 3-12 Marine Corps Tank Employment
11. MCWP 5-1 Marine Corps Planning Process

1802-OTH-2701: Advise Supported Unit Commander on Tank Employment in Military Operations Other Than War (MOOTW)

EVALUATION-CODED: NO **SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL:** 12 months

BILLETS: Company Commander, Company Executive Officer, Platoon Commander

GRADES: 2NDLT, 1STLT, CAPT

INITIAL TRAINING SETTING: MOJT

CONDITION: Given a tank unit, supported unit, an operations order, tactical scenario involving MOOTW, specified threat, training area, and appropriate collateral equipment.

STANDARD: Per the references.

PERFORMANCE STEPS:
1. Advise on Tactics, Techniques, and Procedures (TTPs), established by the unit for MOOTW operations.
2. Advise on control measures required for mechanized forces in MOOTW operations.
3. Advise on CSS requirements for MOOTW operations.
4. Advise on employment of tanks in MOOTW operations.

REFERENCES:
1. FM 3-20.15 Tank Platoon
2. MCO 3500.27B W/ERRATUM Operational Risk Management
3. MCWP 3-12 Marine Corps Tank Employment
4. MCWP 3-33 Military Operations Other Than War (MOOTW)

1802-TAC-2801: Conduct Breakout From Encirclement

EVALUATION-CODED: NO **SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL:** 12 months

BILLETS: Company Commander

GRADES: CAPT

INITIAL TRAINING SETTING: FORMAL

CONDITION: Given an M1A1 tank unit, a supported infantry unit, operations order directing a breakout from an encirclement, tactical scenario involving a unit encircled by enemy forces, friendly unit that can not relieve the encircled force but can conduct a battle handover with them at a designated position, specified treat, training area suitable for mechanized operations, and references.

STANDARD: To evacuate all dead and wounded personnel if possible, destroy all equipment designated to be left behind, move as many CSS assets as possible and conduct a battle handover with a stationary friendly unit.

PERFORMANCE STEPS:
1. Issue warning order to unit.
2. Task organize to establish elements to serve as: assault force, security force, CSS element and escort, rear guard, and reserve element.
3. Coordinate with friendly force outside the encirclement for link up/battle handover, including: control measures, frequencies, call signs, and recognition signals, fire support, and CSS requirements upon link up.
4. Plan breakout to include: assault on enemy at breakout point, consolidation, security, and movement of CSS assets, rear guard/reserve to protect movement, disengagement from enemy forces if possible, movement from encirclement and link up with nearest friendly unit, battle handover with stationary friendly unit, transportation of dead and wounded from perimeter before and during the breakout, destruction of equipment designated to be left behind, procedures for mechanical casualties during breakout and movement, and procedures for MEDEVACS during breakout and movement.
5. Conduct assault of enemy position at break out point.

6. Move security force elements out of perimeter to defensible position that can cover the break out and the movement of the CSS elements.
7. Move CSS element with security to position established by security force.
8. Assault force holds breach open while reserve/rear guard breaks contact and exits old perimeter.
9. Reserve/rear guard conduct battle handover with assault force.
10. Assault force disengages from the enemy at battle handover and links up with designated friendly unit as directed, based on its current strength, mobility, and ability to conduct further operations. Assault force may be absorbed into one of the other elements.
11. Breakout unit conducts disengagement if possible and movement with all around security to designated friendly unit for link up and battle handover.
12. Breakout unit conducts link up and battle handover with designated friendly unit.
13. Breakout unit conducts rearward passage of lines and moves to assembly area to conduct consolidation and reorganization in anticipation of further operations.

REFERENCES:
1. FM 3-20.15 Tank Platoon
2. MCO 3500.27B W/ERRATUM Operational Risk Management
3. MCWP 3-12 Marine Corps Tank Employment

1802-TAC-2802: Conduct a Launch Site Reconnaissance

EVALUATION-CODED: NO **SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL:** 12 months

BILLETS: Platoon Commander

GRADES: 2NDLT

INITIAL TRAINING SETTING: MOJT

CONDITION: Given an M1A1 tank unit, AVLB attached, operations order, a tactical scenario requiring an attack across broken terrain, specified threat, and references.

STANDARD: To determine the site's suitability for employing the M60A1 AVLB in support of the operation.

REFERENCES:
1. FM 3-20.15 Tank Platoon
2. MCO 3500.27B W/ERRATUM Operational Risk Management
3. MCWP 3-12 Marine Corps Tank Employment

1802-TAC-2803: Select a Launch Site

EVALUATION-CODED: NO **SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL:** 12 months

BILLETS: Platoon Commander

GRADES: 2NDLT

INITIAL TRAINING SETTING: MOJT

CONDITION: Given an M1A1 tank unit, AVLB attached, operations order, a tactical scenario requiring an attack across broken terrain with a wet or dry gap of 57 feet or less, specified threat, and references.

STANDARD: So that it allows for a successful and timely launch and for the entire unit to cross the gap as safely and quickly as possible.

PERFORMANCE STEPS:
1. Determine the width of the gap.
2. Evaluate far shore and near shore banks.
3. Evaluate access and obstacles.
4. Evaluate slope and approach.
5. Determine best launch site based on evaluated criteria.

REFERENCES:
1. FM 3-20.15 Tank Platoon
2. MCO 3500.27B W/ERRATUM Operational Risk Management
3. MCWP 3-12 Marine Corps Tank Employment

1802-TAC-2804: Advise Supported Unit Commander on Tank Employment in Jungles and Heavy Forests

EVALUATION-CODED: NO **SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL:** 12 months

BILLETS: Platoon Commander

GRADES: 2NDLT

INITIAL TRAINING SETTING: MOJT

CONDITION: Given an M1A1 tank unit, a supported unit, operations order, tactical scenario involving jungle or heavy forests, specified threat, training area, appropriate collateral equipment, and references.

STANDARD: To support the commander's intent and scheme of maneuver.

PERFORMANCE STEPS:
1. Advise on Tactics, Techniques, and Procedures (TTPs), established by the unit for operations in jungles and heavy forests.
2. Advise on control measures required for mechanized forces in operations in jungles and heavy forests.
3. Advise on CSS requirements for operations in jungles and heavy forests.

REFERENCES:
1. FM 3-20.15 Tank Platoon
2. MCO 3500.27B W/ERRATUM Operational Risk Management
3. MCWP 3-12 Marine Corps Tank Employment
4. MCWP 3-35.5 Jungle Operations

1802-TAC-2805: Advise Supported Unit Commander on Tank Employment in Urban Terrain

EVALUATION-CODED: NO **SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL:** 12 months

BILLETS: Platoon Commander

GRADES: 2NDLT

INITIAL TRAINING SETTING: MOJT

CONDITION: Given an M1A1 tank unit, a supported unit, operations order, tactical scenario involving urban terrain, specified threat, training area, appropriate collateral equipment, and references.

STANDARD: To support the commander's intent and scheme of maneuver.

PERFORMANCE STEPS:
1. Advise on Tactics, Techniques, and Procedures (TTPs), established by the unit for urban terrain operations.
2. Advise on control measures required for mechanized forces in urban terrain operations.
3. Advise on CSS requirements for urban terrain operations.

REFERENCES:
1. FM 3-20.15 Tank Platoon
2. MCO 3500.27B W/ERRATUM Operational Risk Management
3. MCWP 3-12 Marine Corps Tank Employment
4. MCWP 3-35.3 Military Operations on Urbanized Terrain

1802-TAC-2806: Advise Supported Unit Commander on Tank Employment in Desert Operations

EVALUATION-CODED: NO **SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL:** 12 months

BILLETS: Platoon Commander

GRADES: 2NDLT

INITIAL TRAINING SETTING: MOJT

CONDITION: Given an M1A1 tank unit, a supported unit, operations order, tactical scenario involving desert operations, specified threat, training area, appropriate collateral equipment, and references.

STANDARD: To support commander's intent and scheme of maneuver.

PERFORMANCE STEPS:
1. Advise on Tactics, Techniques, and Procedures (TTPs), established by the unit for desert operations.
2. Advise on control measures required for mechanized forces in desert operations.
3. Advise on CSS requirements for desert operations.

REFERENCES:
1. FM 3-20.15 Tank Platoon
2. MCO 3500.27B W/ERRATUM Operational Risk Management
3. MCWP 3-12 Marine Corps Tank Employment
4. MCWP 3-35.6 Desert Operations

1802-TAC-2807: Advise Supported Unit Commander on Tank Employment in Mountain Operations

EVALUATION-CODED: NO **SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL:** 12 months

BILLETS: Platoon Commander

GRADES: 2NDLT

INITIAL TRAINING SETTING: MOJT

CONDITION: Given an M1A1 tank unit, a supported unit, operations order, tactical scenario involving mountain operations, specified threat, training area, appropriate collateral equipment, and references.

STANDARD: To support commander's intent and scheme of maneuver.

PERFORMANCE STEPS:
1. Advise on Tactics, Techniques, and Procedures (TTPs), established by the unit for mountain operations.
2. Advise on control measures required for mechanized forces in mountain operations.
3. Advise on CSS requirements for mountain operations.

REFERENCES:
1. FM 3-20.15 Tank Platoon
2. MCO 3500.27B W/ERRATUM Operational Risk Management
3. MCWP 3-12 Marine Corps Tank Employment
4. MCWP 3-35.2 Mountain Operations

1802-TAC-2808: Advise Supported Unit Commander on Tank Employment in Cold Weather Operations

EVALUATION-CODED: NO **SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL:** 12 months

BILLETS: Platoon Commander

GRADES: 2NDLT

INITIAL TRAINING SETTING: MOJT
CONDITION: Given an M1A1 tank unit, a supported unit, operations order, tactical scenario involving cold weather, specified threat, training area, appropriate collateral equipment, and references.

STANDARD: To support commander's intent and scheme of maneuver.

PERFORMANCE STEPS:
1. Advise on Tactics, Techniques, and Procedures (TTPs), established by the unit for cold weather operations.
2. Advise on control measures required for mechanized forces in cold weather operations.
3. Advise on CSS requirements for cold weather operations.

REFERENCES:
1. FM 3-20.15 Tank Platoon
2. MCO 3500.27B W/ERRATUM Operational Risk Management
3. MCWP 3-12 Marine Corps Tank Employment
4. MCWP 3-35.1 Cold Weather Operations

1802-TAC-2809: Prepare Tank for Employment in Urban Terrain

EVALUATION-CODED: NO **SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL:** 12 months

BILLETS: Platoon Commander

GRADES: 2NDLT

INITIAL TRAINING SETTING: MOJT

CONDITION: Given an M1A1 tank, a supported unit, operations order, tactical scenario involving urban terrain, specified threat, training area, appropriate collateral equipment, and references.

STANDARD: To support the commander's intent and scheme of maneuver.

PERFORMANCE STEPS:
1. Secure hatches.

REFERENCES:
1. FM 3-20.15 Tank Platoon
2. MCO 3500.27B W/ERRATUM Operational Risk Management
3. MCWP 3-12 Marine Corps Tank Employment
4. MCWP 3-35.3 Military Operations on Urbanized Terrain

TANK T&R MANUAL

CHAPTER 10

INDIVIDUAL TRAINING

1812 TANK CREWMAN

	PARAGRAPH	PAGE
PURPOSE	10001	10-2
EVENT CODING	10002	10-2
ADMINISTRATIVE NOTES	10003	10-2
PREREQUISITES	10004	10-2
BILLET DESCRIPTION/CORE CAPABILITIES	10005	10-3
INDEX OF EVENTS BY LEVEL	10006	10-4
1000-LEVEL 1812 INDIVIDUAL EVENTS	10007	10-5
2000-LEVEL 1812 INDIVIDUAL EVENTS	10008	10-54

TANK T&R MANUAL

CHAPTER 10

INDIVIDUAL TRAINING

1812 TANK CREWMAN

10001. PURPOSE. The purpose of 1000-level training is to provide the knowledge and skills required to perform as a Tank Crewman. 2000-level events are Core Plus events, with initial training settings of either MOJT or through resident/distance learning PME.

10002. EVENT CODING. Events in the T&R manual are depicted with a 12 field alphanumeric system, i.e. XXXX-XXXX-XXXX. This chapter utilizes the following methodology:

a. Field one - Each event in this chapter begins with "1812" indicating that the event is for Tank Crewmen.

b. Field two - This field is alpha characters indicating a functional area. Functional areas for Tank Crewmen are:

CBTS - Combat Support	CMDC - Command and Control
CSS - Combat Service Support	EXPD - Expeditionary Operations
GNRY - Gunnery	OTH - Other Operations
TAC - Tactical Operations	VOPS - Vehicle Operations

c. Field three - This field provides numerical sequencing.

10003. ADMINISTRATIVE NOTES. Each Event may contain a paragraph that describes internal and external Support Requirements the unit and Marines will need to complete the event. Ranges/Training Areas are described in this section with plain-language description. They are also described using the Range/Facility Codes that identify the type of range and/or training area needed to accomplish the Event. Marines can use the codes to find information about available ranges at their geographic location by using the web-based Range/Training Area Management System (see TECOM website). Ultimate use of the Range/Training Area Code is to relate ranges to readiness by identifying those Events that cannot be accomplished at a certain location due to lack of ranges.

10004. PREREQUISITES

The Marine Tank Crewman will have completed the Marine Armor Crewman Course, Ft. Knox, KY.

10005. BILLET DESCRIPTION/CORE CAPABILITIES

CAREER PROGRESSION PHILOSOPHY. The Tank Crewman will have completed the Marine Armor Crewman Course, Ft. Knox, KY. Upon graduation, the Tank Crewman will conduct additional Level 2000 training in a tank unit in a variety of billets. Level 2 training continues through completion of Career, Intermediate, and Advanced Level Professional Military Education (PME), available through resident, seminar and distance learning courses.

BILLET: Tank Crewman. The Tank Crewman carries out the orders of the Tank Platoon Commander. He is proficient with all T/O weapons on the M1A1 tank and first echelon preventive maintenance checks and services. He is responsible for executing all duties commensurate with the tactical and technical responsibilities as an M1A1 tank crewman.

Core Capabilities

1. Proficient in use and employment of all weapons organic to the M1A1 tank.
2. Engages targets utilizing all organic weapon systems on the M1A1 tank.
3. Conducts preventive maintenance checks and services on assigned tanks and equipment.
4. Land navigates to designated points using a topographic map, lensatic compass, protractor, and global positioning equipment while dismounted and mounted.
5. Performs self-aid and buddy aid.
6. Assumes mission oriented protective posture against the effects of chemical and biological agents.
7. Communicates using proper communications procedures with organic wired and wireless communications.
8. Capable of preparing driver's, loader's, and gunner's stations on the M1A1 tank for operation.
9. Conducts tactical operations as part of a tank platoon.
10. Proficient marksman with T/O weapon.
11. Capable of performing operator maintenance for, and is proficient in employment of, the track width mine plow and deep water fording kit.
12. Proficient in proper combat reporting procedures.
13. Proficient at identifying threat and friendly combat vehicles and aircraft.
14. Maintains ordnance vehicle log book.
15. Proficient at recovery operations.
16. Camouflages M1A1 tank.

10006. INDEX OF EVENTS BY LEVEL

Event Code	Eval Code	Event	Page
		1000 LEVEL	
1812-GNRY-1101 1812-GNRY-1129		Gunnery related individual events	10-5 10-26
1812-CMDC-1201 1812-CMDC-1205		Command and Control individual events	10-26 10-29
1812-VOPS-1301 1812-VOPS-1327		M1A1 tank Vehicle Operations individual events	10-29 10-48
1812-CBTS-1401 1812-CBTS-1402		Combat Support individual events	10-48 10-49
1812-CSS- 1501		Combat Service Support individual events	10-49 10-50
1812-EXPD-1600		No entries for Expeditionary Operations individual events	No Entry
1812-OTH- 1701 1812-OTH- 1702		Other Operations	10-50 10-51
1812-TAC- 1801 1812-TAC- 1803		Tactical Operations individual events	10-51 10-53
		2000 LEVEL	
1812-GNRY-2101 1812-GNRY-2108		Gunnery related individual events	10-54 10-59
1812-CMDC-2201 1812-CMDC-2243		Command and Control individual events	10-59 10-89
1812-VOPS-2301 1812-VOPS-2328		M1A1 tank Vehicle Operations individual events	10-89 10-106
1812-CBTS-2401 1812-CBTS-2428		Combat Support individual events	10-106 10-128
1812-CSS- 2501 1812-CSS- 2526		Combat Service Support individual events	10-129 10-150
1812-EXPD-2601 1812-EXPD-2613		Expeditionary Operations individual events	10-150 10-161
1812-OTH- 2701 1812-OTH- 2702		Other Operations individual events	10-162 10-163
1812-TAC- 2801 1812-TAC- 2878		Tactical Operations individual events	10-163 10-215

10007. 1000-LEVEL 1812 INDIVIDUAL EVENTS

1812-GNRY-1101: Perform Preventive Maintenance Checks and Services (PMCS) on M240 7.62mm Machine Gun on M1A1 Tank

EVALUATION-CODED: NO **SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL:** 12 months

BILLETS: Tank Crewman

GRADES: PVT, PFC, LCPL, CPL, SGT, SSGT, GYSGT

INITIAL TRAINING SETTING: FORMAL

CONDITION: Given an M1A1 tank, M240 7.62mm machine gun, and appropriate cleaning equipment.

STANDARD: Per the references.

PERFORMANCE STEPS:
1. Conduct a safety check on the weapon, ensuring that it is safe for disassembly.
2. Disassemble the weapon.
3. Inspect, clean, and lubricate the components.
4. Record worn or defective parts in equipment record jacket, tag defective parts and inform armorer.
5. Assemble the weapon.
6. Conduct a function check.

REFERENCES:
1. FM 3-20.12 Tank Gunnery
2. MCO 3500.27B W/ERRATUM Operational Risk Management
3. MCWP 3-15.1 Machine Guns and Machine Gun Gunnery
4. TM 9-1005-313-10 Maintenance Manual, 7.62mm Machinegun M240G
5. TM 9-2350-264-10-1 Operator's Manual, Operator Controls, PMCS, and Operation Under Usual Conditions, Volume 1 of 2, Tank, Combat, Full-Tracked: 120-MM Gun, M1A1 2350-01-087-1095 General Abrams
6. TM 9-2350-264-10-2 Operator's Manual, Unusual Conditions, Troubleshooting, and Maintenance, Volume 2 of 2, Tank, Combat, Full-Tracked: 120-MM, M1A1 2350-01-087-1095, General Abrams

---

1812-GNRY-1102: Engage Targets with M240 Machine Gun From Loader's Station on M1A1 Tank

EVALUATION-CODED: NO **SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL:** 6 months

BILLETS: Tank Crewman

GRADES: PVT, PFC, LCPL

INITIAL TRAINING SETTING: FORMAL

CONDITION: Given a moving or stationary M1A1 tank with crew, a loaded M240 machine gun mounted at loader's station, ammunition, and targets within effective range.

STANDARD: Until the targets are suppressed, destroyed, or the order "Cease Fire" is given.

PERFORMANCE STEPS:
1. Adjust loader's seat for standing on.
2. Pull skate lock 90 degrees to center position.
3. Turn azimuth lock counterclockwise several times until loose.
4. Pull out elevation lock pin and twist 1/4-turn to unlock machine gun.
5. Push safety left to "F".
6. Charge the machine gun.
7. Execute short halt if moving.
8. Fire the machine gun; adjust as needed to hit the target.
9. Push safety right to "S".

REFERENCES:
1. FM 3-20.12 Tank Gunnery
2. MCO 3500.27B W/ERRATUM Operational Risk Management
3. MCWP 3-15.1 Machine Guns and Machine Gun Gunnery
4. TM 9-1005-313-10 Maintenance Manual, 7.62mm Machinegun M240G
5. TM 9-2350-264-10-1 Operator's Manual, Operator Controls, PMCS, and Operation Under Usual Conditions, Volume 1 of 2, Tank, Combat, Full-Tracked: 120-MM Gun, M1A1 2350-01-087-1095 General Abrams
6. TM 9-2350-264-10-2 Operator's Manual, Unusual Conditions, Troubleshooting, and Maintenance, Volume 2 of 2, Tank, Combat, Full-Tracked: 120-MM, M1A1 2350-01-087-1095, General Abrams

---

1812-GNRY-1103: Apply Failure-to-Fire Procedures for M240 7.62mm Machine Gun on M1A1 Tank

EVALUATION-CODED: NO **SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL:** 6 months

BILLETS: Tank Crewman

GRADES: PVT, PFC, LCPL

INITIAL TRAINING SETTING: FORMAL

CONDITION: Given an M1A1 tank, M240 7.62mm machine gun, and appropriate collateral equipment.

STANDARD: Per the references.

PERFORMANCE STEPS:
1. Alert crew by announcing "STOPPAGE".
2. Pull bolt to rear and visually inspect chamber.
3. Release bolt and attempt to fire.
4. Make sure trigger operating lever is correctly adjusted.
5. Reload and attempt to fire.
6. If weapon still does not fire, clear weapon and troubleshoot.

REFERENCES:
1. FM 3-20.12 Tank Gunnery
2. MCO 3500.27B W/ERRATUM Operational Risk Management
3. MCWP 3-15.1 Machine Guns and Machine Gun Gunnery

4. TM 9-1005-313-10 Maintenance Manual, 7.62mm Machinegun M240G
5. TM 9-2350-264-10-1 Operator's Manual, Operator Controls, PMCS, and Operation Under Usual Conditions, Volume 1 of 2, Tank, Combat, Full-Tracked: 120-MM Gun, M1A1 2350-01-087-1095 General Abrams
6. TM 9-2350-264-10-2 Operator's Manual, Unusual Conditions, Troubleshooting, and Maintenance, Volume 2 of 2, Tank, Combat, Full-Tracked: 120-MM, M1A1 2350-01-087-1095, General Abrams

---

1812-GNRY-1104: Perform Preventive Maintenance Checks and Services (PMCS) on M48 .50 Caliber HB Machine Gun on M1A1 Tank

EVALUATION-CODED: NO **SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL:** 12 months

BILLETS: Tank Crewman

GRADES: PVT, PFC, LCPL, CPL, SGT, SSGT, GYSGT

INITIAL TRAINING SETTING: FORMAL

CONDITION: Given an M1A1 tank, M48 .50 cal HB machine gun, and appropriate cleaning equipment.

STANDARD: Per the references.

PERFORMANCE STEPS:
1. Conduct a safety check on the weapon, ensuring that it is safe for disassembly.
2. Disassemble the weapon.
3. Inspect, clean, and lubricate the components.
4. Record worn or defective parts in equipment record jacket, tag defective parts and inform armorer.
5. Assemble the weapon.
6. Conduct a function check.

REFERENCES:
1. FM 3-20.12 Tank Gunnery
2. MCO 3500.27B W/ERRATUM Operational Risk Management
3. MCWP 3-15.1 Machine Guns and Machine Gun Gunnery
4. TM 9-1005-213-10 Machine Gun, Caliber .50, Browning
5. TM 9-2350-264-10-1 Operator's Manual, Operator Controls, PMCS, and Operation Under Usual Conditions, Volume 1 of 2, Tank, Combat, Full-Tracked: 120-MM Gun, M1A1 2350-01-087-1095 General Abrams
6. TM 9-2350-264-10-2 Operator's Manual, Unusual Conditions, Troubleshooting, and Maintenance, Volume 2 of 2, Tank, Combat, Full-Tracked: 120-MM, M1A1 2350-01-087-1095, General Abrams

---

1812-GNRY-1105: Set Headspace and Timing on M48 .50 Caliber HB Machine Gun on M1A1 Tank

EVALUATION-CODED: NO **SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL:** 6 months

BILLETS: Tank Crewman

GRADES: PVT, PFC, LCPL, CPL, SGT, SSGT, GYSGT

INITIAL TRAINING SETTING: FORMAL

CONDITION: Given an M1A1 tank, M48 .50 caliber HB machine gun, and appropriate collateral equipment.

STANDARD: Per the references.

PERFORMANCE STEPS:
1. Conduct safety check on weapon.
2. Set headspace.
3. Set timing.

REFERENCES:
1. FM 3-20.12 Tank Gunnery
2. MCO 3500.27B W/ERRATUM Operational Risk Management
3. MCWP 3-15.1 Machine Guns and Machine Gun Gunnery
4. TM 9-1005-213-10 Machine Gun, Caliber .50, Browning
5. TM 9-2350-264-10-1 Operator's Manual, Operator Controls, PMCS, and Operation Under Usual Conditions, Volume 1 of 2, Tank, Combat, Full-Tracked: 120-MM Gun, M1A1 2350-01-087-1095 General Abrams
6. TM 9-2350-264-10-2 Operator's Manual, Unusual Conditions, Troubleshooting, and Maintenance, Volume 2 of 2, Tank, Combat, Full-Tracked: 120-MM, M1A1 2350-01-087-1095, General Abrams

---

1812-GNRY-1106: Install M48 .50 Caliber HB Machine Gun on M1A1 Tank

EVALUATION-CODED: NO **SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL:** 6 months

BILLETS: Tank Crewman

GRADES: PVT, PFC, LCPL, CPL, SGT, SSGT, GYSGT

INITIAL TRAINING SETTING: FORMAL

CONDITION: Given an M1A1 tank, M48 .50 caliber HB machine gun, and appropriate collateral equipment.

STANDARD: Per the references.

PERFORMANCE STEPS:
1. Pull front and rear mounting pins from mount.
2. Clear machine gun
3. Put machine gun receiver in mount.
4. Ensure butterfly trigger is under roller.
5. Install front and rear mounting pins.
6. Adjust roller on trigger as necessary.
7. Install barrel, set headspace and timing.
8. Check equilibrator.
9. Adjust equilibrator if necessary.
10. Set machine gun to safety to the left until "F" can be seen.
11. Charge the machine gun.
12. Set SAFE/ARMED switch to ARMED position, check ARMED light is lit.

13. Grasp CWS handle and push button on top of handle to test machine gun firing mechanism. A click should be heard, if not notify unit maintenance.
14. Set machine gun safety so that "S" can be seen.
15. Set SAFE/ARMED switch to SAFE position, make sure ARMED light is not lit.
16. Repeat this process when mounting M240 machine gun.

REFERENCES:
1. FM 3-20.12 Tank Gunnery
2. MCO 3500.27B W/ERRATUM Operational Risk Management
3. MCWP 3-15.1 Machine Guns and Machine Gun Gunnery
4. TM 9-1005-213-10 Machine Gun, Caliber .50, Browning
5. TM 9-2350-264-10-1 Operator's Manual, Operator Controls, PMCS, and Operation Under Usual Conditions, Volume 1 of 2, Tank, Combat, Full-Tracked: 120-MM Gun, M1A1 2350-01-087-1095 General Abrams
6. TM 9-2350-264-10-2 Operator's Manual, Unusual Conditions, Troubleshooting, and Maintenance, Volume 2 of 2, Tank, Combat, Full-Tracked: 120-MM, M1A1 2350-01-087-1095, General Abrams

---

1812-GNRY-1107: Boresight M48 .50 Caliber Machine Gun on M1A1 Tank

EVALUATION-CODED: NO **SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL:** 6 months

BILLETS: Tank Crewman

GRADES: PVT, PFC, LCPL, CPL, SGT, SSGT, GYSGT

INITIAL TRAINING SETTING: FORMAL

CONDITION: Given an M1A1 tank with crew, SL-3 items, a cleared and mounted M48 .50 caliber machine gun, and the references.

STANDARD: So that the vertical and horizontal set screws are tight.

PERFORMANCE STEPS:
1. Position tank on level ground.
2. Select a boresight target with a well-defined right angle at a range as near 500 meters as possible.
3. Lase on target using commander's handle, if possible, to confirm range to boresight target.
4. Ensure that the weapon is clear.
5. Align center of barrel on target's defined right angle.
6. Loosen setscrew to allow control of horizontal adjustment control screw.
7. Adjust horizontal adjustment control screw, placing vertical line of boresight cross on left edge of target.
8. Tighten setscrew.
9. Loosen setscrew to allow control of vertical adjustment control screw.
10. Adjust setscrew to allow control of vertical adjustment control screw.
11. Tighten setscrew.

REFERENCES:
1. FM 3-20.12 Tank Gunnery
2. MCO 3500.27B W/ERRATUM Operational Risk Management
3. TM 08953A-10/1-3 Operator's Manual for Boresighting and Zeroing M1A1 Tank

Armament
4. TM 9-1005-213-10 Machine Gun, Caliber .50, Browning
5. TM 9-2350-264-10-1 Operator's Manual, Operator Controls, PMCS, and Operation Under Usual Conditions, Volume 1 of 2, Tank, Combat, Full-Tracked: 120-MM Gun, M1A1 2350-01-087-1095 General Abrams
6. TM 9-2350-264-10-2 Operator's Manual, Unusual Conditions, Troubleshooting, and Maintenance, Volume 2 of 2, Tank, Combat, Full-Tracked: 120-MM, M1A1 2350-01-087-1095, General Abrams

---

1812-GNRY-1108: Load M48 .50 Caliber HB Machine Gun on M1A1 Tank

EVALUATION-CODED: NO **SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL:** 6 months

BILLETS: Tank Crewman

GRADES: PVT, PFC, LCPL, CPL, SGT, SSGT, GYSGT

INITIAL TRAINING SETTING: FORMAL

CONDITION: Given an M1A1 tank, M48 .50 caliber HB machine gun, "dummy" training ammunition, and appropriate collateral equipment.

STANDARD: Per the references.

PERFORMANCE STEPS:
1. Load ammunition can into cradle.
2. Load machine gun.
3. Secure ammunition box latch.

REFERENCES:
1. FM 3-20.12 Tank Gunnery
2. MCO 3500.27B W/ERRATUM Operational Risk Management
3. MCWP 3-15.1 Machine Guns and Machine Gun Gunnery
4. TM 9-1005-213-10 Machine Gun, Caliber .50, Browning
5. TM 9-2350-264-10-1 Operator's Manual, Operator Controls, PMCS, and Operation Under Usual Conditions, Volume 1 of 2, Tank, Combat, Full-Tracked: 120-MM Gun, M1A1 2350-01-087-1095 General Abrams
6. TM 9-2350-264-10-2 Operator's Manual, Unusual Conditions, Troubleshooting, and Maintenance, Volume 2 of 2, Tank, Combat, Full-Tracked: 120-MM, M1A1 2350-01-087-1095, General Abrams

---

1812-GNRY-1109: Engage Targets with M48 .50 Caliber Machine Gun on M1A1 Tank

EVALUATION-CODED: NO **SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL:** 6 months

BILLETS: Tank Crewman

GRADES: PVT, PFC, LCPL, CPL, SGT, SSGT, GYSGT

INITIAL TRAINING SETTING: FORMAL

CONDITION: Given a stationary M1A1 tank, mounted and loaded M48 .50 caliber machine gun, and targets.

STANDARD: Until the targets are suppressed or destroyed.

PERFORMANCE STEPS:
1. Move butterfly trigger safety until "F" can be seen.
2. Set SAFE/ARMED switch to ARMED position.
3. Lay aiming point on target.
4. Alert crew on intercom by announcing "Caliber .50."
5. Fire commander's weapon.
6. When all firing is complete, announce "TC COMPLETE."
7. Set SAFE/ARMED switch to SAFE position.
8. Move butterfly trigger safety until "S" can be seen.

REFERENCES:
1. FM 3-20.12 Tank Gunnery
2. MCO 3500.27B W/ERRATUM Operational Risk Management
3. MCWP 3-15.1 Machine Guns and Machine Gun Gunnery
4. TM 9-1005-213-10 Machine Gun, Caliber .50, Browning
5. TM 9-2350-264-10-1 Operator's Manual, Operator Controls, PMCS, and Operation Under Usual Conditions, Volume 1 of 2, Tank, Combat, Full-Tracked: 120-MM Gun, M1A1 2350-01-087-1095 General Abrams
6. TM 9-2350-264-10-2 Operator's Manual, Unusual Conditions, Troubleshooting, and Maintenance, Volume 2 of 2, Tank, Combat, Full-Tracked: 120-MM, M1A1 2350-01-087-1095, General Abrams

---

1812-GNRY-1110: Apply Failure-to-Fire Procedures for M48 .50 Caliber HB Machine Gun on M1A1 Tank

EVALUATION-CODED: NO **SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL:** 6 months

BILLETS: Tank Crewman

GRADES: PVT, PFC, LCPL, CPL, SGT, SSGT, GYSGT

INITIAL TRAINING SETTING: FORMAL

CONDITION: Given an M1A1 tank, M48 .50 caliber HB machine gun, which has failed to fire, and appropriate collateral equipment.

STANDARD: Per the references.

PERFORMANCE STEPS:
1. Turn turret power off before attempting to inspect the weapon.
2. Determine whether there is a stoppage or a malfunction.
3. Charge the weapon and attempt to fire.
4. If the weapon fires, continue the mission.
5. If the weapon fails to fire, follow the required safety procedures and inspect the weapon.
6. Conduct appropriate corrective action as necessary.

REFERENCES:
1. FM 3-20.12 Tank Gunnery
2. MCO 3500.27B W/ERRATUM Operational Risk Management
3. MCWP 3-15.1 Machine Guns and Machine Gun Gunnery
4. TM 9-1005-213-10 Machine Gun, Caliber .50, Browning

5. TM 9-2350-264-10-1 Operator's Manual, Operator Controls, PMCS, and Operation Under Usual Conditions, Volume 1 of 2, Tank, Combat, Full-Tracked: 120-MM Gun, M1A1 2350-01-087-1095 General Abrams
6. TM 9-2350-264-10-2 Operator's Manual, Unusual Conditions, Troubleshooting, and Maintenance, Volume 2 of 2, Tank, Combat, Full-Tracked: 120-MM, M1A1 2350-01-087-1095, General Abrams

---

1812-GNRY-1111: Conduct Loader Prepare-to-Fire Checks and Services on M1A1 Tank

EVALUATION-CODED: NO **SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL:** 6 months

BILLETS: Tank Crewman

GRADES: PVT, PFC, LCPL

INITIAL TRAINING SETTING: FORMAL

CONDITION: Given a stationary M1A1 tank with crew and SL-3 items.

STANDARD: Per the references.

PERFORMANCE STEPS:
1. Stow ammunition, or check ammunition stowage if previously stowed.
2. Ensure loader's M240 machine gun mounting is secure; check operation of the mount.
3. Position loader's guards and safety guard frame for firing.
4. Operate breech operating group manually; ensure there is no binding of breechblock; check for wear, nicks, dirt or corrosion; clean and lubricate.
5. Remove and wring oil from recoil fluid collector sponge located in tray beneath gun mount.
6. Check replenisher.
7. Report deficiencies to organizational maintenance.

REFERENCES:
1. FM 3-20.12 Tank Gunnery
2. MCO 3500.27B W/ERRATUM Operational Risk Management
3. TM 9-2350-264-10-1 Operator's Manual, Operator Controls, PMCS, and Operation Under Usual Conditions, Volume 1 of 2, Tank, Combat, Full-Tracked: 120-MM Gun, M1A1 2350-01-087-1095 General Abrams
4. TM 9-2350-264-10-2 Operator's Manual, Unusual Conditions, Troubleshooting, and Maintenance, Volume 2 of 2, Tank, Combat, Full-Tracked: 120-MM, M1A1 2350-01-087-1095, General Abrams

---

1812-GNRY-1112: Conduct Gunner Prepare-to-Fire Checks and Services on M1A1 Tank

EVALUATION-CODED: NO **SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL:** 6 months

BILLETS: Tank Crewman

GRADES: PVT, PFC, LCPL, CPL, SGT, SSGT, GYSGT

INITIAL TRAINING SETTING: FORMAL

CONDITION: Given a stationary M1A1 tank with crew and SL-3 items.

STANDARD: Per the references.

PERFORMANCE STEPS:
1. Conduct zero pressure check.
2. Check GPS.
3. Check GAS.
4. Conduct TIS checkout.
5. Conduct computer self-test.
6. Conduct computer data check.
7. Conduct crosswind sensor check.
8. Conduct firing circuit test.
9. Mount gunner's M240.
10. Check coax ammunition, stowage, and feed chute.

REFERENCES:
1. FM 3-20.12 Tank Gunnery
2. MCO 3500.27B W/ERRATUM Operational Risk Management
3. TM 9-2350-264-10-1 Operator's Manual, Operator Controls, PMCS, and Operation Under Usual Conditions, Volume 1 of 2, Tank, Combat, Full-Tracked: 120-MM Gun, M1A1 2350-01-087-1095 General Abrams
4. TM 9-2350-264-10-2 Operator's Manual, Unusual Conditions, Troubleshooting, and Maintenance, Volume 2 of 2, Tank, Combat, Full-Tracked: 120-MM, M1A1 2350-01-087-1095, General Abrams

---

1812-GNRY-1113: Boresight 120mm Gun on M1A1 Tank

EVALUATION-CODED: NO **SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL:** 6 months

BILLETS: Tank Crewman

GRADES: PVT, PFC, LCPL, CPL, SGT, SSGT, GYSGT

INITIAL TRAINING SETTING: FORMAL

CONDITION: Given an M1A1 tank with crew, SL-3 items, M27A1 Muzzle Boresight Device (MBD), boresight target, and references.

STANDARD: So that the sights are aligned with the main gun, including initial alignment of the Muzzle Reference Sensor (MRS).

PERFORMANCE STEPS:
1. Prepare to boresight.
2. Boresight GPS.
3. Align MRS.
4. Align TIS.
5. Boresight GAS.

REFERENCES:
1. FM 3-20.12 Tank Gunnery
2. MCO 3500.27B W/ERRATUM Operational Risk Management

3. TM 08953A-10/1-3 Operator's Manual for Boresighting and Zeroing M1A1 Tank Armament
4. TM 9-2350-264-10-1 Operator's Manual, Operator Controls, PMCS, and Operation Under Usual Conditions, Volume 1 of 2, Tank, Combat, Full-Tracked: 120-MM Gun, M1A1 2350-01-087-1095 General Abrams
5. TM 9-2350-264-10-2 Operator's Manual, Unusual Conditions, Troubleshooting, and Maintenance, Volume 2 of 2, Tank, Combat, Full-Tracked: 120-MM, M1A1 2350-01-087-1095, General Abrams

---

1812-GNRY-1114: Zero 120mm Gun on M1A1 Tank

EVALUATION-CODED: NO **SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL:** 6 months

BILLETS: Tank Crewman

GRADES: PVT, PFC, LCPL, CPL, SGT, SSGT, GYSGT

INITIAL TRAINING SETTING: FORMAL

CONDITION: Given a stationary, boresighted, operational M1A1 tank on level ground, crew, 4 rounds of HEAT TP-T, 4 rounds of TPCSDS-T 120mm ammunition, zeroing target at a range of 500 meters, and references.

STANDARD: So that center of impact of the last three rounds fired is within .25 mils of the aiming point.

PERFORMANCE STEPS:
1. Prepare for zero.
2. Fire for zero.
3. Fire for confirmation.
4. Align TIS.
5. Record data.
6. Align gas.

REFERENCES:
1. FM 3-20.12 Tank Gunnery
2. MCO 3500.27B W/ERRATUM Operational Risk Management
3. TM 08953A-10/1-3 Operator's Manual for Boresighting and Zeroing M1A1 Tank Armament
4. TM 9-2350-264-10-1 Operator's Manual, Operator Controls, PMCS, and Operation Under Usual Conditions, Volume 1 of 2, Tank, Combat, Full-Tracked: 120-MM Gun, M1A1 2350-01-087-1095 General Abrams
5. TM 9-2350-264-10-2 Operator's Manual, Unusual Conditions, Troubleshooting, and Maintenance, Volume 2 of 2, Tank, Combat, Full-Tracked: 120-MM, M1A1 2350-01-087-1095, General Abrams

SUPPORT REQUIREMENTS:

ORDNANCE:

DODIC	Quantity
C785 Cartridge, 120mm TPCSDS-T M865	4 rounds per Marine
C784 Cartridge, 120mm TP-T M831 Series	4 rounds per Marine

1812-GNRY-1115: Conduct Failure-to-Fire Procedures for M1A1 Tank Main Gun

EVALUATION-CODED: NO **SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL:** 6 months

BILLETS: Tank Crewman

GRADES: PVT, PFC, LCPL, CPL, SGT, SSGT, GYSGT

INITIAL TRAINING SETTING: FORMAL

CONDITION: Given an M1A1 tank with all crew stations set for normal mode operation, crew, SL-3 items, and a main gun failure-to-fire (misfire).

STANDARD: Per the references.

PERFORMANCE STEPS:

1. Announce "ON THE WAY".
2. Attempt to fire using the electric trigger.
3. Gun did not fire, announce, "MISFIRE".
4. Announce "ON THE WAY".
5. Attempt to fire using the manual firing device (blasting machine).
6. Gun did not fire, announce, "MISFIRE".
7. Perform crew procedures, as appropriate.
8. Keep main gun aimed at the target and the GPCH palm switch depressed.
9. If a fault was identified during the loader's checks, announce "ON THE WAY" and attempt to fire using GPCH. If round did not fire announce, "MISFIRE" and immediately attempt to fire using manual firing device (blasting machine). If the gun failed to fire, announce, "MISFIRE" and move GUN SELECT switch to TRIGGER SAFE. If no faults were found during the loader's checks, move the GUN SELECT switch to TRIGGER SAFE.
10. Announce "MISFIRE".
11. If the round still failed to fire the loader will leave the SAFE/ARMED lever in the ARMED position.
12. Perform crew procedures as appropriate.
13. Move GUN SELECT switch to the MAIN position.
14. Announce "ON THE WAY" and attempt to fire using any electrical trigger.
15. If the gun still fails to fire, announce, "MISFIRE".
16. Immediately attempt to fire using the manual firing device (blasting machine).
17. If the gun still fails to fire, announce, "MISFIRE".
18. Move GUN SELECT switch to the TRIGGER SAFE position.
19. Perform the crew procedures as appropriate.

REFERENCES:

1. FM 3-20.12 Tank Gunnery
2. MCO 3500.27B W/ERRATUM Operational Risk Management
3. TM 9-2350-264-10-1 Operator's Manual, Operator Controls, PMCS, and Operation Under Usual Conditions, Volume 1 of 2, Tank, Combat, Full-Tracked: 120-MM Gun, M1A1 2350-01-087-1095 General Abrams
4. TM 9-2350-264-10-2 Operator's Manual, Unusual Conditions, Troubleshooting, and Maintenance, Volume 2 of 2, Tank, Combat, Full-Tracked: 120-MM, M1A1 2350-01-087-1095, General Abrams

1812-GNRY-1116: Conduct After-Firing Checks and Services on M1A1 Tank

EVALUATION-CODED: NO **SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL:** 6 months

BILLETS: Tank Crewman

GRADES: PVT, PFC, LCPL, CPL, SGT, SSGT, GYSGT

INITIAL TRAINING SETTING: FORMAL

CONDITION: Given a stationary M1A1 tank with crew, SL 3 items, and references.

STANDARD: So that all deficiencies are identified and corrected if authorized, or reported to organizational maintenance if not authorized.

PERFORMANCE STEPS:
1. Clean and lubricate the M48 .50 caliber machinegun.
2. Clean and lubricate the M240 7.62mm machinegun(s).
3. Service the 120mm gun tube.
4. Service the breech group.
5. Remove and ring oil from recoil fluid residue collector sponge located in tray beneath gun mount.
6. Inspect the main gun mount.
7. Inspect ammunition stowage.
8. Clear smoke grenade launcher discharger tube drain holes in base with a stiff wire.

REFERENCES:
1. FM 3-20.12 Tank Gunnery
2. MCO 3500.27B W/ERRATUM Operational Risk Management
3. TM 9-1005-213-10 Machine Gun, Caliber .50, Browning
4. TM 9-1005-313-10 Maintenance Manual, 7.62mm Machinegun M240G
5. TM 9-2350-264-10-1 Operator's Manual, Operator Controls, PMCS, and Operation Under Usual Conditions, Volume 1 of 2, Tank, Combat, Full-Tracked: 120-MM Gun, M1A1 2350-01-087-1095 General Abrams
6. TM 9-2350-264-10-2 Operator's Manual, Unusual Conditions, Troubleshooting, and Maintenance, Volume 2 of 2, Tank, Combat, Full-Tracked: 120-MM, M1A1 2350-01-087-1095, General Abrams

---

1812-GNRY-1117: Determine Range Using Laser Rangefinder System on M1A1 Tank

EVALUATION-CODED: NO **SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL:** 6 months

BILLETS: Tank Crewman

GRADES: PVT, PFC, LCPL, CPL, SGT, SSGT, GYSGT

INITIAL TRAINING SETTING: FORMAL

CONDITION: Given a moving or stationary M1A1 tank with crew, target at a range between 200 and 7,990 meters, and references.

STANDARD: Within 10 meters.

PERFORMANCE STEPS:

1. Remove laser safety guard.
2. Ensure laser RANGE switch is set to SAFE position; if not, set laser RANGE switch to SAFE position; both the fault symbol "F" in GPS and the FIRE CONTROL MALFUNTION light on commander's panel should be off; if not, conduct computer self-test.
3. Set RANGE switch to either of the ARM positions.
4. Using gunner's handles while looking through GPS, lay either the GPS or TIS reticle on the target.
5. Squeeze either or both palm switches on gunner's handles and press down and release either or both LRF pushbuttons.
6. If a "multiple returns" indication appears in GPS view or commander's GPS extension view, the commander should check the target, estimate the range, and decide which ARM position should be used or re-lay the reticle on target and lase again.
7. Enter range data manually using CCP or MANUAL RANGE BATTLE SGT switch, as needed.
8. Install laser safety guard.
9. Note: Ranges less than 200 meters can be inputted to accommodate canister round if the selection switch is set to CAN or GUN SELECT switch to COAX.

REFERENCES:

1. FM 3-20.12 Tank Gunnery
2. MCO 3500.27B W/ERRATUM Operational Risk Management
3. TM 9-2350-264-10-1 Operator's Manual, Operator Controls, PMCS, and Operation Under Usual Conditions, Volume 1 of 2, Tank, Combat, Full-Tracked: 120-MM Gun, M1A1 2350-01-087-1095 General Abrams
4. TM 9-2350-264-10-2 Operator's Manual, Unusual Conditions, Troubleshooting, and Maintenance, Volume 2 of 2, Tank, Combat, Full-Tracked: 120-MM, M1A1 2350-01-087-1095, General Abrams

---

1812-GNRY-1118: Operate Gunner's Primary Sight (GPS)

EVALUATION-CODED: NO **SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL:** 6 months

BILLETS: Tank Crewman

GRADES: PVT, PFC, LCPL, CPL, SGT, SSGT, GYSGT

INITIAL TRAINING SETTING: FORMAL

CONDITION: Given a stationary M1A1 tank with crew and a target.

STANDARD: Per the references.

PERFORMANCE STEPS:

1. Power up gunner's station.
2. Conduct GPS functional check.
3. Set DEFROSTER switch to ON, as needed.
4. Adjust brightness of reticle.
5. Conduct PANEL LIGHTS TEST periodically and adjust panel lights as needed.
6. Check MRS adjustment.
7. Focus reticle in GPS eyepiece.
8. Set FIRE CONTROL MODE switch to desired position.

9. Null out reticle drift.
10. Turn FLTR/CLEAR/SHTR switch to desired position.
11. Set GUN SELECT switch to desired position; when GUN SELECT switch is set to MAIN, set AMMUNITION SELECT switch to desired ammunition.
12. Move MAGNIFICATION lever to desired position.

REFERENCES:
1. FM 3-20.12 Tank Gunnery
2. MCO 3500.27B W/ERRATUM Operational Risk Management
3. TM 9-2350-264-10-1 Operator's Manual, Operator Controls, PMCS, and Operation Under Usual Conditions, Volume 1 of 2, Tank, Combat, Full-Tracked: 120-MM Gun, M1A1 2350-01-087-1095 General Abrams
4. TM 9-2350-264-10-2 Operator's Manual, Unusual Conditions, Troubleshooting, and Maintenance, Volume 2 of 2, Tank, Combat, Full-Tracked: 120-MM, M1A1 2350-01-087-1095, General Abrams

---

1812-GNRY-1119: Operate Thermal Imaging System (TIS)

EVALUATION-CODED: NO **SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL:** 6 months

BILLETS: Tank Crewman

GRADES: PVT, PFC, LCPL, CPL, SGT, SSGT, GYSGT

INITIAL TRAINING SETTING: FORMAL

CONDITION: Given a stationary M1A1 tank with crew, target at 50 meters distance, and references.

STANDARD: So that a clear sharp image of the target is observed.

PERFORMANCE STEPS:
1. Power up gunner's station.
2. Set THERMAL MODE switch to STBY.
3. Check that TRU READY light comes on within 5-15 minutes after THERMAL MODE switch is set to STBY; if it does not come on within 15 minutes, notify organizational maintenance.
4. When TRU READY light comes on, set THERMAL MODE switch to ON.
5. Set FLTR/CLEAR/SHTR switch to SHTR.
6. Open GPS ballistic doors.
7. Set THERMAL MAGNIFICATION to desired position.
8. Set POLARITY switch to WHITE HOT or BLACK HOT position as desired.
9. Adjust reticle and symbols in GPS eyepiece as desired.
10. Lay reticle in GPS eyepiece on target.
11. Turn SENSITIVITY knob until target is clear.
12. Turn CONTRAST knob to get best image of target.
13. If FAULT light comes on during operations, notify organizational maintenance.
14. Push and turn FOCUS knob to get sharpest image of target.
15. When operation of TIS is completed set THERMAL MODE switch to desired position.
16. Set FLTR/CLEAR/SHTR switch to CLEAR and close right ballistic door if TIS will not be used immediately.

REFERENCES:
1. FM 3-20.12 Tank Gunnery
2. MCO 3500.27B W/ERRATUM Operational Risk Management
3. TM 9-2350-264-10-1 Operator's Manual, Operator Controls, PMCS, and Operation Under Usual Conditions, Volume 1 of 2, Tank, Combat, Full-Tracked: 120-MM Gun, M1A1 2350-01-087-1095 General Abrams
4. TM 9-2350-264-10-2 Operator's Manual, Unusual Conditions, Troubleshooting, and Maintenance, Volume 2 of 2, Tank, Combat, Full-Tracked: 120-MM, M1A1 2350-01-087-1095, General Abrams

---

1812-GNRY-1120: Operate Gunner's Auxiliary Sight (GAS)

EVALUATION-CODED: NO **SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL:** 6 months

BILLETS: Tank Crewman

GRADES: PVT, PFC, LCPL, CPL, SGT, SSGT, GYSGT

INITIAL TRAINING SETTING: FORMAL

CONDITION: Given a stationary M1A1 tank with crew, target, and references.

STANDARD: To identify the range mark and sighting point for each reticle.

PERFORMANCE STEPS:
1. Power up gunner's station.
2. Turn reticle select knob to APFSDS.
3. Adjust reticle brightness knob as needed.
4. Look in GAS eyepiece to verify proper reticle.
5. Find the SABOT sighting reticle point.
6. Turn reticle select knob to HEAT.
7. Look in GAS eyepiece to verify proper reticle.
8. Find the HEAT sighting reticle point.
9. Turn FILTER knob as necessary to use GAS filter.

REFERENCES:
1. FM 3-20.12 Tank Gunnery
2. MCO 3500.27B W/ERRATUM Operational Risk Management
3. TM 9-2350-264-10-1 Operator's Manual, Operator Controls, PMCS, and Operation Under Usual Conditions, Volume 1 of 2, Tank, Combat, Full-Tracked: 120-MM Gun, M1A1 2350-01-087-1095 General Abrams
4. TM 9-2350-264-10-2 Operator's Manual, Unusual Conditions, Troubleshooting, and Maintenance, Volume 2 of 2, Tank, Combat, Full-Tracked: 120-MM, M1A1 2350-01-087-1095, General Abrams

---

1812-GNRY-1121: Reload M1A1 Tank Main Gun

EVALUATION-CODED: NO **SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL:** 6 months

BILLETS: Tank Crewman

GRADES: PVT, PFC, LCPL, CPL, SGT, SSGT, GYSGT

INITIAL TRAINING SETTING: FORMAL

CONDITION: Given a stationary M1A1 tank with crew and main gun ammunition.

STANDARD: Per the references.

PERFORMANCE STEPS:
1. Check replenisher.
2. Adjust loader's seat for loading.
3. Have gunner unlock gun travel lock.
4. Unlock turret lock.
5. Open breechblock manually.
6. Position loader's guards and safety guard frame for firing.
7. Ensure GUN/TURRET DRIVE switch is in EL UNCPL position when loading.
8. Ensure SAFE/ARMED handle is in SAFE position, stub base deflector moves down to allow loading of main gun, and MAIN GUN STATUS SAFE light is lit.
9. Set TURRET BLOWER switch to ON.
10. Remove desired round from standard rack or swing rack.
11. Ram round forcibly into main gun breech so base of round trips extractors and breechblock closes.
12. Clear the path of recoil.
13. Ensure yellow ARMED light is lit and announce "UP".
14. Place the SAFE/ARMED handle in the ARMED (up) position.

REFERENCES:
1. FM 3-20.12 Tank Gunnery
2. MCO 3500.27B W/ERRATUM Operational Risk Management
3. TM 9-2350-264-10-1 Operator's Manual, Operator Controls, PMCS, and Operation Under Usual Conditions, Volume 1 of 2, Tank, Combat, Full-Tracked: 120-MM Gun, M1A1 2350-01-087-1095 General Abrams
4. TM 9-2350-264-10-2 Operator's Manual, Unusual Conditions, Troubleshooting, and Maintenance, Volume 2 of 2, Tank, Combat, Full-Tracked: 120-MM, M1A1 2350-01-087-1095, General Abrams

---

1812-GNRY-1122: Unload Stuck Round on M1A1 Tank

EVALUATION-CODED: NO **SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL:** 6 months

BILLETS: Tank Crewman

GRADES: PVT, PFC, LCPL

INITIAL TRAINING SETTING: FORMAL

CONDITION: Given a stationary M1A1 tank with main gun, round stuck in gun chamber, crew, and SL-3 items.

STANDARD: Per the references.

PERFORMANCE STEPS:
1. Move SAFE/ARMED handle to safe position.
2. Remove stub base deflector.
3. If round cannot be removed by hand, manually close and open breechblock.
4. Lower main gun.

5. Put tarpaulin or other suitable material behind main gun breech to catch stuck round.
6. Put rammer-staff into muzzle end of main gun until bell housing is against round.
7. Pull on rope to push round out of chamber. If round will not come out, notify organizational maintenance.
8. Ensure main gun chamber and tube are clear of powder. If not, clean main gun tube.
9. Close breechblock manually and install stub base deflector.

REFERENCES:
1. FM 3-20.12 Tank Gunnery
2. MCO 3500.27B W/ERRATUM Operational Risk Management
3. TM 9-2350-264-10-1 Operator's Manual, Operator Controls, PMCS, and Operation Under Usual Conditions, Volume 1 of 2, Tank, Combat, Full-Tracked: 120-MM Gun, M1A1 2350-01-087-1095 General Abrams
4. TM 9-2350-264-10-2 Operator's Manual, Unusual Conditions, Troubleshooting, and Maintenance, Volume 2 of 2, Tank, Combat, Full-Tracked: 120-MM, M1A1 2350-01-087-1095, General Abrams

---

1812-GNRY-1123: Unload Stuck Stub Base on M1A1 Tank

EVALUATION-CODED: NO **SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL:** 6 months

BILLETS: Tank Crewman

GRADES: PVT, PFC, LCPL

INITIAL TRAINING SETTING: FORMAL

CONDITION: Given a stationary M1A1 tank with a stub base that did not extract after round was fired, crew, and SL-3 items.

STANDARD: Per the references.

PERFORMANCE STEPS:
1. Move SAFE/ARMED handle to SAFE (down) position.
2. Lift lever on stub base deflector.
3. If spent stub base cannot be removed from gun chamber by hand, manually close and open the breechblock.
4. If spent stub base still does not extract, place extractor tool on stub base and pry or pull stub base from gun chamber.
5. Put lever down on stub base deflector.
6. If spent stub base still does not extract, do UNLOAD STUCK ROUND procedure.

REFERENCES:
1. FM 3-20.12 Tank Gunnery
2. MCO 3500.27B W/ERRATUM Operational Risk Management
3. TM 9-2350-264-10-1 Operator's Manual, Operator Controls, PMCS, and Operation Under Usual Conditions, Volume 1 of 2, Tank, Combat, Full-Tracked: 120-MM Gun, M1A1 2350-01-087-1095 General Abrams
4. TM 9-2350-264-10-2 Operator's Manual, Unusual Conditions, Troubleshooting, and Maintenance, Volume 2 of 2, Tank, Combat, Full-Tracked: 120-MM, M1A1

2350-01-087-1095, General Abrams

1812-GNRY-1124: Zero Coaxial M240 7.62mm Machine Gun on M1A1 Tank

EVALUATION-CODED: NO **SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL:** 6 months

BILLETS: Tank Crewman

GRADES: PVT, PFC, LCPL, CPL, SGT, SSGT, GYSGT

INITIAL TRAINING SETTING: FORMAL

CONDITION: Given a stationary M1A1 tank on level ground, crew, mounted and loaded M240 coaxial machinegun, 50 rounds of 7.62mm ammunition, clearly defined visible target at a range of 800 meters, and references.

STANDARD: So the reticle aiming point is centered in the strike area.

PERFORMANCE STEPS:

1. Sight through the GPS eyepiece. Using GPCH, lay the reticle aiming point on the target.
2. Lase to target or manually input 800 meter range.
3. Fire a burst of 20-30 rounds. Mentally note the center-of-impact of the bullet strike area. Do not change the lay of the gun or reticle. Keep the GPCH centered.
4. Without disturbing the lay of the gun, release the gunner's handle.
5. Open the CCP door. Move the CCP power switch to the on position.
6. Without disturbing the lay of the gun, press the BORESIGHT push button; the push button will illuminate.
7. Move the RETICLE ADJUST toggle switch up (U), down (D), left (L), or right (R), as needed, to center the reticle aiming point to within 3 mils of the strike area.
8. Press the ENTER push button. The BORESIGHT push button light will go out. The boresight information is stored in the computer.
9. Without disturbing the lay of the gun, press the ZERO push button; the push button will illuminate.
10. Move the RETICLE ADJUST toggle switch up (U), down (D), left (L), or right (R), as needed, to center the reticle aiming point to within 3 mils of the strike area.
11. Without disturbing the lay of the gun (keep the gunner's handles centered), fire another burst of 20-30 rounds.
12. Press the ENTER push button. The ZERO push button light will go out. The zero information is stored in the computer. Repeat step 1 only, then go to step 12.
13. If the reticle aiming point is centered in the strike area, the coax machine gun is zeroed; repeat step 9. Record the zero setting in the display, and go to step 14. If the reticle aiming point is not centered in the strike area, repeat steps 9 through 13.
14. Press the ENTER push button. The ZERO push button light will go out. The zero information is stored in the computer. Repeat step 1 only, then go to step 12.
15. Close and latch the CCP door.
16. Clear the coaxial machine gun.

REFERENCES:
1. FM 3-20.12 Tank Gunnery
2. MCO 3500.27B W/ERRATUM Operational Risk Management
3. MCWP 3-15.1 Machine Guns and Machine Gun Gunnery
4. TM 08953A-10/1-3 Operator's Manual for Boresighting and Zeroing M1A1 Tank Armament
5. TM 9-1005-313-10 Maintenance Manual, 7.62mm Machinegun M240G
6. TM 9-2350-264-10-1 Operator's Manual, Operator Controls, PMCS, and Operation Under Usual Conditions, Volume 1 of 2, Tank, Combat, Full-Tracked: 120-MM Gun, M1A1 2350-01-087-1095 General Abrams
7. TM 9-2350-264-10-2 Operator's Manual, Unusual Conditions, Troubleshooting, and Maintenance, Volume 2 of 2, Tank, Combat, Full-Tracked: 120-MM, M1A1 2350-01-087-1095, General Abrams

---

1812-GNRY-1125: Stow Ordnance in M1A1 Tank

EVALUATION-CODED: NO **SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL:** 6 months

BILLETS: Tank Crewman

GRADES: PVT, PFC, LCPL

INITIAL TRAINING SETTING: FORMAL

CONDITION: Given a stationary M1A1 tank that requires an initial load or resupply of ordnance, 120mm main gun ammunition, 7.62 ammunition, caliber .50 ammunition, UK L8A1 RP smoke grenades, hand grenades, and references.

STANDARD: So all main gun rounds are in proper ammunition compartments, secured by spring clips on each rack, identified by appropriate round plunger disks, and with all small arms ammunition secured in locations designated in the loading plan.

PERFORMANCE STEPS:
1. Stow 6 rounds of 120mm ammunition in the hull ammunition compartment (Caution: do not stow M865 TPCSDS-T in the hull stowage compartment).
2. Stow 17 rounds of 120mm ammunition in the ready ammunition compartment.
3. Stow 17 rounds of 120mm ammunition in the semi-ready ammunition compartment.
4. Stow all small arms ammunition in accordance with the load plan.

REFERENCES:
1. FM 3-20.12 Tank Gunnery
2. MCO 3500.27B W/ERRATUM Operational Risk Management
3. TM 9-2350-264-10-1 Operator's Manual, Operator Controls, PMCS, and Operation Under Usual Conditions, Volume 1 of 2, Tank, Combat, Full-Tracked: 120-MM Gun, M1A1 2350-01-087-1095 General Abrams
4. TM 9-2350-264-10-2 Operator's Manual, Unusual Conditions, Troubleshooting, and Maintenance, Volume 2 of 2, Tank, Combat, Full-Tracked: 120-MM, M1A1 2350-01-087-1095, General Abrams

---

1812-GNRY-1126: Engage Targets with Coaxial Machine Gun From Gunner's Station on M1A1 Tank

EVALUATION-CODED: NO **SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL:** 6 months

BILLETS: Tank Crewman

GRADES: PVT, PFC, LCPL, CPL, SGT, SSGT, GYSGT

INITIAL TRAINING SETTING: FORMAL

CONDITION: Given a moving or stationary M1A1 tank with crew, 7.62mm ammunition, targets within effective range, and references.

STANDARD: Until targets are suppressed, destroyed, or the order "CEASE FIRE" is given.

PERFORMANCE STEPS:
1. Set GUN SELECT switch on GPS to COAX.
2. Use gunner's handles or hydraulic pump handle and manual drive handle to lay center of GPS reticle on target.
3. Fire coaxial machine gun.
4. Gunner changes coaxial machine gun barrel as necessary.
5. Gunner conducts immediate action on coaxial machine gun as necessary.
6. Direct loader to empty spent case collection box.

REFERENCES:
1. FM 3-20.12 Tank Gunnery
2. MCO 3500.27B W/ERRATUM Operational Risk Management
3. MCWP 3-15.1 Machine Guns and Machine Gun Gunnery
4. TM 9-1005-313-10 Maintenance Manual, 7.62mm Machinegun M240G
5. TM 9-2350-264-10-1 Operator's Manual, Operator Controls, PMCS, and Operation Under Usual Conditions, Volume 1 of 2, Tank, Combat, Full-Tracked: 120-MM Gun, M1A1 2350-01-087-1095 General Abrams
6. TM 9-2350-264-10-2 Operator's Manual, Unusual Conditions, Troubleshooting, and Maintenance, Volume 2 of 2, Tank, Combat, Full-Tracked: 120-MM, M1A1 2350-01-087-1095, General Abrams

---

1812-GNRY-1127: Perform Preventive Maintenance Checks and Services on M257 Grenade Launcher System

EVALUATION-CODED: NO **SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL:** 12 months

BILLETS: Tank Crewman

GRADES: PVT, PFC, LCPL, CPL, SGT, SSGT, GYSGT

INITIAL TRAINING SETTING: FORMAL

CONDITION: Given an M1A1 tank, appropriate collateral materials, and cleaning gear.

STANDARD: Per the references.

PERFORMANCE STEPS:
1. Clean tube, especially electrical contact at base.
2. Report discrepancies to organizational maintenance.

REFERENCES:
1. FM 3-20.12 Tank Gunnery
2. MCO 3500.27B W/ERRATUM Operational Risk Management
3. TM 9-2350-264-10-1 Operator's Manual, Operator Controls, PMCS, and Operation Under Usual Conditions, Volume 1 of 2, Tank, Combat, Full-Tracked: 120-MM Gun, M1A1 2350-01-087-1095 General Abrams
4. TM 9-2350-264-10-2 Operator's Manual, Unusual Conditions, Troubleshooting, and Maintenance, Volume 2 of 2, Tank, Combat, Full-Tracked: 120-MM, M1A1 2350-01-087-1095, General Abrams

---

1812-GNRY-1128: Load M257 Grenade Launcher System

EVALUATION-CODED: NO **SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL:** 12 months

BILLETS: Tank Crewman

GRADES: PVT, PFC, LCPL, CPL, SGT, SSGT, GYSGT

INITIAL TRAINING SETTING: FORMAL

CONDITION: Given an M1A1 tank and appropriate collateral materials.

STANDARD: Per the references.

PERFORMANCE STEPS:
1. Set the TURRET POWER switch to OFF.
2. Remove covers from grenade dischargers.
3. Check grenade discharger tubes for dirt or sharp objects and clean as required.
4. Insert grenades into tubes.
5. Turn each grenade 1/4 to 1/2 turn clockwise to ensure a solid electrical connection.
6. Replace covers if required.

REFERENCES:
1. FM 3-20.12 Tank Gunnery
2. MCO 3500.27B W/ERRATUM Operational Risk Management
3. TM 9-2350-264-10-1 Operator's Manual, Operator Controls, PMCS, and Operation Under Usual Conditions, Volume 1 of 2, Tank, Combat, Full-Tracked: 120-MM Gun, M1A1 2350-01-087-1095 General Abrams
4. TM 9-2350-264-10-2 Operator's Manual, Unusual Conditions, Troubleshooting, and Maintenance, Volume 2 of 2, Tank, Combat, Full-Tracked: 120-MM, M1A1 2350-01-087-1095, General Abrams

---

1812-GNRY-1129: Unload M257 Grenade Launcher System

EVALUATION-CODED: NO **SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL:** 12 months

BILLETS: Tank Crewman

GRADES: PVT, PFC, LCPL, CPL, SGT, SSGT, GYSGT

INITIAL TRAINING SETTING: FORMAL

CONDITION: Given an M1A1 tank and appropriate collateral materials.

STANDARD: Per the references.

PERFORMANCE STEPS:
1. Set TURRET POWER to "OFF".
2. Remove grenades from tubes.
3. Replace covers.

REFERENCES:
1. FM 3-20.12 Tank Gunnery
2. MCO 3500.27B W/ERRATUM Operational Risk Management
3. TM 9-2350-264-10-1 Operator's Manual, Operator Controls, PMCS, and Operation Under Usual Conditions, Volume 1 of 2, Tank, Combat, Full-Tracked: 120-MM Gun, M1A1 2350-01-087-1095 General Abrams
4. TM 9-2350-264-10-2 Operator's Manual, Unusual Conditions, Troubleshooting, and Maintenance, Volume 2 of 2, Tank, Combat, Full-Tracked: 120-MM, M1A1 2350-01-087-1095, General Abrams

---

1812-CMDC-1201: Identify Combat Vehicles and Helicopters

EVALUATION-CODED: NO **SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL:** 6 months

BILLETS: Tank Crewman

GRADES: PVT, PFC, LCPL, CPL, SGT, SSGT, GYSGT

INITIAL TRAINING SETTING: FORMAL

CONDITION: Given slides, mock-ups, drawings, or models of vehicles and helicopters visible for 10 seconds.

STANDARD: So that crewman identify at minimum 18 of 20 vehicles and helicopters.

PERFORMANCE STEPS:
1. Determine the type of vehicle: tracked, wheeled, and helicopter.
2. Determine the role of the vehicle on the battlefield: reconnaissance and security, main battle tank, personnel carrier, artillery/fire support, engineer (bridging, pontoon, breaching, earth moving, etc.), air defense, NBC, combat service support (supply, medical), and command and control.
3. Determine main armament: caliber of weapon(s) and effective range(s).
4. Determine the identifying characteristics of the vehicle: overall silhouette, suspension, turret/weapons system, antenna systems, and other distinguishing characteristics.
5. State the nomenclature of the vehicle.

REFERENCES:
1. FM 1-402 Aviator's Recognition Manual
2. FM 3-20.12 Tank Gunnery

3. FM 3-20.15 Tank Platoon
4. GTA 17-2-13 Armored Vehicle Recognition Cards
5. GTA 17-2-9 Combat Vehicle Identification
6. MCO 3500.27B W/ERRATUM Operational Risk Management
7. MCWP 3-12 Marine Corps Tank Employment

MISCELLANEOUS:

ADMINISTRATIVE INSTRUCTIONS: A minimum of five U.S. vehicles and helicopters (mixed) (no more than three helicopters per test) will be selected from U.S. armored vehicles and combat helicopters currently in use. A minimum of four slides must be of thermal views.

1812-CMDC-1202: Communicate Using M1A1 Tank Communication Equipment

EVALUATION-CODED: NO **SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL:** 12 months

BILLETS: Tank Crewman

GRADES: PVT, PFC, LCPL, CPL, SGT, SSGT, GYSGT

INITIAL TRAINING SETTING: FORMAL

CONDITION: Given an M1A1 tank, a crew, an M1A1 tank unit, and references.

STANDARD: By conducting intercom and inter-vehicle communications.

PERFORMANCE STEPS:
1. Prepare the communications equipment for operations.
2. Operate the Combat Vehicle Crewman's (CVC) helmet.
3. Operate the vehicle intercom system.
4. Operate the audio frequency amplifier.
5. Operate the receiver/transmitters in plain and covered mode.
6. Operate the receiver/transmitters in frequency hopping and single channel mode.
7. Secure communication equipment from operation.

REFERENCES:
1. FM 3-20.15 Tank Platoon
2. MCO 3500.27B W/ERRATUM Operational Risk Management
3. MCWP 3-12 Marine Corps Tank Employment
4. TM 11-5810-256-OP-4 Operating Procedures for COMSECEQ TSEC/KY-57 in Tracked Vehicles
5. TM 11-5820-890-10-1 Operator Manual for SINCGARS Ground Combat Net Radio
6. TM 9-2350-264-10-1 Operator's Manual, Operator Controls, PMCS, and Operation Under Usual Conditions, Volume 1 of 2, Tank, Combat, Full-Tracked: 120-MM Gun, M1A1 2350-01-087-1095 General Abrams
7. TM 9-2350-264-10-2 Operator's Manual, Unusual Conditions, Troubleshooting, and Maintenance, Volume 2 of 2, Tank, Combat, Full-Tracked: 120-MM, M1A1 2350-01-087-1095, General Abrams

---

1812-CMDC-1203: Communicate Using Visual Signals

EVALUATION-CODED: NO **SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL:** 12 months

BILLETS: Tank Crewman

GRADES: PVT, PFC, LCPL, CPL, SGT, SSGT, GYSGT

INITIAL TRAINING SETTING: FORMAL

CONDITION: Given a tank unit, supported unit, an operations order, tactical scenario, specified threat, and references.

STANDARD: Per the references.

PERFORMANCE STEPS:
1. Communicate using hand and arm signals to control vehicles.
2. Communicate using flashlights to control vehicles.
3. Communicate using flags to control vehicles.
4. Identify standard flags, lights, and markers used to control armored vehicles

REFERENCES:
1. FM 21-60 Visual Signals
2. FM 3-20.15 Tank Platoon
3. MCO 3500.27B W/ERRATUM Operational Risk Management
4. MCWP 3-12 Marine Corps Tank Employment

1812-CMDC-1204: Install a Wire Communications Hot Loop

EVALUATION-CODED: NO **SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL:** 12 months

BILLETS: Tank Crewman

GRADES: PVT, PFC, LCPL, CPL, SGT, SSGT, GYSGT

INITIAL TRAINING SETTING: FORMAL

CONDITION: Given two or more stationary M1A1 tanks and communication wire WD-1/TT.

STANDARD: So that communications between tanks can be made without emitting radio signals.

PERFORMANCE STEPS:
1. Ensure VEHICLE MASTER POWER switch is set to ON.
2. Turn on Indicator Control CD-82/VRC.
3. Place MAIN POWER switch on the amplifier to INT ONLY position.
4. RADIO TRANS switch may be set to any position, depending on the vehicle station with which communication is desired.
5. Route incoming wire through driver's hatch.
6. Split wire and strip insulation from last 1/2 inch.
7. Connect one wire end to each TEL/REMOTE POST on the Indicator Control CD-82/VRC.

8. Run connected wire to next tank to be connected in the same manner.
9. Conduct a communications check external to the tank to verify that the last loop is operational.

REFERENCES:
1. FM 24-20 Tactical Wire and Cable Techniques
2. FM 3-20.15 Tank Platoon
3. MCO 3500.27B W/ERRATUM Operational Risk Management
4. MCWP 3-12 Marine Corps Tank Employment
5. TM 08636A-14/1 USMC Technical Manual, Intercom Set AN/VIC-2(V)
6. TM 11-5280-890-10-1 Operator's Manual AN/PRC-19
7. TM 9-2350-264-10-1 Operator's Manual, Operator Controls, PMCS, and Operation Under Usual Conditions, Volume 1 of 2, Tank, Combat, Full-Tracked: 120-MM Gun, M1A1 2350-01-087-1095 General Abrams
8. TM 9-2350-264-10-2 Operator's Manual, Unusual Conditions, Troubleshooting, and Maintenance, Volume 2 of 2, Tank, Combat, Full-Tracked: 120-MM, M1A1 2350-01-087-1095, General Abrams

---

1812-CMDC-1205: Maintain ANVRC Radio System on M1A1 Tank

EVALUATION-CODED: NO **SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL:** 12 months

BILLETS: Tank Crewman

GRADES: PVT, PFC, LCPL, CPL, SGT, SSGT, GYSGT

INITIAL TRAINING SETTING: FORMAL

CONDITION: Given an AN/VRC-12 or AN/VRC-92 radio set, vehicle with mounting equipment installed, clean lint free cloth, eraser, PM brush, and references.

STANDARD: To ensure communication within the unit and between crew members.

PERFORMANCE STEPS:
1. Inspect radio accessories.
2. Inspect mounting or radio.
3. Wipe the radio set and accessories free of dust, dirt, grease, etc.

REFERENCES:
1. MCO 3500.27B W/ERRATUM Operational Risk Management
2. TM 11-5280-890-10-1 Operator's Manual AN/PRC-19
3. TM 9-2350-264-10-1 Operator's Manual, Operator Controls, PMCS, and Operation Under Usual Conditions, Volume 1 of 2, Tank, Combat, Full-Tracked: 120-MM Gun, M1A1 2350-01-087-1095 General Abrams
4. TM 9-2350-264-10-2 Operator's Manual, Unusual Conditions, Troubleshooting, and Maintenance, Volume 2 of 2, Tank, Combat, Full-Tracked: 120-MM, M1A1 2350-01-087-1095, General Abrams

---

1812-VOPS-1301: Conduct Before, During, and After-Operation Checks and Services on M1A1 Tank

EVALUATION-CODED: NO **SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL:** 12 months

BILLETS: Tank Crewman

GRADES: PVT, PFC, LCPL, CPL, SGT, SSGT, GYSGT

INITIAL TRAINING SETTING: FORMAL

CONDITION: Given a stationary M1A1 tank with crew, SL-3 items, clean rags, and references.

STANDARD: By isolating and identifying all deficiencies, correcting them if authorized, and reporting any deficiencies that cannot be corrected by operator maintenance to organizational maintenance.

PERFORMANCE STEPS:

1. Inspect vehicle overall for leaks, tampering, damage, or missing parts.
2. Inspect quick-release pins.
3. Inspect fire extinguisher system.
4. Inspect driver's controls and instruments.
5. Inspect gunner's coaxial machine gun.
6. Inspect loader's machine gun.
7. Inspect .50 caliber machine gun.
8. Inspect parking brake system hydraulic pressure.
9. Inspect hydraulic system oil reservoir.
10. Inspect commander's panel.
11. Inspect auxiliary hydraulic pump.
12. Inspect night vision driver's viewer.
13. Inspect power-gun/turret control.
14. Inspect Gunner's Primary Sight (GPS).
15. Inspect commander's GPS extension.
16. Inspect Gunner's Auxiliary Sight (GAS).
17. Inspect loader's panel.
18. Inspect turret ammunition storage.
19. Inspect crew station NBC equipment.
20. Inspect NBC back up system.
21. Inspect drain port.
22. Inspect transmission oil.
23. Inspect engine oil.
24. Inspect engine compartment fire extinguisher sensor.
25. Inspect electro-mechanical fuel system (EMFS) and lines.
26. Inspect engine hydraulics and heat sensor.
27. Inspect radio intercom system.
28. Inspect loader's panel.
29. Inspect personnel heater.
30. Inspect breech group.
31. Inspect battery bus box.
32. Report deficiencies to organizational maintenance.

REFERENCES:

1. MCO 3500.27B W/ERRATUM Operational Risk Management
2. TM 9-2350-264-10-1 Operator's Manual, Operator Controls, PMCS, and Operation Under Usual Conditions, Volume 1 of 2, Tank, Combat, Full-Tracked: 120-MM Gun, M1A1 2350-01-087-1095 General Abrams
3. TM 9-2350-264-10-2 Operator's Manual, Unusual Conditions, Troubleshooting, and Maintenance, Volume 2 of 2, Tank, Combat, Full-Tracked: 120-MM, M1A1 2350-01-087-1095, General Abrams

1812-VOPS-1302: Prepare Driver's Station on M1A1 Tank for Operation

EVALUATION-CODED: NO **SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL:** 12 months

BILLETS: Tank Crewman

GRADES: PVT, PFC, LCPL

INITIAL TRAINING SETTING: FORMAL

CONDITION: Given a stationary M1A1 tank with crew.

STANDARD: Per the references.

PERFORMANCE STEPS:
1. Enter the driver's station.
2. power up hull systems.
3. Adjust dome light.
4. Check inflatable seal.
5. Conduct intercom check.
6. Adjust seat.
7. Adjust periscopes.
8. Adjust hatch.
9. Adjust steer-throttle control.
10. Close drain valve.
11. Check percent power or mission capability power.

REFERENCES:
1. MCO 3500.27B W/ERRATUM Operational Risk Management
2. TM 9-2350-264-10-1 Operator's Manual, Operator Controls, PMCS, and Operation Under Usual Conditions, Volume 1 of 2, Tank, Combat, Full-Tracked: 120-MM Gun, M1A1 2350-01-087-1095 General Abrams
3. TM 9-2350-264-10-2 Operator's Manual, Unusual Conditions, Troubleshooting, and Maintenance, Volume 2 of 2, Tank, Combat, Full-Tracked: 120-MM, M1A1 2350-01-087-1095, General Abrams

---

1812-VOPS-1303: Secure Driver's Station on M1A1 Tank

EVALUATION-CODED: NO **SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL:** 12 months

BILLETS: Tank Crewman

GRADES: PVT, PFC, LCPL

INITIAL TRAINING SETTING: FORMAL

CONDITION: Given a stationary M1A1 tank with crew.

STANDARD: Per the references.

PERFORMANCE STEPS:
1. Power down hull system.
2. Close driver's hatch.
3. Have turret crewmember position main gun over back deck and lock turret

lock.
4. Exit tank through loader's hatch.

REFERENCES:
1. MCO 3500.27B W/ERRATUM Operational Risk Management
2. TM 9-2350-264-10-1 Operator's Manual, Operator Controls, PMCS, and Operation Under Usual Conditions, Volume 1 of 2, Tank, Combat, Full-Tracked: 120-MM Gun, M1A1 2350-01-087-1095 General Abrams
3. TM 9-2350-264-10-2 Operator's Manual, Unusual Conditions, Troubleshooting, and Maintenance, Volume 2 of 2, Tank, Combat, Full-Tracked: 120-MM, M1A1 2350-01-087-1095, General Abrams

---

1812-VOPS-1304: Prepare Loader's Station on M1A1 Tank for Operation

EVALUATION-CODED: NO **SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL:** 12 months

BILLETS: Tank Crewman

GRADES: PVT, PFC, LCPL

INITIAL TRAINING SETTING: FORMAL

CONDITION: Given a stationary M1A1 tank and M240 machine gun.

STANDARD: Per the references.

PERFORMANCE STEPS:
1. Open loader's hatch
2. Erect crosswind sensor.
3. Install loader's machine gun.
4. Enter loader's station.
5. Power up loader's station.
6. Conduct intercom check.
7. Adjust loader's seat.
8. Adjust loader's hatch.
9. Position loader's guards and safety guard frame for firing.

REFERENCES:
1. MCO 3500.27B W/ERRATUM Operational Risk Management
2. TM 9-2350-264-10-1 Operator's Manual, Operator Controls, PMCS, and Operation Under Usual Conditions, Volume 1 of 2, Tank, Combat, Full-Tracked: 120-MM Gun, M1A1 2350-01-087-1095 General Abrams
3. TM 9-2350-264-10-2 Operator's Manual, Unusual Conditions, Troubleshooting, and Maintenance, Volume 2 of 2, Tank, Combat, Full-Tracked: 120-MM, M1A1 2350-01-087-1095, General Abrams

---

1812-VOPS-1305: Secure Loader's Station on M1A1 Tank

EVALUATION-CODED: NO **SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL:** 12 months

BILLETS: Tank Crewman

GRADES: PVT, PFC, LCPL

INITIAL TRAINING SETTING: FORMAL

CONDITION: Given a stationary M1A1 tank.

STANDARD: Per the references.

PERFORMANCE STEPS:
1. Stow loader's guards and safety guard frame.
2. Power down loader's station.
3. Remove loader's machine gun.
4. Stow crosswind sensor.
5. Remove antennas.
6. Close and lock loader's hatch.

REFERENCES:
1. MCO 3500.27B W/ERRATUM Operational Risk Management
2. TM 9-2350-264-10-1 Operator's Manual, Operator Controls, PMCS, and Operation Under Usual Conditions, Volume 1 of 2, Tank, Combat, Full-Tracked: 120-MM Gun, M1A1 2350-01-087-1095 General Abrams
3. TM 9-2350-264-10-2 Operator's Manual, Unusual Conditions, Troubleshooting, and Maintenance, Volume 2 of 2, Tank, Combat, Full-Tracked: 120-MM, M1A1 2350-01-087-1095, General Abrams

---

1812-VOPS-1306: Prepare Gunner's Station on M1A1 Tank for Operation

EVALUATION-CODED: NO **SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL:** 12 months

BILLETS: Tank Crewman

GRADES: PVT, PFC, LCPL, CPL, SGT, SSGT, GYSGT

INITIAL TRAINING SETTING: FORMAL

CONDITION: Given a stationary M1A1 tank with crew and M240 machinegun.

STANDARD: Per the references.

PERFORMANCE STEPS:
1. Enter gunner's station.
2. Adjust dome light.
3. Conduct intercom check.
4. Install coaxial machine gun.
5. Adjust gunner's seat.
6. Adjust brow pads.
7. Position chest rest for firing.
8. Power up gunner's station.
9. Conduct main accumulator pressure check.
10. Conduct GPS functional check and adjustments.
11. Conduct computer self test and computer data check.
12. Conduct TIS checkout.
13. Conduct GAS adjustments.
14. Test fire control system.

REFERENCES:
1. MCO 3500.27B W/ERRATUM Operational Risk Management
2. TM 9-2350-264-10-1 Operator's Manual, Operator Controls, PMCS, and Operation Under Usual Conditions, Volume 1 of 2, Tank, Combat, Full-Tracked: 120-MM Gun, M1A1 2350-01-087-1095 General Abrams
3. TM 9-2350-264-10-2 Operator's Manual, Unusual Conditions, Troubleshooting, and Maintenance, Volume 2 of 2, Tank, Combat, Full-Tracked: 120-MM, M1A1 2350-01-087-1095, General Abrams

---

1812-VOPS-1307: Secure Gunner's Station on M1A1 Tank

EVALUATION-CODED: NO **SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL:** 12 months

BILLETS: Tank Crewman

GRADES: PVT, PFC, LCPL, CPL, SGT, SSGT, GYSGT

INITIAL TRAINING SETTING: FORMAL

CONDITION: Given a stationary M1A1 tank.

STANDARD: Per the references.

PERFORMANCE STEPS:
1. Remove coaxial machine gun.
2. Power down gunner's station.

REFERENCES:
1. MCO 3500.27B W/ERRATUM Operational Risk Management
2. TM 9-2350-264-10-1 Operator's Manual, Operator Controls, PMCS, and Operation Under Usual Conditions, Volume 1 of 2, Tank, Combat, Full-Tracked: 120-MM Gun, M1A1 2350-01-087-1095 General Abrams
3. TM 9-2350-264-10-2 Operator's Manual, Unusual Conditions, Troubleshooting, and Maintenance, Volume 2 of 2, Tank, Combat, Full-Tracked: 120-MM, M1A1 2350-01-087-1095, General Abrams

---

1812-VOPS-1308: Refuel an M1A1 Tank

EVALUATION-CODED: NO **SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL:** 12 months

BILLETS: Tank Crewman

GRADES: PVT, PFC, LCPL

INITIAL TRAINING SETTING: FORMAL

CONDITION: Given an M1A1 tank and a fuel source.

STANDARD: Per the references.

PERFORMANCE STEPS:
1. Make sure tank is parked on level ground.
2. Shut down engine.

3. Tell turret crew member to traverse turret as required for fueling.
4. Tell another crew member to get portable fire extinguisher from left turret stowage box.
5. Clean around fuel tank filler cover with clean rag.
6. Lift pin out of bracket, then pull out pin.
7. Lift fuel tank cover.
8. Clean fuel tank filler cap, fuel filler neck, and drain tube if equipped, with clean rag.
9. Turn fuel tank filler cap counterclockwise using handle.
10. Lift fuel tank filler cap from fuel tank filler neck.
11. Tell another crew member to point nozzle on portable fire extinguisher at fuel tank filler neck.
12. Put fuel nozzle from fuel source into fuel tank filler neck.
13. Pump fuel into fuel tank until fuel is about 1 inch below top of strainer flange.
14. Secure fuel tank filler cap.

REFERENCES:
1. FM 3-20.15 Tank Platoon
2. MCO 3500.27B W/ERRATUM Operational Risk Management
3. MCWP 3-12 Marine Corps Tank Employment
4. TM 9-2350-264-10-1 Operator's Manual, Operator Controls, PMCS, and Operation Under Usual Conditions, Volume 1 of 2, Tank, Combat, Full-Tracked: 120-MM Gun, M1A1 2350-01-087-1095 General Abrams
5. TM 9-2350-264-10-2 Operator's Manual, Unusual Conditions, Troubleshooting, and Maintenance, Volume 2 of 2, Tank, Combat, Full-Tracked: 120-MM, M1A1 2350-01-087-1095, General Abrams

---

1812-VOPS-1309: Maintain Air Induction System on M1A1 Tank

EVALUATION-CODED: NO **SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL:** 12 months

BILLETS: Tank Crewman

GRADES: PVT, PFC, LCPL

INITIAL TRAINING SETTING: FORMAL

CONDITION: Given an M1A1 tank with crew and SL-3 items.

STANDARD: Per the references.

PERFORMANCE STEPS:
1. Traverse turret to service precleaner.
2. Clean sponson air intake grilles.
3. Open precleaner covers.
4. Open top deck left grille doors.
5. Service precleaner.
6. Close top deck left grille doors.
7. Close precleaner covers.

REFERENCES:
1. MCO 3500.27B W/ERRATUM Operational Risk Management
2. TM 9-2350-264-10-1 Operator's Manual, Operator Controls, PMCS, and

Operation Under Usual Conditions, Volume 1 of 2, Tank, Combat, Full-Tracked: 120-MM Gun, M1A1 2350-01-087-1095 General Abrams
3. TM 9-2350-264-10-2 Operator's Manual, Unusual Conditions, Troubleshooting, and Maintenance, Volume 2 of 2, Tank, Combat, Full-Tracked: 120-MM, M1A1 2350-01-087-1095, General Abrams

---

1812-VOPS-1310: Adjust Track Tension on M1A1 Tank

EVALUATION-CODED: NO **SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL:** 12 months

BILLETS: Tank Crewman

GRADES: PVT, PFC, LCPL

INITIAL TRAINING SETTING: FORMAL

CONDITION: Given an M1A1 tank with crew, parked on ground level, SL-3 items, and references.

STANDARD: So that grease flows out of release valve and the tank is ready to be maneuvered.

PERFORMANCE STEPS:
1. Open number one skirt.
2. Clean threads on adjusting link.
3. Clean relief valve and adjusting link grease fitting.
4. Back out lock screw 3 1/2 turns.
5. Pump grease into grease fitting until grease spurts out of relief valve.
6. Screw locking nut along threads with spanner wrench until loosely seated against tube.
7. Close number one skirt.
8. Repeat steps for other side of track.
9. Start engine, drive rearward about 20 feet, drive forward about 20 feet, and then set transmission shift control to N and coast to a stop.
10. Shut down engine (instruct driver to be prepared to apply parking brake).
11. Open number one skirt.
12. Pump grease into fitting until grease flows out of relief valve.
13. Screw locknut along threads with spanner wrench until slot is in line with lock screw.
14. Tighten screw.
15. Release pressure on relief valve.
16. Close number one skirt.
17. Repeat performance steps 11 through 16 for the other side of the tank.

REFERENCES:
1. MCO 3500.27B W/ERRATUM Operational Risk Management
2. TM 9-2350-264-10-1 Operator's Manual, Operator Controls, PMCS, and Operation Under Usual Conditions, Volume 1 of 2, Tank, Combat, Full-Tracked: 120-MM Gun, M1A1 2350-01-087-1095 General Abrams
3. TM 9-2350-264-10-2 Operator's Manual, Unusual Conditions, Troubleshooting, and Maintenance, Volume 2 of 2, Tank, Combat, Full-Tracked: 120-MM, M1A1 2350-01-087-1095, General Abrams

---

1812-VOPS-1311: Inspect Hydraulics on M1A1 Tank

EVALUATION-CODED: NO **SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL:** 12 months

BILLETS: Tank Crewman

GRADES: PVT, PFC, LCPL

INITIAL TRAINING SETTING: FORMAL

CONDITION: Given an M1A1 tank with crew and references.

STANDARD: To identify and correct maintenance deficiencies within authorized maintenance level, and report any deficiencies that cannot be corrected by authorized maintenance level to organizational maintenance.

PERFORMANCE STEPS:
1. Remove engine access cover.
2. Inspect engine hydraulics.
3. Install engine access cover.
4. Open top deck right grille doors.
5. Inspect heat exchanger.
6. Close top deck right grille.
7. Inspect hull hydraulics.
8. Power charge manual elevation accumulator.
9. Manually charge manual elevation accumulator.
10. Bleed air from traverse hydraulics.

REFERENCES:
1. MCO 3500.27B W/ERRATUM Operational Risk Management
2. TM 9-2350-264-10-1 Operator's Manual, Operator Controls, PMCS, and Operation Under Usual Conditions, Volume 1 of 2, Tank, Combat, Full-Tracked: 120-MM Gun, M1A1 2350-01-087-1095 General Abrams
3. TM 9-2350-264-10-2 Operator's Manual, Unusual Conditions, Troubleshooting, and Maintenance, Volume 2 of 2, Tank, Combat, Full-Tracked: 120-MM, M1A1 2350-01-087-1095, General Abrams

---

1812-VOPS-1312: Maintain the M1A1 Tank 120mm Main Gun

EVALUATION-CODED: NO **SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL:** 6 months

BILLETS: Tank Crewman

GRADES: PVT, PFC, LCPL

INITIAL TRAINING SETTING: FORMAL

CONDITION: Given an M1A1 tank with crew, SL-3 items, clean dry rags, CLP, sponge, and references.

STANDARD: So that all operator preventive maintenance is performed.

PERFORMANCE STEPS:
1. Clean and service bore evacuator.

2. Clean and service main gun tube.
3. Clean and service stub base deflector.
4. Remove the breechblock.
5. Clean and inspect the breechblock.
6. Install the breechblock.
7. Adjust the operating CAM.
8. Conduct a firing circuit test.

REFERENCES:
1. MCO 3500.27B W/ERRATUM Operational Risk Management
2. TM 9-2350-264-10-1 Operator's Manual, Operator Controls, PMCS, and Operation Under Usual Conditions, Volume 1 of 2, Tank, Combat, Full-Tracked: 120-MM Gun, M1A1 2350-01-087-1095 General Abrams
3. TM 9-2350-264-10-2 Operator's Manual, Unusual Conditions, Troubleshooting, and Maintenance, Volume 2 of 2, Tank, Combat, Full-Tracked: 120-MM, M1A1 2350-01-087-1095, General Abrams

---

1812-VOPS-1313: Maintain M1A1 Tank Periscopes

EVALUATION-CODED: NO **SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL:** 12 months

BILLETS: Tank Crewman

GRADES: PVT, PFC, LCPL

INITIAL TRAINING SETTING: FORMAL

CONDITION: Given an M1A1 tank with crew, SL-3 items, and clean water, lens cleaning solution, lens tissue, a camel's hair PM brush, and references.

STANDARD: So that the driver's washer fluid reservoir is filled with the prescribed solution; all periscope optical surfaces, windows, and mirrors are free of grease and dirt; and any damage to periscopes is reported to organizational maintenance.

PERFORMANCE STEPS:
1. Service driver's periscope washer fluid reservoir.
2. Remove periscope.
3. Check periscope for cracks or cloudiness.
4. Wipe carefully with clean rag (mounting surfaces of periscopes and their mounts must be free of dirt).
5. Install periscope.
6. Clean windows and mirrors.
7. Clean sight lenses.
8. Report any damage to periscope or windows to organizational maintenance.

REFERENCES:
1. MCO 3500.27B W/ERRATUM Operational Risk Management
2. TM 9-2350-264-10-1 Operator's Manual, Operator Controls, PMCS, and Operation Under Usual Conditions, Volume 1 of 2, Tank, Combat, Full-Tracked: 120-MM Gun, M1A1 2350-01-087-1095 General Abrams
3. TM 9-2350-264-10-2 Operator's Manual, Unusual Conditions, Troubleshooting, and Maintenance, Volume 2 of 2, Tank, Combat, Full-Tracked: 120-MM, M1A1 2350-01-087-1095, General Abrams

---

1812-VOPS-1314: Replace Track Shoe on M1A1 Tank

EVALUATION-CODED: NO **SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL:** 12 months

BILLETS: Tank Crewman

GRADES: PVT, PFC, LCPL

INITIAL TRAINING SETTING: FORMAL

CONDITION: Given an M1A1 tank with damaged track shoe, crew, SL-3 items, and replacement track shoe.

STANDARD: Per the references.

PERFORMANCE STEPS:
1. Position the unserviceable track shoe midway between the number one road wheel and the idler wheel.
2. Open necessary skirt panels (number 1, 4 and 6 as applicable).
3. Release track tension.
4. Install the track connecting fixtures if more than one shoe is to be replaced.
5. Disconnect the track and remove the damaged shoe.
6. Install the track shoe and track.
7. Remove the track connecting fixtures if used.
8. Adjust the track tension.
9. Close the skirts.

REFERENCES:
1. MCO 3500.27B W/ERRATUM Operational Risk Management
2. TM 9-2350-264-10-1 Operator's Manual, Operator Controls, PMCS, and Operation Under Usual Conditions, Volume 1 of 2, Tank, Combat, Full-Tracked: 120-MM Gun, M1A1 2350-01-087-1095 General Abrams
3. TM 9-2350-264-10-2 Operator's Manual, Unusual Conditions, Troubleshooting, and Maintenance, Volume 2 of 2, Tank, Combat, Full-Tracked: 120-MM, M1A1 2350-01-087-1095, General Abrams

---

1812-VOPS-1315: Replace Thrown Track on M1A1 Tank

EVALUATION-CODED: NO **SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL:** 12 months

BILLETS: Tank Crewman

GRADES: PVT, PFC, LCPL

INITIAL TRAINING SETTING: FORMAL

CONDITION: Given an M1A1 tank with thrown track and crew, SL-3 items, and 75-foot 3/4" diameter rope.

STANDARD: Per the references.

PERFORMANCE STEPS:
1. Walk the track into position.

2. If track can be walked on, adjust track tension and continue mission.
3. If track is thrown and cannot be walked on. disconnect track.
4. Prepare to install track.
5. Check suspension for damage and serviceability.
6. Check track parts for damage and serviceability.
7. Install track torque binder.
8. Get tank onto track.
9. Get track onto drive sprocket.
10. Move track over idler wheel.
11. Connect track and adjust tension.
12. Remove track torque binder and continue mission.

REFERENCES:
1. MCO 3500.27B W/ERRATUM Operational Risk Management
2. TM 9-2350-264-10-1 Operator's Manual, Operator Controls, PMCS, and Operation Under Usual Conditions, Volume 1 of 2, Tank, Combat, Full-Tracked: 120-MM Gun, M1A1 2350-01-087-1095 General Abrams
3. TM 9-2350-264-10-2 Operator's Manual, Unusual Conditions, Troubleshooting, and Maintenance, Volume 2 of 2, Tank, Combat, Full-Tracked: 120-MM, M1A1 2350-01-087-1095, General Abrams

---

1812-VOPS-1316: Service Batteries on M1A1 Tank

EVALUATION-CODED: NO **SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL:** 12 months

BILLETS: Tank Crewman

GRADES: PVT, PFC, LCPL

INITIAL TRAINING SETTING: FORMAL

CONDITION: Given an M1A1 tank with all stations shut down, dry rags, grease, and SL-3 items.

STANDARD: Per the references.

PERFORMANCE STEPS:
1. Open battery covers.
2. Clean tops of batteries with clean rag.
3. Move rubber boots off terminals.
4. Check for evidence of corrosion, arcing, rust, or looseness; if found, notify organizational maintenance.
5. Ensure felt washers are on terminals; if missing, notify organizational maintenance.
6. Check insulation on all cables; if cracked, cut, or rubbed through, notify organizational maintenance.
7. If all batteries are in good condition, apply light coat of grease to each terminal, put rubber boots back in place, install plastic cover, swing clamps in place over cover and close battery covers.

REFERENCES:
1. MCO 3500.27B W/ERRATUM Operational Risk Management
2. TM 9-2350-264-10-1 Operator's Manual, Operator Controls, PMCS, and Operation Under Usual Conditions, Volume 1 of 2, Tank, Combat, Full-

Tracked: 120-MM Gun, M1A1 2350-01-087-1095 General Abrams
3. TM 9-2350-264-10-2 Operator's Manual, Unusual Conditions, Troubleshooting, and Maintenance, Volume 2 of 2, Tank, Combat, Full-Tracked: 120-MM, M1A1 2350-01-087-1095, General Abrams

---

1812-VOPS-1317: Troubleshoot M1A1 Tank

EVALUATION-CODED: NO **SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL:** 12 months

BILLETS: Tank Crewman

GRADES: PVT, PFC, LCPL

INITIAL TRAINING SETTING: FORMAL

CONDITION: Given an M1A1 tank with a malfunction, crew, and references.

STANDARD: To isolate and identify any malfunctions, correct if authorized, and report to organizational maintenance as necessary.

PERFORMANCE STEPS:
1. Determine the symptom or malfunction.
2. Locate symptom or malfunction in TM 9-2350-264-10-2.
3. Conduct troubleshooting procedures.

REFERENCES:
1. MCO 3500.27B W/ERRATUM Operational Risk Management
2. TM 9-2350-264-10-1 Operator's Manual, Operator Controls, PMCS, and Operation Under Usual Conditions, Volume 1 of 2, Tank, Combat, Full-Tracked: 120-MM Gun, M1A1 2350-01-087-1095 General Abrams
3. TM 9-2350-264-10-2 Operator's Manual, Unusual Conditions, Troubleshooting, and Maintenance, Volume 2 of 2, Tank, Combat, Full-Tracked: 120-MM, M1A1 2350-01-087-1095, General Abrams

---

1812-VOPS-1318: Slave Start M1A1 Tank

EVALUATION-CODED: NO **SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL:** 12 months

BILLETS: Tank Crewman

GRADES: PVT, PFC, LCPL

INITIAL TRAINING SETTING: FORMAL

CONDITION: Given an M1A1 tank with dead batteries, crew, and the appropriate collateral equipment.

STANDARD: Per the references.

PERFORMANCE STEPS:
1. Prepare dead tank.
2. Prepare live tank.
3. Start dead tank.

REFERENCES:
1. MCO 3500.27B W/ERRATUM Operational Risk Management
2. TM 9-2350-264-10-1 Operator's Manual, Operator Controls, PMCS, and Operation Under Usual Conditions, Volume 1 of 2, Tank, Combat, Full-Tracked: 120-MM Gun, M1A1 2350-01-087-1095 General Abrams
3. TM 9-2350-264-10-2 Operator's Manual, Unusual Conditions, Troubleshooting, and Maintenance, Volume 2 of 2, Tank, Combat, Full-Tracked: 120-MM, M1A1 2350-01-087-1095, General Abrams

---

1812-VOPS-1319: Operate M1A1 Tank on Land

EVALUATION-CODED: NO **SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL:** 12 months

BILLETS: Tank Crewman

GRADES: PVT, PFC, LCPL, CPL, SGT, SSGT, GYSGT

INITIAL TRAINING SETTING: FORMAL

CONDITION: Given an M1A1 tank, a training area to support land driving, and the references.

STANDARD: Without losing control of the vehicle at any time, applying emergency procedures as required, and continuously observing the forward terrain for possible enemy targets and likely friendly firing positions.

PERFORMANCE STEPS:
1. Perform preoperations checks.
2. Properly start the tank.
3. Check operating systems to ensure vehicle is functioning properly.
4. Ensure all stations are properly prepared.
5. Ensure that the crews operate the vehicle on land, driving in reverse and pivoting the vehicle as required.
6. Ensure that the crews perform during operations checks as required.
7. Ensure that the crews drive up and down hills as required.
8. Ensure that the crews drive over obstacles as required.
9. Ensure that the crews drive across ditches as required.
10. Ensure that the crews use evasive driving techniques as required.
11. Ensure that the crews drive at night, with and without lights, with and without night vision devices, as required.
12. Ensure that the crews stop the vehicle properly.
13. Ensure that the crews perform after operations checks.

REFERENCES:
1. FM 3-20.15 Tank Platoon
2. MCO 3500.27B W/ERRATUM Operational Risk Management
3. MCWP 3-12 Marine Corps Tank Employment
4. TM 9-2350-264-10-1 Operator's Manual, Operator Controls, PMCS, and Operation Under Usual Conditions, Volume 1 of 2, Tank, Combat, Full-Tracked: 120-MM Gun, M1A1 2350-01-087-1095 General Abrams
5. TM 9-2350-264-10-2 Operator's Manual, Unusual Conditions, Troubleshooting, and Maintenance, Volume 2 of 2, Tank, Combat, Full-Tracked: 120-MM, M1A1 2350-01-087-1095, General Abrams

---

1812-VOPS-1320: Recover Mired M1A1 Tank

EVALUATION-CODED: NO **SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL:** 12 months

BILLETS: Tank Crewman

GRADES: PVT, PFC, LCPL, CPL, SGT, SSGT, GYSGT

INITIAL TRAINING SETTING: FORMAL

CONDITION: Given an M1A1 tank unit, a disabled M1A1 tank capable of being towed, and references.

STANDARD: Using self recovery techniques or other M1A1 tanks if necessary.

PERFORMANCE STEPS:
1. Prepare mired vehicle for towing.
2. Prepare towing vehicle.
3. Attach tow cables or tow bar.
4. Use additional vehicles if required.

REFERENCES:
1. FM 3-20.15 Tank Platoon
2. MCO 3500.27B W/ERRATUM Operational Risk Management
3. MCRP 3-13.1B Manual for the Track Combat Vehicle Driver
4. MCRP 4-11.4A Battle Damage Assessment and Repair
5. MCRP 4-24A Vehicle Recovery Operations
6. MCWP 3-12 Marine Corps Tank Employment
7. TM 9-2350-264-10-1 Operator's Manual, Operator Controls, PMCS, and Operation Under Usual Conditions, Volume 1 of 2, Tank, Combat, Full-Tracked: 120-MM Gun, M1A1 2350-01-087-1095 General Abrams
8. TM 9-2350-264-10-2 Operator's Manual, Unusual Conditions, Troubleshooting, and Maintenance, Volume 2 of 2, Tank, Combat, Full-Tracked: 120-MM, M1A1 2350-01-087-1095, General Abrams

---

1812-VOPS-1321: Evacuate Wounded Crewmember from Each Crew Station

EVALUATION-CODED: NO **SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL:** 6 months

BILLETS: Tank Crewman

GRADES: PVT, PFC, LCPL, CPL, SGT, SSGT, GYSGT

INITIAL TRAINING SETTING: FORMAL

CONDITION: Given an M1A1 tank, a crew with a wounded crewmember, and a tactical scenario.

STANDARD: Per the references.

PERFORMANCE STEPS:
1. Stop the vehicle, preferably in a covered and concealed position.
2. Determine the extent of the crewman's injuries and stabilize him as much as possible.

3. Determine the best method for evacuating the wounded crewmember, either up and through the driver's, loader's, or commander's hatch.
4. If evacuating him up and through a hatch, have a second crewmember assist from below, while using the helo lifting strap on the crewman's uniform to raise him clear of the hatch. Lower him over the side of the vehicle to the second crewmen waiting to assist.
5. Move the injured crewman to a covered position and continue first aid as appropriate.
6. Evacuate the injured crewman in accordance with the operations order or unit SOP.

REFERENCES:
1. FM 3-20.15 Tank Platoon
2. MCO 3500.27B W/ERRATUM Operational Risk Management
3. MCWP 3-12 Marine Corps Tank Employment
4. TM 9-2350-264-10-1 Operator's Manual, Operator Controls, PMCS, and Operation Under Usual Conditions, Volume 1 of 2, Tank, Combat, Full-Tracked: 120-MM Gun, M1A1 2350-01-087-1095 General Abrams
5. TM 9-2350-264-10-2 Operator's Manual, Unusual Conditions, Troubleshooting, and Maintenance, Volume 2 of 2, Tank, Combat, Full-Tracked: 120-MM, M1A1 2350-01-087-1095, General Abrams

---

1812-VOPS-1322: Tow M1A1 Tank

EVALUATION-CODED: NO **SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL:** 12 months

BILLETS: Tank Crewman

GRADES: PVT, PFC, LCPL, CPL, SGT, SSGT, GYSGT

INITIAL TRAINING SETTING: FORMAL

CONDITION: Given an M1A1 tank capable of being towed, two M1A1's capable of towing or suitable tank recovery vehicle, crews, tow bar, appropriate collateral equipment, and a training area suitable for mechanized operations.

STANDARD: Per the references.

PERFORMANCE STEPS:
1. Prepare disabled tank for towing.
2. Prepare towing tank for towing.
3. Attach tow bar or tow cables between vehicles.
4. Employ brake vehicle as necessary.

REFERENCES:
1. FM 3-20.15 Tank Platoon
2. MCO 3500.27B W/ERRATUM Operational Risk Management
3. MCWP 3-12 Marine Corps Tank Employment
4. TM 9-2350-264-10-1 Operator's Manual, Operator Controls, PMCS, and Operation Under Usual Conditions, Volume 1 of 2, Tank, Combat, Full-Tracked: 120-MM Gun, M1A1 2350-01-087-1095 General Abrams
5. TM 9-2350-264-10-2 Operator's Manual, Unusual Conditions, Troubleshooting, and Maintenance, Volume 2 of 2, Tank, Combat, Full-Tracked: 120-MM, M1A1 2350-01-087-1095, General Abrams

---

1812-VOPS-1323: Operate Driver's Night Vision Enhancer

EVALUATION-CODED: NO **SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL:** 12 months

BILLETS: Tank Crewman

GRADES: PVT, PFC, LCPL

INITIAL TRAINING SETTING: FORMAL

CONDITION: Given a tank unit, supported unit, an operations order, tactical scenario involving night or limited visibility, specified threat, training area, and appropriate collateral equipment.

STANDARD: Per the references.

PERFORMANCE STEPS:
1. Conduct preoperations checks and services.
2. Install Driver's Night Vision Enhancer (DVE) in driver's station.
3. Connect power cable from tank to DVE and turn Night Periscope switch to "ON" on the driver's master panel.
4. Ensure sight is centered on hatch prior to vehicle operation.
5. Focus field of view prior to vehicle operation.

REFERENCES:
1. FM 3-20.15 Tank Platoon
2. MCO 3500.27B W/ERRATUM Operational Risk Management
3. MCWP 3-12 Marine Corps Tank Employment
4. TM 9-2350-264-10-1 Operator's Manual, Operator Controls, PMCS, and Operation Under Usual Conditions, Volume 1 of 2, Tank, Combat, Full-Tracked: 120-MM Gun, M1A1 2350-01-087-1095 General Abrams
5. TM 9-2350-264-10-2 Operator's Manual, Unusual Conditions, Troubleshooting, and Maintenance, Volume 2 of 2, Tank, Combat, Full-Tracked: 120-MM, M1A1 2350-01-087-1095, General Abrams

---

1812-VOPS-1324: Operate Night Vision Goggles

EVALUATION-CODED: NO **SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL:** 12 months

BILLETS: Tank Crewman

GRADES: PVT, PFC, LCPL, CPL, SGT, SSGT, GYSGT

INITIAL TRAINING SETTING: FORMAL

CONDITION: Given a tank unit, supported unit, an operations order, tactical scenario involving night or limited visibility, specified threat, training area, pair of night vision goggles, and appropriate collateral equipment.

STANDARD: Per the references.

PERFORMANCE STEPS:
1. Conduct preoperational checks.
2. Prepare goggles for operation.

3. Operate the goggles.
4. Shutdown and stow the goggles.

REFERENCES:
1. FM 3-20.15 Tank Platoon
2. MCO 3500.27B W/ERRATUM Operational Risk Management
3. TM 11-5855-262-10 Operator's Manual, AN/PVS-7

1812-VOPS-1325: Extinguish Tank Fire

EVALUATION-CODED: NO **SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL:** 12 months

BILLETS: Tank Crewman

GRADES: PVT, PFC, LCPL, CPL, SGT, SSGT, GYSGT

INITIAL TRAINING SETTING: FORMAL

CONDITION: Given an M1A1 tank with crew and a scenario with a simulated vehicle fire.

STANDARD: Per the references.

PERFORMANCE STEPS:
1. Operate engine compartment fire extinguisher in the automatic mode.
2. Operate crew compartment fire extinguisher in the automatic mode.

REFERENCES:
1. FM 3-20.15 Tank Platoon
2. MCO 3500.27B W/ERRATUM Operational Risk Management
3. TM 9-2350-264-10-1 Operator's Manual, Operator Controls, PMCS, and Operation Under Usual Conditions, Volume 1 of 2, Tank, Combat, Full-Tracked: 120-MM Gun, M1A1 2350-01-087-1095 General Abrams
4. TM 9-2350-264-10-2 Operator's Manual, Unusual Conditions, Troubleshooting, and Maintenance, Volume 2 of 2, Tank, Combat, Full-Tracked: 120-MM, M1A1 2350-01-087-1095, General Abrams

---

1812-VOPS-1326: Maintain Night Vision Goggles

EVALUATION-CODED: NO **SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL:** 12 months

BILLETS: Tank Crewman

GRADES: PVT, PFC, LCPL, CPL, SGT, SSGT, GYSGT

INITIAL TRAINING SETTING: FORMAL

CONDITION: Given night vision goggles with carrying case, clean lint-free cloths, lens tissue, clean water, and references.

STANDARD: By inspecting all components and performing authorized maintenance.

PERFORMANCE STEPS:
1. Inspect goggles and carrier.
2. Inspect optical surfaces for dirt, fingerprints, chips, or cracks.
3. Inspect exterior surface for damage.
4. Inspect battery compartment for corrosion, defective battery cap spring.
5. Inspect eye relief adjustment to ensure free movement.
6. Rotate diopter adjustment rings and check for free motion.
7. Inspect interpupillary adjustment and ensure that minoculars can be freely moved farther apart and closer together.
8. Rotate focus knob and check for free movement.
9. Inspect rotary switch. Inspect mechanical action of the switch.
10. Inspect head mount assembly for holes, cracks, defective fasteners.
11. Clean carrying case.

REFERENCES:
1. MCO 3500.27B W/ERRATUM Operational Risk Management
2. TM 11-5855-262-10 Operator's Manual, AN/PVS-7

1812-VOPS-1327: Maintain Driver's Night Vision Enhancer

EVALUATION-CODED: NO **SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL:** 12 months

BILLETS: Tank Crewman

GRADES: PVT, PFC, LCPL

INITIAL TRAINING SETTING: FORMAL

CONDITION: Given a Driver's Night Vision Enhancer (DVE) mounted in a tank, alcohol, lens cleaning solution, lens tissue, and references.

STANDARD: To ensure all grease and dirt is removed from the optical surface, lenses are dry, and any damage to the night vision viewer is reported to organizational maintenance.

PERFORMANCE STEPS:
1. Flush surfaces of lenses with alcohol.
2. Soak lens tissue using cleaning solution.
3. Apply solution to lenses dabbing lightly until surface is evenly covered.
4. Wait 1 to 3 minutes for solution to loosen heavy dirt (do not allow solution to dry) and flush solution away with alcohol.
5. Repeat solution application as needed to clean dirty optics.
6. Clean lenses in small section by applying cleaning solution and gently wiping with clean tissue.
7. Rinse lenses with alcohol; dry lenses by wiping lightly in a single direction with clean lens tissue.
8. Report any damage to organizational maintenance.

REFERENCES:
1. MCO 3500.27B W/ERRATUM Operational Risk Management
2. TM 9-2350-264-10-1 Operator's Manual, Operator Controls, PMCS, and Operation Under Usual Conditions, Volume 1 of 2, Tank, Combat, Full-Tracked: 120-MM Gun, M1A1 2350-01-087-1095 General Abrams
3. TM 9-2350-264-10-2 Operator's Manual, Unusual Conditions, Troubleshooting,

and Maintenance, Volume 2 of 2, Tank, Combat, Full-Tracked: 120-MM, M1A1 2350-01-087-1095, General Abrams

---

1812-CBTS-1401: Adjust NBC Crew Compartment Pressurization on M1A1 Tank

EVALUATION-CODED: NO **SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL:** 12 months

BILLETS: Tank Crewman

GRADES: PVT, PFC, LCPL, CPL, SGT, SSGT, GYSGT

INITIAL TRAINING SETTING: FORMAL

CONDITION: Given an M1A1 tank with all hatches closed, a round in the main gun (or muzzle plug installed), the coaxial machinegun installed, front drain valve closed, all periscopes installed, CREW PRESS LOW light on, and TM 9-2350-164-10-2.

STANDARD: Adjust NBC crew compartment pressurization system on an M1A1 tank to elevate a low pressure condition as per the reference.

PERFORMANCE STEPS:
1. Loosen two screws from NBC vent guard and cover.
2. Start tank and set tactical idle switch to ON.
3. Set NBC MODE MAIN switch on commander's panel to ON, if main NBC system comes on immediately turn off NBC and notify unit maintenance.
4. Wait 2 minutes for crew compartment to pressurize.
5. If CREW PRESS LOW light on commander's panel is off, slowly slide cover clockwise away from hole until CREW PRESS LOW light comes on. If CREW PRESS LOW light does not come on, do troubleshooting.
6. Slowly slide cover counterclockwise over hole until CREW PRESS LOW light goes off. If CREW PRESS LOW light does not go off, tighten two screws to guard and cover, and notify organizational maintenance.

REFERENCES:
1. MCO 3500.27B W/ERRATUM Operational Risk Management
2. TM 9-2350-264-10-1 Operator's Manual, Operator Controls, PMCS, and Operation Under Usual Conditions, Volume 1 of 2, Tank, Combat, Full-Tracked: 120-MM Gun, M1A1 2350-01-087-1095 General Abrams
3. TM 9-2350-264-10-2 Operator's Manual, Unusual Conditions, Troubleshooting, and Maintenance, Volume 2 of 2, Tank, Combat, Full-Tracked: 120-MM, M1A1 2350-01-087-1095, General Abrams

---

1812-CBTS-1402: Operate NBC System on M1A1 Tank

EVALUATION-CODED: NO **SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL:** 12 months

BILLETS: Tank Crewman

GRADES: PVT, PFC, LCPL, CPL, SGT, SSGT, GYSGT

INITIAL TRAINING SETTING: FORMAL

CONDITION: Given an M1A1 tank, a field protective mask, air cooled vest, tactical scenario involving an NBC threat, and references.

STANDARD: So the crew is offered maximum protection, the mission is continued, communications are reestablished, and the system remains fully operational.

PERFORMANCE STEPS:
1. Don protective mask.
2. Put CVC helmet on over mask and adjust mike boom to be in the front of mask.
3. Put on air cooled vest as needed.
4. Connect mask canister to break away air duct socket.
5. Connect vest air hose to air duct socket and turn valve to open position as needed.
6. If main NBC system is unusable, and you need NBC breathing air protection, use NBC back up system.
7. Troubleshoot NBC backup system.

REFERENCES:
1. FM 3-20.15 Tank Platoon
2. MCO 3500.27B W/ERRATUM Operational Risk Management
3. MCWP 3-12 Marine Corps Tank Employment
4. TM 9-2350-264-10-1 Operator's Manual, Operator Controls, PMCS, and Operation Under Usual Conditions, Volume 1 of 2, Tank, Combat, Full-Tracked: 120-MM Gun, M1A1 2350-01-087-1095 General Abrams
5. TM 9-2350-264-10-2 Operator's Manual, Unusual Conditions, Troubleshooting, and Maintenance, Volume 2 of 2, Tank, Combat, Full-Tracked: 120-MM, M1A1 2350-01-087-1095, General Abrams

---

1812-CSS-1501: Maintain Ordnance Vehicle Logbook

EVALUATION-CODED: NO **SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL:** 12 months

BILLETS: Tank Crewman

GRADES: PVT, PFC, LCPL, CPL, SGT, SSGT, GYSGT

INITIAL TRAINING SETTING: FORMAL

CONDITION: Given an M1A1 tank, ordnance vehicle logbook, and references.

STANDARD: So there are accurate entries.

PERFORMANCE STEPS:
1. Inventory log book to ensure that it is complete.
2. Verify that the inspector block has been properly signed on NAVMC 10392, Ordnance Vehicle Military Acceptance Record.
3. Ensure that NAVMC 10393, Ordnance Vehicle Daily Log contains appropriate entries and signatures.
4. Ensure that NAVMC 10394, Ordnance Vehicle Monthly Log contains appropriate entries and signatures.
5. Ensure that NAVMC 10398, Ordnance Vehicle Service Record contains appropriate entries and signatures.

6. Ensure that NAVMC 10401, Ordnance Vehicle Overhaul and Rebuild Record contains appropriate entries and signatures.

REFERENCES:
1. MCO 3500.27B W/ERRATUM Operational Risk Management
2. MCO P4790.2 MIMMS Field Procedures Manual
3. TM 4700-15/1 Marine Corps Ground Equipment Record Procedures

---

1812-OTH-1701: Maintain the M9 Service Pistol

EVALUATION-CODED: NO **SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL:** 12 months

BILLETS: Tank Crewman

GRADES: PVT, PFC, LCPL, CPL, SGT, SSGT, GYSGT

INITIAL TRAINING SETTING: FORMAL

CONDITION: Given an M9 service pistol, cleaning gear, lubricants, and references.

STANDARD: By performing all operator preventive maintenance.

PERFORMANCE STEPS:
1. Handle the weapon safely.
2. Make a complete safe weapon.
3. Disassemble the pistol.
4. Inspect the components.
5. Clean the components.
6. Lubricate the components.
7. Reassemble the pistol.
8. Conduct a function check.
9. Report discrepancies to armory.

REFERENCES:
1. FMFM 0-8 Basic Marksmanship
2. MCO 3500.27B W/ERRATUM Operational Risk Management
3. TM 1005A-10/1 PISTOL SEMIAUTOMATIC 9mm, M9, OPERATOR'S MANUAL

MISCELLANEOUS:

ADMINISTRATIVE INSTRUCTIONS: This individual training standard is incorporated in the Marine Corps Common Skills Volume II Cpl-Capt (MCO 1510.90A) as pertaining to the grades of SSgt-Capt.

1812-OTH-1702: Engage Targets with M9 Service Pistol

EVALUATION-CODED: NO **SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL:** 12 months

BILLETS: Tank Crewman

GRADES: PVT, PFC, LCPL, CPL, SGT, SSGT, GYSGT

INITIAL TRAINING SETTING: FORMAL

CONDITION: Given an M9 service pistol, two magazines, ammunition, targets, suitable ranges, and references.

STANDARD: So that targets are suppressed or destroyed.

PERFORMANCE STEPS:
1. Handle the weapon safely.
2. Assume a firing position.
3. Prepare for firing.
4. Engage target.
5. Assess the situation.

REFERENCES:
1. FMFM 0-8 Basic Marksmanship
2. MCO 3500.27B W/ERRATUM Operational Risk Management
3. TM 1005A-10/1 PISTOL SEMIAUTOMATIC 9mm, M9, OPERATOR'S MANUAL

MISCELLANEOUS:

ADMINISTRATIVE INSTRUCTIONS: This individual training standard is incorporated in the Marine Corps Common Skills Volume II Cpl-Capt (MCO 1510.90A) as pertaining to the grades of SSgt-Capt.

1812-TAC-1801: Employ Terrain Driving Techniques

EVALUATION-CODED: NO **SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL:** 12 months

BILLETS: Tank Crewman

GRADES: PVT, PFC, LCPL, CPL, SGT, SSGT, GYSGT

INITIAL TRAINING SETTING: FORMAL

CONDITION: Given an M1A1 tank with trained crew, a training area suitable for mechanized operations, and references.

STANDARD: Per the references.

PERFORMANCE STEPS:
1. Use covered and concealed routes.
2. Minimize dust signature.
3. Maintain interval between vehicles.
4. Avoid silhouetting the vehicles.
5. Do not drive forward out of Battle Positions (BPs) or vehicle fighting positions; reverse out of positions to avoid detection.
6. Scan the ground for disturbed earth or out-of-place features that may indicate mines.
7. Select appropriate formation and movement technique.
8. Employ over watch elements whenever possible.

REFERENCES:
1. FM 3-20.15 Tank Platoon

2. MCO 3500.27B W/ERRATUM Operational Risk Management
3. MCWP 3-12 Marine Corps Tank Employment

1812-TAC-1802: Employ Scanning Techniques

EVALUATION-CODED: NO **SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL:** 12 months

BILLETS: Tank Crewman

GRADES: PVT, PFC, LCPL, CPL, SGT, SSGT, GYSGT

INITIAL TRAINING SETTING: FORMAL

CONDITION: Given an M1A1 tank, operations order, a tactical scenario, specific threat, training area, and references.

STANDARD: To identify the next potential covered and concealed position, alternate and supplementary positions, avenues of maneuver, obstacles, possible enemy positions, and weapons signatures.

PERFORMANCE STEPS:
1. Conduct ground search using rapid-scan method.
2. Conduct ground search using slow (50 meter) scan method.
3. Conduct ground search using detailed search method.
4. Conduct air search using horizontal search and scan.
5. Conduct air search using vertical search and scan.

REFERENCES:
1. FM 3-20.12 Tank Gunnery
2. FM 3-20.15 Tank Platoon
3. MCO 3500.27B W/ERRATUM Operational Risk Management
4. MCWP 3-12 Marine Corps Tank Employment

1812-TAC-1803: Camouflage the M1A1 Tank

EVALUATION-CODED: NO **SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL:** 12 months

BILLETS: Tank Crewman

GRADES: PVT, PFC, LCPL

INITIAL TRAINING SETTING: FORMAL

CONDITION: Given an M1A1 tank, a tactical scenario, training area, appropriate collateral equipment, and references.

STANDARD: To avoid detection by ground or air observers with the most appropriate method considering the tactical scenario, natural vegetation, terrain, and weather.

PERFORMANCE STEPS:
1. Assume a position taking maximum advantage of the local terrain to hide the vehicle, especially the suspension.

2. Use natural vegetation to break up the outline of the vehicle.
3. Reduce glare from optics and vision blocks.
4. Enforce noise and light discipline.
5. Employ camouflage netting as necessary.
6. Brush out or cover tracks leading into the position.

REFERENCES:

1. FM 20-3 Camouflage
2. FM 3-20.15 Tank Platoon
3. MCO 3500.27B W/ERRATUM Operational Risk Management
4. MCWP 3-12 Marine Corps Tank Employment

10008. 2000-LEVEL 1812 INDIVIDUAL EVENTS

1812-GNRY-2101: Zero M48 .50 Caliber Machine Gun on M1A1 Tank

EVALUATION-CODED: NO **SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL:** 6 months

BILLETS: Platoon Sergeant, Tank Commander, Tank Crewman

GRADES: LCPL, CPL, SGT, SSGT, GYSGT

INITIAL TRAINING SETTING: MOJT

CONDITION: Given a loaded and boresighted M48 .50 caliber machine gun mounted on an M1A1 tank, crew, target at 500 meters, 50 rounds of .50 caliber ammunition, and references.

STANDARD: So that the aim point is centered on the beaten zone.

PERFORMANCE STEPS:

1. Move the butterfly trigger safety until "F" can be seen.
2. Alert crew on intercom by announcing "CALIBER .50".
3. Lay 500 meter aim point in CWS sight on center of the 500 meter target.
4. Set SAFE/ARMED switch to ARMED position then let go and make sure ARMED light is lit.
5. Alert crew on intercom by announcing "CALIBER .50 ON THE WAY".
6. Fire a burst of 10-20 rounds.
7. Look at beaten zone on target in relation to aim point on sight reticle.
8. Set SAFE/ARMED switch to SAFE position and then let go and make sure ARMED light is not lit.
9. If aim point in sight reticle is centered on beaten zone, zeroing is complete, if not, proceed to next step.
10. Without moving machinegun or CWS sight, align aim point in sight reticle to center of beaten zone.
11. Repeat steps 3 through 9 until aim point on sight reticle is centered on beaten zone.
12. Move butterfly trigger until "S" can be seen.

REFERENCES:

1. FM 3-20.12 Tank Gunnery
2. MCO 3500.27B W/ERRATUM Operational Risk Management
3. MCWP 3-15.1 Machine Guns and Machine Gun Gunnery
4. TM 08953A-10/1-3 Operator's Manual for Boresighting and Zeroing M1A1 Tank Armament
5. TM 9-1005-213-10 Machine Gun, Caliber .50, Browning
6. TM 9-2350-264-10-1 Operator's Manual, Operator Controls, PMCS, and Operation Under Usual Conditions, Volume 1 of 2, Tank, Combat, Full-Tracked: 120-MM Gun, M1A1 2350-01-087-1095 General Abrams
7. TM 9-2350-264-10-2 Operator's Manual, Unusual Conditions, Troubleshooting, and Maintenance, Volume 2 of 2, Tank, Combat, Full-Tracked: 120-MM, M1A1 2350-01-087-1095, General Abrams

1812-GNRY-2102: Engage Targets with 120mm Main Gun From Gunner's Station on M1A1 Tank

EVALUATION-CODED: NO **SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL:** 6 months

BILLETS: Platoon Sergeant, Tank Commander, Tank Crewman

GRADES: LCPL, CPL, SGT, SSGT, GYSGT

INITIAL TRAINING SETTING: MOJT

CONDITION: Given a moving or stationary M1A1 tank with crew, ammunition, one or more stationary or moving targets, a fire command, and the references.

STANDARD: Until each target is suppressed or destroyed within 5 seconds.

PERFORMANCE STEPS:
1. Set FIRE MODE switch to NORMAL and GUN SELECT switch to MAIN.
2. Select ammunition, or ensure correct reticle is in GAS.
3. Identify target.
4. Switch to 10X magnification if precision engagement.
5. Place aiming point or proper range line on center mass of target.
6. Lase and re-lay on center mass if precision engagement.
7. Announce "ON THE WAY" and fire.
8. Employ re-engage method as needed.
9. Employ gunner's standard adjustment as needed.

REFERENCES:
1. FM 3-20.12 Tank Gunnery
2. MCO 3500.27B W/ERRATUM Operational Risk Management
3. TM 9-2350-264-10-1 Operator's Manual, Operator Controls, PMCS, and Operation Under Usual Conditions, Volume 1 of 2, Tank, Combat, Full-Tracked: 120-MM Gun, M1A1 2350-01-087-1095 General Abrams
4. TM 9-2350-264-10-2 Operator's Manual, Unusual Conditions, Troubleshooting, and Maintenance, Volume 2 of 2, Tank, Combat, Full-Tracked: 120-MM, M1A1 2350-01-087-1095, General Abrams

---

1812-GNRY-2103: Engage Targets with 120mm Main Gun From Commander's Weapon Station on M1A1 Tank

EVALUATION-CODED: NO **SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL:** 6 months

BILLETS: Platoon Sergeant, Tank Commander

GRADES: SGT, SSGT, GYSGT

INITIAL TRAINING SETTING: MOJT

CONDITION: Given a stationary or moving M1A1 tank with crew, 120mm ammunition, one or more moving or stationary targets, and the references.

STANDARD: Using precision and battlesight gunnery techniques.

PERFORMANCE STEPS:
1. Prepare the tank for three-man crew operations.
2. Issue a fire command by announcing "LOAD (type of ammunition)" and, at the same time, lay the main gun for direction.
3. Ensure the AMMUNITION SELECT switch is set to the announced ammunition.
4. Lay center mass of the target.
5. Lase to target or press MANUAL RANGE BATTLE SGT button to ensure the indexed range was displayed.
6. Listen for "UP" from loader, announce "ON THE WAY" and fire.

REFERENCES:
1. FM 3-20.12 Tank Gunnery
2. MCO 3500.27B W/ERRATUM Operational Risk Management
3. TM 9-2350-264-10-1 Operator's Manual, Operator Controls, PMCS, and Operation Under Usual Conditions, Volume 1 of 2, Tank, Combat, Full-Tracked: 120-MM Gun, M1A1 2350-01-087-1095 General Abrams
4. TM 9-2350-264-10-2 Operator's Manual, Unusual Conditions, Troubleshooting, and Maintenance, Volume 2 of 2, Tank, Combat, Full-Tracked: 120-MM, M1A1 2350-01-087-1095, General Abrams

---

1812-GNRY-2104: Engage Targets with Coaxial Machine Gun From Commander's Station on M1A1 Tank

EVALUATION-CODED: NO **SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL:** 6 months

BILLETS: Platoon Sergeant, Tank Commander

GRADES: SGT, SSGT, GYSGT

INITIAL TRAINING SETTING: MOJT

CONDITION: Given a stationary M1A1 tank with a three man crew, 7.62mm ammunition, targets, and references.

STANDARD: Until the targets are suppressed or destroyed.

PERFORMANCE STEPS:
1. Acquire and identify target.
2. Use the tank commander's power control handle to lay the center of the GPS reticle on target.
3. Lase to the target.
4. Inspect the GPS symbols for multiple returns or malfunction.
5. Move GUN SELECT switch to COAX.
6. Announce "FROM MY POSITION" and fire.
7. Cease fire when targets are suppressed or destroyed, and announce "TC COMPLETE".

REFERENCES:
1. FM 3-20.12 Tank Gunnery
2. MCO 3500.27B W/ERRATUM Operational Risk Management
3. MCWP 3-15.1 Machine Guns and Machine Gun Gunnery
4. TM 9-1005-313-10 Maintenance Manual, 7.62mm Machinegun M240G
5. TM 9-2350-264-10-1 Operator's Manual, Operator Controls, PMCS, and Operation Under Usual Conditions, Volume 1 of 2, Tank, Combat, Full-

Tracked: 120-MM Gun, M1A1 2350-01-087-1095 General Abrams
6. TM 9-2350-264-10-2 Operator's Manual, Unusual Conditions, Troubleshooting, and Maintenance, Volume 2 of 2, Tank, Combat, Full-Tracked: 120-MM, M1A1 2350-01-087-1095, General Abrams

---

1812-GNRY-2105: Fire M257 Grenade Launcher System

EVALUATION-CODED: NO **SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL:** 12 months

BILLETS: Tank Crewman

GRADES: LCPL, CPL, SGT, SSGT, GYSGT

INITIAL TRAINING SETTING: MOJT

CONDITION: Given an M1A1 tank and appropriate collateral materials.

STANDARD: Per the references.

PERFORMANCE STEPS:
1. Announce "GRENADE LAUNCHER" and traverse the turret to desired direction of fire.
2. Fire the grenades.

REFERENCES:
1. FM 3-20.12 Tank Gunnery
2. MCO 3500.27B W/ERRATUM Operational Risk Management
3. TM 9-2350-264-10-1 Operator's Manual, Operator Controls, PMCS, and Operation Under Usual Conditions, Volume 1 of 2, Tank, Combat, Full-Tracked: 120-MM Gun, M1A1 2350-01-087-1095 General Abrams
4. TM 9-2350-264-10-2 Operator's Manual, Unusual Conditions, Troubleshooting, and Maintenance, Volume 2 of 2, Tank, Combat, Full-Tracked: 120-MM, M1A1 2350-01-087-1095, General Abrams

---

1812-GNRY-2106: Apply Failure-to-Fire Procedures on M257 Grenade Launcher System

EVALUATION-CODED: NO **SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL:** 12 months

BILLETS: Tank Crewman

GRADES: LCPL, CPL, SGT, SSGT, GYSGT

INITIAL TRAINING SETTING: MOJT

CONDITION: Given an M1A1 tank and appropriate collateral materials.

STANDARD: Per the references.

PERFORMANCE STEPS:
1. Set TURRET POWER to "OFF".
2. Check to ensure grenades are properly seated.
3. Point turret in safe direction.
4. Attempt to fire again.

REFERENCES:
1. FM 3-20.12 Tank Gunnery
2. MCO 3500.27B W/ERRATUM Operational Risk Management
3. TM 9-2350-264-10-1 Operator's Manual, Operator Controls, PMCS, and Operation Under Usual Conditions, Volume 1 of 2, Tank, Combat, Full-Tracked: 120-MM Gun, M1A1 2350-01-087-1095 General Abrams
4. TM 9-2350-264-10-2 Operator's Manual, Unusual Conditions, Troubleshooting, and Maintenance, Volume 2 of 2, Tank, Combat, Full-Tracked: 120-MM, M1A1 2350-01-087-1095, General Abrams

---

1812-GNRY-2107: Conduct Screening Test of M1A1 Main Gun

EVALUATION-CODED: NO **SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL:** 6 months

BILLETS: Tank Commander

GRADES: SGT, SSGT, GYSGT

INITIAL TRAINING SETTING: FORMAL

CONDITION: Given an M1A1 tank with crew, ammunition, a range suitable for conducting the required firing, and references.

STANDARD: To ensure the tank can fire accurately using the fleet zero (CCF) method of calibration.

PERFORMANCE STEPS:
1. Establish proofing team.
2. Establish screening targets.
3. Conduct screening test.
4. Determine mean point of impact and individual tank CCF.
5. Screen under unusual conditions as required.
6. Boresight the .50 caliber machine gun.
7. Boresight the coaxial machine gun.
8. Zero the .50 caliber machine gun.
9. Zero the coaxial machine gun.

REFERENCES:
1. FM 3-20.12 Tank Gunnery
2. MCO 3500.27B W/ERRATUM Operational Risk Management
3. TM 08953A-10/1-3 Operator's Manual for Boresighting and Zeroing M1A1 Tank Armament
4. TM 9-2350-264-10-1 Operator's Manual, Operator Controls, PMCS, and Operation Under Usual Conditions, Volume 1 of 2, Tank, Combat, Full-Tracked: 120-MM Gun, M1A1 2350-01-087-1095 General Abrams
5. TM 9-2350-264-10-2 Operator's Manual, Unusual Conditions, Troubleshooting, and Maintenance, Volume 2 of 2, Tank, Combat, Full-Tracked: 120-MM, M1A1 2350-01-087-1095, General Abrams

---

1812-GNRY-2108: Conduct Armament Accuracy Checks

EVALUATION-CODED: NO **SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL:** 1 month

BILLETS: Tank Crewman

GRADES: PVT, PFC, LCPL, CPL, SGT, SSGT, GYSGT

INITIAL TRAINING SETTING: MOJT

CONDITION: Given an M1A1 tank, a crew, the appropriate collateral equipment, and references.

STANDARD: To ensure the fire control system is operational.

PERFORMANCE STEPS:
1. Check main accumulator pressure.
2. Check power elevation and elevation cylinder.
3. Check fault indicator.
4. Check special input.
5. Check ballistic solution.
6. Check muzzle reference system.

REFERENCES:
1. FM 3-20.12 Tank Gunnery
2. MCO 3500.27B W/ERRATUM Operational Risk Management
3. TM 9-2350-264-10-1 Operator's Manual, Operator Controls, PMCS, and Operation Under Usual Conditions, Volume 1 of 2, Tank, Combat, Full-Tracked: 120-MM Gun, M1A1 2350-01-087-1095 General Abrams
4. TM 9-2350-264-10-2 Operator's Manual, Unusual Conditions, Troubleshooting, and Maintenance, Volume 2 of 2, Tank, Combat, Full-Tracked: 120-MM, M1A1 2350-01-087-1095, General Abrams

---

1812-CMDC-2201: Assist in Planning the Collection of Intelligence

EVALUATION-CODED: NO **SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL:** 12 months

BILLETS: Platoon Sergeant

GRADES: SSGT, GYSGT

INITIAL TRAINING SETTING: MOJT

CONDITION: Given a tank unit, supported infantry unit, an operations order defining the battle space and mission, tactical scenario, map of the battle space, specified threat, and references.

STANDARD: To support the tactical operation.

PERFORMANCE STEPS:
1. Assist in establishing Commander's Critical Information Requirements (CCRI); ensure that they are published to the command with reporting instructions.
2. Assist in establishing Essential Elements of Friendly Information (EEFI); EEFIs are concise directives with three parts: a positive directive, qualifying question, statements directing special attention, ensure that they are published to the command with reporting instructions.
3. Assist in developing intelligence collection worksheet or other systematic

method for managing the collection effort.
4. Assist in establishing reporting instructions as part of unit SOP or coordinating instructions.
5. Coordinate with unit S-3 for all reconnaissance element taskings.
6. Submit requests for additional information to higher command element or through him to higher, adjacent and supporting commands.
7. Submit requests for additional intelligence assets to higher command element or through him to higher, adjacent and supporting commands.
8. Assist in developing procedures along with the staff for the handling of captured/detained personnel, documents, and equipment. Ensure that the procedures are published as part of the unit SOP or coordinating instructions.
9. Report all reconnaissance information to higher headquarters.

REFERENCES:
1. FM 3-20.15 Tank Platoon
2. MCO 3500.27B W/ERRATUM Operational Risk Management
3. MCRP 2-12A Intelligence Preparation of the Battlefield (IPB)
4. MCRP 2-25A Reconnaissance Reports Guide
5. MCWP 3-12 Marine Corps Tank Employment

1812-CMDC-2202: Conduct Terrain Analysis

EVALUATION-CODED: NO **SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL:** 12 months

BILLETS: Platoon Sergeant, Tank Commander

GRADES: SGT, SSGT, GYSGT

INITIAL TRAINING SETTING: FORMAL

CONDITION: Given a tank unit, supported infantry unit, an operations order defining the battle space and mission, tactical scenario, map of the battle space, specified threat, and references.

STANDARD: To determine the effects of the environment on friendly and enemy operations.

PERFORMANCE STEPS:
1. Define the battlespace to include: area of interest, area of influence, and area of operations.
2. Determine each of the following in the Area of Operations (AO), to include their effect on operations: observation and fields of fire, avenues of approach, key terrain to include decisive terrain, obstacles, and cover and concealment.
3. Determine key features of local weather and its effect on operations, to include: Beginning Morning Nautical Twilight (BMNT), Ending Evening Nautical Twilight (EENT), moon rise, moon set, percent illumination, and temperature (high, low), precipitation by type and amount, wind (directions and speed), fog and cloud ceiling, and weather effecting amphibious operations as necessary.

REFERENCES:
1. FM 21-26 Map Reading and Land Navigation

2. FM 3-20.15 Tank Platoon
3. MCO 3500.27B W/ERRATUM Operational Risk Management
4. MCRP 2-12A Intelligence Preparation of the Battlefield (IPB)
5. MCWP 3-12 Marine Corps Tank Employment

1812-CMDC-2203: Conduct Threat Analysis

EVALUATION-CODED: NO **SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL:** 12 months

BILLETS: Platoon Sergeant, Tank Commander

GRADES: SGT, SSGT, GYSGT

INITIAL TRAINING SETTING: FORMAL

CONDITION: Given a tank unit, supported infantry unit, an operations order defining the battle space and mission, tactical scenario, map of the battle space, specified threat, and references.

STANDARD: To develop an assessment of the threat's capabilities and intentions within the Area of Interest (AI).

PERFORMANCE STEPS:
1. Determine enemy order of battle.
2. Determine enemy composition and disposition.
3. Identify likely enemy positions.
4. Determine enemy capabilities and limitations.
5. Determine enemy's most likely course of action.
6. Determine enemy's most dangerous course of action.

REFERENCES:
1. FM 3-20.15 Tank Platoon
2. GTA 17-2-13 Armored Vehicle Recognition Cards
3. MCO 3500.27B W/ERRATUM Operational Risk Management
4. MCRP 2-12A Intelligence Preparation of the Battlefield (IPB)
5. MCWP 3-12 Marine Corps Tank Employment

1812-CMDC-2204: Conduct Intelligence Preparation of the Battlefield

EVALUATION-CODED: NO **SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL:** 12 months

BILLETS: Battalion Operations Chief, Platoon Sergeant

GRADES: SSGT, GYSGT, MSGT, MGYSGT

INITIAL TRAINING SETTING: MOJT

CONDITION: Given a tank unit, supported infantry unit, an operations order defining the battle space and mission, tactical scenario, map of the battle space, specified threat, and references.

STANDARD: To develop a Modified Combined Operations Overlay (MCOO) and graphically depict all available intelligence within the Area of Interest (AI).

PERFORMANCE STEPS:
1. On a map of the operational area, define the battlespace to include: area of interest, area of influence, and area of operation.
2. Conduct terrain analysis.
3. Conduct weather analysis.
4. Conduct threat analysis.
5. Develop MCOO to graphically depict the integration of the above information.

REFERENCES:
1. FM 3-20.15 Tank Platoon
2. FM 5-33 Terrain Analysis
3. MCO 3500.27B W/ERRATUM Operational Risk Management
4. MCRP 2-12A Intelligence Preparation of the Battlefield (IPB)
5. MCRP 5-12A Operational Terms and Symbols
6. MCWP 3-12 Marine Corps Tank Employment
7. MCWP 5-1 Marine Corps Planning Process

1812-CMDC-2205: Execute Intelligence Collection Effort

EVALUATION-CODED: NO **SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL:** 12 months

BILLETS: Battalion Operations Chief, Platoon Sergeant, Tank Commander

GRADES: SGT, SSGT, GYSGT, MSGT, MGYSGT

INITIAL TRAINING SETTING: FORMAL

CONDITION: Given a tank unit, supported infantry unit, an operations order defining the battle space and mission, tactical scenario, map of the battlespace, specified threat, list of Commander's Critical Information Requirements (CCIR), specified threat, and references.

STANDARD: To process and evaluate information from collection agencies for dissemination to higher, adjacent, and subordinate units.

PERFORMANCE STEPS:
1. Process enemy prisoners of war in accordance with unit SOP and specific instructions; forward any relevant information to higher.
2. Process captured enemy documents in accordance with unit SOP and specific instructions; forward any relevant information to higher.
3. Consolidate and validate to the extent possible reports from reconnaissance assets; forward any relevant information to higher.

REFERENCES:
1. FM 3-20.15 Tank Platoon
2. GTA 17-2-13 Armored Vehicle Recognition Cards
3. GTA 17-2-9 Combat Vehicle Identification
4. MCO 3500.27B W/ERRATUM Operational Risk Management
5. MCRP 2-12A Intelligence Preparation of the Battlefield (IPB)
6. MCRP 2-25A Reconnaissance Reports Guide
7. MCWP 3-12 Marine Corps Tank Employment

1812-CMDC-2206: Execute Information Dissemination Plan

EVALUATION-CODED: NO **SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL:** 12 months

BILLETS: Battalion Operations Chief, Platoon Sergeant, Tank Commander

GRADES: SGT, SSGT, GYSGT, MSGT, MGYSGT

INITIAL TRAINING SETTING: FORMAL

CONDITION: Given a tank unit, supported infantry unit, an operations order defining the battle space and mission, tactical scenario, map of the battlespace, specified threat, and references.

STANDARD: To publish all relevant intelligence after proper processing to higher, adjacent, supporting and subordinate units.

PERFORMANCE STEPS:
1. Systematically record information for ease of study and comparison and identify any information shortfalls.
2. Evaluate information collected as to: pertinence, reliability of source, accuracy and timeliness.
3. Isolate significant elements of information with respect to current mission and operations.

REFERENCES:
1. FM 3-20.15 Tank Platoon
2. MCO 3500.27B W/ERRATUM Operational Risk Management
3. MCWP 3-12 Marine Corps Tank Employment

1812-CMDC-2207: Execute Deception Plan

EVALUATION-CODED: NO **SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL:** 12 months

BILLETS: Platoon Sergeant, Tank Commander

GRADES: SGT, SSGT, GYSGT

INITIAL TRAINING SETTING: MOJT

CONDITION: Given a tank unit, supported infantry unit, an operations order defining the battlespace and mission, tactical scenario, map of the battlespace, specified threat, and references.

STANDARD: Per the references.

PERFORMANCE STEPS:
1. Employ passive and active camouflage measures.
2. Enforce EMCON procedures.
3. Execute specific measures assigned in support of deception plan.

REFERENCES:
1. FM 3-20.15 Tank Platoon
2. FM 5-20 Camouflage

3. MCO 3500.27B W/ERRATUM Operational Risk Management
4. MCWP 2-6 Counterintelligence
5. MCWP 3-12 Marine Corps Tank Employment

1812-CMDC-2208: Support Counterintelligence Effort

EVALUATION-CODED: NO **SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL:** 12 months

BILLETS: Battalion Operations Chief, Platoon Sergeant, Tank Commander

GRADES: SGT, SSGT, GYSGT, MSGT, MGYSGT

INITIAL TRAINING SETTING: FORMAL

CONDITION: Given a tank unit, supported infantry unit, an operations order, tactical scenario, specified threat, and references.

STANDARD: With active and passive counterintelligence activities.

PERFORMANCE STEPS:
1. Establish local security to include perimeters, listening and observation posts (LP/OP), guards, traffic control points, security patrols as appropriate.
2. Release information on a need-to-know basis only.
3. Employ code symbols for vehicle and equipment as appropriate.
4. Minimize movement.
5. Enforce strict communication procedure/security.
6. Enforce strict camouflage and black-out regulations.
7. Limit movement of civilian personnel near facilities, supply dumps, assembly areas, and rehearsal areas.
8. Use local authorities to control civilian movement whenever possible.
9. Use local authorities and persons known to be friendly as sources of information on enemy activities.

REFERENCES:
1. FM 3-20.15 Tank Platoon
2. MCO 3500.27B W/ERRATUM Operational Risk Management
3. MCWP 2-6 Counterintelligence
4. MCWP 3-12 Marine Corps Tank Employment

1812-CMDC-2209: Conduct Map Reconnaissance

EVALUATION-CODED: NO **SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL:** 12 months

BILLETS: Battalion Operations Chief, Platoon Sergeant, Tank Commander

GRADES: SGT, SSGT, GYSGT, MSGT, MGYSGT

INITIAL TRAINING SETTING: FORMAL

CONDITION: Given a tank unit, an operations order defining the battlespace, specified threat, map of the battlespace, and references.

STANDARD: By analyzing the area of operation in terms of the military aspects of terrain and identify any terrain or structure that may affect the mission.

PERFORMANCE STEPS:
1. Orient map and identify the area of operation.
2. Identify graphic control measures on the map.
3. Identify key terrain features in area of operation.
4. Identify advantageous observation points and fields of fire.
5. Analyze available cover and concealment.
6. Identify natural and man-made obstacles.
7. Identify available routes of travel.
8. Analyze available avenues of approach.
9. Identify known and planned friendly positions.
10. Mark known and suspected enemy positions on the map.

REFERENCES:
1. FM 21-26 Map Reading and Land Navigation
2. FM 3-20.15 Tank Platoon
3. FM 5-33 Terrain Analysis
4. MCO 3500.27B W/ERRATUM Operational Risk Management
5. MCWP 3-12 Marine Corps Tank Employment

1812-CMDC-2210: Employ Marine Corps Planning Process (MCPP)

EVALUATION-CODED: NO **SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL:** 12 months

BILLETS: Battalion Operations Chief

GRADES: MSGT, MGYSGT

INITIAL TRAINING SETTING: MOJT

CONDITION: Given a tank unit, supported unit, an operations order, specified threat, and references.

STANDARD: To provide the unit commander with viable courses of action and develop the operations order.

PERFORMANCE STEPS:
1. Conduct mission analysis.
2. Develop courses of action.
3. Wargame courses of action.
4. Determine course of action.
5. Develop appropriate staff products, operations plans, orders, annexes, and appendices.
6. Publish the order.

REFERENCES:
1. FM 3-20.15 Tank Platoon
2. MCO 3500.27B W/ERRATUM Operational Risk Management
3. MCWP 3-12 Marine Corps Tank Employment
4. MCWP 5-1 Marine Corps Planning Process

1812-CMDC-2211: Analyze Operations Order

EVALUATION-CODED: NO **SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL:** 12 months

BILLETS: Battalion Operations Chief, Platoon Sergeant, Tank Commander

GRADES: SGT, SSGT, GYSGT, MSGT, MGYSGT

INITIAL TRAINING SETTING: FORMAL

CONDITION: Given a tank unit, supported unit, an operations order, tactical scenario, specified threat, and references.

STANDARD: To determine tactical responsibilities of the M1A1 tank unit.

PERFORMANCE STEPS:
1. Determine commander's intent and desired end state and their impact on the unit.
2. Conduct detailed analysis of battle space to include area of interest, area of influence, and area of operations.
3. Conduct terrain analysis to determine the effect on the scheme of maneuver.
4. Conduct threat analysis.
5. Determine Commander's Critical Information Requirements (CCIRs).
6. Request any information for provided in the order.
7. Determine any restraints and/or constraints.
8. Determine assumptions.
9. Identify tasks: specified, implied, and essential.
10. Develop estimate of supportability for unit.
11. Determine any additional resources required to accomplish the mission as assigned.
12. Determine any additional training or rehearsals required, to include safety briefings and orientation training.
13. Determine current and anticipated mechanical readiness of unit.
14. Determine logistical support requirements.
15. Determine command and control requirements.

REFERENCES:
1. FM 3-20.15 Tank Platoon
2. MCO 3500.27B W/ERRATUM Operational Risk Management
3. MCWP 3-12 Marine Corps Tank Employment
4. MCWP 5-1 Marine Corps Planning Process

1812-CMDC-2212: Advise Supported Unit Commander on Employment of M1A1 Tanks

EVALUATION-CODED: NO **SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL:** 12 months

BILLETS: Platoon Sergeant, Tank Commander

GRADES: SGT, SSGT, GYSGT

INITIAL TRAINING SETTING: FORMAL

CONDITION: Given a tank unit, supported unit, an operations order, tactical

scenario involving mechanized operations, specified threat, and references.

STANDARD: In order to maximize support provided.

PERFORMANCE STEPS:
1. Conduct mission analysis and determine the missions and task assignments for the various elements.
2. Advise the unit commander and his staff on ability of tanks to support each course of action based on: current and anticipated mechanical readiness of unit, orientation and mission specific unit training required, task organization of unit to support scheme of maneuver, effects of terrain and weather on maneuverability and sustainability, effects of enemy obstacle plan on maneuverability and sustainability, effects of enemy armor and anti-armor assets on units, logistical requirements of unit to support scheme of maneuver, command and control assets organic to the unit, and effects of NBC operations on unit.
3. Recommend solutions to any limiting factors or alternate courses of action as required.
4. Advise supported unit commander on M1A1 tank movement techniques.

REFERENCES:
1. FM 3-20.15 Tank Platoon
2. MCO 3500.27B W/ERRATUM Operational Risk Management
3. MCWP 3-12 Marine Corps Tank Employment

1812-CMDC-2213: Conduct Estimate of Supportability

EVALUATION-CODED: NO **SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL:** 12 months

BILLETS: Battalion Operations Chief, Platoon Sergeant, Tank Commander, Tank Leader

GRADES: SGT, SSGT, GYSGT, MSGT, MGYSGT

INITIAL TRAINING SETTING: FORMAL

CONDITION: Given a tank unit, supported unit, an operations order, tactical scenario, specified threat, and references.

STANDARD: To develop courses of action and support the operations order.

PERFORMANCE STEPS:
1. Analyze operations order
2. Determine unit tasks (specified and implied).
3. Determine unit capabilities and limitations.
4. Develop courses of action based on the ability of the unit to support them.

REFERENCES:
1. FM 3-20.15 Tank Platoon
2. MCO 3500.27B W/ERRATUM Operational Risk Management
3. MCWP 3-12 Marine Corps Tank Employment

1812-CMDC-2214: Develop Scheme of Intelligence Support

EVALUATION-CODED: NO **SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL:** 12 months

BILLETS: Battalion Operations Chief, Platoon Sergeant

GRADES: SSGT, GYSGT, MSGT, MGYSGT

INITIAL TRAINING SETTING: MOJT

CONDITION: Given a tank unit, supported unit, higher unit's operations order, tactical scenario, and specified threat.

STANDARD: Per the references.

PERFORMANCE STEPS:

1. Conduct terrain analysis to determine: obstacles, avenues of approach, key terrain to include decisive terrain, observation and fields of fire, cover and concealment, effects of the above on the scheme of maneuver, effects on the above on the enemy's options.
2. Conduct analysis of weather to include: Beginning Morning Nautical Twilight (BMNT), Evening Ending Nautical Twilight (EENT), moon rise, moon set, percentage of illumination, temperature high and low, precipitation type and chance, wind speed and direction, fog and cloud ceiling, sea state to include tide and current, and the effects of the above on operations.
3. Conduct threat analysis to include: order of battle (composition, disposition), capabilities especially armor, anti armor, and NBC, limitations especially ammunition and POL supply situation, actions over the last 24 hours, most likely courses of action, and most dangerous course of action.
4. Develop Modified Combined Operations Overlay (MCOO): mobility corridors by type and known enemy positions.
5. Develop reconnaissance and security plan to include: establishing Named Areas of Interest (NAIs) and Targeted Areas of Interest (TAIs) based on enemy intentions and capabilities, assign intelligence assets (recon, UAV, etc.) to monitor each NAI and TAI, and establish security screen elements.
6. Establish Commander's Critical Information Requirements (CCRI).
7. Establish Essential Elements of Friendly Information (EEFI).

REFERENCES:

1. FM 3-20.15 Tank Platoon
2. MCO 3500.27B W/ERRATUM Operational Risk Management
3. MCRP 2-12A Intelligence Preparation of the Battlefield (IPB)
4. MCRP 2-25A Reconnaissance Reports Guide
5. MCWP 2-6 Counterintelligence
6. MCWP 3-12 Marine Corps Tank Employment

1812-CMDC-2215: Develop Operations Order

EVALUATION-CODED: NO **SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL:** 12 months

BILLETS: Battalion Operations Chief, Platoon Sergeant

GRADES: SSGT, GYSGT, MSGT, MGYSGT

INITIAL TRAINING SETTING: FORMAL

CONDITION: Given a tank unit, supported unit, higher unit's operations order, tactical scenario, specified threat, and references.

STANDARD: To support the mission of the supported unit.

PERFORMANCE STEPS:
1. Develop Scheme of Maneuver.
2. Develop Scheme of Fire.
3. Develop Scheme of Mobility/Countermobility/Survivability.
4. Develop Scheme of Logistical Support.
5. Develop Scheme of Communications Support.

REFERENCES:
1. FM 3-20.15 Tank Platoon
2. MCO 3500.27B W/ERRATUM Operational Risk Management
3. MCWP 3-12 Marine Corps Tank Employment
4. MCWP 5-1 Marine Corps Planning Process

1812-CMDC-2216: Issue Operations Order

EVALUATION-CODED: NO **SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL:** 12 months

BILLETS: Battalion Operations Chief, Platoon Sergeant

GRADES: SSGT, GYSGT, MSGT, MGYSGT

INITIAL TRAINING SETTING: FORMAL

CONDITION: Given a tank unit, supported unit, an operations order, tactical scenario, and specified threat.

STANDARD: Per the references.

PERFORMANCE STEPS:
1. Assemble subordinate element leaders and other key personnel and take role to ensure that all required personnel are present.
2. Verify local time with commander's watch.
3. Orient personnel on map, terrain model, etc.
4. Direct personnel to "Hold all questions until the end".
5. Review Situation: terrain, weather, friendly, and enemy.
6. Issue Mission statement.
7. Review Execution.
8. Review Administration and Logistics.
9. Review Command and Signals.

REFERENCES:
1. FM 3-20.15 Tank Platoon
2. MCO 3500.27B W/ERRATUM Operational Risk Management
3. MCWP 3-12 Marine Corps Tank Employment
4. MCWP 5-1 Marine Corps Planning Process

1812-CMDC-2217: Conduct Rehearsals

EVALUATION-CODED: NO **SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL:** 12 months

BILLETS: Platoon Sergeant, Tank Commander

GRADES: SGT, SSGT, GYSGT

INITIAL TRAINING SETTING: FORMAL

CONDITION: Given a tank unit, supported unit, an operations order, tactical scenario, and specified threat.

STANDARD: Per the references.

PERFORMANCE STEPS:
1. Determine the type of rehearsal most appropriate to your situation: special rehearsal, map rehearsal, communication rehearsal, key leader rehearsal, sand table or terrain model rehearsal, and force on force rehearsal.
2. Determine and publish the time line for the rehearsal based on METT-TSL.
3. Ensure preparation of rehearsal materials or areas.
4. Conduct roll call.
5. Conduct orientation on rehearsal materials if applicable.
6. Conduct rehearsal.
7. Conduct critique of rehearsal.
8. Modify operations order as appropriate based on rehearsal critique.

REFERENCES:
1. FM 3-20.15 Tank Platoon
2. MCO 3500.27B W/ERRATUM Operational Risk Management
3. MCWP 3-12 Marine Corps Tank Employment

1812-CMDC-2218: Communicate Using AAVC7A1 Communication Equipment

EVALUATION-CODED: NO **SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL:** 12 months

BILLETS: Battalion Operations Chief

GRADES: MSGT, MGYSGT

INITIAL TRAINING SETTING: MOJT

CONDITION: Given an AAVC7A1 with crew, a complete staff and set of operators, and references.

STANDARD: By conducting intercom and inter-vehicle communications from all crew and staff stations.

PERFORMANCE STEPS:
1. Operate and trouble shoot MSQ 115 system.
2. Transmit on designated command and control circuits when directed by the supported unit commander.
3. Operate the crew's radios.

4. Operate the vehicle intercom system.
5. Operate static telephone lines when in a static situation.
6. Assist embarked staff on MSQ 115 system operations.
7. Secure communications equipment from operation.

REFERENCES:
1. MCO 3500.27B W/ERRATUM Operational Risk Management
2. TM 07268B-10/1A Assault Amphibious Vehicle, Command, Model 7A1, AAVC7A1 Supplement to TM 09674A-10/3
3. TM 11-5810-256-OP-4 Operating Procedures for COMSECEQ TSEC/KY-57 in Tracked Vehicles
4. TM 11-5820-890-10-1 Operator Manual for SINCGARS Ground Combat Net Radio

---

1812-CMDC-2219: Control Radio Communications

EVALUATION-CODED: NO **SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL:** 12 months

BILLETS: Battalion Operations Chief, Platoon Sergeant, Tank Commander, Tank Leader

GRADES: SGT, SSGT, GYSGT, MSGT, MGYSGT

INITIAL TRAINING SETTING: FORMAL

CONDITION: Given an M1A1 tank unit, a supported unit, operations order, tactical scenario, specified threat, current Communications-Electronic Operating Instruction (CEOI), and references.

STANDARD: By establishing a net, controlling units that enter and leave the net, and control all transmission on that net.

PERFORMANCE STEPS:
1. Ensure that all elements have the authorized SC frequency, frequency hopping (FH) data and COMSEC instructions input into their radios.
2. Perform NCS duties and open the net.
3. Update FH data using electronic remote fill (ERF) as needed.
4. Conduct late net entry as needed.
5. Enforce standard radio procedures including: use only approved radiotelephone procedures, keep transmission to under 15 seconds, encode and decode all critical messages, use challenge and reply authentication in accordance with CEOI, use lowest possible power settings and directional antennas, and submit MIJI reports within five minutes after attempted jamming.
6. Coordinate with supported unit or supported unit communications officer for call signs and frequencies.
7. Distribute daily call signs and frequencies to all stations on net.
8. Establish self as net control, authorizing stations to become operational on net using unit organic communications equipment.
9. Enforce listening silence.
10. Recognize electronic countermeasures (ECM) and implement electronic counter countermeasures (ECCM) under the guidance of the communications officer.

REFERENCES:
1. FM 3-20.15 Tank Platoon
2. MCO 3500.27B W/ERRATUM Operational Risk Management
3. MCWP 3-12 Marine Corps Tank Employment
4. TM 9-2350-264-10-1 Operator's Manual, Operator Controls, PMCS, and Operation Under Usual Conditions, Volume 1 of 2, Tank, Combat, Full-Tracked: 120-MM Gun, M1A1 2350-01-087-1095 General Abrams
5. TM 9-2350-264-10-2 Operator's Manual, Unusual Conditions, Troubleshooting, and Maintenance, Volume 2 of 2, Tank, Combat, Full-Tracked: 120-MM, M1A1 2350-01-087-1095, General Abrams

---

1812-CMDC-2220: Conduct Unit Mission without Communications

EVALUATION-CODED: NO **SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL:** 12 months

BILLETS: Platoon Sergeant, Tank Commander, Tank Crewman

GRADES: PVT, PFC, LCPL, CPL, SGT, SSGT, GYSGT, MSGT, MGYSGT

INITIAL TRAINING SETTING: FORMAL

CONDITION: Given a tank unit, supported unit, an operations order, tactical scenario, and specified threat.

STANDARD: Per the references.

PERFORMANCE STEPS:
1. Establish "no communications plan" as part of OPORD/FRAGO.
2. Employ alternate control methods in the absence of radio communications.
3. Continue mission in accordance with commander's intent maintaining focus on the desired end state.

REFERENCES:
1. FM 21-60 Visual Signals
2. FM 3-20.15 Tank Platoon
3. MCO 3500.27B W/ERRATUM Operational Risk Management
4. MCWP 3-12 Marine Corps Tank Employment

1812-CMDC-2221: Control Unit Maneuver Elements

EVALUATION-CODED: NO **SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL:** 12 months

BILLETS: Platoon Sergeant

GRADES: SSGT, GYSGT

INITIAL TRAINING SETTING: FORMAL

CONDITION: Given a tank, an operations order, tactical scenario, specified threat, training area, and references.

STANDARD: Employing the appropriate movement techniques based on terrain, mission, and threat analysis in order to minimize exposure to enemy

observation and fire and maximize the security and speed of the unit formation.

PERFORMANCE STEPS:
1. Maintain control over maneuver elements, designate lead and trail elements, move with the elements that allows best control of the operation, determine mode of movement (traveling, traveling overwatch, bounding overwatch), ensure elements maintain dispersion laterally and in depth, ensure visual contact is maintained between adjacent vehicles, ensure each vehicle moves by separate, covered, and concealed route if possible.
2. Maintain detailed plot on location of all elements.
3. Ensure subordinate elements use internal methods of maneuver control.
4. Ensure subordinate elements assigned special missions are controlled.
5. Ensure operational reports are included in reports control system.

REFERENCES:
1. FM 21-26 Map Reading and Land Navigation
2. FM 21-60 Visual Signals
3. FM 3-20.15 Tank Platoon
4. FM 5-33 Terrain Analysis
5. MCO 3500.27B W/ERRATUM Operational Risk Management
6. MCWP 3-12 Marine Corps Tank Employment

1812-CMDC-2222: Control Unit Fire and Maneuver

EVALUATION-CODED: NO **SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL:** 12 months

BILLETS: Platoon Sergeant

GRADES: SSGT, GYSGT

INITIAL TRAINING SETTING: FORMAL

CONDITION: Given a tank unit, an operations order, tactical scenario, specified threat, training area, and references.

STANDARD: While employing the appropriate movement techniques based on terrain, mission, and threat analysis in order to minimize exposure to enemy observation and fire and maximize the security and speed of the unit formation.

PERFORMANCE STEPS:
1. Control unit/team maneuver.
2. Designate engagement criteria.
3. Designate weapons orientation.
4. Designate weapons status.
5. Coordinate unit fire and maneuver as appropriate.

REFERENCES:
1. FM 21-26 Map Reading and Land Navigation
2. FM 21-60 Visual Signals
3. FM 3-20.15 Tank Platoon

4. FM 5-33 Terrain Analysis
5. MCO 3500.27B W/ERRATUM Operational Risk Management
6. MCWP 3-12 Marine Corps Tank Employment

1812-CMDC-2223: Direct Unit Fires

EVALUATION-CODED: NO **SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL:** 12 months

BILLETS: Platoon Sergeant

GRADES: SSGT, GYSGT

INITIAL TRAINING SETTING: MOJT

CONDITION: Given an M1A1 tank unit, a supported unit, operations order, tactical scenario, training area, and references.

STANDARD: To provide timely and accurate fires on the targets.

PERFORMANCE STEPS:
1. Assess the situation.
2. Determine priority targets.
3. Determine fire pattern for the unit.
4. Select technique of fire.
5. Issue clear and concise fire command.
6. Adjust fires as appropriate.
7. Terminate engagement.

REFERENCES:
1. FM 3-20.15 Tank Platoon
2. MCO 3500.27B W/ERRATUM Operational Risk Management
3. MCWP 3-12 Marine Corps Tank Employment

1812-CMDC-2224: Coordinate Unit Fire Plan with Supported Unit Commander

EVALUATION-CODED: NO **SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL:** 12 months

BILLETS: Platoon Sergeant

GRADES: SSGT, GYSGT

INITIAL TRAINING SETTING: FORMAL

CONDITION: Given an M1A1 tank unit, a supported unit, operations order, tactical scenario, training area, and references.

STANDARD: To support the overall mission based on the terrain in the given training area.

PERFORMANCE STEPS:
1. Integrate unit fire plan with associated dismounted infantry and engineers attached to the company/team; ensure that indirect fire capability of vehicles is used to cover major direct fire dead spaces.

2. Advise supported unit commander on options for the employment of unit fires: as mounted outposts, as mounted reserve force, and in direct support of supported units.

REFERENCES:
1. FM 3-20.15 Tank Platoon
2. MCO 3500.27B W/ERRATUM Operational Risk Management
3. MCWP 3-12 Marine Corps Tank Employment

1812-CMDC-2225: Prepare a Sketch Card

EVALUATION-CODED: NO **SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL:** 12 months

BILLETS: Platoon Sergeant, Tank Commander, Tank Crewman

GRADES: PVT, PFC, LCPL, CPL, SGT, SSGT, GYSGT

INITIAL TRAINING SETTING: MOJT

CONDITION: Given an M1A1 tank, a tactical scenario, training area, and references.

STANDARD: For an M1A1 tank based on the terrain in the given training area.

PERFORMANCE STEPS:
1. Indicate the position of the vehicle.
2. Indicate unit sector or engagement area.
3. Indicate Target Reference Points (TRP).
4. Indicate range lines, trigger pints, and break points.
5. Indicate friendly Observation Points (OP).
6. Indicate obstacles (if used).
7. Indicate any indirect fire targets, including Final Protective Fires (FPF), if allocated.
8. Indicate position of vehicles on immediate flanks.
9. Indicate weapons dead spaces.
10. Indicate date range card was made.

REFERENCES:
1. FM 3-20.15 Tank Platoon
2. FM 5-33 Terrain Analysis
3. MCO 3500.27B W/ERRATUM Operational Risk Management
4. MCWP 3-12 Marine Corps Tank Employment

1812-CMDC-2226: Prepare a Unit Fire Plan Sketch

EVALUATION-CODED: NO **SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL:** 12 months

BILLETS: Platoon Sergeant

GRADES: SGT, SSGT, GYSGT

INITIAL TRAINING SETTING: FORMAL

CONDITION: Given an M1A1 tank unit, a tactical scenario, training area, and references.

STANDARD: Based on the range cards for the individual vehicles.

PERFORMANCE STEPS:
1. Collect and verify the sketch cards for the unit.
2. Integrate the sketch cards into single plan, including vehicle positions and important terrain features.
3. Integrate any supporting arms assets available.
4. Make one copy for the unit and one copy for the supported unit commander.

REFERENCES:
1. FM 3-20.15 Tank Platoon
2. FM 5-33 Terrain Analysis
3. MCO 3500.27B W/ERRATUM Operational Risk Management
4. MCWP 3-12 Marine Corps Tank Employment

1812-CMDC-2227: Establish Combat Operations Center (COC)

EVALUATION-CODED: NO **SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL:** 12 months

BILLETS: Battalion Operations Chief

GRADES: MSGT, MGYSGT

INITIAL TRAINING SETTING: MOJT

CONDITION: Given a tank battalion operations section (S-3) staff, supporting elements from the communications section (S-6), appropriate collateral materials, and references.

STANDARD: To direct and support the operations of the tank battalion.

PERFORMANCE STEPS:
1. Organize Combat Operation Center (COC) in accordance with unit SOP. Internal arrangement should allow for: status boards, overlays and situation maps, simultaneous monitoring and integration of maneuver, intelligence, and fire support assets, and briefing primary staff and commanders.
2. Establish COC staffing with executive or primary staff, special staff, liaison personnel, and supporting personnel.
3. Organize personnel, equipment, and vehicles for 24 hour/all weather operations.
4. Determine location based on defensible position with good communications aspects.
5. Identify alternate COC site and route in the event that the COC must displace quickly.
6. Prepare plans for the establishment of alternate COC per unit SOP.
7. Ensure strict OPSEC/COMSEC during displacement.
8. Employ active and passive security measures to include: camouflage, COMSEC, vehicle and fighting positions, patrols, dispersion, and employ improved positions/dig in as time permits.
9. Establish traffic control measures to limit access and movement in the

vicinity of the COC.
10. Establish remote antennae farm.
11. Establish unit journal.
12. Establish message handling procedures within the COC.
13. Establish and maintain unit status board.
14. Coordinate with Logistics Operation Center (LOC) as necessary.

REFERENCES:
1. FM 3-20.15 Tank Platoon
2. MCO 3500.27B W/ERRATUM Operational Risk Management
3. MCWP 3-12 Marine Corps Tank Employment

1812-CMDC-2228: Direct Functions as the Combat Operations Center (COC) Watch Officer

EVALUATION-CODED: NO **SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL:** 12 months

BILLETS: Battalion Operations Chief

GRADES: MSGT, MGYSGT

INITIAL TRAINING SETTING: MOJT

CONDITION: Given a tank battalion's Combat Operations Center (COC), supported unit, an operations order, tactical scenario, specified threat, designated watch staff, appropriate collateral materials, and references.

STANDARD: To monitor and direct the operations of the tank battalion.

PERFORMANCE STEPS:
1. Receive thorough watch briefing from the outgoing watch officer.
2. Ensure that COC is set up to allow for command and control of current and future operations.
3. Ensure plan for alternate COC will meet requirements of tactical situation.
4. Develop plan for continuous staffing during shift.
5. Monitor reports and actions of subordinates.
6. Update current situation map.
7. Update information display.
8. Maintain journal.
9. Revise plan and issue orders as situation changes.
10. Complete plan for displacement.
11. Direct displacement.
12. Ensure SITREPs are sent to higher headquarters.
13. Conduct thorough watch briefing with the incoming watch officer.

REFERENCES:
1. FM 3-20.15 Tank Platoon
2. MCO 3500.27B W/ERRATUM Operational Risk Management
3. MCWP 3-12 Marine Corps Tank Employment

1812-CMDC-2229: Operate ANVRC Radio System on M1A1 Tank

EVALUATION-CODED: NO **SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL:** 12 months

BILLETS: Tank Crewman

GRADES: PVT, PFC, LCPL, CPL, SGT, SSGT, GYSGT

INITIAL TRAINING SETTING: MOJT

CONDITION: Given an M1A1 tank and references.

STANDARD: To ensure communication within the unit and between the crew members.

PERFORMANCE STEPS:
1. Check with net control station (NCS) or communications electronics operating instruction (CEOI) for authorized single channel (SC) frequencies or frequency hopping (FH) data.
2. Conduct pre-mission check.
3. Load FH (local fill).
4. When NCS directs net opening, listen to and follow commands carefully.
5. If net is to be opened in cypher text (CT), load COMSEC keys (local fill). The NCS will tell you in which channel to store COMSEC keys.
6. During net operations, update FH data using electronic remote fill (ERF) as needed.
7. Use CUE to contact NCS when you are not an active member of that net, or if you are operating in single channel (SC) and wish to contact a FH net as needed.
8. Conduct late net entry as required.

REFERENCES:
1. FM 3-20.15 Tank Platoon
2. MCO 3500.27B W/ERRATUM Operational Risk Management
3. MCWP 3-12 Marine Corps Tank Employment
4. TM 11-5280-890-10-1 Operator's Manual AN/PRC-19
5. TM 11-5820-890-10-1 Operator Manual for SINCGARS Ground Combat Net Radio
6. TM 9-2350-264-10-1 Operator's Manual, Operator Controls, PMCS, and Operation Under Usual Conditions, Volume 1 of 2, Tank, Combat, Full-Tracked: 120-MM Gun, M1A1 2350-01-087-1095 General Abrams
7. TM 9-2350-264-10-2 Operator's Manual, Unusual Conditions, Troubleshooting, and Maintenance, Volume 2 of 2, Tank, Combat, Full-Tracked: 120-MM, M1A1 2350-01-087-1095, General Abrams

---

1812-CMDC-2230: Navigate From an M1A1 Tank

EVALUATION-CODED: NO **SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL:** 12 months

BILLETS: Tank Crewman

GRADES: PVT, PFC, LCPL, CPL, SGT, SSGT, GYSGT

INITIAL TRAINING SETTING: MOJT

CONDITION: Given an M1A1 tank, operations order, a tactical scenario, specified threat, training area, and references.

STANDARD: Using map and terrain analysis and reporting all control measures along the route.

PERFORMANCE STEPS:
1. Plan the route to move from terrain feature to terrain feature, considering the tactical aspects and ease of movement of the route.
2. Use terrain features as checkpoints as the vehicle moves along the route.
3. Follow the terrain features using terrain driving techniques.
4. Determine approximate directions of the various segments of the route.
5. Determine total distance for the route and distance between checkpoints.
6. Make written or mental notes to remember terrain features as they are being passed.
7. Occasionally look to the rear to familiarize yourself with the view of the terrain if you must retrace the route.
8. Use GPS/PLRS when available to augment your navigation.

REFERENCES:
1. FM 21-26 Map Reading and Land Navigation
2. FM 21-60 Visual Signals
3. FM 3-20.15 Tank Platoon
4. FM 5-33 Terrain Analysis
5. MCO 3500.27B W/ERRATUM Operational Risk Management
6. MCWP 3-12 Marine Corps Tank Employment

1812-CMDC-2231: Conduct Combat Reporting

EVALUATION-CODED: NO **SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL:** 12 months

BILLETS: Tank Crewman

GRADES: PVT, PFC, LCPL, CPL, SGT, SSGT, GYSGT, MSGT, MGYSGT

INITIAL TRAINING SETTING: MOJT

CONDITION: Given a tank unit, supported unit, an operations order, tactical scenario, and specified threat.

STANDARD: Per the references.

PERFORMANCE STEPS:
1. Conduct reporting in accordance with unit SOP or the current operations order.
2. Report all required control measures.
3. Report friendly situation (SITREP) as required by unit SOP or current operations order.
4. Report enemy contact.
5. Report enemy jamming efforts (MIJI report).
6. Report enemy use of nuclear, biological, or chemical weapons (NBC report).
7. Report enemy use of artillery.
8. Report friendly logistical situation as required by unit SOP or current operations order (LOG SUM).

9. Report friendly personnel situation as required by unit SOP or current operations order (PERS SUM).
10. Report on enemy minefields encountered.
11. Report Enemy Prisoners of War (EPWs).
12. Report mass casualties.
13. Conduct MEDEVAC request.
14. Conduct maintenance rapid request.

REFERENCES:
1. FM 3-20.15 Tank Platoon
2. MCO 3500.27B W/ERRATUM Operational Risk Management
3. MCWP 3-12 Marine Corps Tank Employment

1812-CMDC-2232: Employ Operations Security

EVALUATION-CODED: NO **SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL:** 12 months

BILLETS: Battalion Logistics Chief, Battalion Operations Chief, Platoon Sergeant, Tank Commander, Tank Leader

GRADES: SGT, SSGT, GYSGT, MSGT, MGYSGT

INITIAL TRAINING SETTING: FORMAL

CONDITION: Given an M1A1 tank unit, a supported unit, operations order, tactical scenario, specified threat, training area, appropriate collateral equipment, and references.

STANDARD: To minimize exposure to enemy observation and fire, to include light, noise, and movement discipline.

PERFORMANCE STEPS:
1. Identify potential friendly vulnerabilities to enemy intelligence operations.
2. Develop possible security and deception measures to limit vulnerabilities.
3. Develop counter reconnaissance effort to defeat enemy intelligence activities.
4. Develop and enforce passive measures to defeat enemy intelligence activities, including: maximum use of cover and concealment, camouflage discipline, and noise and light discipline.
5. Establish security elements and patrols.
6. Conduct movement, CSS operations, and rehearsals during limited visibility as much as possible.
7. Limit movement in, around, and between positions as much as possible.
8. Employ remote transmission sites as appropriate.
9. Develop electronic countermeasures to include alternate frequencies, authentication procedures, and anti jamming procedures.
10. Employ deception measures as directed by higher headquarters.
11. Employ wire communications to the fullest extent possible.
12. Defend against mines and booby traps.

REFERENCES:
1. DoDD 2000.12 DoD Antiterrorism/Force Protection (AT/FP) Program
2. FM 3-20.15 Tank Platoon

3. MCO 3500.27B W/ERRATUM Operational Risk Management
4. MCWP 3-12 Marine Corps Tank Employment

1812-CMDC-2233: Perform Duties of Battalion Training Chief

EVALUATION-CODED: NO **SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL:** 12 months

BILLETS: Battalion Operations Chief

GRADES: MSGT, MGYSGT

INITIAL TRAINING SETTING: FORMAL

CONDITION: Given a tank battalion's TEEP, training directives from the supported unit (division), Battalion Commander's guidance, and references.

STANDARD: To support the unit commander's guidance and supported unit's directives.

PERFORMANCE STEPS:
1. Develop Battalion Training Directives.
2. Develop Unit Training Schedule.
3. Conduct Unit Training.
4. Supervise Unit Training.
5. Evaluate MOS Related Training Effectiveness.

REFERENCES:
1. FM 3-20.15 Tank Platoon
2. MCO 3500.27B W/ERRATUM Operational Risk Management
3. MCRP 3-0A Unit Training Management Guide
4. MCRP 3-0B How to Conduct Training
5. MCWP 3-12 Marine Corps Tank Employment
6. MCWP 5-1 Marine Corps Planning Process

1812-CMDC-2234: Assist in Developing Battalion Training Directives

EVALUATION-CODED: NO **SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL:** 12 months

BILLETS: Battalion Operations Chief

GRADES: MSGT, MGYSGT

INITIAL TRAINING SETTING: FORMAL

CONDITION: Given a tank battalion's TEEP, training directives from the supported unit (division), Battalion Commander's guidance, and references.

STANDARD: To support the unit commander's guidance and supported unit's directives.

PERFORMANCE STEPS:
1. Analyze guidance from higher headquarters.
2. Extract training requirements necessary for unit readiness.

3. Review current training directives.
4. Make any changes necessary to increase training efficiency and improve unit readiness.
5. Submit for approval if required.
6. Publish training directives when finalized and approved.

REFERENCES:
1. FM 3-20.12 Tank Gunnery
2. FM 3-90.2 Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force
3. MCO 3500.27B W/ERRATUM Operational Risk Management
4. MCRP 3-0A Unit Training Management Guide
5. MCRP 3-0B How to Conduct Training
6. MCWP 3-12 Marine Corps Tank Employment
7. MCWP 5-1 Marine Corps Planning Process

1812-CMDC-2235: Develop Unit Training Schedule

EVALUATION-CODED: NO **SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL:** 12 months

BILLETS: Battalion Operations Chief, Platoon Sergeant, Tank Leader

GRADES: SSGT, GYSGT, MSGT, MGYSGT

INITIAL TRAINING SETTING: MOJT

CONDITION: Given unit mission guidelines from higher headquarters, Battalion Commander's guidance, and references.

STANDARD: To include individual and team MOS related training resources available and environmental constraints on training; publish as a Battalion Order intended to support unit mission, increase unit readiness, and support Marine Corps training policy.

PERFORMANCE STEPS:
1. Analyze guidance from higher headquarters.
2. Extract training requirements necessary for unit readiness.
3. Review current training directives/policies.
4. Make any changes necessary to increase training efficiency and improve unit readiness.
5. Determine individual or unit proficiencies and deficiencies.
6. Determine instructional settings, methods, and media.
7. Specify when and where training will occur.
8. Schedule facilities and ranges as appropriate.
9. Specify instructors and evaluators.
10. Provide administrative guidance and coordination as appropriate.
11. Submit for approval if required.
12. Publish training directives/policies when finalized and approved.

REFERENCES:
1. FM 3-20.15 Tank Platoon
2. MCO 3500.27B W/ERRATUM Operational Risk Management
3. MCRP 3-0A Unit Training Management Guide
4. MCRP 3-0B How to Conduct Training
5. MCWP 3-12 Marine Corps Tank Employment

6. MCWP 5-1 Marine Corps Planning Process

1812-CMDC-2236: Conduct Unit Training

EVALUATION-CODED: NO **SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL:** 12 months

BILLETS: Battalion Operations Chief, Platoon Sergeant, Tank Leader

GRADES: SSGT, GYSGT, MSGT, MGYSGT

INITIAL TRAINING SETTING: MOJT

CONDITION: Given an M1A1 tank unit's training schedule, Battalion Commander's guidance, a tank unit, appropriate training ranges and materials, and references.

STANDARD: For the period covered so that the training objectives are met.

PERFORMANCE STEPS:
1. Prepare for instruction by assigning instructors, securing appropriate resources, preparing training materials, and rehearsing as required.
2. Introduce the subject and give the relevance and conceptual framework of the training.
3. Present the learning outcome, method of training, and method of evaluation.
4. Pretest the Marines on the subject matter.
5. Present the instruction.
6. Demonstrate performance of the material being covered.
7. Require Marines to practice the behavior cited in the training objective.
8. Provide feedback on the success or failure of the Marines' performance test.
9. Post-test the Marines.
10. Provide feedback on the success or failure of the Marines' performance test.
11. Allow Marines to critique the training.
12. Present the summary and closing instructions.

REFERENCES:
1. FM 3-20.15 Tank Platoon
2. MCO 3500.27B W/ERRATUM Operational Risk Management
3. MCRP 3-0A Unit Training Management Guide
4. MCRP 3-0B How to Conduct Training
5. MCWP 3-12 Marine Corps Tank Employment
6. MCWP 5-1 Marine Corps Planning Process

1812-CMDC-2237: Supervise Unit Training

EVALUATION-CODED: NO **SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL:** 12 months

BILLETS: Battalion Operations Chief, Platoon Sergeant, Tank Leader

GRADES: SSGT, GYSGT, MSGT, MGYSGT

INITIAL TRAINING SETTING: MOJT

CONDITION: Given a unit's training schedule, training directives from the supported unit (division), commander's guidance, and references.

STANDARD: For the period covered as directed by the commander.

PERFORMANCE STEPS:
1. Ensure personnel receive sufficient instruction in MOS/military skills in accordance with the standards set forth in this publication.
2. Ensure exercises simulate actual combat conditions.
3. Ensure local conditions and specific unit functions are incorporated into exercise development.
4. Ensure integration of training with unit mission.
5. Ensure safety regulations and considerations are applied; stop training if safety is compromised.
6. Evaluate how well Marines accomplish their duties. Determine individual/unit training needs; determine individual responsibilities should be increased or decreased.
7. Identify training deficiencies and outline procedures to correct deficiencies or schedule required training.

REFERENCES:
1. FM 3-20.15 Tank Platoon
2. MCO 3500.27B W/ERRATUM Operational Risk Management
3. MCRP 3-0A Unit Training Management Guide
4. MCRP 3-0B How to Conduct Training
5. MCWP 3-12 Marine Corps Tank Employment
6. MCWP 5-1 Marine Corps Planning Process

1812-CMDC-2238: Evaluate MOS Related Training Effectiveness

EVALUATION-CODED: NO **SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL:** 12 months

BILLETS: Battalion Operations Chief

GRADES: MSGT, MGYSGT

INITIAL TRAINING SETTING: MOJT

CONDITION: Given an M1A1 tank unit's training schedule, training directives from the supported unit (division), Battalion Commander's guidance, and references.

STANDARD: For the period directed by the commander.

PERFORMANCE STEPS:
1. Evaluate performance to determine whether Marines can meet the standard after training.
2. Evaluate preparation based on indicators observed during training.
3. Critique individual and collective performance.
4. Note the results of performance evaluations of individuals in appropriate records as determined by unit SOP.
5. Record the results of collective training in after action reports (AAR) or

appropriate records as determined by unit SOP.
6. Make recommendations as to future training needs or changes in the training.

REFERENCES:
1. FM 3-20.15 Tank Platoon
2. MCO 3500.27B W/ERRATUM Operational Risk Management
3. MCRP 3-0A Unit Training Management Guide
4. MCRP 3-0B How to Conduct Training
5. MCWP 3-12 Marine Corps Tank Employment
6. MCWP 5-1 Marine Corps Planning Process

1812-CMDC-2239: Participate in a Route Reconnaissance

EVALUATION-CODED: NO **SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL:** 12 months

BILLETS: Platoon Sergeant, Tank Commander

GRADES: SGT, SSGT, GYSGT

INITIAL TRAINING SETTING: MOJT

CONDITION: Given an M1A1 tank unit with trained infantry or engineer support, operations order directing a route reconnaissance, a tactical scenario with enemy contact unlikely, specified threat, training area suitable for mechanized operations, and references.

STANDARD: To identify trafficability for all classes of vehicles and personnel, the suitability of bridges, tunnels, fording sites, and any key or decisive terrain dominating the route.

PERFORMANCE STEPS:
1. Issue a warning order to the unit upon receipt of the order.
2. Conduct mission analysis.
3. Request any additional information or assets not originally provided in the OPORD.
4. Coordinate with the unit directing the route reconnaissance for frequencies and call signs, pass words, recognition signals, fire support, MEDEVACS, threat information, and passage of friendly lines prior to conducting the reconnaissance.
5. Brief the unit on the mission.
6. Pass the SP at the designated time, reporting to the supported unit.
7. Assess the trafficability of the route to all classes of vehicles and personnel in accordance with the engineering reports format; trained infantry or engineers are essential to this step.
8. Assess the serviceability of tunnels, bridges, and fording sites along the route; trained infantry or engineers are essential to this step.
9. Assess any key or decisive terrain dominating the route; determine whether the terrain is in the hands of the enemy.
10. Report all control points and major events as they develop.
11. Upon return to the supported unit, prepare a route reconnaissance overlay and a compilation of all site surveys conducted.

REFERENCES:
1. FM 21-26 Map Reading and Land Navigation
2. FM 3-20.15 Tank Platoon
3. MCO 3500.27B W/ERRATUM Operational Risk Management
4. MCWP 3-12 Marine Corps Tank Employment

1812-CMDC-2240: Participate in an Area Reconnaissance

EVALUATION-CODED: NO **SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL:** 12 months

BILLETS: Platoon Sergeant, Tank Commander

GRADES: SGT, SSGT, GYSGT

INITIAL TRAINING SETTING: MOJT

CONDITION: Given an M1A1 tank unit with trained infantry or engineer support, operations order directing an area reconnaissance, a tactical scenario with enemy contact unlikely, specified threat, training area suitable for mechanized operations, and references.

STANDARD: To identify the trafficability of any routes for all classes of vehicles and personnel, the suitability of bridges, tunnels, fording sites, and any key or decisive terrain dominating the area.

PERFORMANCE STEPS:
1. Issue a warning order to the unit upon receipt of the order.
2. Conduct mission analysis.
3. Request any additional information or assets not originally provided in the OPORD.
4. Coordinate with the unit directing the route reconnaissance for frequencies and call signs, pass words, recognition signals, fire support, MEDEVACS, threat information, and passage of friendly lines prior to conducting the reconnaissance.
5. Brief the unit on the mission.
6. Pass the SP at the designated time, reporting to the supported unit.
7. Assess the trafficability of the route to all classes of vehicles and personnel in accordance with the engineering reports format; trained infantry or engineers are essential to this step.
8. Assess the serviceability of tunnels, bridges, and fording sites along the route; trained infantry or engineers are essential to this step.
9. Assess any key or decisive terrain dominating the route; determine whether the terrain is in the hands of the enemy.
10. Report all control points and major events as they develop.
11. Report on the disposition and composition of any enemy forces encountered; do not become engaged.
12. Upon return to the supported unit, prepare a route reconnaissance overlay and a compilation of all site surveys conducted.

REFERENCES:
1. FM 21-26 Map Reading and Land Navigation
2. FM 3-20.15 Tank Platoon
3. MCO 3500.27B W/ERRATUM Operational Risk Management
4. MCWP 3-12 Marine Corps Tank Employment

1812-CMDC-2241: Participate in a Zone Reconnaissance

EVALUATION-CODED: NO **SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL:** 12 months

BILLETS: Platoon Sergeant, Tank Commander

GRADES: SGT, SSGT, GYSGT

INITIAL TRAINING SETTING: MOJT

CONDITION: Given an M1A1 tank unit with trained infantry or engineer support, operations order requiring a reconnaissance in zone, a tactical scenario with enemy contact unlikely, specified threat, training area suitable for mechanized operations, and references.

STANDARD: To identify the trafficability of the route(s) for all classes of vehicles and personnel, the suitability of bridges, tunnels, fording sites, any enemy positions encountered, and key or decisive terrain dominating the zone.

PERFORMANCE STEPS:
1. Issue a warning order to the unit upon receipt of the order.
2. Conduct mission analysis.
3. Request any additional information or assets not originally provided in the OPORD.
4. Coordinate with the unit directing the reconnaissance in zone for frequencies and call signs, pass words, recognition signals, fire support, MEDEVACS, threat information, and passage of friendly lines prior to conducting the reconnaissance.
5. Brief the unit on the mission.
6. Pass the SP at the designated time, reporting to the supported unit.
7. Assess the trafficability of the route to all classes of vehicles and personnel in accordance with the engineering reports format; trained infantry or engineers are essential to this step.
8. Assess the serviceability of tunnels, bridges, and fording sites along the route; trained infantry or engineers are essential to this step.
9. Assess any key or decisive terrain dominating the route; determine whether the terrain is in the hands of the enemy.
10. Report all control points and major events as they develop.
11. Report on the disposition and composition of any enemy forces encountered; do not become engaged.
12. Upon return to the supported unit, prepare a route reconnaissance overlay and a compilation of all site surveys conducted.

REFERENCES:
1. FM 21-26 Map Reading and Land Navigation
2. FM 3-20.15 Tank Platoon
3. MCO 3500.27B W/ERRATUM Operational Risk Management
4. MCWP 3-12 Marine Corps Tank Employment

1812-CMDC-2242: Conduct Mounted Observation Post

EVALUATION-CODED: NO **SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL:** 12 months

BILLETS: Tank Crewman

GRADES: LCPL, CPL, SGT, SSGT, GYSGT

INITIAL TRAINING SETTING: MOJT

CONDITION: Given an M1A1 tank unit, a supported infantry unit, operations order directing the establishment of a hasty defense and the employment of mounted observation posts, tactical scenario with a fluid enemy situation, specified threat, training area suitable for mechanized operations, and references.

STANDARD: To provide early warning of enemy patrols and provide depth to the hasty defense.

PERFORMANCE STEPS:
1. Move forward to covered and concealed position that allows observation of assigned sector.
2. Camouflage vehicle.
3. Maintain alert status.
4. Minimize operating vehicle systems or engines.
5. At night minimize movement, use of lights, and keep radio volume low.

REFERENCES:
1. FM 3-20.15 Tank Platoon
2. MCO 3500.27B W/ERRATUM Operational Risk Management
3. MCWP 3-12 Marine Corps Tank Employment

1812-CMDC-2243: Conduct Dismounted Observation Post

EVALUATION-CODED: NO **SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL:** 12 months

BILLETS: Tank Crewman

GRADES: LCPL, CPL, SGT

INITIAL TRAINING SETTING: MOJT

CONDITION: Given an M1A1 tank unit, a supported infantry unit, operations order directing the employment of dismounted observation posts as part of the security for an assembly area, tactical scenario, specified threat, training area suitable for mechanized operations, and references.

STANDARD: To provide early warning of enemy patrols and provide depth to the hasty defense.

PERFORMANCE STEPS:
1. Conduct passage of friendly lines and move to position.
2. Establish Observation post in covered and concealed position that allows observation of assigned sector.
3. Establish communications, preferably by wire, with friendly unit.
4. Maintain alert status.
5. At night minimize movement, use of lights, and keep radio volume low.
6. Conduct combat reporting as required.

REFERENCES:
1. FM 3-20.15 Tank Platoon
2. MCO 3500.27B W/ERRATUM Operational Risk Management
3. MCWP 3-12 Marine Corps Tank Employment

1812-VOPS-2301: Perform Operator Level Maintenance on the M60A1 AVLB

EVALUATION-CODED: NO **SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL:** 12 months

BILLETS: Tank Crewman

GRADES: PFC, LCPL, CPL, SGT

INITIAL TRAINING SETTING: FORMAL

CONDITION: Given an M60A1 AVLB, crew, SL-3, and basic issue items.

STANDARD: Per the references.

PERFORMANCE STEPS:
1. Locate appropriate maintenance instructions in TM or LO, as required.
2. Follow instructions in TN or LO to perform preventive maintenance checks and services or lubrication, as required.
3. Identify any maintenance deficiencies and correcting if within authorized maintenance level.
4. Report any deficiencies that cannot be corrected by authorized maintenance level to organizational maintenance.

REFERENCES:
1. LO 5-5420-202-12 Lubrication Order for AVLB
2. MCO 3500.27B W/ERRATUM Operational Risk Management
3. TM 5-5420-202-10 Operator's Manual for M-60 AVLB
4. TM 5-5420-203-14 Operator's Manual for AVLB

1812-VOPS-2302: Disconnect a Launched Bridge From the Launcher

EVALUATION-CODED: NO **SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL:** 12 months

BILLETS: Tank Crewman

GRADES: PFC, LCPL, CPL, SGT

INITIAL TRAINING SETTING: FORMAL

CONDITION: Given an M60A1 AVLB, crew, a connected launched bridge, and references.

STANDARD: To clear away from bridge within 5 minutes after bridge is emplaced.

PERFORMANCE STEPS:
1. Unlock bridge.
2. Disengage launcher from bridge.

3. Retract launching mechanism.
4. Clear bridge for use.
5. Hide.

REFERENCES:
1. MCO 3500.27B W/ERRATUM Operational Risk Management
2. TM 5-5420-202-10 Operator's Manual for M-60 AVLB
3. TM 5-5420-203-14 Operator's Manual for AVLB

1812-VOPS-2303: Reconnect a Launched Bridge to the Launcher

EVALUATION-CODED: NO **SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL:** 12 months

BILLETS: Tank Crewman

GRADES: PFC, LCPL, CPL, SGT

INITIAL TRAINING SETTING: FORMAL

CONDITION: Given an M60A1 AVLB, a disconnected launched bridge, and references.

STANDARD: To include hydraulic lines in preparation for retrieval within 5 minutes of receiving order to retrieve bridge.

PERFORMANCE STEPS:
1. Move across bridge.
2. Align launcher with bridge.
3. Extend launching/retrieving mechanism.
4. Extend tongue as necessary to align tongue pintles with sockets in bridge diaphragm.
5. Correct bridge launcher height as required.
6. Prepare bridge for connection.
7. Connect launcher to bridge.

REFERENCES:
1. MCO 3500.27B W/ERRATUM Operational Risk Management
2. TM 5-5420-202-10 Operator's Manual for M-60 AVLB
3. TM 5-5420-203-14 Operator's Manual for AVLB

1812-VOPS-2304: Retrieve the Bridge onto the Launcher

EVALUATION-CODED: NO **SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL:** 12 months

BILLETS: Tank Crewman

GRADES: PFC, LCPL, CPL, SGT

INITIAL TRAINING SETTING: FORMAL

CONDITION: Given an M60A1 AVLB, a reconnected launched bridge, and references.

STANDARD: Without allowing far shore end of bridge to drag on far shore bank or rise over 36" above far shore bank height.

PERFORMANCE STEPS:
1. Engage hydraulic system.
2. Prepare bridge for retrieve.
3. Remove radio antenna.
4. Retract bridge from launch site.
5. Lower bridge to launcher.
6. Secure bridge to launcher.
7. Prepare AVLB for travel.

REFERENCES:
1. MCO 3500.27B W/ERRATUM Operational Risk Management
2. TM 5-5420-202-10 Operator's Manual for M-60 AVLB
3. TM 5-5420-203-14 Operator's Manual for AVLB

1812-VOPS-2305: Maneuver the M60A1 AVLB Over a Launched Bridge

EVALUATION-CODED: NO **SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL:** 12 months

BILLETS: Tank Crewman

GRADES: PFC, LCPL, CPL, SGT

INITIAL TRAINING SETTING: FORMAL

CONDITION: Given an M60A1 AVLB, crew, and a launched bridge.

STANDARD: Per the references.

REFERENCES:
1. MCO 3500.27B W/ERRATUM Operational Risk Management
2. TM 5-5420-202-10 Operator's Manual for M-60 AVLB
3. TM 5-5420-203-14 Operator's Manual for AVLB

1812-VOPS-2306: Perform Hydraulic Slaving Operations To Remove The Bridge From a Nonfunctional Launcher

EVALUATION-CODED: NO **SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL:** 12 months

BILLETS: Tank Crewman

GRADES: PFC, LCPL, CPL, SGT

INITIAL TRAINING SETTING: FORMAL

CONDITION: Given a serviceable AVLB, crew, nonfunctional AVLB with bridge, SL-3, basic issue items, and references.

STANDARD: Without injury to personnel or damage to equipment.

PERFORMANCE STEPS:
1. Position live vehicle.
2. Prepare vehicles for slaving hookup.
3. Connect slaving hoses to vehicles.
4. Hydraulically slave bridge.
5. Disconnect slave hoses.

REFERENCES:
1. MCO 3500.27B W/ERRATUM Operational Risk Management
2. TM 5-5420-202-10 Operator's Manual for M-60 AVLB
3. TM 5-5420-203-14 Operator's Manual for AVLB

1812-VOPS-2307: Retrieve a Mired AVLB

EVALUATION-CODED: NO **SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL:** 12 months

BILLETS: Tank Crewman

GRADES: PFC, LCPL, CPL, SGT

INITIAL TRAINING SETTING: FORMAL

CONDITION: Given a mired AVLB, basic issue items, SL-3, and references.

STANDARD: Without injury to personnel or damage to equipment.

PERFORMANCE STEPS:
1. Launch bridge.
2. Back out in tracks.

REFERENCES:
1. MCO 3500.27B W/ERRATUM Operational Risk Management
2. TM 5-5420-202-10 Operator's Manual for M-60 AVLB
3. TM 5-5420-203-14 Operator's Manual for AVLB

1812-VOPS-2308: Prepare an M60A1 AVLB Bridge for Removal by Overhead Lift

EVALUATION-CODED: NO **SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL:** 12 months

BILLETS: Tank Crewman

GRADES: PFC, LCPL, CPL, SGT

INITIAL TRAINING SETTING: FORMAL

CONDITION: Given an M60A1 AVLB, crew, SL-3, a crane or unit's organic equipment, and references.

STANDARD: Without injury to personnel or damage to equipment.

PERFORMANCE STEPS:
1. Release hold down cylinder.
2. Release locking pins.

3. Sling bridge.
4. Lift bridge using a crane if available.
5. If overhead lift is not available, use two M88A2 recovery vehicles to lift bridge.

REFERENCES:
1. LO 5-5420-202-12 Lubrication Order for AVLB
2. MCO 3500.27B W/ERRATUM Operational Risk Management
3. TM 5-5420-202-10 Operator's Manual for M-60 AVLB
4. TM 5-5420-203-14 Operator's Manual for AVLB

1812-VOPS-2309: Drive an M60A1 AVLB

EVALUATION-CODED: NO **SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL:** 12 months

BILLETS: Tank Crewman

GRADES: PFC, LCPL, CPL, SGT

INITIAL TRAINING SETTING: FORMAL

CONDITION: Given an M60A1 AVLB with crew, varied terrain, obstacles (natural and man-made), and references.

STANDARD: Without injury to crew or damage to the vehicle, without losing control of the vehicle at any time, applying emergency procedures as required, and continuously observing the forward terrain for possible enemy locations.

PERFORMANCE STEPS:
1. Start the M60A1 AVLB.
2. Operate the driving controls.
3. Move the vehicle.
4. Drive up and down hills as required.
5. Drive over obstacles as required.
6. Drive across ditches as required.
7. Drive at night, with and without outside lights or infrared lenses, and with and without night vision devices, as required.

REFERENCES:
1. MCO 3500.27B W/ERRATUM Operational Risk Management
2. TM 5-5420-202-10 Operator's Manual for M-60 AVLB
3. TM 5-5420-203-14 Operator's Manual for AVLB

1812-VOPS-2310: Operate Driver's Night Vision Enhancer from an M60A1 AVLB

EVALUATION-CODED: NO **SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL:** 12 months

BILLETS: Tank Crewman

GRADES: PFC, LCPL, CPL, SGT

INITIAL TRAINING SETTING: FORMAL

CONDITION: Given a stationary M60A1 AVLB, crew, night vision viewer with batteries, and a limited visibility environment.

STANDARD: Per the references.

PERFORMANCE STEPS:
1. Remove periscope.
2. Install the Driver's Night Vision Enhancer (DVE).
3. Connect power cable and set Night Vision switch to on.
4. Look at the viewer screen and adjust the OFF-BRIGHT knob.
5. Turn the viewer left or right to see the area of operation.

REFERENCES:
1. MCO 3500.27B W/ERRATUM Operational Risk Management
2. TM 5-5420-202-10 Operator's Manual for M-60 AVLB
3. TM 5-5420-203-14 Operator's Manual for AVLB

1812-VOPS-2311: Slave Start an M60A1 AVLB

EVALUATION-CODED: NO **SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL:** 12 months

BILLETS: Tank Crewman

GRADES: PFC, LCPL, CPL, SGT

INITIAL TRAINING SETTING: FORMAL

CONDITION: Given an M60A1 AVLB with dead batteries, crew, NATO slave cable, available operational tank or recovery vehicle with crew, and references.

STANDARD: So that the discharged vehicle is running and damage to equipment and injury to personnel is avoided.

PERFORMANCE STEPS:
1. Position live vehicle close beside dead vehicle.
2. Set MASTER BATTERY switch to OFF.
3. Inspect live vehicle battery charge.
4. Set parking brakes.
5. Ensure all electronic equipment is off.
6. Set Live vehicle idle speed to 700-750 rpm.
7. Set Live vehicle MASTER BATTERY switch to OFF.
8. Connect cables between vehicles.
9. Charge dead vehicle batteries.

REFERENCES:
1. MCO 3500.27B W/ERRATUM Operational Risk Management
2. TM 5-5420-202-10 Operator's Manual for M-60 AVLB
3. TM 5-5420-203-14 Operator's Manual for AVLB

1812-VOPS-2312: Adjust Track Tension on M60A1 AVLB

EVALUATION-CODED: NO **SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL:** 12 months

BILLETS: Tank Crewman

GRADES: PFC, LCPL, CPL, SGT

INITIAL TRAINING SETTING: FORMAL

CONDITION: Given an operational M60A1 AVLB parked on level ground, crew, SL-3, basic issue items, a ten foot long string strong enough to hold weights, a ruler, and references.

STANDARD: So that space between the string and end connector measures between 7/16 inch and 1/2 inch (12.7 mm) while the engine is running.

PERFORMANCE STEPS:
1. Move vehicle rearward at least two tank lengths an then move vehicle forward and allow vehicle to coast to a stop without applying brakes.
2. Set shift lever to P (park) and shut off engine.
3. Remove dirt and mud from end connectors to near first and second support rollers.
4. Tie weights to each end of string and place string over center of end connectors.
5. Find center of string and mark nearest end connector.
6. Using ruler, measure distance between string and marked endconnector.
7. Remove dirt and mud from locking screw and adjusting link.
8. Remove locking screw and lock washer.
9. Loosen or tighten track tension as required by turning adjusting link.
10. Repeat steps 6 through 9 as necessary.
11. Install and tighten lock washer and screw.
12. Lubricate adjusting link.

REFERENCES:
1. MCO 3500.27B W/ERRATUM Operational Risk Management
2. TM 5-5420-202-10 Operator's Manual for M-60 AVLB
3. TM 5-5420-203-14 Operator's Manual for AVLB

1812-VOPS-2313: Replace Thrown Track on M60A1 AVLB

EVALUATION-CODED: NO **SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL:** 12 months

BILLETS: Tank Crewman

GRADES: PFC, LCPL, CPL, SGT

INITIAL TRAINING SETTING: FORMAL

CONDITION: Given an M60A1 AVLB with thrown track and full crew, SL-3, basic issue items, 30-foot 3/4-inch manila rope, and references.

STANDARD: Ensuring track tension is correctly adjusted and all safety precautions are observed.

PERFORMANCE STEPS:
1. Remove vehicle rear fender.
2. Break the track, if not already broken.

3. Replace the thrown track.
4. Connect the track.
5. Install the rear fender, shield, and angle.
6. Adjust track tension.

REFERENCES:
1. MCO 3500.27B W/ERRATUM Operational Risk Management
2. TM 5-5420-202-10 Operator's Manual for M-60 AVLB
3. TM 5-5420-203-14 Operator's Manual for AVLB

1812-VOPS-2314: Navigate From M60A1 AVLB

EVALUATION-CODED: NO **SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL:** 12 months

BILLETS: Tank Crewman

GRADES: PFC, LCPL, CPL, SGT

INITIAL TRAINING SETTING: FORMAL

CONDITION: Given an M60A1 AVLB with crew, an operational area, a military map of the operational area, a known start point and a destination, and references.

STANDARD: Using map and terrain analysis, from the start point to the destination, and directing the vehicle along the route.

PERFORMANCE STEPS:
1. Plan the route to move from terrain feature to terrain feature, considering the tactical aspects and ease of movement of the route.
2. Use terrain features as checkpoints as the vehicle moves along the route.
3. Follow terrain features.
4. Determine approximate directions of the various segments of the route.
5. Determine total distance and distance between checkpoints.
6. Make written or mental notes to remember terrain features as they are being passed.

REFERENCES:
1. FM 21-26 Map Reading and Land Navigation
2. MCO 3500.27B W/ERRATUM Operational Risk Management
3. TM 5-5420-202-10 Operator's Manual for M-60 AVLB
4. TM 5-5420-203-14 Operator's Manual for AVLB

1812-VOPS-2315: Prepare Commander's Station on M1A1 Tank for Operation

EVALUATION-CODED: NO **SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL:** 6 months

BILLETS: Tank Crewman

GRADES: SGT, SSGT, GYSGT

INITIAL TRAINING SETTING: MOJT

CONDITION: Given a stationary M1A1 tank, .50 caliber M48 HB machine gun or M240 machine gun.

STANDARD: Per the references.

PERFORMANCE STEPS:
1. Enter tank commander's station.
2. Position commander's armed guard.
3. Power up commander's station and turret.
4. Conduct intercom check.
5. Adjust commander's seat.
6. Adjust commander's hatch.
7. Adjust commander's platforms.
8. Install commander's weapon.
9. Conduct Position Location Reporting System (PLRS) checkout.
10. Adjust commander's GPS extension.

REFERENCES:
1. MCO 3500.27B W/ERRATUM Operational Risk Management
2. TM 9-2350-264-10-1 Operator's Manual, Operator Controls, PMCS, and Operation Under Usual Conditions, Volume 1 of 2, Tank, Combat, Full-Tracked: 120-MM Gun, M1A1 2350-01-087-1095 General Abrams
3. TM 9-2350-264-10-2 Operator's Manual, Unusual Conditions, Troubleshooting, and Maintenance, Volume 2 of 2, Tank, Combat, Full-Tracked: 120-MM, M1A1 2350-01-087-1095, General Abrams

---

1812-VOPS-2316: Secure Commander's Station on M1A1 Tank

EVALUATION-CODED: NO **SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL:** 6 months

BILLETS: Tank Crewman

GRADES: SGT, SSGT, GYSGT

INITIAL TRAINING SETTING: MOJT

CONDITION: Given a stationary M1A1 tank.

STANDARD: Per the references.

PERFORMANCE STEPS:
1. Remove commander's weapon.
2. Secure commander's station and turret.
3. Power down commander's station and turret.

REFERENCES:
1. MCO 3500.27B W/ERRATUM Operational Risk Management
2. TM 9-2350-264-10-1 Operator's Manual, Operator Controls, PMCS, and Operation Under Usual Conditions, Volume 1 of 2, Tank, Combat, Full-Tracked: 120-MM Gun, M1A1 2350-01-087-1095 General Abrams
3. TM 9-2350-264-10-2 Operator's Manual, Unusual Conditions, Troubleshooting, and Maintenance, Volume 2 of 2, Tank, Combat, Full-Tracked: 120-MM, M1A1 2350-01-087-1095, General Abrams

---

1812-VOPS-2317: Operate M1A1 Tank In Extreme Cold

EVALUATION-CODED: NO **SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL:** 12 months

BILLETS: Tank Crewman

GRADES: LCPL, CPL, SGT, SSGT, GYSGT

INITIAL TRAINING SETTING: MOJT

CONDITION: Given an M1A1 tank.

STANDARD: Per the references.

PERFORMANCE STEPS:

1. Prepare vehicle for cold weather operations in accordance with FM 9-207.
2. Perform hydraulic zero pressure check to bring hydraulic system pressure to zero.
3. Set TURRET POWER switch on commander's panel to "OFF".
4. Attempt to start engine normally. If engine starts go to step 11; if ABORT light on driver's master panel lights, turn off ABORT light and then go to step 5.
5. Press and hold PUSH TO START pushbutton for about 3 seconds and then let go.
6. Press and hold PUSH TO START pushbutton again and hold until green STARTED light lights, but no longer than 2 minutes and then let go.
7. If engine starts go to step 11; if engine does not start, wait 3 minutes and go to step 8.
8. Set and hold STARTER ONLY switch to ENGAGED for 20-30 seconds and then let go.
9. Wait until engine stops turning and RPM gage shows 0 RPM.
10. Make three more attempts repeating steps 6 through 9; if engine still does not start, notify unit maintenance.
11. Wait 2 minutes and then have loader set turret networks box circuit breaker CB3 to ON and reset LAMP RESET button on TNB.
12. Check engine indicators.
13. Check warning lights.
14. Check hydraulics.
15. Check caution lights.
16. Drive tank in snow and extreme cold weather.

REFERENCES:

1. FM 3-20.15 Tank Platoon
2. FM 9-207 Operations and Maintenance of Ordnance Materiel in Cold Weather
3. MCO 3500.27B W/ERRATUM Operational Risk Management
4. MCWP 3-12 Marine Corps Tank Employment
5. TM 9-2350-264-10-1 Operator's Manual, Operator Controls, PMCS, and Operation Under Usual Conditions, Volume 1 of 2, Tank, Combat, Full-Tracked: 120-MM Gun, M1A1 2350-01-087-1095 General Abrams
6. TM 9-2350-264-10-2 Operator's Manual, Unusual Conditions, Troubleshooting, and Maintenance, Volume 2 of 2, Tank, Combat, Full-Tracked: 120-MM, M1A1 2350-01-087-1095, General Abrams

1812-VOPS-2318: Supervise M1A1 Tank Recovery Operations

EVALUATION-CODED: NO **SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL:** 12 months

BILLETS: Platoon Sergeant, Tank Commander

GRADES: SGT, SSGT, GYSGT

INITIAL TRAINING SETTING: FORMAL

CONDITION: Given an M1A1 tank unit, a disabled M1A1 tank capable of being towed, and references.

STANDARD: Using self recovery techniques or other M1A1 tanks.

PERFORMANCE STEPS:
1. Locate the disabled vehicle and establish local security.
2. Conduct estimate of the situation to determine: situation of the vehicle: mired, disabled, overturned, the condition of the vehicle (can operate once recovered, can be repaired on site, must be towed to collection point), most appropriate recovery method (self, like, other).
3. Mired tank: attempt self recovery, use other tank(s), and use tank recovery vehicles.
4. Disabled tank: use other tank(s), use tank recovery vehicle.
5. Overturned tank: use other tanks, use tank recovery vehicles.
6. Conduct repairs as appropriate.
7. Rig vehicle for towing to collection point if repairs can return the vehicle to operational status.

REFERENCES:
1. FM 3-20.15 Tank Platoon
2. MCO 3500.27B W/ERRATUM Operational Risk Management
3. MCRP 3-13.1B Manual for the Track Combat Vehicle Driver
4. MCRP 4-11.4A Battle Damage Assessment and Repair
5. MCRP 4-24A Vehicle Recovery Operations
6. MCWP 3-12 Marine Corps Tank Employment
7. TM 9-2350-264-10-1 Operator's Manual, Operator Controls, PMCS, and Operation Under Usual Conditions, Volume 1 of 2, Tank, Combat, Full-Tracked: 120-MM Gun, M1A1 2350-01-087-1095 General Abrams
8. TM 9-2350-264-10-2 Operator's Manual, Unusual Conditions, Troubleshooting, and Maintenance, Volume 2 of 2, Tank, Combat, Full-Tracked: 120-MM, M1A1 2350-01-087-1095, General Abrams

---

1812-VOPS-2319: Direct Hasty Demolition

EVALUATION-CODED: NO **SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL:** 12 months

BILLETS: Platoon Sergeant, Tank Commander

GRADES: SGT, SSGT, GYSGT

INITIAL TRAINING SETTING: MOJT

CONDITION: Given a disabled M1A1 tank, an operations order directing destruction of vehicles to prevent enemy use within 15 minutes, a tactical scenario involving enemy contact within 20 minutes, a specified threat, and references.

STANDARD: To prevent enemy use.

PERFORMANCE STEPS:
1. Establish local security around disabled vehicle.
2. Determine amount of time available to conduct repair or salvage operations.
3. If speed is essential or enemy pressure is present prepare vehicle for hasty demolition by: removing all wounded and dead personnel from vehicle, removing any personal weapons and equipment, disable fire suppression system, and clear all radios if time permits.
4. Have all personnel and vehicles move at least 500 meters from disabled vehicle.
5. Have designated vehicle(s) fire into engine compartment until onboard ammunition and fuel ignite or explode.

REFERENCES:
1. FM 3-20.15 Tank Platoon
2. MCO 3500.27B W/ERRATUM Operational Risk Management
3. MCRP 3-13.1B Manual for the Track Combat Vehicle Driver
4. MCRP 4-11.4A Battle Damage Assessment and Repair
5. MCWP 3-12 Marine Corps Tank Employment
6. TM 750-244-4-2 Destruction of Army Material to Prevent Enemy Use
7. TM 9-2350-264-10-1 Operator's Manual, Operator Controls, PMCS, and Operation Under Usual Conditions, Volume 1 of 2, Tank, Combat, Full-Tracked: 120-MM Gun, M1A1 2350-01-087-1095 General Abrams
8. TM 9-2350-264-10-2 Operator's Manual, Unusual Conditions, Troubleshooting, and Maintenance, Volume 2 of 2, Tank, Combat, Full-Tracked: 120-MM, M1A1 2350-01-087-1095, General Abrams

---

1812-VOPS-2320: Direct Deliberate Demolition

EVALUATION-CODED: NO **SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL:** 12 months

BILLETS: Platoon Sergeant

GRADES: SSGT, GYSGT

INITIAL TRAINING SETTING: MOJT

CONDITION: Given a disabled M1A1 tank, an operations order directing the destruction of vehicles to prevent enemy, a tactical scenario involving enemy contact within two hours, a specified threat, and references.

STANDARD: To prevent enemy use.

PERFORMANCE STEPS:
1. Establish local security around disabled vehicle.
2. Determine amount of time available to conduct repair or salvage operations.

3. If enemy contact is not likely within two hours prepare vehicle for deliberate demolition by: removing all wounded and dead personnel from vehicle, removing any personal weapons and equipment, destroy/remove sight/fire control equipment, destroy/remove vehicle records, destroy/remove weapons, destroy/remove ammunition, destroy/remove communications equipment, and disable fire suppression system.
4. Have all personnel and vehicles move at least 500 meters from disabled vehicle.
5. Have designated vehicle(s) fire into engine compartment until onboard ammunition and fuel ignite or explode or use thermite grenade.

REFERENCES:
1. FM 3-20.15 Tank Platoon
2. MCO 3500.27B W/ERRATUM Operational Risk Management
3. MCRP 3-13.1B Manual for the Track Combat Vehicle Driver
4. MCRP 4-11.4A Battle Damage Assessment and Repair
5. MCWP 3-12 Marine Corps Tank Employment
6. TM 750-244-4-2 Destruction of Army Material to Prevent Enemy Use
7. TM 9-2350-264-10-1 Operator's Manual, Operator Controls, PMCS, and Operation Under Usual Conditions, Volume 1 of 2, Tank, Combat, Full-Tracked: 120-MM Gun, M1A1 2350-01-087-1095 General Abrams
8. TM 9-2350-264-10-2 Operator's Manual, Unusual Conditions, Troubleshooting, and Maintenance, Volume 2 of 2, Tank, Combat, Full-Tracked: 120-MM, M1A1 2350-01-087-1095, General Abrams

---

1812-VOPS-2321: Operate External Auxiliary Power Unit (EAPU)

EVALUATION-CODED: NO **SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL:** 12 months

BILLETS: Tank Crewman

GRADES: LCPL, CPL, SGT, SSGT, GYSGT

INITIAL TRAINING SETTING: MOJT

CONDITION: Given an M1A1 tank equipped with an EAPU, a crew and references.

STANDARD: To provide power to vehicle systems.

PERFORMANCE STEPS:
1. Open control panel access door.
2. Move EAPU START/ON/STOP switch to START and release.
3. Let EAPU engine run for about 2 minutes, have driver turn on vehicle master power to OUTPUT POWER ON/OFF switch to ON.
4. Close control panel access door.
5. When auxiliary power is no longer needed, shut down EAPU.
6. Start using low battery procedures when appropriate.
7. Start EAPU using manual start procedures when appropriate.
8. Start EAPU using remote start procedures when appropriate.
9. Start EAPU using slave start procedures when appropriate.

REFERENCES:
1. MCO 3500.27B W/ERRATUM Operational Risk Management
2. TM 9-2350-264-10-1 Operator's Manual, Operator Controls, PMCS, and

Operation Under Usual Conditions, Volume 1 of 2, Tank, Combat, Full-Tracked: 120-MM Gun, M1A1 2350-01-087-1095 General Abrams
3. TM 9-2350-264-10-2 Operator's Manual, Unusual Conditions, Troubleshooting, and Maintenance, Volume 2 of 2, Tank, Combat, Full-Tracked: 120-MM, M1A1 2350-01-087-1095, General Abrams

---

1812-VOPS-2322: Operate Missile Countermeasure Device (MCD)

EVALUATION-CODED: NO **SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL:** 12 months

BILLETS: Platoon Sergeant, Tank Commander

GRADES: SGT, SSGT, GYSGT

INITIAL TRAINING SETTING: MOJT

CONDITION: Given an M1A1 tank with crew, a tactical scenario, training area suitable for employment of the MCD, and references.

STANDARD: To defeat threat missiles.

PERFORMANCE STEPS:
1. Remove protective cover and stow beside MCD using straps.
2. Make sure turret power is ON.
3. Ensure MCD CONTROL UTILITY OUTLET indicator lamp on EAPU remote control panel is lit; if lamp does not light, notify unit maintenance.
4. When MCD is no longer needed, shut the system down.

REFERENCES:
1. FM 3-20.15 Tank Platoon
2. MCO 3500.27B W/ERRATUM Operational Risk Management
3. MCWP 3-12 Marine Corps Tank Employment
4. TM 9-2350-264-10-1 Operator's Manual, Operator Controls, PMCS, and Operation Under Usual Conditions, Volume 1 of 2, Tank, Combat, Full-Tracked: 120-MM Gun, M1A1 2350-01-087-1095 General Abrams
5. TM 9-2350-264-10-2 Operator's Manual, Unusual Conditions, Troubleshooting, and Maintenance, Volume 2 of 2, Tank, Combat, Full-Tracked: 120-MM, M1A1 2350-01-087-1095, General Abrams

---

1812-VOPS-2323: Conduct Bustle Hit Drill

EVALUATION-CODED: NO **SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL:** 12 months

BILLETS: Platoon Sergeant, Tank Commander

GRADES: SGT, SSGT, GYSGT

INITIAL TRAINING SETTING: MOJT

CONDITION: Given an M1A1 tank with crew, a training area suitable for mechanized operations, and a scenario involving a hit to the turret bustle.

STANDARD: Per the references.

PERFORMANCE STEPS:
1. Don protective masks.
2. Turn on vehicle particulate filter system.
3. Use overpressure system as applicable.
4. Rotate turret to position gun tube over the side of the vehicle.
5. Wait inside the tank for at least 60 minutes.
6. Move with hatches open to maintenance collection point.

REFERENCES:
1. FM 3-20.12 Tank Gunnery
2. FM 3-20.15 Tank Platoon
3. MCO 3500.27B W/ERRATUM Operational Risk Management
4. MCWP 3-12 Marine Corps Tank Employment
5. TM 9-2350-264-10-1 Operator's Manual, Operator Controls, PMCS, and Operation Under Usual Conditions, Volume 1 of 2, Tank, Combat, Full-Tracked: 120-MM Gun, M1A1 2350-01-087-1095 General Abrams
6. TM 9-2350-264-10-2 Operator's Manual, Unusual Conditions, Troubleshooting, and Maintenance, Volume 2 of 2, Tank, Combat, Full-Tracked: 120-MM, M1A1 2350-01-087-1095, General Abrams

---

1812-VOPS-2324: Conduct Abandon Tank Drill

EVALUATION-CODED: NO **SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL:** 12 months

BILLETS: Tank Crewman

GRADES: LCPL, CPL, SGT, SSGT, GYSGT

INITIAL TRAINING SETTING: MOJT

CONDITION: Given an M1A1 tank with crew, a training area suitable for mechanized operations, a scenario involving a hit to the turret bustle, and references.

STANDARD: To evacuate the crew in the event of a hit to the turret bustle.

PERFORMANCE STEPS:
1. TC reports crew status.
2. TC commands abandon tank-assemble right/left/rear.
3. Driver announces clear so that turret can be traversed.
4. TC traverses turret to 3 o'clock, levels gun, and sets radio to unused frequency.
5. Loader opens breech and removes round from main gun.
6. TC removes backplate from .50 caliber machinegun and places it in main gun breach.
7. Gunner removes backplate from coaxial machinegun and places it in main gun breach.
8. TC secures protective mask, individual weapon, rations, and SOI.
9. Gunner secures protective mask, individual weapon, rations, and all grenades to include thermite grenades.
10. Loader secures protective mask, individual weapon, M4 rifle, ammunition, rations, and loader's mittens.
11. Driver secures protective mask, individual weapon, ammunition, and rations.

12. TC places SOI in breach and receives two thermite grenades from gunner.
13. Gunner passes two thermite grenades to TC and two thermite grenades to loader.
14. Loader places one thermite grenade in breech and stands by.
15. Driver ruptures heater fuel line, turns on heater, and dismounts tank.
16. TC secures M4 rifle, exits through TC's hatch and moves to back deck.
17. Gunner exits through TC's hatch, secures loader's machinegun and two boxes of ammunition and dismounts tank.
18. TC opens right grille doors to expose fuel cell.
19. Gunner moves to area announced by TC and establishes security watch.
20. Driver moves to area announced by TC and establishes security watch.
21. TC commands "PULL PIN".
22. Loader, on command, pulls pin on remaining thermite grenade, places it in the breech, and closes the breech.
23. TC pulls pin on one grenade as loader exits tank and places both grenades on top of fuel cell.
24. Loader exits through loader's hatch and dismounts tank.
25. TC dismounts tank and conducts personnel accountability.
26. Loader moves to location announced by TC and provides security watch.

REFERENCES:
1. FM 3-20.15 Tank Platoon
2. MCO 3500.27B W/ERRATUM Operational Risk Management
3. MCWP 3-12 Marine Corps Tank Employment
4. TM 9-2350-264-10-1 Operator's Manual, Operator Controls, PMCS, and Operation Under Usual Conditions, Volume 1 of 2, Tank, Combat, Full-Tracked: 120-MM Gun, M1A1 2350-01-087-1095 General Abrams
5. TM 9-2350-264-10-2 Operator's Manual, Unusual Conditions, Troubleshooting, and Maintenance, Volume 2 of 2, Tank, Combat, Full-Tracked: 120-MM, M1A1 2350-01-087-1095, General Abrams

---

1812-VOPS-2325: Install Mine Clearing Blade on M1A1 Tank

EVALUATION-CODED: NO **SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL:** 12 months

BILLETS: Tank Crewman

GRADES: LCPL, CPL, SGT, SSGT, GYSGT

INITIAL TRAINING SETTING: MOJT

CONDITION: Given an M1A1 tank with mine clearing blade, crew, and references.

STANDARD: So that it can be properly employed.

PERFORMANCE STEPS:
1. Conduct preoperational checks.
2. Prepare mine clearing blade for installation.
3. Position post and hydraulic jacks.
4. Secure mine clearing blade on parking supports.
5. Install mine clearing blade on tank hull.
6. Install main electrical harness.
7. Conduct post-operational checks.

REFERENCES:
1. MCO 3500.27B W/ERRATUM Operational Risk Management
2. TM 5-2590-509-10 Operator's Manual, Mine Clearing Blade for M1, IPM1, or M1A1 Abrams Tank
3. TM 9-2590-509-23&P Operator's Manual Mine Clearing Blade for M1A1 Tank

---

1812-VOPS-2326: Inspect Mine Clearing Blade on M1A1 Tank

EVALUATION-CODED: NO **SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL:** 12 months

BILLETS: Platoon Sergeant, Tank Commander

GRADES: SGT, SSGT, GYSGT

INITIAL TRAINING SETTING: MOJT

CONDITION: Given an M1A1 tank with mine clearing blade and the reference.

STANDARD: To identify maintenance deficiencies and correct with authorized maintenance, and report any deficiencies that cannot be corrected to organizational maintenance.

PERFORMANCE STEPS:
1. Inspect main wiring harness.
2. Inspect lifting straps.
3. Inspect travel locks.
4. Inspect moldboards.
5. Inspect control box.
6. Check for loose or missing hardware.
7. Report deficiencies to organizational maintenance.

REFERENCES:
1. MCO 3500.27B W/ERRATUM Operational Risk Management
2. TM 5-2590-509-10 Operator's Manual, Mine Clearing Blade for M1, IPM1, or M1A1 Abrams Tank

---

1812-VOPS-2327: Operate Mine Clearing Blade on M1A1 Tank

EVALUATION-CODED: NO **SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL:** 12 months

BILLETS: Platoon Sergeant, Tank Commander, Tank Crewman

GRADES: LCPL, CPL, SGT, SSGT, GYSGT

INITIAL TRAINING SETTING: MOJT

CONDITION: Given an M1A1 tank with mine clearing blade, crew, simulated minefield, and references.

STANDARD: So that a mine free lane is established through the minefield.

PERFORMANCE STEPS:
1. Conduct pre-operational checks.

2. Prepare mine clearing blade for operation.
3. Operate mine clearing blade.
4. Conduct post-operational checks.

REFERENCES:
1. FM 3-20.15 Tank Platoon
2. MCO 3500.27B W/ERRATUM Operational Risk Management
3. MCWP 3-12 Marine Corps Tank Employment
4. TM 5-2590-509-10 Operator's Manual, Mine Clearing Blade for M1, IPM1, or M1A1 Abrams Tank

---

1812-VOPS-2328: Remove Mine Clearing Blade on M1A1 Tank

EVALUATION-CODED: NO **SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL:** 12 months

BILLETS: Tank Crewman

GRADES: LCPL, CPL, SGT, SSGT, GYSGT

INITIAL TRAINING SETTING: MOJT

CONDITION: Given an M1A1 tank with mine clearing blade, crew, and references.

STANDARD: So that it can be properly employed.

PERFORMANCE STEPS:
1. Conduct preoperational checks.
2. Prepare mine clearing blade for removal.
3. Position post and hydraulic jacks.
4. Secure mine clearing blade on parking supports.
5. Remove main electrical harness.
6. Remove mine clearing blade from tank hull.

REFERENCES:
1. MCO 3500.27B W/ERRATUM Operational Risk Management
2. TM 5-2590-509-10 Operator's Manual, Mine Clearing Blade for M1, IPM1, or M1A1 Abrams Tank
3. TM 9-2590-509-23&P Operator's Manual Mine Clearing Blade for M1A1 Tank

---

1812-CBTS-2401: Conduct Operations in Nuclear Contaminated Environment

EVALUATION-CODED: NO **SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL:** 12 months

BILLETS: Tank Crewman

GRADES: LCPL, CPL, SGT, SSGT, GYSGT, MSGT, MGYSGT

INITIAL TRAINING SETTING: MOJT

CONDITION: Given a tank unit, supported unit, an operations order, supporting landing plan, tactical scenario involving nuclear contamination, specific threat, specific amphibious shipping platform, an open ocean

training area capable of supporting amphibious operations, beach suitable for amphibious landings, an inland training area suitable for mechanized operations, and references.

STANDARD: To support higher commander's intent.

PERFORMANCE STEPS:
1. Supervise preparations for operations in nuclear contaminated environment
2. Establish Mission Oriented Protective Posture (MOPP) status for unit for operations in a nuclear contaminated environment in accordance with intelligence information and unit SOP.
3. Establish and publish radiation dose limits for unit in accordance with instruction from higher and unit SOP.
4. Establish hasty and deliberate decontamination procedures for operations in a nuclear contaminated environment in accordance with unit SOP.
5. Establish monitor/survey teams and procedures for operations in a nuclear contaminated environment in accordance with unit SOP.
6. Conduct amphibious operations in nuclear contaminated environment
7. Conduct offensive operations in nuclear contaminated environment
8. Conduct defensive operations in nuclear contaminated environment

REFERENCES:
1. FM 3-100 NBC Operations
2. FM 3-20.15 Tank Platoon
3. FM 3-3 Chemical and Biological Contamination Avoidance
4. MCO 3500.27B W/ERRATUM Operational Risk Management
5. MCRP 3-31.3A Over the Horizon Surface Operations
6. MCRP 3-31B Amphibious Ships and Landing Craft Data Book
7. MCRP 3-37.2B Nuclear Contamination Avoidance
8. MCRP 3-37A NBC Field Handbook
9. MCWP 3-12 Marine Corps Tank Employment
10. MCWP 3-37 MAGTF Nuclear, Biological, and Chemical Defense Operations
11. MCWP 3-37.2 NBC Protection
12. MCWP 3-37.3 NBC Decontamination
13. MCWP 3-37.4 NBC Reconnaissance

1812-CBTS-2402: Ensure Preparation for a Nuclear Attack

EVALUATION-CODED: NO **SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL:** 12 months

BILLETS: Tank Crewman

GRADES: LCPL, CPL, SGT, SSGT, GYSGT

INITIAL TRAINING SETTING: MOJT

CONDITION: Given a tank unit, supported unit, an operations order, tactical scenario involving a warning of imminent nuclear attack, specific threat, training area suitable for mechanized operations, and references.

STANDARD: So the unit survives the attack to the extent possible and is prepared for follow on operations.

PERFORMANCE STEPS:

1. Identify backup command and control procedures.
2. Alert any other units in the area.
3. Remove any food, water, ammunition, etc. stored outside the vehicles and place inside vehicles or other hardened location.
4. Turn off any electronic equipment inside vehicles or other hardened location.
5. Direct all crews to assume designated MOPP level.
6. Position turrets directly away form blast direction, ensure brakes are unlocked and transmissions are in neutral.
7. Ensure all hatches and outside accesses are closed, dogged, and sealed as best as possible.
8. If situation permits, leave the area of imminent blast as quickly as possible. Otherwise continue mission.
9. If situation will not permit leaving area, try to shield the vehicles in rock outcroppings, hillside areas, etc.
10. Ensure the front of the vehicle points toward the expected blast.
11. Position turret directly away form the direction of the expected blast.
12. Lock turret and CWS.

REFERENCES:

1. FM 3-100 NBC Operations
2. FM 3-20.15 Tank Platoon
3. FM 3-3 Chemical and Biological Contamination Avoidance
4. MCO 3500.27B W/ERRATUM Operational Risk Management
5. MCRP 3-37.1A NBC Vulnerability Analysis/Chemical Hazard Assessment Guide
6. MCRP 3-37.2B Nuclear Contamination Avoidance
7. MCRP 3-37A NBC Field Handbook
8. MCWP 3-12 Marine Corps Tank Employment
9. MCWP 3-37 MAGTF Nuclear, Biological, and Chemical Defense Operations
10. MCWP 3-37.2 NBC Protection
11. MCWP 3-37.3 NBC Decontamination

1812-CBTS-2403: Supervise Monitor/Survey Team Activities Following a Nuclear Attack

EVALUATION-CODED: NO **SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL:** 12 months

BILLETS: Platoon Sergeant

GRADES: SSGT, GYSGT, MSGT, MGYSGT

INITIAL TRAINING SETTING: MOJT

CONDITION: Given a tank unit, trained monitor/survey teams with proper equipment, supported unit, an operations order, tactical scenario involving a nuclear attack, specific threat, training area suitable for mechanized operations, and references.

STANDARD: To assess unit condition, determine level of contamination, and prepare unit for follow on missions.

PERFORMANCE STEPS:

1. Supervise detection operations to determine the type and extent of contamination.
2. Coordinate activities to minimize contamination.
3. Supervise unmasking.
4. Supervise basic personnel decontamination.
5. Supervise partial unit decontamination.
6. Supervise decontamination of individual equipment.
7. Supervise decontamination of unit equipment, including: crew served weapons and vehicles, ammunition, optical instruments, communications equipment, and food and water.

REFERENCES:

1. FM 3-100 NBC Operations
2. FM 3-20.15 Tank Platoon
3. FM 3-3 Chemical and Biological Contamination Avoidance
4. MCO 3500.27B W/ERRATUM Operational Risk Management
5. MCRP 3-37.2B Nuclear Contamination Avoidance
6. MCRP 3-37A NBC Field Handbook
7. MCWP 3-12 Marine Corps Tank Employment
8. MCWP 3-37 MAGTF Nuclear, Biological, and Chemical Defense Operations
9. MCWP 3-37.2 NBC Protection
10. MCWP 3-37.3 NBC Decontamination
11. MCWP 3-37.4 NBC Reconnaissance

1812-CBTS-2404: Cross a Nuclear Contaminated Area

EVALUATION-CODED: NO **SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL:** 12 months

BILLETS: Tank Crewman

GRADES: LCPL, CPL, SGT, SSGT, GYSGT, MSGT, MGYSGT

INITIAL TRAINING SETTING: MOJT

CONDITION: Given a tank unit with appropriate monitor survey equipment, supported unit, an operations order directing crossing a nuclear contaminated area, tactical scenario in involving the use of enemy nuclear weapons, specific threat, training area suitable for mechanized operations, and references.

STANDARD: So it will result in the least possible contamination to personnel and equipment.

PERFORMANCE STEPS:

1. Review latest NBC 5 report and/or contamination overlay.
2. Determine the best route for the unit's movement.
3. Provide advance party or reconnaissance team with exposure limits prior to dispatching them.
4. Prepare vehicles for movement: provide additional shielding if possible, remove all equipment from outside of vehicles and stow it inside, and close all hatches.
5. Prepare personnel for movement: assume MOPP, designate monitor survey teams if they are not already established, and arrange for hydration of

personnel prior to and during movement.
6. Cross contaminated area while employing contamination avoidance techniques.
7. Ensure that operational exposure guidance is not exceeded.
8. Determine level of personnel and equipment contamination after clearing contaminated area (using available personnel and monitoring equipment).
9. Observe decontamination priorities and conduct hasty decontamination.
10. Record exposure information and report to higher headquarters.

REFERENCES:
1. FM 3-100 NBC Operations
2. FM 3-20.15 Tank Platoon
3. FM 3-3 Chemical and Biological Contamination Avoidance
4. MCO 3500.27B W/ERRATUM Operational Risk Management
5. MCRP 3-37.2B Nuclear Contamination Avoidance
6. MCRP 3-37A NBC Field Handbook
7. MCWP 3-12 Marine Corps Tank Employment
8. MCWP 3-37 MAGTF Nuclear, Biological, and Chemical Defense Operations
9. MCWP 3-37.2 NBC Protection
10. MCWP 3-37.3 NBC Decontamination
11. MCWP 3-37.4 NBC Reconnaissance

1812-CBTS-2405: Mark Nuclear Contaminated Area

EVALUATION-CODED: NO **SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL:** 12 months

BILLETS: Tank Crewman

GRADES: LCPL, CPL, SGT, SSGT, GYSGT

INITIAL TRAINING SETTING: MOJT

CONDITION: Given a tank unit, supported unit, an operations order, tactical scenario involving a nuclear contaminated area, specific threat, training area suitable for mechanized operations, and references.

STANDARD: To minimize risk of contamination to friendly units.

PERFORMANCE STEPS:
1. Identify boundaries of contaminated area.
2. Mark boundaries with NATO standard markers facing out from contaminated area.
3. Mark area with local language markings as required by higher headquarters.
4. Record contaminated area report to higher headquarters.

REFERENCES:
1. FM 3-100 NBC Operations
2. FM 3-20.15 Tank Platoon
3. FM 3-3 Chemical and Biological Contamination Avoidance
4. MCO 3500.27B W/ERRATUM Operational Risk Management
5. MCRP 3-37.2B Nuclear Contamination Avoidance
6. MCRP 3-37A NBC Field Handbook
7. MCWP 3-12 Marine Corps Tank Employment
8. MCWP 3-37 MAGTF Nuclear, Biological, and Chemical Defense Operations

9. MCWP 3-37.2 NBC Protection
10. MCWP 3-37.3 NBC Decontamination
11. MCWP 3-37.4 NBC Reconnaissance

1812-CBTS-2406: Conduct Hasty Decontamination of Unit in Nuclear Contaminated Environment

EVALUATION-CODED: NO **SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL:** 12 months

BILLETS: Tank Crewman

GRADES: LCPL, CPL, SGT, SSGT, GYSGT

INITIAL TRAINING SETTING: MOJT

CONDITION: Given a tank unit, appropriate decontamination equipment, a supported unit, an operations order, tactical scenario involving a nuclear attack, specific threat, training area suitable for mechanized operations, and references.

STANDARD: To prepare for follow on missions in nuclear contaminated environment.

PERFORMANCE STEPS:
1. Coordinate selection of hasty decontamination site with higher headquarters.
2. Prepare hasty decontamination site.
3. Conduct hasty decontamination site activities.
4. Remove gross contamination from individual protective over garments, combat gear, and weapons with sticks or other improvised devices.
5. Decontaminate individual protective gloves, hood, over boots, combat gear and weapon.
6. Decontaminate weapons are washed with water, dried, and lubricated.
7. Ensure contaminated protective covers covering essential equipment such as ammunition and POL are removed and decontaminated or disposed of.
8. Assigned operators/crew members decontaminate their vehicles and/or crew served weapons.
9. Reduce MOPP if decontamination efforts are adequate as determined by radiation detector kits.
10. Close and mark hasty decontamination site.

REFERENCES:
1. FM 3-100 NBC Operations
2. FM 3-20.15 Tank Platoon
3. FM 3-3 Chemical and Biological Contamination Avoidance
4. MCO 3500.27B W/ERRATUM Operational Risk Management
5. MCRP 3-37.2B Nuclear Contamination Avoidance
6. MCRP 3-37A NBC Field Handbook
7. MCWP 3-12 Marine Corps Tank Employment
8. MCWP 3-37 MAGTF Nuclear, Biological, and Chemical Defense Operations
9. MCWP 3-37.2 NBC Protection
10. MCWP 3-37.3 NBC Decontamination
11. MCWP 3-37.4 NBC Reconnaissance

1812-CBTS-2407: Conduct Deliberate Decontamination of Unit in Nuclear Contaminated Environment

EVALUATION-CODED: NO **SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL:** 12 months

BILLETS: Tank Crewman

GRADES: LCPL, CPL, SGT, SSGT, GYSGT, MSGT, MGYSGT

INITIAL TRAINING SETTING: MOJT

CONDITION: Given a tank unit with appropriate monitor/survey equipment, deliberate decontamination team with equipment to support personnel and equipment decontamination, supported unit, an operations order, tactical scenario involving nuclear contamination, specific threat, training area suitable for mechanized and decontamination operations, and references.

STANDARD: So that equipment and personnel are decontaminated to a condition where the unit is able to resume the mission.

PERFORMANCE STEPS:
1. Coordinate with decontamination team leader as to time of arrival, supplies, and personnel support to be furnished by the contaminated unit, and estimated time of completion.
2. Request route clearance to Personnel Decontamination Station (PDS) and Equipment Decontamination Station (EDS) assembly area.
3. Attach advance party to PDS/EDS.
4. Direct unit movement of main body to PDS/EDS and organize for decontamination processing.
5. Ensure that vehicles are processed through the EDS in accordance to the type and level of contamination.
6. Ensure equipment is monitored for residual contamination.
7. Ensure personnel are processed through the various PDS.
8. Reorganize unit after decontamination is complete in a clean area up wind of residual contamination.
9. Prepare for resumption of mission.

REFERENCES:
1. FM 3-100 NBC Operations
2. FM 3-20.15 Tank Platoon
3. FM 3-3 Chemical and Biological Contamination Avoidance
4. MCO 3500.27B W/ERRATUM Operational Risk Management
5. MCRP 3-37.2B Nuclear Contamination Avoidance
6. MCRP 3-37A NBC Field Handbook
7. MCWP 3-12 Marine Corps Tank Employment
8. MCWP 3-37 MAGTF Nuclear, Biological, and Chemical Defense Operations
9. MCWP 3-37.2 NBC Protection
10. MCWP 3-37.3 NBC Decontamination
11. MCWP 3-37.4 NBC Reconnaissance

1812-CBTS-2408: Conduct Operations in Chemical/Biological Contaminated Environment

EVALUATION-CODED: NO **SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL:** 12 months

BILLETS: Tank Crewman

GRADES: LCPL, CPL, SGT, SSGT, GYSGT, MSGT, MGYSGT

INITIAL TRAINING SETTING: MOJT

CONDITION: Given a tank unit, supported unit, an operations order, supporting landing plan, tactical scenario involving chemical or biological contamination, specific threat, specific amphibious shipping platform, an open ocean training area capable of supporting amphibious operations, beach suitable for amphibious landings, an inland training area suitable for mechanized operations, and references.

STANDARD: In support of the operations order and commander's intent.

PERFORMANCE STEPS:
1. Supervise preparations for operations in chemical/biological contaminated environment.
2. Establish Mission Oriented Protective Posture (MOPP) status for unit for operations in a chemical/biological contaminated environment in accordance with intelligence information and unit SOP.
3. Establish and publish exposure limits for unit in accordance with instruction from higher and unit SOP.
4. Establish hasty and deliberate decontamination procedures for operations in a chemical/biological contaminated environment in accordance with unit SOP.
5. Establish monitor/survey teams and procedures for operations in a chemical/biological contaminated environment in accordance with unit SOP.
6. Conduct amphibious operations in chemical/biological contaminated environment.
7. Conduct offensive operations in chemical/biological contaminated environment.
8. Conduct defensive operations in chemical/biological contaminated environment.

REFERENCES:
1. FM 3-100 NBC Operations
2. FM 3-20.15 Tank Platoon
3. FM 3-3 Chemical and Biological Contamination Avoidance
4. MCO 3500.27B W/ERRATUM Operational Risk Management
5. MCRP 3-37.2B Nuclear Contamination Avoidance
6. MCRP 3-37A NBC Field Handbook
7. MCWP 3-12 Marine Corps Tank Employment
8. MCWP 3-37 MAGTF Nuclear, Biological, and Chemical Defense Operations
9. MCWP 3-37.2 NBC Protection
10. MCWP 3-37.3 NBC Decontamination
11. MCWP 3-37.4 NBC Reconnaissance

1812-CBTS-2409: Mark Chemical/Biological Contaminated Area

EVALUATION-CODED: NO **SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL:** 12 months

BILLETS: Tank Crewman

GRADES: LCPL, CPL, SGT, SSGT, GYSGT

INITIAL TRAINING SETTING: MOJT

CONDITION: Given a tank unit, supported unit, an operations order, tactical scenario involving a chemical/biological agent contaminated area, specific threat, training area suitable for mechanized operations, and references.

STANDARD: To minimize risk of contamination to friendly units.

PERFORMANCE STEPS:
1. Ensure that boundaries of contaminated area are identified.
2. Ensure that boundaries are marked with NATO standard markers facing out from contaminated area.
3. Ensure that area is marked with local language markings as required by higher headquarters.
4. Ensure that contaminated area is recorded and reported to higher headquarters.

REFERENCES:
1. FM 3-100 NBC Operations
2. FM 3-20.15 Tank Platoon
3. FM 3-3 Chemical and Biological Contamination Avoidance
4. MCO 3500.27B W/ERRATUM Operational Risk Management
5. MCRP 3-37.2B Nuclear Contamination Avoidance
6. MCRP 3-37A NBC Field Handbook
7. MCWP 3-12 Marine Corps Tank Employment
8. MCWP 3-37 MAGTF Nuclear, Biological, and Chemical Defense Operations
9. MCWP 3-37.2 NBC Protection
10. MCWP 3-37.3 NBC Decontamination
11. MCWP 3-37.4 NBC Reconnaissance

1812-CBTS-2410: Conduct Hasty Decontamination of Unit in Chemical/Biological Contaminated Environment

EVALUATION-CODED: NO **SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL:** 12 months

BILLETS: Tank Crewman

GRADES: LCPL, CPL, SGT, SSGT, GYSGT

INITIAL TRAINING SETTING: MOJT

CONDITION: Given a tank unit, appropriate decontamination equipment, supported unit, an operations order, tactical scenario involving a chemical/biological attack, specific threat, training area suitable for mechanized operations, and references.

STANDARD: To prepare unit for follow on missions in chemical/biological contaminated environment.

PERFORMANCE STEPS:
1. Coordinate selection of hasty decontamination site with higher headquarters.

2. Prepare hasty decontamination site.
3. Conduct operations of hasty decontamination site.
4. Remove gross contamination from individual protective over garments, combat gear, and weapons with sticks or other improvised devices.
5. Decontaminate individual protective gloves, hood, over boots, combat gear and weapon.
6. Decontaminate weapons are washed with water, dried, and lubricated.
7. Ensure contaminated protective covers covering essential equipment such as ammunition and POL are removed and decontaminated or disposed.
8. Ensure assigned operators/crew members decontaminate their vehicles and/or crew served weapons.
9. Reduce MOPP if decontamination efforts are adequate as determined by radiation detector kits.
10. Close and mark hasty decontamination site.

REFERENCES:
1. FM 3-100 NBC Operations
2. FM 3-20.15 Tank Platoon
3. FM 3-3 Chemical and Biological Contamination Avoidance
4. MCO 3500.27B W/ERRATUM Operational Risk Management
5. MCRP 3-37.2B Nuclear Contamination Avoidance
6. MCRP 3-37A NBC Field Handbook
7. MCWP 3-12 Marine Corps Tank Employment
8. MCWP 3-37 MAGTF Nuclear, Biological, and Chemical Defense Operations
9. MCWP 3-37.2 NBC Protection
10. MCWP 3-37.3 NBC Decontamination
11. MCWP 3-37.4 NBC Reconnaissance

1812-CBTS-2411: Conduct Deliberate Decontamination of Unit in Chemical/Biological Contaminated Environment

EVALUATION-CODED: NO **SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL:** 12 months

BILLETS: Tank Crewman

GRADES: LCPL, CPL, SGT, SSGT, GYSGT, MSGT, MGYSGT

INITIAL TRAINING SETTING: MOJT

CONDITION: Given a tank unit with appropriate monitor/survey equipment, deliberate decontamination team with equipment to support personnel and equipment decontamination, supported unit, an operations order, tactical scenario involving chemical/biological contamination, specific threat, training area suitable for mechanized and decontamination operations, and references.

STANDARD: So that equipment and personnel are decontaminated to a condition where the unit is able to resume the mission.

PERFORMANCE STEPS:
1. Coordinate with decontamination team leader as to time of arrival, supplies, and personnel support to be furnished by the contaminated unit, and estimated time of completion.

2. Request route clearance to Personnel Decontamination Station (PDS) and Equipment Decontamination Station (EDS) assembly area.
3. Participate in advance party operations at the PDS/EDS as assigned.
4. Move to PDS/EDS and organize for decontamination processing as directed.
5. Process vehicles through the EDS in accordance to the type and level of contamination.
6. Ensure equipment is monitored for residual contamination.
7. Process through the various PDS.
8. Reorganize unit after decontamination is complete in a clean area up wind of residual contamination.
9. Prepare for resumption of mission.

REFERENCES:
1. FM 3-100 NBC Operations
2. FM 3-20.15 Tank Platoon
3. FM 3-3 Chemical and Biological Contamination Avoidance
4. MCO 3500.27B W/ERRATUM Operational Risk Management
5. MCRP 3-37.2B Nuclear Contamination Avoidance
6. MCRP 3-37A NBC Field Handbook
7. MCWP 3-12 Marine Corps Tank Employment
8. MCWP 3-37 MAGTF Nuclear, Biological, and Chemical Defense Operations
9. MCWP 3-37.2 NBC Protection
10. MCWP 3-37.3 NBC Decontamination
11. MCWP 3-37.4 NBC Reconnaissance

1812-CBTS-2412: Conduct Exchange of Mission Oriented Protective Posture Equipment as Part of Hasty Decontamination Procedures for Unit

EVALUATION-CODED: NO **SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL:** 12 months

BILLETS: Tank Crewman

GRADES: LCPL, CPL, SGT, SSGT, GYSGT, MSGT, MGYSGT

INITIAL TRAINING SETTING: MOJT

CONDITION: Given a tank unit, supported unit, an operations order directing the exchange of MOPP gear as part of hasty decontamination, tactical scenario involving the use of nuclear weapons or chemical/biological agents, specific threat, training area suitable for mechanized and decontamination operations, and references.

STANDARD: To maximize survivability of unit and the ability to conduct follow on missions.

PERFORMANCE STEPS:
1. Ensure that the site selected is uncontaminated.
2. Ensure adequate materials and sets of MOPP gear are on hand.
3. Issue replacement MOPP gear to each Marine; this uncontaminated gear should be in containers such as plastic bags to prevent contamination prior to use.
4. Ensure Marines are paired into buddy teams.
5. Space the buddy teams around a circle, 1 to 3 meters apart.
6. Brief the Marines on MOPP gear exchange and demonstrate procedures.

7. Stop procedures anytime you suspect contamination has spread to skin or undergarments and decon Marine immediately and then proceed with gear exchange.
8. Ensure MOPP gear exchange occurs as follows: decon individual gear, decon hoods, first Marine in pair removes over garment coat and the trousers with buddy's assistance, ensure Marines put contaminated over garments in discard containers, ensure roles are reversed and the second Marine then exchanges MOPP gear with the first Marine assisting, and ensure the first Marine then decontaminates his gloves from assisting the second Marine.
9. Check for residual contamination.

REFERENCES:
1. FM 3-100 NBC Operations
2. FM 3-20.15 Tank Platoon
3. FM 3-3 Chemical and Biological Contamination Avoidance
4. MCO 3500.27B W/ERRATUM Operational Risk Management
5. MCRP 3-37.2A Chemical and Biological Contamination Avoidance
6. MCRP 3-37.2B Nuclear Contamination Avoidance
7. MCRP 3-37A NBC Field Handbook
8. MCWP 3-12 Marine Corps Tank Employment
9. MCWP 3-37 MAGTF Nuclear, Biological, and Chemical Defense Operations
10. MCWP 3-37.2 NBC Protection
11. MCWP 3-37.3 NBC Decontamination
12. MCWP 3-37.4 NBC Reconnaissance

1812-CBTS-2413: Prepare for a Chemical/Biological Attack

EVALUATION-CODED: NO **SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL:** 12 months

BILLETS: Tank Crewman

GRADES: LCPL, CPL, SGT, SSGT, GYSGT

INITIAL TRAINING SETTING: MOJT

CONDITION: Given a tank, a supported unit, an operations order, a tactical scenario involving warning of imminent chemical/biological attack, a specific threat including non persistent chemical agents, and a training area.

STANDARD: Prepare vehicle for a chemical/biological attack so that the unit survives the attack to the extent possible and is prepared for follow on operations in accordance with the references.

PERFORMANCE STEPS:
1. Identify backup command and control procedures.
2. Alert other units in the area.
3. Remove any food, water, ammunition, etc. stored outside the vehicles and place inside vehicles or other hardened areas.
4. Assume designated MOPP level.
5. Ensure all hatches and outside accesses are closed, dogged, and sealed as best as possible.

REFERENCES:
1. Battalion SOP Unit SOP
2. FM 21-60 Visual Signals
3. FM 3-100 NBC Operations
4. FM 3-3 Chemical and Biological Contamination Avoidance
5. MCO 3500.27B W/ERRATUM Operational Risk Management
6. MCRP 3-37.2A Chemical and Biological Contamination Avoidance
7. MCRP 3-37.2B Nuclear Contamination Avoidance
8. MCRP 3-37A NBC Field Handbook
9. MCRP 4-11.1A Treatment of Chemical Agent Casualties and Conventional Military Chemical Agents
10. MCRP 4-11.1C Treatment of Biological Warfare Agent Casualties
11. MCWP 3-12 Marine Corps Tank Employment
12. MCWP 3-12.1 (FM 17-15) Tank Platoon
13. MCWP 3-37 MAGTF Nuclear, Biological, and Chemical Defense Operations
14. MCWP 3-37.2 NBC Protection
15. MCWP 3-37.3 NBC Decontamination
16. MCWP 3-37.4 NBC Reconnaissance
17. TM 9-2350-264-10-1 Operator's Manual, Operator Controls, PMCS, and Operation Under Usual Conditions, Volume 1 of 2, Tank, Combat, Full-Tracked: 120-MM Gun, M1A1 2350-01-087-1095 General Abrams
18. TM 9-2350-264-10-2 Operator's Manual, Unusual Conditions, Troubleshooting, and Maintenance, Volume 2 of 2, Tank, Combat, Full-Tracked: 120-MM, M1A1 2350-01-087-1095, General Abrams

---

1812-CBTS-2414: Supervise Monitor/Survey Team Activities Following a Chemical/Biological Attack

EVALUATION-CODED: NO **SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL:** 12 months

BILLETS: Platoon Sergeant, Tank Leader

GRADES: SSGT, GYSGT, MSGT, MGYSGT

INITIAL TRAINING SETTING: MOJT

CONDITION: Given a tank unit, trained monitor/survey teams with proper equipment, supported unit, an operations order, tactical scenario involving a chemical/biological attack, specific threat, training area suitable for mechanized operations, and references.

STANDARD: To assess unit condition, determine level of contamination, and prepare unit for follow on missions.

PERFORMANCE STEPS:
1. Supervise detection operations to determine the type and extent of contamination.
2. Coordinate activities to minimize contamination.
3. Supervise unmasking.
4. Supervise basic personnel decontamination.
5. Supervise partial unit decontamination.
6. Supervise decontamination of individual equipment.
7. Supervise decontamination of unit equipment, including: crew served weapons and vehicles, ammunition, optical instruments, communications

equipment, and food and water.

REFERENCES:
1. FM 3-100 NBC Operations
2. FM 3-20.15 Tank Platoon
3. FM 3-3 Chemical and Biological Contamination Avoidance
4. MCO 3500.27B W/ERRATUM Operational Risk Management
5. MCRP 3-37.2A Chemical and Biological Contamination Avoidance
6. MCRP 3-37.2B Nuclear Contamination Avoidance
7. MCRP 3-37A NBC Field Handbook
8. MCWP 3-12 Marine Corps Tank Employment
9. MCWP 3-37 MAGTF Nuclear, Biological, and Chemical Defense Operations
10. MCWP 3-37.2 NBC Protection
11. MCWP 3-37.3 NBC Decontamination
12. MCWP 3-37.4 NBC Reconnaissance

1812-CBTS-2415: Cross Chemical/Biological Contaminated Area

EVALUATION-CODED: NO **SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL:** 12 months

BILLETS: Platoon Sergeant, Tank Crewman

GRADES: SGT, SSGT, GYSGT

INITIAL TRAINING SETTING: FORMAL

CONDITION: Given a tank unit with appropriate monitor survey equipment, supported unit, an operations order directing crossing a chemical/biological contaminated area, tactical scenario involving the use of enemy chemical/biological weapons, specific threat, training area suitable for mechanized operations, and references.

STANDARD: So it will result in the least possible contamination to personnel and equipment.

PERFORMANCE STEPS:
1. Review latest NBC 5 report and/or contamination overlay.
2. Determine the best route for the unit's movement.
3. Provide advance party or reconnaissance team with exposure limits prior to dispatching them.
4. Prepare vehicles for movement: provide additional shielding if possible, remove all equipment from outside of vehicles and stow it inside, and close all hatches.
5. Prepare personnel for movement: assume MOPP 4, designate monitor survey teams if they are not already established, and arrange for hydration of personnel prior to and during movement.
6. Guide unit across contaminated area while employing contamination avoidance techniques.
7. Ensure that operational exposure guidance is not exceeded.
8. Determine level of personnel and equipment contamination after clearing contaminated area (using available personnel and monitoring equipment).
9. Establish decontamination priorities and conduct hasty decontamination.
10. Record exposure information and report to higher headquarters.

REFERENCES:
1. FM 3-100 NBC Operations
2. FM 3-20.15 Tank Platoon
3. FM 3-3 Chemical and Biological Contamination Avoidance
4. MCO 3500.27B W/ERRATUM Operational Risk Management
5. MCRP 3-37.2B Nuclear Contamination Avoidance
6. MCRP 3-37A NBC Field Handbook
7. MCWP 3-12 Marine Corps Tank Employment
8. MCWP 3-37 MAGTF Nuclear, Biological, and Chemical Defense Operations
9. MCWP 3-37.2 NBC Protection
10. MCWP 3-37.3 NBC Decontamination
11. MCWP 3-37.4 NBC Reconnaissance

1812-CBTS-2416: Maintain Field Protective Mask

EVALUATION-CODED: NO **SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL:** 12 months

BILLETS: Tank Crewman

GRADES: PVT, PFC, LCPL, CPL, SGT, SSGT, GYSGT

INITIAL TRAINING SETTING: MOJT

CONDITION: Given a field protective mask, appropriate collateral materials, cleaning gear, and references.

STANDARD: To ensure serviceability in a field environment.

PERFORMANCE STEPS:
1. Disassemble field protective mask.
2. Clean and inspect hood.
3. Clean and inspect mask face.
4. Clean and inspect eye pieces.
5. Clean and inspect one way valves.
6. Clean and inspect mask webbing.
7. Clean and inspect mask interior and components.
8. Clean and inspect collateral components.

REFERENCES:
1. FM 3-100 NBC Operations
2. FM 3-20.15 Tank Platoon
3. FM 3-3 Chemical and Biological Contamination Avoidance
4. MCO 3500.27B W/ERRATUM Operational Risk Management
5. MCRP 3-37.2A Chemical and Biological Contamination Avoidance
6. MCRP 3-37A NBC Field Handbook
7. MCWP 3-12 Marine Corps Tank Employment
8. MCWP 3-37.1 Chemical Operations Principles and Fundamentals
9. TM 3-4240-300-10-1 Operators Manual for Chemical - Biological Mask M40

1812-CBTS-2417: Coordinate Mobility/Countermobility/Survivability Operations

EVALUATION-CODED: NO **SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL:** 12 months

BILLETS: Platoon Sergeant, Tank Commander

GRADES: SGT, SSGT, GYSGT

INITIAL TRAINING SETTING: MOJT

CONDITION: Given an M1A1 tank unit, a supported unit, operations order, tactical scenario, specified threat, training area, and references.

STANDARD: To support the commander's intent and scheme of maneuver/defense.

PERFORMANCE STEPS:
1. Coordinate employment of mobility in support of mobility operations.
2. Coordinate employment of tanks in construction, observation, and suppression of obstacles in support of countermobility operations.
3. Coordinate with supported unit for engineering support required by tank units as part of survivability operations.

REFERENCES:
1. FM 3-20.15 Tank Platoon
2. FM 5-100 Engineers in Combat Operations
3. FM 5-101 Mobility
4. FM 5-102 Countermobility
5. FM 5-103 Survivability
6. MCO 3500.27B W/ERRATUM Operational Risk Management
7. MCWP 3-12 Marine Corps Tank Employment

1812-CBTS-2418: Conduct Reconnaissance of an Obstacle

EVALUATION-CODED: NO **SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL:** 12 months

BILLETS: Platoon Sergeant, Tank Commander

GRADES: SGT, SSGT, GYSGT

INITIAL TRAINING SETTING: MOJT

CONDITION: Given an M1A1 tank unit, operations order, a tactical scenario, specified threat, and training area.

STANDARD: Per the reference.

PERFORMANCE STEPS:
1. Establish security element overwatching obstacle.
2. Conduct reconnaissance, physical or visual, to determine: size and perimeter of obstacle(s), location of enemy units observing obstacle(s), composition of obstacle(s), possible gaps in obstacle(s), and by pass routes around obstacle(s).
3. Conduct combat reporting as appropriate.

REFERENCES:
1. FM 5-170 Engineer Reconnaissance
2. MCO 3500.27B W/ERRATUM Operational Risk Management

1812-CBTS-2419: Conduct Reconnaissance of a Minefield

EVALUATION-CODED: NO **SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL:** 12 months

BILLETS: Platoon Sergeant, Tank Commander

GRADES: SGT, SSGT, GYSGT

INITIAL TRAINING SETTING: MOJT

CONDITION: Given an M1A1 tank unit, a supported unit, operations order directing an attack on an enemy position, tactical scenario involving an enemy minefield along the axis of attack, specified threat, and training area.

STANDARD: Per the references.

PERFORMANCE STEPS:
1. Establish security element overwatching minefield.
2. Conduct reconnaissance, physical or visual, to determine: size and perimeter of minefield, location of enemy units observing minefield, composition of minefield, possible gaps in minefield, and by pass routes around minefield.
3. Conduct combat reporting as appropriate.

REFERENCES:
1. FM 5-170 Engineer Reconnaissance
2. MCO 3500.27B W/ERRATUM Operational Risk Management

1812-CBTS-2420: Cross a Minefield

EVALUATION-CODED: NO **SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL:** 12 months

BILLETS: Platoon Sergeant, Tank Commander

GRADES: SGT, SSGT, GYSGT

INITIAL TRAINING SETTING: MOJT

CONDITION: Given an M1A1 tank unit, a supported unit, operations order directing an attack on an enemy position, tactical scenario involving an enemy minefield along the axis of attack, specified threat, and training area.

STANDARD: Per the references..

PERFORMANCE STEPS:
1. Establish security element overwatching minefield.
2. Conduct reconnaissance, physical or visual, of minefield.
3. Cross minefield within marked lanes maintaining interval and speed.
4. Conduct combat reporting as appropriate.

REFERENCES:
1. FM 3-20.15 Tank Platoon

2. FM 5-101 Mobility
3. MCO 3500.27B W/ERRATUM Operational Risk Management
4. MCWP 3-12 Marine Corps Tank Employment

1812-CBTS-2421: Direct Unit Crossing Minefield

EVALUATION-CODED: NO **SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL:** 12 months

BILLETS: Platoon Sergeant

GRADES: SSGT, GYSGT

INITIAL TRAINING SETTING: FORMAL

CONDITION: Given an M1A1 tank unit, a supported unit, operations order directing an attack on an enemy position, tactical scenario involving an enemy minefield along the axis of attack, specified threat, and training area.

STANDARD: Per the references.

PERFORMANCE STEPS:
1. Establish security element overwatching minefield.
2. Conduct reconnaissance, physical or visual, of minefield.
3. Ensure unit crosses minefield within marked lanes maintaining interval and speed.
4. Conduct combat reporting as appropriate.

REFERENCES:
1. FM 3-20.15 Tank Platoon
2. MCO 3500.27B W/ERRATUM Operational Risk Management
3. MCWP 3-12 Marine Corps Tank Employment

1812-CBTS-2422: Emplace Hasty Protective Minefields

EVALUATION-CODED: NO **SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL:** 12 months

BILLETS: Platoon Sergeant, Tank Commander

GRADES: SGT, SSGT, GYSGT

INITIAL TRAINING SETTING: MOJT

CONDITION: Provided a temporary position, mission, personnel, compass, map, protractor, mines, DA Form 1355-1-R, mine detectors, probes, and references.

STANDARD: To tie into existing natural or other manmade obstacles so that enemy movement/maneuvers are fixed, turned, blocked, or disrupted as required by the mission.

PERFORMANCE STEPS:
1. Review the mission, the map of the area, and reconnaissance reports.
2. Determine enemy avenues of approach for armor and/or infantry.

3. Determine location for observation posts.
4. Determine logistical requirements for mine dump.
5. Identify key terrain features forming natural boundaries and obstacles.
6. Set up security.
7. Locate a permanent reference point in front of platoon position.
8. Designate a location for each mine and row marker in at least two rows.
9. Emplace mines as required.
10. Arm the mines.
11. Camouflage the mines.
12. Verify count of all safety pins and clips and turn-in to NCOIC.
13. Submit required reports to higher headquarters (intent, initiation, progress, completion, transfer).
14. Complete DA Form 1355-1-R.
15. Plot an azimuth from the reference point and/or the landmark to the end marker in the last row on the friendly forces side.
16. Identify and disarm the mines.
17. Remove mines.
18. Restore terrain to its natural state.
19. Destroy the minefield record, if required.

REFERENCES:
1. FM 20-32 Mine/Countermine Operations
2. FM 3-20.15 Tank Platoon
3. FM 5-102 Countermobility
4. MCO 3500.27B W/ERRATUM Operational Risk Management
5. MCRP 3-17A Engineer Field Data
6. MCRP 3-17B Engineer Forms and Reports
7. MCWP 3-12 Marine Corps Tank Employment

1812-CBTS-2423: Direct Minefield Marking Party

EVALUATION-CODED: NO **SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL:** 12 months

BILLETS: Platoon Sergeant

GRADES: SSGT, GYSGT

INITIAL TRAINING SETTING: MOJT

CONDITION: Given an M1A1 tank unit, a supported unit, operations order directing an attack on an enemy position, tactical scenario involving an enemy minefield along the axis of attack, specified threat, and training area.

STANDARD: Per the references.

PERFORMANCE STEPS:
1. Establish security with overwatch element.
2. Direct marking party to mark area in accordance with unit SOP.
3. Record minefield limits and report to higher headquarters.

REFERENCES:
1. FM 3-20.15 Tank Platoon
2. MCO 3500.27B W/ERRATUM Operational Risk Management

3. MCRP 3-17A Engineer Field Data
4. MCRP 3-17B Engineer Forms and Reports
5. MCWP 3-12 Marine Corps Tank Employment

1812-CBTS-2424: Remove Hasty Minefield

EVALUATION-CODED: NO **SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL:** 12 months

BILLETS: Platoon Sergeant, Tank Commander

GRADES: SGT, SSGT, GYSGT

INITIAL TRAINING SETTING: MOJT

CONDITION: Given an M1A1 tank unit, a supported unit, operations order, tactical scenario, specified threat, and training area.

STANDARD: Per the references.

PERFORMANCE STEPS:
1. Using minefield record, plot azimuth from reference point and/or landmark and locate the last row of the minefield.
2. Identify and disarm the mines.
3. Remove the mines for later use.
4. Destroy the minefield record.
5. Conduct combat reporting as appropriate.

REFERENCES:
1. MCO 3500.27B W/ERRATUM Operational Risk Management
2. MCRP 3-17A Engineer Field Data
3. MCRP 3-17B Engineer Forms and Reports
4. MCWP 3-17 Engineer Operations

1812-CBTS-2425: Conduct a Hasty Breach

EVALUATION-CODED: NO **SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL:** 12 months

BILLETS: Platoon Sergeant, Tank Commander

GRADES: SGT, SSGT, GYSGT

INITIAL TRAINING SETTING: FORMAL

CONDITION: Given an M1A1 tank unit, a supported unit, operations order directing a movement to contact, tactical scenario involving an obstacle that can not be bypassed and a time line that does not permit a deliberate breach, specified threat, training area, and references.
STANDARD: By securing the near side of the obstacle, breaching the obstacle, marking the breach, securing the far side of the obstacle, and moving through the obstacle.

PERFORMANCE STEPS:
1. Identify the obstacle.

2. Establish local security.
3. Suppress enemy overwatch positions with direct and indirect fire by support force.
4. Conduct a hasty reconnaissance of the obstacle.
5. Determine bypass route if possible.
6. Develop a plan for breaching the obstacle using assets organic to the unit.
7. Issue FRAGO.
8. Coordinate the actions of the Breach force elements: support: overwatch, security, suppression, breach (breach, proof, mark), and assault (move through breach, secure far side for follow operations).
9. Obscure obstacle/minefield with smoke if possible (support force).
10. Use mechanical means to breach obstacle(s).
11. Use manual means to breach obstacle(s) if mechanical means are unavailable or vehicles become casualties during operations.
12. Move unit to far side of breach and establish local security or resume movement as appropriate.
13. Mark the minefield location and breach site (breach force).
14. Conduct combat reporting as appropriate.

REFERENCES:
1. FM 3-20.15 Tank Platoon
2. FM 90-13-1 Combined Arms Breaching Operations
3. MCO 3500.27B W/ERRATUM Operational Risk Management
4. MCWP 3-12 Marine Corps Tank Employment
5. MCWP 3-17.3 MAGTF Breaching Operations

1812-CBTS-2426: Participate in Deliberate Breach

EVALUATION-CODED: NO **SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL:** 12 months

BILLETS: Platoon Sergeant, Tank Commander

GRADES: SGT, SSGT, GYSGT

INITIAL TRAINING SETTING: FORMAL

CONDITION: Given an M1A1 tank unit with organic mobility assets, a supported infantry unit, associated engineer units, operations order directing the deliberate breach of enemy obstacles that can not be bypassed, tactical scenario involving enemy forces defending an obstacle, specified threat, training area, and references.

STANDARD: Of enemy obstacle within 45 minutes of initiation with no more than 30 percent casualties, securing the far side of the breach and allowing for the passage of friendly units.

PERFORMANCE STEPS:
1. Analyze the mission, enemy, troops and fire support available, time space and logistics (METT-TC).
2. Identify the type of breaching operation (assault or covert) and the number of lanes required to allow the passage of the ground combat element (GCE) and combat service support element (CSS).
3. Identify intelligence requirements to the S-2/G-2.

4. Identify and evaluate potential breach sites.
5. Conduct reconnaissance to the lowest level possible.
6. Conduct threat analysis of enemy forces covering the breach site and possible reserves.
7. Task organize engineer personnel and equipment within the assault breach force.
8. Plan, prioritize, and recommend fire support requirements to support the plan.
9. Develop battle drills (individual/unit) to rehearse the breach of a complex obstacle.
10. Support force establishes overwatch position.
11. Breach force establishes breach site security.
12. Breach force conducts breach to include: securing near side of breach, breaching obstacle, routes and lanes are proofed, marking routes and lanes, clearing defending enemy forces from obstacle, and securing far side of obstacle.
13. Assault force moves through breach and destroys enemy forces capable of sealing breach site to include local counterattacks.
14. Conduct combat reporting as appropriate.

REFERENCES:
1. FM 3-20.15 Tank Platoon
2. FM 90-13-1 Combined Arms Breaching Operations
3. FM 90-7 Combined Arms Obstacle Integration
4. MCO 3500.27B W/ERRATUM Operational Risk Management
5. MCWP 3-12 Marine Corps Tank Employment
6. MCWP 3-17.3 MAGTF Breaching Operations

1812-CBTS-2427: Prepare Tank Fighting Positions

EVALUATION-CODED: NO **SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL:** 12 months

BILLETS: Tank Crewman

GRADES: LCPL, CPL, SGT, SSGT, GYSGT

INITIAL TRAINING SETTING: MOJT

CONDITION: Given an M1A1 tank, operations order directing a deliberate defensive position, a tactical scenario with limited enemy activity for the next twenty four hours, specified threat, training area suitable for mechanized operations, and references.

STANDARD: To include primary, alternate, and supplementary positions; establish and rehearse routes between them; employ camouflage, vehicle range cards and element fire sketches, use of wire communications between vehicles, enforce noise and light discipline in accordance with the defensive scheme contained in the operations order and in accordance with the references.

PERFORMANCE STEPS:
1. Establish vehicle position within perimeter in accordance with guidance from above and unit SOP. Use terrain for maximum cover and concealment. Maintain mutual support with other vehicles in element. Minimize movement forward of the position. Avoid disturbing natural vegetation as much as possible.

2. Identify alternate and supplementary position in accordance with guidance from element commander.
3. Mark primary positions for use in day and night; positions must be marked so that vehicle can depart to conduct rehearsals and maintenance and return to the same position in order to use the same range card.
4. Rehearse movement to alternate and supplementary positions. Marking both for use in day and night conditions and producing range cards for each position.
5. Use camouflage in primary position. Make maximum use of natural resources, employing camouflage net as necessary.
6. Install wire communications between vehicles as directed. Bury all wires to avoid getting them caught in the suspension when vehicles move.
7. Enforce light and noise discipline. Ensure minimal movement between positions.
8. Coordinate the fire plan by providing: common target reference points, principal directions of fire, supporting arms control measures, engagement criteria, and disengagement criteria.

REFERENCES:
1. FM 3-20.15 Tank Platoon
2. MCO 3500.27B W/ERRATUM Operational Risk Management
3. MCWP 3-12 Marine Corps Tank Employment

1812-CBTS-2428: Employ Fire Support

EVALUATION-CODED: NO **SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL:** 12 months

BILLETS: Platoon Sergeant

GRADES: SSGT, GYSGT

INITIAL TRAINING SETTING: MOJT

CONDITION: Given an M1A1 tank unit, supported unit, supporting artillery unit, an operations order, tactical scenario, training area, and references.

STANDARD: To support the ground scheme of maneuver.

PERFORMANCE STEPS:
1. Determine available fire support assets.
2. Determine fire support requirements.
3. Establish communication with the supporting agency.
4. Request fires from supporting agency.
5. Adjust fires as needed.
6. Complete mission.

REFERENCES:
1. FM 3-20.15 Tank Platoon
2. MCO 3500.27B W/ERRATUM Operational Risk Management
3. MCWP 3-12 Marine Corps Tank Employment
4. MCWP 3-16 Fire Support Coordination
5. MCWP 3-42.1 Fire Support in MAGTF Operations

1812-CSS-2501: Supervise Preventive Maintenance Checks and Services of M1A1 Tank Unit

EVALUATION-CODED: NO **SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL:** 12 months

BILLETS: Platoon Sergeant, Tank Commander, Tank Leader

GRADES: SGT, SSGT, GYSGT, MSGT

INITIAL TRAINING SETTING: FORMAL

CONDITION: Given an M1A1 tank unit, all appropriate collateral equipment, and references.

STANDARD: To include 1st echelon preventive maintenance, inspection, documentation and the conduct of 2nd and 3rd echelon corrective maintenance, routine services on vehicles, optical devices, tools and test equipment, communications equipment and calibration.

PERFORMANCE STEPS:
1. Ensure that all collateral materials for all items are inventoried, repaired, or replaced as necessary on a regular basis.
2. Ensure that all 1st echelon Preventive Maintenance Checks and Services (PMCS) are conducted in accordance with the references.
3. Ensure that all items requiring calibration are serviced according to their technical manuals.
4. Ensure that all communications equipment is inspected and serviced in accordance with the appropriate technical manuals.
5. Ensure that corrective maintenance efforts are properly documented in accordance with the manuals.
6. Ensure that all optical devices are serviced in accordance with the unit service schedule and the references.
7. Ensure that all required inspections, services, and repairs are conducted on all weapons organic to the unit.

REFERENCES:
1. MCO 3500.27B W/ERRATUM Operational Risk Management
2. TM 9-2350-264-10-1 Operator's Manual, Operator Controls, PMCS, and Operation Under Usual Conditions, Volume 1 of 2, Tank, Combat, Full-Tracked: 120-MM Gun, M1A1 2350-01-087-1095 General Abrams
3. TM 9-2350-264-10-2 Operator's Manual, Unusual Conditions, Troubleshooting, and Maintenance, Volume 2 of 2, Tank, Combat, Full-Tracked: 120-MM, M1A1 2350-01-087-1095, General Abrams

---

1812-CSS-2502: Conduct Vehicle Inspection of M1A1 Tank Unit

EVALUATION-CODED: NO **SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL:** 12 months

BILLETS: Platoon Sergeant, Tank Commander
GRADES: SGT, SSGT, GYSGT

INITIAL TRAINING SETTING: FORMAL

CONDITION: Given an M1A1 tank unit, appropriate collateral equipment, and references.

STANDARD: To ensure accountability, serviceability, and operational readiness.

PERFORMANCE STEPS:

1. Inspect collateral material for accountability, serviceability, and cleanliness; ensure that all items are accounted for on inventory forms; ensure that all missing or unserviceable items are reflected on the DPR.
2. Inspect the tank for serviceability and cleanliness; ensure that all systems are fully operational; ensure that any mechanical defects are noted on the appropriate vehicle's ERO, that higher echelons are notified of work requiring their assistance, that all required parts are noted on the unit's DPR; ensure that all required services have been conducted and noted in the vehicles records.
3. Inspect the weapon(s) for serviceability and cleanliness; ensure that the weapon(s) are fully operational; ensure that any mechanical defects are noted on the appropriate ERO, that higher echelons are notified of work requiring their assistance, that all required parts are noted on the unit's DPR; ensure that all required services have been conducted and noted in the weapons' records.
4. Inspect the vehicle's optics for cleanliness and serviceability, to include the crew's CVC helmets; ensure that any defects are noted on the appropriate ERO, that higher echelons are notified of work requiring their assistance, that all required parts are noted on the unit's DPR.
5. Inspect the communication system for cleanliness and serviceability, to include the crew's CVC helmets; ensure that any defects are noted on the appropriate ERO, that higher echelons are notified of work requiring their assistance, that all required parts are noted on the unit's DPR.

REFERENCES:

1. FM 3-20.15 Tank Platoon
2. MCO 3500.27B W/ERRATUM Operational Risk Management
3. TM 11-5855-249-10 Operator's Manual for Viewer, Drivers Night Vision System, AN/VVS-2
4. TM 11-5855-262-10 Operator's Manual, AN/PVS-7
5. TM 115820-890-10-1 Operator's Manual, SINCGARS Ground Combat Net ICOM
6. TM 9- Operator's Manual, 7.62mm Machinegun M240G
7. TM 9-1005-213-10 Machine Gun, Caliber .50, Browning
8. TM 9-1005-313-10 Maintenance Manual, 7.62mm Machinegun M240G
9. TM 9-2350-264-10-1 Operator's Manual, Operator Controls, PMCS, and Operation Under Usual Conditions, Volume 1 of 2, Tank, Combat, Full-Tracked: 120-MM Gun, M1A1 2350-01-087-1095 General Abrams
10. TM 9-2350-264-10-2 Operator's Manual, Unusual Conditions, Troubleshooting, and Maintenance, Volume 2 of 2, Tank, Combat, Full-Tracked: 120-MM, M1A1 2350-01-087-1095, General Abrams

---

1812-CSS-2503: Inspect Completed Maintenance Work

EVALUATION-CODED: NO **SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL:** 12 months

BILLETS: Platoon Sergeant, Tank Commander, Tank Leader

GRADES: SGT, SSGT, GYSGT, MSGT

INITIAL TRAINING SETTING: FORMAL

CONDITION: Given an M1A1 tank, active ERO and EROSL for that vehicle, a current DPR, and references.

STANDARD: To ensure all required work is completed.

PERFORMANCE STEPS:
1. Review PMCS records or ERO to determine which maintenance work is accomplished and to be inspected.
2. Visually inspect the items that have been repaired or serviced.
3. Verify that the corrective maintenance or service has been conducted in accordance with the references.
4. Direct any additional work required.

REFERENCES:
1. FM 3-20.15 Tank Platoon
2. MCO 3500.27B W/ERRATUM Operational Risk Management
3. MCO P4790.2 MIMMS Field Procedures Manual
4. MCWP 3-12 Marine Corps Tank Employment
5. TM 9-2350-264-10-1 Operator's Manual, Operator Controls, PMCS, and Operation Under Usual Conditions, Volume 1 of 2, Tank, Combat, Full-Tracked: 120-MM Gun, M1A1 2350-01-087-1095 General Abrams
6. TM 9-2350-264-10-2 Operator's Manual, Unusual Conditions, Troubleshooting, and Maintenance, Volume 2 of 2, Tank, Combat, Full-Tracked: 120-MM, M1A1 2350-01-087-1095, General Abrams

---

1812-CSS-2504: Monitor Daily Progress Report

EVALUATION-CODED: NO **SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL:** 12 months

BILLETS: Platoon Sergeant, Tank Commander, Tank Leader

GRADES: SGT, SSGT, GYSGT, MSGT

INITIAL TRAINING SETTING: FORMAL

CONDITION: Given an M1A1 tank unit, open ERO and EROSL, a current DPR, and references.

STANDARD: So the commander may be briefed accurately on the current status of the unit's maintenance activities, at minimum on a weekly basis, and ensuring all entries on DPR are current and correct.

PERFORMANCE STEPS:
1. Obtain (DPR) which is no more than five days old.
2. Verify job status of all EROs.
3. Ensure EROs reflecting a "short parts" status have parts on order or EROSLs being processed.
4. Annotate on the EROSL those parts and transactions that appear on the DPR; ensure that all remaining parts or transaction on the EROSL are submitted to the supply source for action at the next unit reconciliation.
5. Ensure that there are no parts on order that reflect a higher FAD status than that of the ERO.
6. Ensure that all EROs have a valid category and priority for the work being requested.

7. Ensure that all EROs have valid priorities and indicator codes.
8. Brief unit commander on the DPR as required.

REFERENCES:
1. MCO 3500.27B W/ERRATUM Operational Risk Management
2. MCO P4790.2 MIMMS Field Procedures Manual
3. TM 11-5855-249-10 Operator's Manual for Viewer, Drivers Night Vision System, AN/VVS-2
4. TM 115820-890-10-1 Operator's Manual, SINCGARS Ground Combat Net ICOM
5. TM 4700-15/1 Marine Corps Ground Equipment Record Procedures
6. TM 9-2350-264-10-1 Operator's Manual, Operator Controls, PMCS, and Operation Under Usual Conditions, Volume 1 of 2, Tank, Combat, Full-Tracked: 120-MM Gun, M1A1 2350-01-087-1095 General Abrams
7. TM 9-2350-264-10-2 Operator's Manual, Unusual Conditions, Troubleshooting, and Maintenance, Volume 2 of 2, Tank, Combat, Full-Tracked: 120-MM, M1A1 2350-01-087-1095, General Abrams

---

1812-CSS-2505: Initiate a Work Request

EVALUATION-CODED: NO **SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL:** 12 months

BILLETS: Platoon Sergeant, Tank Commander

GRADES: SGT, SSGT, GYSGT

INITIAL TRAINING SETTING: FORMAL

CONDITION: Given a tank requiring maintenance action.

STANDARD: Per the reference.

PERFORMANCE STEPS:
1. Review ERO information in TM 4700-15/1.
2. Enter Serial No. if turned in different from below (if applicable).
3. Enter Y to indicate an ORF (Operational Readiness Float) exchange is desired if the RDD (Required Delivery Date) cannot be met; enter N if no exchange is desired (block 11).
4. Enter Organization Doing Repairs or to which the equipment is being evacuated (if applicable).
5. Enter DEST.AC (Designation Activity) (if applicable/blocks 12-16).
6. Enter request No. (if applicable/blocks 17-20).
7. Enter DCD (Deadline Control Date) (if applicable/blocks 21-24).
8. Enter ECH (Echelon) of repair (block 25).
9. Enter serial Number of equipment (if applicable/blocks 26-35).
10. Enter Job ID from current edition of the Marine Corps User's Manual, UM 4790-5 (if applicable/blocks 36-37).
11. Enter QTY to be repaired under this ERO (blocks 38-39); ensure that the field is filled.
12. Enter RDD (if applicable/blocks 40-43).
13. Enter Owning Organization.
14. Enter Owner AC (Activity Code) (blocks 44-48).
15. Have authorized person sign Authorized By (Signature) Date block after rest of ERO is completed.
16. Enter Defect code from UM 4790-5 (if applicable/blocks 49-51).
17. Enter PRI (Priority) assigned (blocks 52-53).

18. Enter ID Number (blocks 54-59).
19. Enter Nomenclature.
20. Circle Category Code.
21. Enter JON (Job Order Number) (blocks 63-76).
22. Have authorized person sign Released From Investigation (Signature) block (if applicable).
23. Enter Owner's Phone Number.
24. Enter SEC REP (Secondary Repairable) NSN (if applicable).
25. Enter Remarks section with any other necessary information.
26. Turn in ERO, equipment, and records to maintenance activity; receive yellow copy as receipt.

REFERENCES:
1. MCO 3500.27B W/ERRATUM Operational Risk Management
2. MCO 4400.16 Uniform Material Movement Issue and Priority System (UMMIPS)
3. MCO P4790.2 MIMMS Field Procedures Manual
4. NAVMC 10245 Equipment Repair Order (ERO)
5. TM 4700-15/1 Marine Corps Ground Equipment Record Procedures
6. UM 4400-124 Sassy Using Unit Procedures

1812-CSS-2506: Prepare an ERO Shopping List (EROSL)

EVALUATION-CODED: NO **SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL:** 12 months

BILLETS: Platoon Sergeant, Tank Commander

GRADES: SGT, SSGT, GYSGT

INITIAL TRAINING SETTING: FORMAL

CONDITION: Given NAVMC 10925, EROSL (ERO Shopping/transaction List), UM 4790-5, TM 4700-15/1, an active ERO, and a requirement for SL-3 components.

STANDARD: Per the reference.

PERFORMANCE STEPS:
1. Supervise the quality control program.
2. Enter ERO number.
3. Enter Unit and Date.
4. Supervise the Replacement and Evacuation program (R&E).
5. Supervise the Recoverable Items Program (RIP).
6. Circle appropriate Material Usage Code.
7. Annotate the shop section.
8. Supervise the Inspect Repair Only As Necessary (IROAN) program.
9. Enter the reference source in the letter blank "A."
10. Supervise the Repair and Return (R&R) program.
11. Supervise the Corrosion Prevention and Control Program (CPAC).
12. Enter remaining letter blanks as per local SOP.
13. Supervise the Joint Oil Analysis Program (JOAP).
14. Enter the requisition information using the appropriate template.
15. Implement a maintenance inspection program.

REFERENCES:
1. MCO 3500.27B W/ERRATUM Operational Risk Management
2. NAVMC 10925 Equipment Repair Order Shopping List (EROSL)

1812-CSS-2507: Order Operational Checks of Material

EVALUATION-CODED: NO **SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL:** 12 months

BILLETS: Platoon Sergeant, Tank Commander, Tank Leader

GRADES: SGT, SSGT, GYSGT, MSGT

INITIAL TRAINING SETTING: MOJT

CONDITION: Given a unit mission, one or more fully operational and crewed tanks, and references.

STANDARD: To maintain operability of equipment as time becomes available during operations, coordinate with unit commander in time management to assist crews in achieving mission, and reconcile with duties required for maintenance and upkeep of the equipment.

PERFORMANCE STEPS:
1. Monitor time available in accomplishing mission.
2. Determine time availability with commander, and coordinate on security items.
3. Supervise and coordinate on security.
4. Direct other tank crews to conduct vehicle checks.
5. Direct security element to conduct checks when other vehicles are done, and have other crews take up security watch.

REFERENCES:
1. MCO 3500.27B W/ERRATUM Operational Risk Management
2. TM 11-5810-256-OP-4 Operating Procedures for COMSECEQ TSEC/KY-57 in Tracked Vehicles
3. TM 11-5810-312-12-1 Operator's and Organizational Maintenance Manual/Installation Kit For Communications Security Equipment TSEC/KY-12
4. TM 11-5820-401-10-2 Operator's Manual (VRC-12)
5. TM 11-5820-890-10-1 Operator Manual for SINCGARS Ground Combat Net Radio
6. TM 11-5855-249-10 Operator's Manual for Viewer, Drivers Night Vision System, AN/VVS-2
7. TM 3-4240-236-12 Operator's Manual, Vehicle Particulate Filter Unit
8. TM 5-2590-214-10 Operator's Manual, Roller, Mine Clearing: Track-Width, Tank-Mounted
9. TM 5-2590-509-10 Operator's Manual, Mine Clearing Blade for M1, IPM1, or M1A1 Abrams Tank
10. TM 5-5420-202-10 Operator's Manual for M-60 AVLB
11. TM 5-5420-203-14 Operator's Manual for AVLB
12. TM 9-1005-213-10 Machine Gun, Caliber .50, Browning
13. TM 9-1005-313-10 Maintenance Manual, 7.62mm Machinegun M240G
14. TM 9-2350-264-10-1 Operator's Manual, Operator Controls, PMCS, and Operation Under Usual Conditions, Volume 1 of 2, Tank, Combat, Full-Tracked: 120-MM Gun, M1A1 2350-01-087-1095 General Abrams
15. TM 9-2350-264-10-2 Operator's Manual, Unusual Conditions, Troubleshooting,

and Maintenance, Volume 2 of 2, Tank, Combat, Full-Tracked: 120-MM, M1A1 2350-01-087-1095, General Abrams

---

1812-CSS-2508: Supervise Equipment Maintenance

EVALUATION-CODED: NO **SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL:** 12 months

BILLETS: Platoon Sergeant, Tank Commander, Tank Leader

GRADES: SGT, SSGT, GYSGT, MSGT

INITIAL TRAINING SETTING: MOJT

CONDITION: Given requirement to perform equipment maintenance and references.

STANDARD: To support mission requirements.

PERFORMANCE STEPS:
1. Direct the processing of equipment through the maintenance cycle.
2. Ensure preventive maintenance checks and services (PMCS) requirements are met.
3. Direct the performance of PMCS.
4. Supervise limited technical inspections (LTI) of equipment.
5. Identify maintenance tasks for a given echelon of maintenance.
6. Identify equipment maintenance resource requirements.
7. Ensure corrective maintenance (CM) requirements are met.
8. Direct the performance of (CM).
9. Monitor the use of equipment records and maintenance forms.
10. Monitor layette procedures.
11. Monitor a Pre-Expended Bin (PEB).
12. Direct the information research on maintenance repair parts.
13. Monitor tool control.
14. Monitor the quality of equipment maintenance.

REFERENCES:
1. FM 3-20.15 Tank Platoon
2. MCO 3500.27B W/ERRATUM Operational Risk Management
3. MCO 4855.10 Product Quality Deficiency Report (PQDR)
4. MCO P4790.1 MIMMS Introduction Manual
5. MCO P4790.2 MIMMS Field Procedures Manual
6. MCO P5215.17 USMC Technical Publications System
7. SL-1-2/SL-1-3 Index of Publications Stocked by the USMC
8. SL-3 Major Components of End Items
9. SL-4 Repair, Maintenance, and Management Lists
10. SL-6 MCSL Applications List
11. TAM Table of Authorized Materials
12. TM 4700-15/1 Marine Corps Ground Equipment Record Procedures
13. Applicable Equipment Maintenance Manuals

1812-CSS-2509: Supervise Maintenance Related Programs

EVALUATION-CODED: NO **SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL:** 12 months

CONDITION: Given a tank, firing usage/weapon service data to enter, NAVMC 10558, NAVMC 10558A, and references.

STANDARD: To ensure a record of rounds fired and historical data on every tank T/E weapon is kept current.

PERFORMANCE STEPS:
1. Maintain NAVMC 10558, Weapon Record Book, Part I: enter information in the Summary Sheet, Weapon Component Performance, when applicable; enter information in the Record Assignments when applicable.
2. Maintain NAVMC 10558A, Weapon Record Book, Part II: enter information in the Unit Commander's Record when applicable.

REFERENCES:
1. MCO 3500.27B W/ERRATUM Operational Risk Management
2. TM 4700-15/1 Marine Corps Ground Equipment Record Procedures
3. TM 9-2350-264-10-1 Operator's Manual, Operator Controls, PMCS, and Operation Under Usual Conditions, Volume 1 of 2, Tank, Combat, Full-Tracked: 120-MM Gun, M1A1 2350-01-087-1095 General Abrams
4. TM 9-2350-264-10-2 Operator's Manual, Unusual Conditions, Troubleshooting, and Maintenance, Volume 2 of 2, Tank, Combat, Full-Tracked: 120-MM, M1A1 2350-01-087-1095, General Abrams

---

1812-CSS-2511: Monitor Unit Table of Organization and Equipment Modification (T/O&E) Procedures

EVALUATION-CODED: NO **SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL:** 12 months

BILLETS: Battalion Logistics Chief, Platoon Sergeant, Tank Leader

GRADES: SSGT, GYSGT, MSGT

INITIAL TRAINING SETTING: MOJT

CONDITION: Given a using unit account, T/O&E, and references.

STANDARD: To ensure the T/E allowances are properly maintained to support the mission.

PERFORMANCE STEPS:
1. Validate unit T/E excesses and deficiencies.
2. Supervise the adjustment of the unit table of equipment.

REFERENCES:
1. MCO 3500.27B W/ERRATUM Operational Risk Management
2. MCO 4400.172 Table of Equipment (T/E) Allowance Change Procedures

---

1812-CSS-2512: Determine Logistics Support Requirements

EVALUATION-CODED: NO **SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL:** 12 months

BILLETS: Platoon Sergeant, Tank Commander, Tank Leader

GRADES: SGT, SSGT, GYSGT, MSGT

INITIAL TRAINING SETTING: FORMAL

CONDITION: Given a tank unit, supported unit, specific tactical scenario, an operations order, and references.

STANDARD: To prepare to support tactical operations.

PERFORMANCE STEPS:
1. Determine the command relationship between the tank unit and the supported unit: attached, direct support, or general support.
2. Determine the preventive maintenance support needs of the unit.
3. Determine the corrective maintenance support needs of the unit.
4. Determine messing requirements.
5. Determine Petroleum, Oil, and Lubricant (POL) requirements.
6. Determine ammunition requirements.
7. Determine time requirements for preventive maintenance checks and services.
8. Determine requirements for resupply operations prior to commencing the attack.
9. Determine vehicle status, specifically critical systems: weapons station and weapons, communications, suspension/power train, water drive/operating systems, and by type of vehicle (tank, AAV variants, LAV, Engineer vehicles, wheeled vehicles).
10. Determine echelons of repair requiring support.
11. Determine medical/dental requirements.
12. Determine support required from higher elements.
13. Determine likely means of combat service support that will be available based on experience and task organization.
14. Determine personnel requirements by MOS or special skill.
15. Report any critical shortfalls in either equipment, supplies, or personnel.
16. Coordinate efforts and requirements with supporting elements.

REFERENCES:
1. FM 3-20.15 Tank Platoon
2. MCO 3500.27B W/ERRATUM Operational Risk Management
3. MCRP 4-24A Vehicle Recovery Operations
4. MCWP 3-12 Marine Corps Tank Employment
5. MCWP 4-1 Logistics Operations
6. MCWP 4-11 Combat Service Support Operations
7. MCWP 4-11.4 Maintenance Operations

1812-CSS-2513: Advise Supported Unit Commander on M1A1 Tank Unit Logistics Support Requirements

EVALUATION-CODED: NO **SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL:** 12 months

BILLETS: Platoon Sergeant, Tank Commander, Tank Leader

GRADES: SGT, SSGT, GYSGT, MSGT

INITIAL TRAINING SETTING: FORMAL

CONDITION: Given a tank unit, supported unit, an operations order, and references.

STANDARD: To assist the supported unit commander's s tactical planning requirements.

PERFORMANCE STEPS:
1. Determine logistics support requirements.
2. Determine organic logistics support capabilities.
3. Determine shortfalls on logistics support requirements.
4. Advise supported unit commander and his staff on any logistical support requirements that the unit can not meet and their potential impact on operations.
5. Recommend courses of action to the support unit commander and his staff to deal with any logistical support requirement shortfalls.

REFERENCES:
1. FM 3-20.15 Tank Platoon
2. MCO 3500.27B W/ERRATUM Operational Risk Management
3. MCRP 4-24A Vehicle Recovery Operations
4. MCWP 3-12 Marine Corps Tank Employment
5. MCWP 4-1 Logistics Operations
6. MCWP 4-11 Combat Service Support Operations
7. MCWP 4-11.4 Maintenance Operations

1812-CSS-2514: Conduct Quartering Party Operations

EVALUATION-CODED: NO **SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL:** 12 months

BILLETS: Platoon Sergeant, Tank Commander, Tank Leader

GRADES: SGT, SSGT, GYSGT, MSGT

INITIAL TRAINING SETTING: FORMAL

CONDITION: Given a tank unit, supported unit, an operations order directing the establishment of an Assembly Area (AA), and references.

STANDARD: To include route reconnaissance and site survey of intended AA, and coordinate movement of unit into AA, providing security prior to and during movement.

PERFORMANCE STEPS:
1. Issue Warning Order to Quartering Party personnel; party should include security detail appropriate to size of AA and enemy activity and representatives from each major element and staff section.
2. Coordinate with unit S-3 and S-4 for details on the location and requirements for the AA, personnel and equipment for the quartering party, fire support coordination to cover the movement to and survey of the site.
3. Task organize Quartering Party.
4. Plan and conduct tactical road march from current location to planned site.
5. Establish security element and conduct patrol of area to determine level of enemy activity in the immediate area.

6. Conduct site survey to determine: ability of Quartering Party and main unit to defend area, trafficability of routes in area, ability of main unit to fit into area with proper dispersion between units and facilities, and proposed locations of elements and facilities within the area.

REFERENCES:
1. FM 3-20.15 Tank Platoon
2. FM 3-20.98 Reconnaissance Platoon
3. MCO 3500.27B W/ERRATUM Operational Risk Management
4. MCWP 3-12 Marine Corps Tank Employment

1812-CSS-2515: Conduct Resupply Operations

EVALUATION-CODED: NO **SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL:** 12 months

BILLETS: Platoon Sergeant, Tank Commander, Tank Leader

GRADES: SGT, SSGT, GYSGT, MSGT

INITIAL TRAINING SETTING: FORMAL

CONDITION: Given a tank unit, supported unit, an operations order, and references.

STANDARD: To support the tactical sustainment of the unit.

PERFORMANCE STEPS:
1. Establish local security.
2. Establish method of resupply, tail gate or service station.
3. Establish priorities of resupply by unit, element, and item supplied.
4. Conduct resupply operations without compromising local security or detection by the enemy.
5. Enforce all safety precautions.

REFERENCES:
1. FM 3-20.15 Tank Platoon
2. MCO 3500.27B W/ERRATUM Operational Risk Management
3. MCWP 3-12 Marine Corps Tank Employment
4. MCWP 4-1 Logistics Operations
5. MCWP 4-11 Combat Service Support Operations
6. MCWP 4-11.4 Maintenance Operations
7. MCWP 4-11.7 MAGTF Supply Operations

1812-CSS-2516: Establish Logistics Operations Center (LOC)

EVALUATION-CODED: NO **SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL:** 12 months

BILLETS: Battalion Logistics Chief

GRADES: MSGT

INITIAL TRAINING SETTING: MOJT

CONDITION: Given a tank unit, supported unit, tactical scenario, an operations order, training area suitable for mechanized operations, and references.

STANDARD: To supervise the logistical support efforts required to execute tactical operations.

PERFORMANCE STEPS:

1. Organize Logistics Operation Center (LOC) in accordance with unit SOP. Internal arrangement should allow for: status boards, overlays and situation maps, simultaneous monitoring and integration of maneuver and fire support assets, and briefing of primary staff and commanders.
2. Establish LOC staffing with executive or primary staff, special staff, liaison personnel, and supporting personnel.
3. Organize personnel, equipment, and vehicles for 24 hour/all weather operations.
4. Determine location based on defensible position with good communications aspects.
5. Identify alternate LOC site and route in the event that the LOC must displace quickly.
6. Prepare plans for the establishment of alternate LOC per unit SOP.
7. Ensure strict OPSEC/COMSEC during displacement.
8. Employ active and passive security measures to include: camouflage, COMSEC, vehicle and fighting positions, patrols, dispersion, and employ improved positions/dig in as time permits.
9. Establish traffic control measures to limit access and movement in the vicinity of the LOC.
10. Establish remote antenna farm.
11. Establish unit journal.
12. Establish message handling procedures within the LOC.
13. Establish and maintain unit status board.
14. Coordinate Combat Service Support (CSS) Operations.
15. Coordinate with Combat Operation Center (COC) as necessary.

REFERENCES:

1. FM 3-20.15 Tank Platoon
2. MCO 3500.27B W/ERRATUM Operational Risk Management
3. MCRP 4-24A Vehicle Recovery Operations
4. MCWP 3-12 Marine Corps Tank Employment
5. MCWP 4-1 Logistics Operations
6. MCWP 4-11 Combat Service Support Operations
7. MCWP 4-11.4 Maintenance Operations

1812-CSS-2517: Direct Logistic Operations Center (LOC) Operations

EVALUATION-CODED: NO **SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL:** 12 months

BILLETS: Battalion Logistics Chief

GRADES: MSGT

INITIAL TRAINING SETTING: MOJT

CONDITION: Given a tank unit, supported unit, tactical scenario, an operations order, training area suitable for mechanized operations, and references.

STANDARD: To coordinate the logistical support required to execute tactical operations.

PERFORMANCE STEPS:

1. Organize Logistics Operation Center in accordance with unit SOP, internal arrangement should allow for: status boards, overlays and situation maps, simultaneous monitoring and integration of maneuver and fire support assets, and briefing of primary staff and commanders.
2. Establish LOC staffing with executive or primary staff, special staff, liaison personnel, and supporting personnel.
3. Organize personnel, equipment, and vehicles for 24 hour/all weather operations.
4. Rehearse movement to alternate LOC site and route in the event that the LOC must displace quickly.
5. Review plans for the establishment of alternate LOC per unit SOP.
6. Maintain strict OPSEC/COMSEC during displacement.
7. Employ active and passive security measures to include: camouflage, COMSEC, vehicle and fighting positions, patrols, dispersion, and employ improved positions/dig in as time permits.
8. Enforce traffic control measures to limit access and movement in the vicinity of the LOC.
9. Maintain remote antenna farm.
10. Maintain unit journal.
11. Enforce message handling procedures within the LOC.
12. Maintain unit status board.
13. Coordinate Combat Service Support Operations.
14. Coordinate with Combat Operation Center as necessary.

REFERENCES:

1. FM 3-20.15 Tank Platoon
2. MCO 3500.27B W/ERRATUM Operational Risk Management
3. MCRP 4-24A Vehicle Recovery Operations
4. MCWP 3-12 Marine Corps Tank Employment
5. MCWP 4-1 Logistics Operations
6. MCWP 4-11 Combat Service Support Operations
7. MCWP 4-11.4 Maintenance Operations

1812-CSS-2518: Direct Combat Service Support (CSS) Operations

EVALUATION-CODED: NO **SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL:** 12 months

BILLETS: Battalion Logistics Chief, Platoon Sergeant, Tank Commander, Tank Leader

GRADES: SGT, SSGT, GYSGT, MSGT

INITIAL TRAINING SETTING: MOJT

CONDITION: Given a tank unit, supported unit, an operations order, training area suitable for mechanized operations, and references.

STANDARD: To provide the logistical support required to execute the operations order including establishing resupply convoys and their escorts; NBC decontamination teams and locations; resupply operations from logistical trains; recovery, repair, and return of vehicles to units; medical activities; processing Enemy Prisoners of War (EPWs); performing graves registration duties; coordinating morale, welfare, and recreation support.

PERFORMANCE STEPS:

1. Develop scheme of support by phase for the operation.
2. In coordination with the operations officer, establish control measures for each of the following Combat Service Support (CSS) functions for each phase, including options for NBC "clean"/not contaminated and "dirty"/contaminated situations: battalion support areas, logistics training assembly areas, logistics operations center locations, UMCPs, ammunition distribution and transfer points, fuel/water/rations distribution points, casualty collection and transfer points, graves registration points, supply routes, EPW collection points, medical supply distribution points, equipment and personnel decontamination points, and reissue points.
3. Establish vehicle recovery teams.
4. Establish maintenance contact teams.
5. Establish resupply convoys and their escorts.
6. Establish NBC decontamination teams and locations.
7. Conduct resupply operations from logistics trains.
8. Operate Unit Maintenance Collection Points (UMCP).
9. Direct recovery, repair, and return of vehicles to units.
10. Direct medical activities to include: casualty evacuation, water analysis and purification, food inspections, supervision of preventative measures such as medications, vaccinations, examinations, personal hygiene, and establishment of Battalion Aid Station (BAS).
11. Process Enemy Prisoners of War (EPWs).
12. Perform graves registration duties.
13. Coordinate morale, welfare, and recreation support.

REFERENCES:

1. FM 3-20.15 Tank Platoon
2. MCO 3500.27B W/ERRATUM Operational Risk Management
3. MCRP 4-24A Vehicle Recovery Operations
4. MCWP 3-12 Marine Corps Tank Employment
5. MCWP 4-1 Logistics Operations
6. MCWP 4-11 Combat Service Support Operations
7. MCWP 4-11.4 Maintenance Operations
8. TM 9-2350-264-10-1 Operator's Manual, Operator Controls, PMCS, and Operation Under Usual Conditions, Volume 1 of 2, Tank, Combat, Full-Tracked: 120-MM Gun, M1A1 2350-01-087-1095 General Abrams

---

1812-CSS-2519: Direct Logistics Trains (LOG TRAINS)

EVALUATION-CODED: NO **SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL:** 12 months

BILLETS: Battalion Logistics Chief

GRADES: MSGT

INITIAL TRAINING SETTING: MOJT

CONDITION: Given a tank unit, supported unit, an operations order, specified threat, and references.

STANDARD: To provide the logistical support required to execute tactical operations.

PERFORMANCE STEPS:

1. Determine the CSS requirements for the designated unit and operation: recovery and repair requirements, evacuation requirements, supply requirements by class, and EPW processing requirements.
2. Task organize the trains based on the requirements and the threat analysis.
3. Control movement of the trains on the battlefield in conjunction with the S-3 section; ensure the trains have: fire support throughout the movement, adequate escort for the threat condition, cover and concealment, defensible positions identified, preferably out of range of enemy artillery, route or positions near medical and maintenance collection points and helicopter landing zones, current information on friendly and enemy positions, and current CEOI information on friendly units in the area.
4. Perform command and control functions as necessary.
5. Conduct LOGPAC as required.
6. Conduct administrative duties as required, including: mail pick up and delivery and delivery of personnel replacements.
7. Conduct combat reporting as required.

REFERENCES:

1. FM 3-20.15 Tank Platoon
2. MCO 3500.27B W/ERRATUM Operational Risk Management
3. MCRP 4-24A Vehicle Recovery Operations
4. MCWP 3-12 Marine Corps Tank Employment
5. MCWP 4-1 Logistics Operations
6. MCWP 4-11 Combat Service Support Operations
7. MCWP 4-11.4 Maintenance Operations

1812-CSS-2520: Direct Combat Trains

EVALUATION-CODED: NO **SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL:** 12 months

BILLETS: Battalion Logistics Chief, Tank Leader

GRADES: MSGT

INITIAL TRAINING SETTING: MOJT

CONDITION: Given a tank unit, supported unit, an operations order, and references.

STANDARD: To provide the logistical support required to execute tactical operations.

PERFORMANCE STEPS:
1. Determine the CSS requirements for the designated unit and operation: recovery and repair requirements, evacuation requirements, supply requirements by class, and EPW processing requirements.
2. Task organize the combat trains based on the requirements and the threat analysis.
3. Control movement of the combat trains on the battlefield in conjunction with the S-3 section; ensure the trains have: fire support throughout the movement., adequate escort for the threat condition, cover and concealment, defensible positions identified, route or positions near medical and maintenance collection points, current information on friendly and enemy positions, and current CEOI information on friendly units in the area.
4. Perform command and control functions as necessary.
5. Conduct combat reporting as required.

REFERENCES:
1. FM 3-20.15 Tank Platoon
2. MCO 3500.27B W/ERRATUM Operational Risk Management
3. MCRP 4-24A Vehicle Recovery Operations
4. MCWP 3-12 Marine Corps Tank Employment
5. MCWP 4-1 Logistics Operations
6. MCWP 4-11 Combat Service Support Operations
7. MCWP 4-11.4 Maintenance Operations

1812-CSS-2521: Supervise Personnel Handling Ammunition

EVALUATION-CODED: NO **SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL:** 12 months

BILLETS: Battalion Logistics Chief, Platoon Sergeant, Tank Commander, Tank Leader

GRADES: SGT, SSGT, GYSGT, MSGT

INITIAL TRAINING SETTING: MOJT

CONDITION: Given a tank Unit, a specified ammunition allotment, and the references.

STANDARD: Ensuring that the required amount of ammunition needed is opened, all safety procedures are followed, and it is properly stowed on the tank.

PERFORMANCE STEPS:
1. Instruct personnel on what types of ammunition and how many rounds of each will be required.
2. Supervise the handling of main gun ammunition.
3. Supervise personnel handling small arms ammunition.
4. Supervise personnel handling smoke grenades.
5. Supervise inventory and expenditure of ammunition.

REFERENCES:
1. FM 3-20.15 Tank Platoon
2. FM 9-13 Ammunition Handbook
3. MCO 3500.27B W/ERRATUM Operational Risk Management

4. MCWP 3-12 Marine Corps Tank Employment
5. TM 9-2350-264-10-1 Operator's Manual, Operator Controls, PMCS, and Operation Under Usual Conditions, Volume 1 of 2, Tank, Combat, Full-Tracked: 120-MM Gun, M1A1 2350-01-087-1095 General Abrams
6. TM 9-2350-264-10-2 Operator's Manual, Unusual Conditions, Troubleshooting, and Maintenance, Volume 2 of 2, Tank, Combat, Full-Tracked: 120-MM, M1A1 2350-01-087-1095, General Abrams

---

1812-CSS-2522: Establish Assembly Area (AA)

EVALUATION-CODED: NO **SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL:** 12 months

BILLETS: Platoon Sergeant, Tank Commander, Tank Leader

GRADES: SGT, SSGT, GYSGT, MSGT, MGYSGT

INITIAL TRAINING SETTING: MOJT

CONDITION: Given a tank unit, supported unit, an operations order directing the establishment of an Assembly Area (AA), and references.

STANDARD: Ensuring that there is local security so that no squad size elements can move within 300 meters of perimeter without detection; vehicle and individual positions are camouflaged within 45 minutes of occupation; there is lateral contact between vehicles; wire communications, vehicle range cards, element fire plan sketches are complete; chemical agent alarms are emplaced; CSS activities re conducted; and planning for subsequent operations is ongoing.

PERFORMANCE STEPS:
1. Issue order to Quartering Party and dispatch them to conduct reconnaissance and preparation of proposed assembly area.
2. Conduct movement of unit to AA in coordination with Quartering Party.
3. Establish priority of work.
4. Establish AA perimeter, maintaining lateral contact between vehicles within the AA and adjoining units.
5. Establish vehicle and individual positions, maintaining mutual support between vehicles, individuals and elements.
6. Establish camouflage within 45 minutes of occupation of the assembly area.
7. Establish wire communications.
8. Establish vehicle range cards, and element fire plan sketches, to include supporting arms.
9. Establish chemical agent alarms.
10. Supervise the conduct of required CSS activities.
11. Conduct planning for subsequent operations.
12. Maintain light and noise discipline.

REFERENCES:
1. FM 3-20.15 Tank Platoon
2. MCO 3500.27B W/ERRATUM Operational Risk Management
3. MCWP 3-12 Marine Corps Tank Employment
4. MCWP 4-1 Logistics Operations
5. MCWP 4-11 Combat Service Support Operations
6. MCWP 4-11.4 Maintenance Operations

1812-CSS-2523: Perform the Duties of a Logistics Chief

EVALUATION-CODED: NO **SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL:** 12 months

BILLETS: Battalion Logistics Chief

GRADES: MSGT

INITIAL TRAINING SETTING: MOJT

CONDITION: Given the required duties of a logistics chief, commander's guidance, and the references.

STANDARD: To support the mission requirements of the unit.

PERFORMANCE STEPS:
1. Organize the logistics section.
2. Determine directive and publication requirements.
3. Establish internal control procedures for maintaining administrative files and records.
4. Review logistics related reports.
5. Prepare staff correspondence pertaining to logistics.
6. Prepare standing operating procedures.
7. Prepare external support requests.
8. Prepare briefing materials on logistics matters.
9. Implement corrective action of discrepancies noted during administrative inspections.
10. Provide oversight for the logistics functional areas of motor transport, supply, equipment maintenance, arms, ammunition and explosives (AA&E), and messing.
11. Ensure Combat Service Support MOS proficiency related training is scheduled and conducted.
12. Conduct inspections.
13. Ensure correct use of operational forms and records.
14. Ensure dispatching procedures are correct.

REFERENCES:
1. FM 3-20.12 Tank Gunnery
2. FM 3-20.15 Tank Platoon
3. FM 3-20.98 Reconnaissance Platoon
4. FM 3-90.1 Tank and Mechanized Infantry Company Team
5. FM 3-90.2 Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force
6. FM 3-90.3 Mounted Brigade Combat Team
7. MCO 3500.27B W/ERRATUM Operational Risk Management
8. MCWP 3-12 Marine Corps Tank Employment
9. MCWP 3-15.5 Antiarmor Operations
10. MCWP 5-1 Marine Corps Planning Process

1812-CSS-2524: Conduct Security Patrols in Support of the Assembly Area

EVALUATION-CODED: NO **SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL:** 12 months

BILLETS: Platoon Sergeant, Tank Commander

GRADES: SGT, SSGT, GYSGT

INITIAL TRAINING SETTING: MOJT

CONDITION: Given a tank unit (company or larger), supported unit, an operations order directing the establishment of an assembly area/battalion support area with active security patrols, specified threat involving squad size enemy patrols, training area large enough to establish an Assembly Area (AA), and references.

STANDARD: To support the force protection measures of the unit.

PERFORMANCE STEPS:
1. Analyze patrol order from higher.
2. Coordinate with Camp Commandant for: frequencies, call signs, and recognition signals, passage of friendly lines into and out of perimeter, MEDEVACS, fire support, control measures for friendly positions in the area and along the patrol route, friendly obstacle plan, and known enemy positions and activities.
3. Task organize patrol based on estimate of the situation (METT-TC).
4. Issue warning order to patrol group.
5. Conduct equipment checks prior to departing friendly lines.
6. Coordinate with actual element for passage of lines for departure and return.
7. Issue OPORD to patrol.
8. Conduct patrol.
9. Debrief patrol.

REFERENCES:
1. DoDD 2000.12 DoD Antiterrorism/Force Protection (AT/FP) Program
2. FM 3-20.15 Tank Platoon
3. FM 3-90.1 Tank and Mechanized Infantry Company Team
4. MCO 3500.27B W/ERRATUM Operational Risk Management
5. MCRP 3-11.1A Commander's Tactical Handbook
6. MCRP 5-12A Operational Terms and Symbols
7. MCWP 3-12 Marine Corps Tank Employment
8. MCWP 3-41.1 Rear Area Operations

1812-CSS-2525: Coordinate Supply Support Related Functions

EVALUATION-CODED: NO **SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL:** 12 months

BILLETS: Battalion Logistics Chief, Platoon Sergeant, Tank Commander, Tank Leader

GRADES: SGT, SSGT, GYSGT, MSGT

INITIAL TRAINING SETTING: MOJT

CONDITION: Given support requirement, a unit T/O&E, Equipment Density List (EDL), Sassy Management Unit (SMU) provided generation package database (GENPAK), and references.

STANDARD: To ensure supply support maintenance requirements are accomplished.

PERFORMANCE STEPS:
1. Determine class IX requirements.
2. Validate the generation package (GENPAK) database.
3. Validate the contents of a class IX block for deficiencies.
4. Submit recommended changes to class IX block to SMU.

REFERENCES:
1. MCO 3500.27B W/ERRATUM Operational Risk Management
2. MCO P4790.2 MIMMS Field Procedures Manual
3. SECNAVINST 5500.4 MLSR Reporting
4. UM 4400-124 Sassy Using Unit Procedures
5. UM 4400-15 Organic Property Control

1812-CSS-2526: Establish Logistics Train Site

EVALUATION-CODED: NO **SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL:** 12 months

BILLETS: Battalion Logistics Chief

GRADES: MSGT

INITIAL TRAINING SETTING: MOJT

CONDITION: Given a tank unit, supported unit, an operations order, training area suitable for mechanized operations, and references.

STANDARD: To provide the logistical support required to execute the operations order including establishing resupply convoys and their escorts; NBC decontamination teams and locations; resupply operations from logistics trains; recovery, repair, and return of vehicles to units; medical activities; processing Enemy Prisoners of War (EPWs); performing graves registration duties; coordinating morale, welfare, and recreation support.

PERFORMANCE STEPS:
1. Establish the site to include locations for each of the following Combat Service Support (CSS) functions, including options for NBC "clean"/not contaminated and "dirty"/contaminated situations: logistics operations center location, Unit Maintenance Collection Point (UMCP) for vehicles being brought to this site, ammunition and fuel distribution points, ration/water distribution points, Battalion Aid Station (BAS), graves registration point, EPW collection point, medical supply distribution point, equipment and personnel decontamination points, reissue point, and morale, welfare, and recreation support.
2. Establish local security using patrols as necessary.

REFERENCES:
1. FM 3-20.15 Tank Platoon
2. FM 3-90.1 Tank and Mechanized Infantry Company Team
3. MCRP 4-24A Vehicle Recovery Operations
4. MCWP 3-12 Marine Corps Tank Employment
5. MCWP 4-1 Logistics Operations

6. MCWP 4-11 Combat Service Support Operations
7. MCWP 4-11.4 Maintenance Operations
8. MCWP 4-11.7 MAGTF Supply Operations

1812-EXPD-2601: Assist in Developing the Landing Plan

EVALUATION-CODED: NO **SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL:** 12 months

BILLETS: Battalion Operations Chief, Platoon Sergeant

GRADES: SSGT, GYSGT, MSGT, MGYSGT

INITIAL TRAINING SETTING: FORMAL

CONDITION: Given a tank unit, supported unit, an operations order, specified amphibious ship platform, tactical scenario, specified threat, and references.

STANDARD: So that all associated diagrams, tables, attachments, and overlays are included.

PERFORMANCE STEPS:
1. Conduct Mission Analysis of supported unit's operations order and provide appropriate input.
2. Determine Assault Amphibian lift requirements for assault elements, scheduled waves, on-call waves, and nonscheduled waves.
3. Review Amphibious Vehicle Availability Table to determine the number and periods of availability for each type of AAV assigned to the operation.
4. Determine landing force lift requirements for the ship-to-shore movement in coordination with a review of the Amphibious Vehicle Availability Table, Helicopter Availability Table, and the Landing Craft Availability Table.
5. Consider enemy capabilities to counter surface and/or air assaults.
6. Allow flexibility of on-call and nonscheduled waves.
7. Assign elements to one of five categories in order to indicate their relative priority for landing and to facilitate control of the ship-to-shore movement.
8. Allocate assets for use by subordinate elements, and ensure that the proposed Landing Diagram, Assault Schedule, and Landing Sequence Table are developed concurrently and are mutually compatible.
9. Develop Serial Assignment Table based on task organization for the landing.
10. Develop Landing Craft and Amphibious Vehicle Assignment Table is coordinated with affected units.
11. Develop Helicopter Employment and Assault Landing Table as well as Heliteam Wave and Serial Assignment Table are coordinated with ACE and appropriate CE.
12. Provide input for Approach Schedule.
13. Develop Debarkation Schedule in coordination with Naval personnel.

REFERENCES:
1. FM 3-20.15 Tank Platoon
2. JCS PUB 3-02 Joint Doctrine for Amphibious Operations
3. JCS PUB 3-02.1 Joint Doctrine for Landing Force Operations

4. LFM 03 Amphibious Embarkation
5. MCO 3500.27B W/ERRATUM Operational Risk Management
6. MCRP 2-12A Intelligence Preparation of the Battlefield (IPB)
7. MCRP 3-31.3A Over the Horizon Surface Operations
8. MCRP 3-31A Military Sealift Command in Support of Amphibious Operations
9. MCRP 3-31B Amphibious Ships and Landing Craft Data Book
10. MCRP 4-11.3D The Naval Beach Group
11. MCWP 3-12 Marine Corps Tank Employment
12. MCWP 3-31.3 Surf Zone Operations
13. MCWP 3-31.5 Ship-to-Shore Movement
14. MCWP 5-1 Marine Corps Planning Process
15. MCWP 5-11 Amphibious Task Force Planning
16. MCWP 5-11.2 The Amphibious Task Force Plan

1812-EXPD-2602: Analyze Landing Plan

EVALUATION-CODED: NO **SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL:** 12 months

BILLETS: Battalion Operations Chief, Platoon Sergeant

GRADES: SSGT, GYSGT, MSGT, MGYSGT

INITIAL TRAINING SETTING: FORMAL

CONDITION: Given a tank unit, an operations order, supporting landing plan, specified amphibious ship platform, tactical scenario, specified threat, and references.

STANDARD: To determine its supportability by unit, unique requirements to support the landing plan, coordination with the supported unit staff, and control measures necessary to execute the landing plan.

PERFORMANCE STEPS:
1. Reconcile the Landing Plan with the scheme of maneuver ashore.
2. Examine the Landing Plan Diagram and extract the AAV-borne scheduled waves of the assault.
3. Examine the Approach Schedule and extract the wave schedules.
4. Analyze the Landing Craft and Amphibious Vehicle Assignment Schedule and verify the boat team assignments.
5. Analyze the Serial Assignment Table to determine the group of troop units to be landed on a specified beach at the same time.
6. Analyze the Landing Sequence Table to determine the priority of landing of nonscheduled serials.
7. Analyze the Assault Schedule to determine the composition and timing of waves landing over designated beaches.
8. Analyze the Amphibious Vehicle Availability Table to determine the type, number and ship location of amphibious vehicles which are available to the landing force.
9. Provide the Landing Force and Amphibious Task Force staff members with input for the Amphibious Vehicle Employment Plan.
10. The operations order and landing plan should also contain the following key information: task organization for waves, boat groups, assault schedule, type of launch expected, prelaunch warm up time and sequence, time for undogging, staging of AAVs, frequencies and call signs, radio

checks per EMCON, timeline for issuing ammunition and embarking infantry, planned time for launch, launch signals, procedures for vehicle if stalled in well deck, ballast conditions, multiple vehicle launches from a single ship (if planned), simulated launches from multiple ships (if planned), launch interval, launch sequence, boat line location, designation of wave guides and commanders, Navy Control Group command and control, recovery planning if vehicles become disabled, signals for emergency lifting of Naval Gunfire, location of line of departure, beach characteristics, and barriers to landing and enemy defenses expected.

REFERENCES:
1. FM 3-20.15 Tank Platoon
2. JCS PUB 3-02 Joint Doctrine for Amphibious Operations
3. JCS PUB 3-02.1 Joint Doctrine for Landing Force Operations
4. LFM 03 Amphibious Embarkation
5. MCO 3500.27B W/ERRATUM Operational Risk Management
6. MCRP 2-12A Intelligence Preparation of the Battlefield (IPB)
7. MCRP 3-31.3A Over the Horizon Surface Operations
8. MCRP 3-31B Amphibious Ships and Landing Craft Data Book
9. MCRP 4-11.3D The Naval Beach Group
10. MCRP 5-12A Operational Terms and Symbols
11. MCRP 5-12C Marine Corps Supplement to the Department of Defense Dictionary of Military and Associated Terms
12. MCWP 3-12 Marine Corps Tank Employment
13. MCWP 3-31.3 Surf Zone Operations
14. MCWP 3-31.5 Ship-to-Shore Movement
15. MCWP 5-1 Marine Corps Planning Process
16. MCWP 5-11 Amphibious Task Force Planning
17. MCWP 5-11.2 The Amphibious Task Force Plan

1812-EXPD-2603: Advise Supported Unit Commander on M1A1 Tank Employment in Amphibious Operations

EVALUATION-CODED: NO **SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL:** 12 months

BILLETS: Platoon Sergeant, Tank Commander

GRADES: SGT, SSGT, GYSGT

INITIAL TRAINING SETTING: FORMAL

CONDITION: Given a tank unit, an operations order, supporting landing plan, specified amphibious ship platform, tactical scenario, specified threat, and references.

STANDARD: To inform commander on the capabilities and limitations on scheme of maneuver, scheme of fires, scheme of mobility/countermobility support, and scheme of logistics support for operations afloat and ashore.

PERFORMANCE STEPS:
1. Analyze supported unit's mission.
2. Coordinate with supported unit staff for additional information requirements.
3. Develop estimate of supportability for AAV unit.

4. Advise the supported unit commander and his staff on the availability of AAVs based on the current and projected crew and maintenance status.
5. Advise the supported unit commander and his staff on the troop and cargo lift capabilities of the available AAVs.
6. Advise the supported unit commander and his staff on the timeline and events required for the AAV unit to prepare for debarkation, including: special reveille, chow, and armory requirements for the AAV crews, refueling from ship's supplies if necessary, preoperations checks and services, ammunition and pyro break out from ship's magazine and transfer to the AAVs communications checks, safety brief for embarked assault troops, embarkation of assault troops, starting of ship's vent fans if appropriate, setting condition One Alpha for launching AAVs, starting AAV engines, and positioning AAVs for launch.
7. Advise on safety requirements for embarked personnel and pre-embarkation training.
8. Advise the supported unit commander and his staff on the Combat Service Support requirements for the AAV unit, to include: recovery operations afloat, recovery operations ashore, and resupply operations ashore.
9. Advise on the assignment of AAVs to various classes of amphibious shipping (task organize).
10. Advise on optimum distance from launch area to LOD and from LOD to beach, based on the AAV unit's capabilities and limitations, specifically: sea state, vehicle endurance, and crew and embarked personnel endurance.
11. Advise on optimum AAV formations and timing of AAV waves.
12. Advise on employment of AAVs in transfer operations.
13. Coordinate all aspects of AAV employment with Naval control groups and ships involved in AAV operations.
14. Assist in planning for use of AAVs as floating or mobile dumps.
15. Advise on decision points for disembarking assault troops on the beach or transporting them to inland objectives.
16. Assist in planning for the use of AAVC7A1s in the scheme of communications support.
17. Assist in planning for AAV use in special operations.
18. Advise on command and control measures during night operations.
19. Keep supported unit commander and staff informed of any major changes in the status of AAV personnel or vehicles that would impact on mission performance.

REFERENCES:
1. FM 3-20.15 Tank Platoon
2. MCO 3500.27B W/ERRATUM Operational Risk Management
3. MCWP 3-12 Marine Corps Tank Employment

1812-EXPD-2604: Install Deepwater Fording Kit on M1A1 Tank

EVALUATION-CODED: NO **SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL:** 12 months

BILLETS: Tank Crewman

GRADES: LCPL, CPL, SGT, SSGT, GYSGT

INITIAL TRAINING SETTING: MOJT

CONDITION: Given an M1A1 tank with crew, SL-3 items, deep water fording kit (DWFK), and references.

STANDARD: Within 2 hours so that the tank can ford water at depths of 2 meters.

PERFORMANCE STEPS:
1. Install turret and gun tube.
2. Install DWFK nonvented front fuel filler caps.
3. Install 120-mm gun plug.
4. Seal coaxial machinegun.
5. Install personnel heater plug.
6. Install NBC ambient air intake door assembly and close door.
7. Remove scallop armor plate.
8. Stow rear intake grille and scallop armor plate.
9. Install forward intake grill.
10. Install 6-inch plugs, scavenge outlet plate, and hooded precleaner.
11. Assemble and install flex hoses and elbows.
12. Close front access cover and install rear access cover.
13. Install 8-inch and 10-inch intake towers.
14. Inspect engine exhaust duct seal.
15. Install exhaust plenum and exhaust tower.
16. Install NBC backup air inlet plug.
17. Install DWFK final drive adapters and vent hoses.
18. Install NBC cooling exhaust plug.
19. Lubricate battery terminal adapters and relay box assembly terminals.
20. Wire fenders.
21. Install wire ropes.
22. Connect cooling exhaust plug wire rope and pin quick-release mechanism.

REFERENCES:
1. FM 3-20.15 Tank Platoon
2. MCO 3500.27B W/ERRATUM Operational Risk Management
3. MCWP 3-12 Marine Corps Tank Employment
4. TM 08953A-14&P Operator's and Unit Maintenance Manual Including Repair Parts and Special Tools List, Deep Water Fording Kit
5. TM 9-2350-264-10-1 Operator's Manual, Operator Controls, PMCS, and Operation Under Usual Conditions, Volume 1 of 2, Tank, Combat, Full-Tracked: 120-MM Gun, M1A1 2350-01-087-1095 General Abrams
6. TM 9-2350-264-10-2 Operator's Manual, Unusual Conditions, Troubleshooting, and Maintenance, Volume 2 of 2, Tank, Combat, Full-Tracked: 120-MM, M1A1 2350-01-087-1095, General Abrams

---

1812-EXPD-2605: Ford Deep Water with M1A1 Tank

EVALUATION-CODED: NO **SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL:** 12 months

BILLETS: Tank Crewman

GRADES: LCPL, CPL, SGT, SSGT, GYSGT

INITIAL TRAINING SETTING: MOJT

CONDITION: Given an M1A1 tank with crew, installed Deep Water Fording Kit (DWFK), a water obstacle not exceeding a depth of 2 meters, and references.

STANDARD: So that water obstacle is crossed in a time limit of 10 minutes, tank is not damaged, and crew is not injured.

PERFORMANCE STEPS:
1. Inflate turret seal.
2. Close drain valve.
3. If time and mission allow, conduct a thorough final inspection of the tank to make sure that all DWFK components have been installed, and that installation has been done properly.
4. Prepare to ford.
5. Drive tank slowly into water and take care to keep bow wave to a minimum.
6. Drive out of water.
7. Prepare tank for operation after fording.
8. Remove DWFK components.

REFERENCES:
1. FM 3-20.15 Tank Platoon
2. MCO 3500.27B W/ERRATUM Operational Risk Management
3. MCWP 3-12 Marine Corps Tank Employment
4. TM 08953A-14&P Operator's and Unit Maintenance Manual Including Repair Parts and Special Tools List, Deep Water Fording Kit
5. TM 9-2350-264-10-1 Operator's Manual, Operator Controls, PMCS, and Operation Under Usual Conditions, Volume 1 of 2, Tank, Combat, Full-Tracked: 120-MM Gun, M1A1 2350-01-087-1095 General Abrams
6. TM 9-2350-264-10-2 Operator's Manual, Unusual Conditions, Troubleshooting, and Maintenance, Volume 2 of 2, Tank, Combat, Full-Tracked: 120-MM, M1A1 2350-01-087-1095, General Abrams

---

1812-EXPD-2606: Launch from Amphibious Shipping

EVALUATION-CODED: NO **SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL:** 12 months

BILLETS: Tank Crewman

GRADES: LCPL, CPL, SGT, SSGT, GYSGT

INITIAL TRAINING SETTING: MOJT

CONDITION: Given a tank unit, an operations order, supporting landing plan, tactical scenario, specified threat, navigable section of open ocean with a suitable beach, specified amphibious ship type, and suitable wave guide/safety boats.

STANDARD: Per the references.

PERFORMANCE STEPS:
1. Install deep water fording kit.
2. Conduct pre-water operations checks and services.
3. Ensure water tight integrity of tank.
4. Position vehicle according to guidance from ship's well deck personnel.
5. Dog vehicle on shipping as directed.
6. Disembark from landing craft onto designated beach.

REFERENCES:
1. FM 3-20.15 Tank Platoon
2. MCO 3500.27B W/ERRATUM Operational Risk Management
3. MCRP 3-31B Amphibious Ships and Landing Craft Data Book
4. MCWP 3-12 Marine Corps Tank Employment

1812-EXPD-2607: Assist in Developing Plans to Embark M1A1 Tank Unit

EVALUATION-CODED: NO **SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL:** 12 months

BILLETS: Battalion Logistics Chief, Platoon Sergeant, Tank Commander, Tank Leader

GRADES: SGT, SSGT, GYSGT, MSGT

INITIAL TRAINING SETTING: MOJT

CONDITION: Given a tank unit, supported unit, list of mission essential equipment, an operations plan, supporting operations order, and references.

STANDARD: To support the operations plan.

PERFORMANCE STEPS:
1. Establish liaison with the Ground Combat Element (GCE) embarkation officer or the Team Embarkation Officer (TEO).
2. Determine logistical requirements for the unit in order to support the operations plan and order.
3. Consider special requirements for the unit based on the type of transportation selected for each movement phase: motor transport, rail transport, aircraft, and shipping.
4. Obtain and consolidate the required loading documents from each unit embarking supplies, cargo, equipment, and personnel.
5. Obtain the unloading priorities and composition of tactical serials from the embarkation team leader.
6. Identify any hazardous material and cargo requiring special handling.
7. Ensure the equipment to be loaded complies with the characteristics of the platform selected.
8. Prepare written plans or appropriate computer embark data. Include: personnel equipment lists, unit equipment lists, manifest lists, hazardous material lists, ammunition requirements, parts requirements, and medical supplies.
9. Submit plans and requirements to higher headquarters.
10. Submit list of materials required to complete embarkation preparation.
11. Determine personnel to conduct embarkation and identify any training shortfalls.

REFERENCES:
1. LFM 03 Amphibious Embarkation
2. MCO 3500.27B W/ERRATUM Operational Risk Management
3. MCO P4030.19 Preparation of Hazardous Material for Military Air Shipment
4. MCRP 3-31B Amphibious Ships and Landing Craft Data Book
5. MCRP 4-13.1A Movement of Units in Air Force Aircraft
6. MCWP 3-12 Marine Corps Tank Employment
7. MCWP 4-1 Logistics Operations

8. MCWP 5-1 Marine Corps Planning Process
9. TM 9-2350-264-10-1 Operator's Manual, Operator Controls, PMCS, and Operation Under Usual Conditions, Volume 1 of 2, Tank, Combat, Full-Tracked: 120-MM Gun, M1A1 2350-01-087-1095 General Abrams
10. TM 9-2350-264-10-2 Operator's Manual, Unusual Conditions, Troubleshooting, and Maintenance, Volume 2 of 2, Tank, Combat, Full-Tracked: 120-MM, M1A1 2350-01-087-1095, General Abrams

---

1812-EXPD-2608: Inspect Tank Unit Embarkation Procedures

EVALUATION-CODED: NO **SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL:** 12 months

BILLETS: Battalion Logistics Chief, Platoon Sergeant, Tank Commander, Tank Leader

GRADES: SGT, SSGT, GYSGT, MSGT

INITIAL TRAINING SETTING: MOJT

CONDITION: Given a tank unit, list of personnel and mission essential equipment to be embarked, an operations plan, supporting operations order, and references.

STANDARD: To include preparation of personnel, cargo, supplies, vehicles, and equipment.

PERFORMANCE STEPS:
1. Ensure that unit embarkation personnel are identified and properly trained.
2. Inspect unit embarkation materials are in compliance with the references including: embark boxes, PALCONs, QUADCONs, packaging materials, hazardous materials packaging and shipping containers, and embark database.
3. Ensure that the unit has adequate embarkation containers and materials to deploy all of its assets.
4. Inspect the supplies and equipment for transportability.
5. Inspect the mobile loading of supplies and equipment.
6. Inspect the building and loading of 463L pallets.
7. Inspect the loading and banding of warehouse pallets.
8. Identify hazardous material and cargo.
9. Inspect equipment center of balance computation.
10. Inspect required documentation.
11. Ensure proper staging of supplies and equipment.

REFERENCES:
1. FM 3-20.15 Tank Platoon
2. FM 55-9 Unit Air Movement Planning
3. LFM 03 Amphibious Embarkation
4. MCO 3500.27B W/ERRATUM Operational Risk Management
5. MCO P4030.19 Preparation of Hazardous Material for Military Air Shipment
6. MCRP 3-31B Amphibious Ships and Landing Craft Data Book
7. MCRP 4-13.1A Movement of Units in Air Force Aircraft
8. MCWP 3-12 Marine Corps Tank Employment
9. MCWP 4-1 Logistics Operations

10. MCWP 5-1 Marine Corps Planning Process
11. TM 9-2350-264-10-1 Operator's Manual, Operator Controls, PMCS, and Operation Under Usual Conditions, Volume 1 of 2, Tank, Combat, Full-Tracked: 120-MM Gun, M1A1 2350-01-087-1095 General Abrams
12. TM 9-2350-264-10-2 Operator's Manual, Unusual Conditions, Troubleshooting, and Maintenance, Volume 2 of 2, Tank, Combat, Full-Tracked: 120-MM, M1A1 2350-01-087-1095, General Abrams

---

1812-EXPD-2609: Supervise Embarkation of Tank Unit onto Aircraft

EVALUATION-CODED: NO **SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL:** 12 months

BILLETS: Battalion Logistics Chief, Platoon Sergeant, Tank Commander, Tank Leader

GRADES: SGT, SSGT, GYSGT, MSGT

INITIAL TRAINING SETTING: MOJT

CONDITION: Given a tank unit, list of personnel and mission essential equipment to be embarked, an operations plan, supporting operations order, and specific aircraft type.

STANDARD: Per the references.

PERFORMANCE STEPS:
1. Supervise coordination with the Departure Airfield Control Group (DACG) and with the Air Force command and control ground personnel.
2. Ensure proper staging of supplies and equipment.
3. Ensure all personnel, cargo, and equipment are properly manifested.
4. Supervise embarkation of personnel and equipment according to loadmaster guidance.

REFERENCES:
1. FM 3-20.15 Tank Platoon
2. MCO 3500.27B W/ERRATUM Operational Risk Management
3. MCO P4030.19 Preparation of Hazardous Material for Military Air Shipment
4. MCWP 3-12 Marine Corps Tank Employment
5. MCWP 4-1 Logistics Operations
6. TM 9-2350-264-10-1 Operator's Manual, Operator Controls, PMCS, and Operation Under Usual Conditions, Volume 1 of 2, Tank, Combat, Full-Tracked: 120-MM Gun, M1A1 2350-01-087-1095 General Abrams
7. TM 9-2350-264-10-2 Operator's Manual, Unusual Conditions, Troubleshooting, and Maintenance, Volume 2 of 2, Tank, Combat, Full-Tracked: 120-MM, M1A1 2350-01-087-1095, General Abrams

---

1812-EXPD-2610: Supervise Embarkation of Tank Unit onto Amphibious Shipping

EVALUATION-CODED: NO **SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL:** 12 months

BILLETS: Battalion Logistics Chief, Platoon Sergeant, Tank Commander, Tank Leader

GRADES: SGT, SSGT, GYSGT, MSGT

INITIAL TRAINING SETTING: MOJT

CONDITION: Given a tank unit, operations plan, supporting operations order, supporting landing plan, specific amphibious shipping platform, an open ocean training area, and beach suitable for landing operations.

STANDARD: Per the references.

PERFORMANCE STEPS:
1. Establish liaison with higher headquarters and assault shipping staffs as required.
2. Ensure that Team Embarkation Officer (TEO) and the ship's Combat Cargo Officer (CCO) are provided with list of vehicles and equipment to be embarked; include a detailed listing of any ammunition, pyrotechnics, POL, hazardous materials or items requiring t
3. Supervise preparation of personnel, vehicles, and equipment for embarkation in accordance with instructions from the ships personnel and special regulations governing the materials to be embarked.
4. Supervise movement of personnel, vehicles, equipment, and materials to embarkation points.
5. Supervise embarkation of personnel, vehicles, cargo, and equipment in accordance with embarkation plan and guidance from Ship's Combat Cargo Officer and Ship's personnel.
6. Ensure that all personnel, vehicles, cargo, and equipment are properly manifested and a copy of the manifest is given to the Ship's Combat Cargo Officer.

REFERENCES:
1. FM 3-20.15 Tank Platoon
2. JCS PUB 3-02 Joint Doctrine for Amphibious Operations
3. LFM 03 Amphibious Embarkation
4. MCO 3500.27B W/ERRATUM Operational Risk Management
5. MCO P4030.19 Preparation of Hazardous Material for Military Air Shipment
6. MCRP 3-31B Amphibious Ships and Landing Craft Data Book
7. MCWP 3-12 Marine Corps Tank Employment
8. MCWP 4-1 Logistics Operations
9. MCWP 5-1 Marine Corps Planning Process
10. TM 9-2350-264-10-1 Operator's Manual, Operator Controls, PMCS, and Operation Under Usual Conditions, Volume 1 of 2, Tank, Combat, Full-Tracked: 120-MM Gun, M1A1 2350-01-087-1095 General Abrams
11. TM 9-2350-264-10-2 Operator's Manual, Unusual Conditions, Troubleshooting, and Maintenance, Volume 2 of 2, Tank, Combat, Full-Tracked: 120-MM, M1A1 2350-01-087-1095, General Abrams

---

1812-EXPD-2611: Supervise Embarkation of Tank Unit onto Land Transportation

EVALUATION-CODED: NO **SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL:** 12 months

BILLETS: Battalion Logistics Chief, Platoon Sergeant, Tank Commander, Tank Leader

GRADES: SGT, SSGT, GYSGT, MSGT

INITIAL TRAINING SETTING: MOJT

CONDITION: Given a tank unit, operations plan, supporting operations order, and specific land transportation platform.

STANDARD: Per the references.

PERFORMANCE STEPS:
1. Establish liaison with higher headquarters and staffs as required.
2. Ensure that Embarkation Officer is provided with list of vehicles and equipment to be embarked; include a detailed listing of any ammunition, pyrotechnics, POL, hazardous materials or items requiring to be secured (communications equipment or weapons) to
3. Supervise preparation of personnel, vehicles, and equipment for embarkation in accordance with instructions from embarkation personnel and special regulations governing the materials to be embarked.
4. Supervise movement of personnel, vehicles, equipment, and materials to embarkation points.
5. Supervise embarkation of personnel, vehicles, cargo, and equipment in accordance with embarkation plan and guidance from embarkation personnel.
6. Ensure that all personnel, vehicles, cargo, and equipment are properly manifested and a copy of the manifest is given to the Embarkation Officer.

REFERENCES:
1. FM 3-20.15 Tank Platoon
2. MCO 3500.27B W/ERRATUM Operational Risk Management
3. MCWP 3-12 Marine Corps Tank Employment
4. MCWP 4-1 Logistics Operations
5. MCWP 5-1 Marine Corps Planning Process
6. TM 9-2350-264-10-1 Operator's Manual, Operator Controls, PMCS, and Operation Under Usual Conditions, Volume 1 of 2, Tank, Combat, Full-Tracked: 120-MM Gun, M1A1 2350-01-087-1095 General Abrams
7. TM 9-2350-264-10-2 Operator's Manual, Unusual Conditions, Troubleshooting, and Maintenance, Volume 2 of 2, Tank, Combat, Full-Tracked: 120-MM, M1A1 2350-01-087-1095, General Abrams

---

1812-EXPD-2612: Support Maritime Prepositioning Forces (MPF) Operations Using Automated Information Systems (AIS)

EVALUATION-CODED: NO **SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL:** 12 months

BILLETS: Battalion Logistics Chief

GRADES: MSGT

INITIAL TRAINING SETTING: MOJT

CONDITION: Given the requirement to support MPF operations, commander's guidance, Operations Plan (OPLAN), access to Automated Information Systems (AIS), and references.

STANDARD: To ensure proper identification of logistics support requirements.

PERFORMANCE STEPS:
1. Participate in MPF planning.

2. Participate in unit marshalling and movement operations.
3. Participate in arrival and assembly operations.
4. Participate in regeneration operations.

REFERENCES:
1. FM 3-20.15 Tank Platoon
2. MCO 3500.27B W/ERRATUM Operational Risk Management
3. MCWP 3-12 Marine Corps Tank Employment
4. NWP 22-10 MPF Operations

1812-EXPD-2613: Plan Transportation Support for a Unit Operation/Deployment

EVALUATION-CODED: NO **SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL:** 12 months

BILLETS: Battalion Logistics Chief, Platoon Sergeant, Tank Leader

GRADES: SSGT, GYSGT, MSGT

INITIAL TRAINING SETTING: MOJT

CONDITION: Given a unit's transportation requirement, operations order, listing of supplies, equipment, personnel, and references.

STANDARD: To ensure sufficient transportation assets are available to support unit deployment.

PERFORMANCE STEPS:
1. Review the operations plan to determine specific transportation requirements.
2. Identify Marine Corps strategic mobility concepts.
3. Identify U.S. Transportation Command (Strategic Mobility) concept.
4. Formulate an embarkation plan.
5. Forecast lift requirements.
6. Provide input regarding Force Deployment Planning and Execution (FDP&E).
7. Prepare requests for transportation.
8. Submit transportation requirements to higher headquarters.
9. Disseminate a movement schedule to the appropriate units.
10. Supervise embarkation/movement staging area.
11. Ensure dispatching procedures are correct.

REFERENCES:
1. FM 3-20.15 Tank Platoon
2. JOINT PUB 3-02 Joint Doctrine for Amphibious Operations
3. JOINT PUB 3-02.2 Joint Doctrine for Amphibious Embarkation
4. MCO 3500.27B W/ERRATUM Operational Risk Management
5. MCO 4500.9 Defense Transportation Regulations
6. MCO 4630.6 Military Airlift Command Requirement
7. MCO P4450.12 Storage and Handling of Hazardous Materials
8. MCO P4600.7 USMC Transportation Manual
9. MCO P5090.2 Environmental Compliance and Protection Manual
10. MCWP 3-12 Marine Corps Tank Employment
11. MCWP 5-1 Marine Corps Planning Process

1812-OTH-2701: Advise Supported Unit Commander on Tank Employment in Military Operations Other Than War (MOOTW)

EVALUATION-CODED: NO **SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL:** 12 months

BILLETS: Platoon Sergeant, Tank Commander

GRADES: SGT, SSGT, GYSGT

INITIAL TRAINING SETTING: MOJT

CONDITION: Given a tank unit, supported unit, an operations order, tactical scenario involving MOOTW, specified threat, training area, and appropriate collateral equipment.

STANDARD: Per the references.

PERFORMANCE STEPS:
1. Advise on Tactics, Techniques, and Procedures (TTPs), established by the unit for MOOTW operations.
2. Advise on control measures required for mechanized forces in MOOTW operations.
3. Advise on CSS requirements for MOOTW operations.
4. Advise on employment of tanks in MOOTW operations.

REFERENCES:
1. FM 3-20.15 Tank Platoon
2. MCO 3500.27B W/ERRATUM Operational Risk Management
3. MCWP 3-12 Marine Corps Tank Employment
4. MCWP 3-33 Military Operations Other Than War (MOOTW)

1812-OTH-2702: Establish a Checkpoint

EVALUATION-CODED: NO **SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL:** 12 months

BILLETS: Platoon Sergeant, Tank Commander

GRADES: SGT, SSGT, GYSGT

INITIAL TRAINING SETTING: FORMAL

CONDITION: Given an M1A1 tank unit, a supported infantry unit, operations order directing the establishment of a check point, tactical scenario involving enemy activity near the position, specified threat, training area suitable for mechanized operations, and references.

STANDARD: To control movement through a position.

PERFORMANCE STEPS:
1. Establish vehicle fighting positions as part of overall position; at a minimum establish Target Reference Points (TRPs) by vehicle, element, and unit.
2. Coordinate with dismounts for positions of observations posts, control

points, obstacles and patrols.
3. Publish Rules of Engagement (ROE).

REFERENCES:
1. FM 3-20.15 Tank Platoon
2. MCO 3500.27B W/ERRATUM Operational Risk Management
3. MCWP 3-12 Marine Corps Tank Employment

1812-TAC-2801: Employ Traveling Movement Technique

EVALUATION-CODED: NO **SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL:** 12 months

BILLETS: Platoon Sergeant, Tank Commander

GRADES: SGT, SSGT, GYSGT

INITIAL TRAINING SETTING: FORMAL

CONDITION: Given an M1A tank unit, operations order, a tactical scenario with enemy contact unlikely, specified threat, training area suitable for mechanized operations, and references.

STANDARD: To maintain appropriate vehicle interval and rate of march as terrain allows, maintain security and mutual support between friendly elements when speed is essential, and enemy contact is unlikely.

PERFORMANCE STEPS:
1. Direct the unit to employ the traveling movement technique.
2. Establish the rate of march and catch up speeds.
3. Establish vehicle interval based on the terrain being covered.
4. Maintain control of the formation, ensuring mutual support between the elements and outboard orientation of weapons.
5. Maintain the formation until the situation requires a change.

REFERENCES:
1. FM 21-60 Visual Signals
2. FM 3-20.15 Tank Platoon
3. MCO 3500.27B W/ERRATUM Operational Risk Management
4. MCWP 3-12 Marine Corps Tank Employment

1812-TAC-2802: Employ Traveling Overwatch Movement Technique

EVALUATION-CODED: NO **SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL:** 12 months

BILLETS: Platoon Sergeant, Tank Commander

GRADES: SGT, SSGT, GYSGT

INITIAL TRAINING SETTING: FORMAL

CONDITION: Given an M1A1 tank unit, operations order, a tactical scenario with enemy contact possible, specified threat, training area suitable for mechanized operations, and references.

STANDARD: To facilitate speed when enemy contact is possible, maintain appropriate vehicle interval and rate of march as terrain allows, and maintain security and mutual support between elements.

PERFORMANCE STEPS:
1. Direct the unit to employ the traveling overwatch movement technique.
2. Establish the rate of march and catch up speeds.
3. Establish vehicle interval based on the terrain being covered.
4. Establish lead element and supporting element(s) within the unit.
5. Maintain control of the formation, ensuring mutual support between the elements and outboard orientation of weapons.
6. Maintain the formation until the situation requires a change.

REFERENCES:
1. FM 21-60 Visual Signals
2. FM 3-20.15 Tank Platoon
3. MCO 3500.27B W/ERRATUM Operational Risk Management
4. MCWP 3-12 Marine Corps Tank Employment

1812-TAC-2803: Employ Bounding Overwatch Movement Technique

EVALUATION-CODED: NO **SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL:** 12 months

BILLETS: Platoon Sergeant, Tank Commander

GRADES: SGT, SSGT, GYSGT

INITIAL TRAINING SETTING: FORMAL

CONDITION: Given an M1A1 tank unit, operations order, a tactical scenario with enemy contact likely, specified threat, training area suitable for mechanized operations, and references.

STANDARD: So the unit maintains appropriate vehicle interval, rate of march as terrain allows, and security and mutual support between elements when enemy contact is likely.

PERFORMANCE STEPS:
1. Direct the unit to employ the bounding overwatch technique.
2. Establish the lead element in an overwatch position, direct the size of the elements to bound (i.e. by vehicle, section, or platoon).
3. Direct the next element in the formation to bound to the next covered and concealed position based on the terrain being covered.
4. When the bounding unit is set and has established overwatch on the probable enemy position, it must indicate to the other elements that it is "set" so that they can begin the next bound.
5. When informed that the first bounding element is set, the next element to bound takes the most concealed and covered route to its next overwatch position, establishes overwatch, and indicates that it is "set" to the rest of the unit.
6. Units must employ the most covered and concealed route to their next position, maintain mutual support during their movement, and determine their most likely next position and route to that position while covering the movement of the bounding unit.

7. Continue with the movement technique until enemy contact is made or the situation changes.

REFERENCES:
1. FM 21-60 Visual Signals
2. FM 3-20.15 Tank Platoon
3. MCO 3500.27B W/ERRATUM Operational Risk Management
4. MCWP 3-12 Marine Corps Tank Employment

1812-TAC-2804: Employ Movement Techniques

EVALUATION-CODED: NO **SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL:** 12 months

BILLETS: Platoon Sergeant, Tank Commander

GRADES: SGT, SSGT, GYSGT

INITIAL TRAINING SETTING: FORMAL

CONDITION: Given an M1A1 tank unit, operations order, a tactical scenario, specified threat, training area suitable for mechanized operations, and references.

STANDARD: To maintain control and mutual support throughout the movement.

PERFORMANCE STEPS:
1. Conduct an estimate of the situation based on METT-TC.
2. Determine the most appropriate movement technique based on the estimate of the mission, the terrain to be covered, and the likely hood of enemy contact.
3. Use Traveling when speed is essential and enemy contact is unlikely.
4. Use Traveling Overwatch when speed is important and enemy contact is possible.
5. Use Bounding Overwatch when enemy contact is likely.

REFERENCES:
1. FM 21-60 Visual Signals
2. FM 3-20.15 Tank Platoon
3. MCO 3500.27B W/ERRATUM Operational Risk Management
4. MCWP 3-12 Marine Corps Tank Employment

1812-TAC-2805: Employ Column Formation

EVALUATION-CODED: NO **SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL:** 12 months

BILLETS: Platoon Sergeant, Tank Commander

GRADES: SGT, SSGT, GYSGT

INITIAL TRAINING SETTING: FORMAL

CONDITION: Given an M1A1 tank unit, operations order requiring a tactical road march, a tactical scenario with enemy contact unlikely, specified threat, training area suitable for mechanized operations, and references.

STANDARD: So the unit maintains appropriate vehicle interval, rate of march as terrain allows, and security and mutual support between elements when enemy contact is likely.

PERFORMANCE STEPS:
1. Direct the unit to employ the column formation during a tactical road march.
2. Establish the lead element, rate of march, and catch up speeds.
3. Establish vehicle interval based on the terrain being covered.
4. Maintain control of the formation, ensuring mutual support between the elements and outboard orientation of weapons.
5. Maintain the formation until the unit completes the movement or the situation changes.

REFERENCES:
1. FM 21-60 Visual Signals
2. FM 3-20.15 Tank Platoon
3. MCO 3500.27B W/ERRATUM Operational Risk Management
4. MCWP 3-12 Marine Corps Tank Employment

1812-TAC-2806: Employ Staggered Column Formation

EVALUATION-CODED: NO **SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL:** 12 months

BILLETS: Platoon Sergeant, Tank Commander

GRADES: SGT, SSGT, GYSGT

INITIAL TRAINING SETTING: FORMAL

CONDITION: Given an M1A1 tank unit, operations order requiring a tactical road march, a tactical scenario with enemy contact unlikely, terrain that will support the use of a staggered column vice a column, specified threat, training area suitable for mechanized operations, and references.

STANDARD: So the unit maintains appropriate vehicle interval, rate of march as terrain allows, and security and mutual support between elements when enemy contact is likely.

PERFORMANCE STEPS:
1. Direct the unit to employ the staggered column formation during a tactical road march when the terrain allows this rather than the column formation.
2. Establish the lead element, rate of march, and catch up speeds.
3. Establish vehicle interval based on the terrain being covered.
4. Maintain control of the formation, ensuring mutual support between the elements and outboard orientation of weapons.
5. Maintain the formation until the unit completes the movement or the situation changes.

REFERENCES:
1. FM 21-60 Visual Signals
2. FM 3-20.15 Tank Platoon
3. MCO 3500.27B W/ERRATUM Operational Risk Management
4. MCWP 3-12 Marine Corps Tank Employment

1812-TAC-2807: Employ Vee Formation

EVALUATION-CODED: NO **SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL:** 12 months

BILLETS: Platoon Sergeant, Tank Commander

GRADES: SGT, SSGT, GYSGT

INITIAL TRAINING SETTING: FORMAL

CONDITION: Given an M1A1 tank unit, operations order directing a movement to contact, a tactical scenario with enemy contact likely, specified threat, training area suitable for mechanized operations, and references.

STANDARD: To support tactical movement when enemy contact is likely and fire power is required to the direct front and so the unit maintains appropriate vehicle interval, rate of march as terrain allows, and security and mutual support between elements.

PERFORMANCE STEPS:
1. Direct the unit to employ the vee formation during a movement to contact.
2. Establish the lead element, rate of march, and catch up speeds.
3. Establish vehicle interval based on the terrain being covered.
4. Maintain control of the formation, ensuring mutual support between the elements and outboard orientation of weapons.
5. Maintain the formation until the unit completes the movement or the situation changes.

REFERENCES:
1. FM 21-60 Visual Signals
2. FM 3-20.15 Tank Platoon
3. MCO 3500.27B W/ERRATUM Operational Risk Management
4. MCWP 3-12 Marine Corps Tank Employment

1812-TAC-2808: Employ Wedge Formation

EVALUATION-CODED: NO **SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL:** 12 months

BILLETS: Platoon Sergeant, Tank Commander

GRADES: SGT, SSGT, GYSGT

INITIAL TRAINING SETTING: FORMAL

CONDITION: Given an M1A1 tank unit, operations order directing a movement to contact, tactical scenario with enemy contact likely, specified threat, training area suitable for mechanized operations, and references.

STANDARD: To support tactical movement when enemy contact is likely and flexibility is required and so the unit maintains appropriate vehicle interval, rate of march as terrain allows, and security and mutual support between elements.

PERFORMANCE STEPS:
1. Direct the unit to employ the wedge formation during a movement to contact.
2. Establish the lead element, rate of march, and catch up speeds.
3. Establish vehicle interval based on the terrain being covered.
4. Maintain control of the formation, ensuring mutual support between the elements and outboard orientation of weapons.
5. Maintain the formation until the unit completes the movement or the situation changes.

REFERENCES:
1. FM 21-60 Visual Signals
2. FM 3-20.15 Tank Platoon
3. MCO 3500.27B W/ERRATUM Operational Risk Management
4. MCWP 3-12 Marine Corps Tank Employment

1812-TAC-2809: Employ Line Formation

EVALUATION-CODED: NO **SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL:** 12 months
BILLETS: Platoon Sergeant, Tank Commander

GRADES: SGT, SSGT, GYSGT

INITIAL TRAINING SETTING: FORMAL

CONDITION: Given an M1A1 tank unit, operations order directing a movement, a tactical scenario with enemy contact likely, specified threat, training area suitable for mechanized operations, and references.

STANDARD: To support tactical movement when enemy contact is likely and flexibility is not required and so the unit maintains appropriate vehicle interval, rate of march as terrain allows, and security and mutual support between elements.

PERFORMANCE STEPS:
1. Direct the unit to employ the line formation during a movement.
2. Establish the lead element, rate of march, and catch up speeds.
3. Establish vehicle interval based on the terrain being covered.
4. Maintain control of the formation, ensuring mutual support between the elements and outboard orientation of weapons.
5. Maintain the formation until the unit completes the movement or the situation changes.

REFERENCES:
1. FM 21-60 Visual Signals
2. FM 3-20.15 Tank Platoon
3. MCO 3500.27B W/ERRATUM Operational Risk Management
4. MCWP 3-12 Marine Corps Tank Employment

1812-TAC-2810: Employ Echelon Formation

EVALUATION-CODED: NO **SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL:** 12 months

BILLETS: Platoon Sergeant, Tank Commander

GRADES: SGT, SSGT, GYSGT

INITIAL TRAINING SETTING: FORMAL

CONDITION: Given an M1A1 tank unit, operations order directing a movement to contact, a tactical scenario with enemy contact likely, specified threat, training area suitable for mechanized operations, and references.

STANDARD: To support tactical movement when enemy contact is likely and flexibility is required and so the unit maintains appropriate vehicle interval, rate of march as terrain allows, and security and mutual support between elements.

PERFORMANCE STEPS:
1. Direct the unit to employ the echelon formation during a movement to contact.
2. Establish the lead element, rate of march, and catch up speeds.
3. Establish vehicle interval based on the terrain being covered.
4. Maintain control of the formation, ensuring mutual support between the elements and outboard orientation of weapons.
5. Maintain the formation until the unit completes the movement or the situation changes.

REFERENCES:
1. FM 21-60 Visual Signals
2. FM 3-20.15 Tank Platoon
3. MCO 3500.27B W/ERRATUM Operational Risk Management
4. MCWP 3-12 Marine Corps Tank Employment

1812-TAC-2811: Employ Movement Formation

EVALUATION-CODED: NO **SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL:** 12 months

BILLETS: Platoon Sergeant, Tank Commander

GRADES: SGT, SSGT, GYSGT

INITIAL TRAINING SETTING: FORMAL

CONDITION: Given an M1A1 tank unit, operations order directing movement of the unit, a tactical scenario involving likely enemy contact, specified threat, training area suitable for mechanized operations, and references.

STANDARD: To support the tactical movement of the unit based on METT-TC.

PERFORMANCE STEPS:
1. Conduct terrain analysis of movement area.
2. Conduct threat analysis for movement area.
3. Select appropriate movement technique, rate of march, and interval.

REFERENCES:
1. FM 21-60 Visual Signals

2. FM 3-20.15 Tank Platoon
3. MCO 3500.27B W/ERRATUM Operational Risk Management
4. MCWP 3-12 Marine Corps Tank Employment

1812-TAC-2812: Cross a Danger Area

EVALUATION-CODED: NO **SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL:** 12 months

BILLETS: Platoon Sergeant, Tank Commander

GRADES: SGT, SSGT, GYSGT

INITIAL TRAINING SETTING: FORMAL

CONDITION: Given an M1A1 tank unit, operations order, a tactical scenario, specified threat, training area suitable for mechanized operations, and references.

STANDARD: While maintaining security and mutual support between elements and minimizing exposure to enemy observation and fires.

PERFORMANCE STEPS:
1. Establish near side security.
2. Direct an element to cross, conduct reconnaissance of area on far side large enough for entire unit to establish position in, and establish far side security.
3. Upon confirmation by far side security unit, direct the movement of unit across danger area; keep dust signature and exposure time to a minimum.
4. Establish original march formation after all elements have crossed danger area.

REFERENCES:
1. FM 3-20.15 Tank Platoon
2. MCO 3500.27B W/ERRATUM Operational Risk Management
3. MCWP 3-12 Marine Corps Tank Employment

1812-TAC-2813: Conduct Actions on Contact

EVALUATION-CODED: NO **SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL:** 12 months

BILLETS: Platoon Sergeant, Tank Commander

GRADES: SGT, SSGT, GYSGT

INITIAL TRAINING SETTING: FORMAL

CONDITION: Given an M1A1 tank unit, with or without a supported infantry unit, operations order requiring movement, a tactical scenario with enemy contact likely, specified threat, training area suitable for mechanized operations, and references.

STANDARD: To respond to enemy action by maneuvering the unit and conducting battle drills.

PERFORMANCE STEPS:
1. Return fire if applicable.
2. Alert the rest of the unit/element.
3. Report contact to higher headquarters.
4. Develop the situation.
5. Deploy the unit's firepower to establish suppression on enemy positions.
6. Prepare to conduct bypass, hasty attack, or assume to hasty defense.
7. React to contact with enemy forces to the front.
8. React to contact with enemy forces to the right.
9. React to contact with enemy forces to the left.
10. React to contact with enemy forces to the rear.

REFERENCES:
1. FM 21-60 Visual Signals
2. FM 3-20.15 Tank Platoon
3. MCO 3500.27B W/ERRATUM Operational Risk Management
4. MCWP 3-12 Marine Corps Tank Employment

1812-TAC-2814: Conduct Immediate Action Drills

EVALUATION-CODED: NO **SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL:** 12 months

BILLETS: Platoon Sergeant, Tank Commander

GRADES: SGT, SSGT, GYSGT

INITIAL TRAINING SETTING: FORMAL

CONDITION: Given an M1A1 tank unit, with or without a supported infantry unit, operations order requiring movement, a tactical scenario with enemy contact likely, specified threat, training area suitable for mechanized operations, and references.

STANDARD: To respond to enemy action.

PERFORMANCE STEPS:
1. Employ actions against enemy air attack.
2. Employ actions against enemy direct fire.
3. Employ actions against enemy indirect fire.
4. Employ actions against enemy ambush.
5. Employ change formation drills.

REFERENCES:
1. FM 21-60 Visual Signals
2. FM 3-20.15 Tank Platoon
3. MCO 3500.27B W/ERRATUM Operational Risk Management
4. MCWP 3-12 Marine Corps Tank Employment

1812-TAC-2815: Conduct a Tactical Road March

EVALUATION-CODED: NO **SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL:** 12 months

BILLETS: Platoon Sergeant, Tank Commander

GRADES: SGT, SSGT, GYSGT

INITIAL TRAINING SETTING: FORMAL

CONDITION: Given an M1A1 tank unit, with or without a supported infantry unit, operations order, a tactical scenario, specified threat, training area suitable for mechanized operations, and references.

STANDARD: By departing from the SP and moving through subsequent checkpoints and RP's at the stated time, speed, interval, and order of march.

PERFORMANCE STEPS:

1. Develop and issue a FRAGO to the unit. Order should include: routes to RP and SP, order of march, SP and RP locations and times, designation of quartering parties if appropriate, rate of march and catch up speed, vehicle and unit interval, how routes will be marked and by whom, road restrictions, actions on contact, weapons status, scheduled halts, actions at halts, actions for disabled vehicles, designation and responsibilities for trail parties, actions in assembly area prior to departure, friendly units along the route, designation and responsibilities of security elements, fire support plan, and communications plan.
2. Initiate unit movement.
3. Pass and report start, intermediate check points and release points at stated time, speed, interval, and order of march.
4. Ensure that unit adheres to unit SOP.
5. Maintain weapons orientation, air watch, and mutual support.
6. Maintain command and control.
7. Ensure that unit arrives at the Release Point (RP) at the stated time and reports to higher headquarters.
8. Conduct tactical halts as necessary.

REFERENCES:

1. FM 21-26 Map Reading and Land Navigation
2. FM 21-60 Visual Signals
3. FM 3-20.15 Tank Platoon
4. FM 5-33 Terrain Analysis
5. MCO 3500.27B W/ERRATUM Operational Risk Management
6. MCWP 3-12 Marine Corps Tank Employment

1812-TAC-2816: Conduct Tactical Halt

EVALUATION-CODED: NO **SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL:** 12 months

BILLETS: Platoon Sergeant, Tank Commander

GRADES: SGT, SSGT, GYSGT

INITIAL TRAINING SETTING: FORMAL

CONDITION: Given an M1A1 tank unit, with or without a supported infantry unit, operations order, a tactical scenario, specified threat, training area suitable for mechanized operations, and references.

STANDARD: In a defensible position providing adequate cover and concealment, establishing the appropriate security formation, maintaining local security, and conducting "At-Halt" checks for the vehicles.

PERFORMANCE STEPS:
1. Determine a defensible position with adequate cover and concealment to halt the unit.
2. Advise point element to halt at the farthest point in the position and establish security.
3. Direct the appropriate security formation based on the terrain and threat situation.
4. Vehicles discovering maintenance concerns will pass them through the chain of command for action by maintenance personnel.
5. When all checks are completed, the embarked personnel will return to the vehicles; accountability of all personnel is essential.
6. On order, resume the march formation and continue with the mission.

REFERENCES:
1. FM 3-20.15 Tank Platoon
2. MCO 3500.27B W/ERRATUM Operational Risk Management
3. MCWP 3-12 Marine Corps Tank Employment

1812-TAC-2817: Employ Herringbone Formation

EVALUATION-CODED: NO **SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL:** 12 months

BILLETS: Platoon Sergeant, Tank Commander

GRADES: SGT, SSGT, GYSGT

INITIAL TRAINING SETTING: FORMAL

CONDITION: Given an M1A1 tank unit, with or without a supported infantry unit, operations order, a tactical scenario, specified threat, training area suitable for mechanized operations, and references.

STANDARD: So appropriate interval is maintained and to provide mutual support between the unit's elements.

PERFORMANCE STEPS:
1. Determine a defensible position with adequate cover and concealment along the route of march to halt the unit.
2. Direct lead element of unit to halt near the far end of the position and orient on the direction of march.
3. Elements of the unit maintain their interval and orient outboard based on their position within the formation according to unit SOP.
4. The formation should resemble a staggered column, within the limits of the terrain, with the trace elements oriented toward the rear of the column to ensure complete security.
5. On order, the unit resumes the original formation and direction of march.

REFERENCES:
1. FM 21-60 Visual Signals
2. FM 3-20.15 Tank Platoon

3. MCO 3500.27B W/ERRATUM Operational Risk Management
4. MCWP 3-12 Marine Corps Tank Employment

1812-TAC-2818: Employ Coil Formation

EVALUATION-CODED: NO **SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL:** 12 months

BILLETS: Platoon Sergeant, Tank Commander

GRADES: SGT, SSGT, GYSGT

INITIAL TRAINING SETTING: FORMAL

CONDITION: Given an M1A1 tank unit, with or without a supported infantry unit, operations order, a tactical scenario, specified threat, training area suitable for mechanized operations, and references.

STANDARD: To maintain the appropriate interval and provide mutual support between the unit's elements.

PERFORMANCE STEPS:
1. Determine a defensible position with adequate cover and concealment along the route of march to halt the unit.
2. Direct lead element of unit to halt near the far end of the position and orient on the direction of march.
3. Elements of the unit establish themselves in a circular position based on unit SOP and their position within the formation, with the lead element being at the "12 o'clock" position, determining their interval based on the terrain available.
4. The formation should resemble a circle, within the limits of the terrain, with all elements oriented outward to ensure complete security.
5. On order, the unit resumes the original formation and direction of march.

REFERENCES:
1. FM 21-60 Visual Signals
2. FM 3-20.15 Tank Platoon
3. MCO 3500.27B W/ERRATUM Operational Risk Management
4. MCWP 3-12 Marine Corps Tank Employment

1812-TAC-2819: Conduct Convoy Escort

EVALUATION-CODED: NO **SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL:** 12 months

BILLETS: Platoon Sergeant, Tank Commander

GRADES: SGT, SSGT, GYSGT

INITIAL TRAINING SETTING: MOJT

CONDITION: Given an M1A1 tank platoon, with crews, a supported unit requiring escort, operations order, specified threat, training area suitable for mechanized operations, and references.

STANDARD: Along the prescribed route and all providing all-around security.

PERFORMANCE STEPS:
1. Analyze convoy order. At a minimum the order should emphasize Route of march, order of march, actions at halt, actions in case of vehicle breakdown, actions on contact, chain of command, communications and signal information.
2. Task organize units as part of advance guard, close in protective group, or rear guard.
3. Conduct duties as assigned within the advanced guard, close in protective group, or rear guard.

REFERENCES:
1. FM 3-20.15 Tank Platoon
2. MCO 3500.27B W/ERRATUM Operational Risk Management
3. MCWP 3-12 Marine Corps Tank Employment

1812-TAC-2820: Conduct Night/Limited Visibility Operations

EVALUATION-CODED: NO **SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL:** 12 months

BILLETS: Tank Crewman

GRADES: LCPL, CPL, SGT, SSGT, GYSGT

INITIAL TRAINING SETTING: MOJT

CONDITION: Given an M1A1 tank unit, a supported unit, operations order, tactical scenario involving night or limited visibility, specified threat, training area, appropriate collateral equipment, and references.

STANDARD: To support the commander's intent and scheme of maneuver.

PERFORMANCE STEPS:
1. Prepare vehicle for night/limited visibility operations according to unit SOP and vehicle TM.
2. Establish command and control procedures for night/limited visibility operations according to the operations order and unit SOP.

REFERENCES:
1. FM 3-20.15 Tank Platoon
2. MCO 3500.27B W/ERRATUM Operational Risk Management
3. MCWP 3-12 Marine Corps Tank Employment

1812-TAC-2821: Supervise Use of Camouflage, Cover and Concealment by Unit

EVALUATION-CODED: NO **SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL:** 12 months

BILLETS: Platoon Sergeant, Tank Commander

GRADES: SGT, SSGT, GYSGT

INITIAL TRAINING SETTING: FORMAL

CONDITION: Given an M1A1 tank unit, a supported unit, operations order, tactical scenario, training area, appropriate collateral equipment, and references.

STANDARD: With the most appropriate method considering the tactical scenario, natural vegetation, terrain, and weather.

REFERENCES:
1. FM 20-3 Camouflage
2. FM 3-20.15 Tank Platoon
3. MCO 3500.27B W/ERRATUM Operational Risk Management
4. MCWP 3-12 Marine Corps Tank Employment

1812-TAC-2822: Conduct a Mechanized Patrol

EVALUATION-CODED: NO **SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL:** 12 months

BILLETS: Platoon Sergeant

GRADES: SSGT, GYSGT

INITIAL TRAINING SETTING: MOJT

CONDITION: Given an M1A1 tank unit, a supported infantry unit, operations order directing a mechanized patrol, tactical scenario involving a fluid enemy situation allowing the relative easy movement of friendly forces, specified threat, training area suitable for mechanized operations, and references.

STANDARD: To determine the disposition and composition of enemy forces in the area, locate any obstacles to friendly movement along the route, and prevent enemy use of the route.

PERFORMANCE STEPS:
1. Issue warning order.
2. Submit patrol plan to higher headquarters.
3. Issue approved patrol order to unit.
4. Conduct coordination with forward unit prior to departure.
5. Conduct passage of lines.
6. Execute patrol order.
7. Return to friendly position.
8. Conduct after operations checks and services.
9. Debrief the patrol.

REFERENCES:
1. FM 3-20.15 Tank Platoon
2. MCO 3500.27B W/ERRATUM Operational Risk Management
3. MCWP 3-12 Marine Corps Tank Employment

1812-TAC-2823: Participate in a Reconnaissance in Force

EVALUATION-CODED: NO **SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL:** 12 months

BILLETS: Platoon Sergeant, Tank Commander

GRADES: SGT, SSGT, GYSGT

INITIAL TRAINING SETTING: MOJT

CONDITION: Given an M1A1 tank unit, a supported infantry unit, operations order directing a reconnaissance in force, tactical scenario involving an uncertain enemy situation, specified threat, training area suitable for mechanized operations, and references.

STANDARD: To determine the enemy's composition and disposition, identify his positions, force him to commit his reserves, and determine his most likely course of action.

PERFORMANCE STEPS:
1. Conduct movement to contact, maintaining a sizeable reserve element to develop the situation.
2. Locate the enemy's main defensive system, bypassing and reporting enemy outposts and patrols.
3. Conduct hasty attacks to force the enemy to expose his positions and weapons, especially armor, anti-armor, and artillery units.
4. Employ the reserve element to exploit any gaps in enemy positions and seize key or decisive terrain.
5. Avoid becoming decisively engaged.
6. Conduct combat reporting as required.

REFERENCES:
1. FM 3-20.15 Tank Platoon
2. MCO 3500.27B W/ERRATUM Operational Risk Management
3. MCWP 3-12 Marine Corps Tank Employment

1812-TAC-2824: Conduct a Movement to Contact

EVALUATION-CODED: NO **SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL:** 12 months

BILLETS: Platoon Sergeant, Tank Commander

GRADES: SGT, SSGT, GYSGT

INITIAL TRAINING SETTING: FORMAL

CONDITION: Given an M1A1 tank unit, a supported infantry unit, operations order requiring a movement to contact, tactical scenario with a stationary suspected enemy, specified threat, training area suitable for mechanized operations, and references.

STANDARD: So the unit moves from the SP/FEBA toward the suspected enemy position using the most covered and concealed route, utilizing the movement formation that provides maximum security; and locate, isolate, and report the enemy's main lines.

PERFORMANCE STEPS:

1. Issue a warning order to the unit upon receipt of the order.
2. Conduct mission analysis.
3. Request any additional information or assets not originally provided in the OPORD.
4. Coordinate with the unit directing the route reconnaissance for frequencies and call signs, pass words, recognition signals, fire support, MEDEVACS, threat information, and passage of friendly lines prior to departing the friendly position.
5. Brief the unit on the mission.
6. Pass the SP at the designated time, reporting to the supported unit.
7. Report all control points and major events as they develop.
8. Assess any key or decisive terrain dominating the route; determine whether the terrain is in the hands of the enemy.
9. Report on the disposition and composition of any forward enemy forces encountered; bypass the enemy's combat reconnaissance patrols and outposts.
10. Report on the composition and disposition of the enemy's forces including: forward positions between friendly and enemy main forces, main line of resistance, anti-tank systems by type and location, armored units by type and location, artillery units by type and location, and obstacle and mine fields encountered.

REFERENCES:

1. FM 3-20.15 Tank Platoon
2. MCO 3500.27B W/ERRATUM Operational Risk Management
3. MCWP 3-12 Marine Corps Tank Employment

1812-TAC-2825: Conduct a Meeting Engagement

EVALUATION-CODED: NO **SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL:** 12 months

BILLETS: Platoon Sergeant, Tank Commander

GRADES: SGT, SSGT, GYSGT

INITIAL TRAINING SETTING: FORMAL

CONDITION: Given an M1A1 tank unit, a supported infantry unit, operations order directing a movement to contact, tactical scenario with a maneuvering enemy, specified threat, training area suitable for mechanized operations, and references.

STANDARD: So that upon contact with the enemy's forces, direct the unit's movement and direct fires in the form of immediate action drills and coordinate supporting arms to breakup enemy formations and degrade his command and control; maintain the initiative through superior fires and movement rates; and destroy or degrade the enemy's forces to the point that he must surrender the initiative and assume the defensive or conduct a retrograde movement.

PERFORMANCE STEPS:

1. Issue a warning order to the unit upon receipt of the order.
2. Conduct mission analysis.
3. Request any additional information or assets not originally provided in

the OPORD.
4. Coordinate with the unit directing the route reconnaissance for frequencies and call signs, pass words, recognition signals, fire support, MEDEVACS, threat information, and passage of friendly lines prior to departing the friendly position.
5. Brief the unit on the mission.
6. Pass the SP at the designated time, reporting to the supported unit.
7. Report all control points and major events as they develop.
8. Assess any key or decisive terrain dominating the route; determine whether the terrain is in the hands of the enemy.
9. Direct immediate action drills/actions on contact when making contact with the enemy's forces.
10. Coordinate the unit's fires and maneuvers in order to gain fire superiority and maintain the initiative through superior fires and rates of movement.
11. Coordinate supporting arms fires in order to break up the enemy's formations and disrupt his command and control.
12. Develop the engagement in such a way as to destroy his forces or force him to conduct a retrograde movement from the field.
13. Report on the composition and disposition of the enemy's forces including: forward positions between friendly and enemy main forces, main line of resistance, anti-tank systems by type and location, armored units by type and location, artillery units by type and location, and obstacles and mine fields encountered.

REFERENCES:
1. FM 3-20.15 Tank Platoon
2. MCO 3500.27B W/ERRATUM Operational Risk Management
3. MCWP 3-12 Marine Corps Tank Employment

1812-TAC-2826: Conduct a Bypass

EVALUATION-CODED: NO **SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL:** 12 months

BILLETS: Platoon Sergeant, Tank Commander

GRADES: SGT, SSGT, GYSGT

INITIAL TRAINING SETTING: MOJT

CONDITION: Given a tank unit, supported infantry unit, an operations order requiring a movement to contact, a tactical scenario with a stationary suspected enemy, a specified threat, a training area suitable for mechanized operations, and the references.

STANDARD: So that the unit moves around an obstacle, position, or enemy force to maintain the momentum of advance.

PERFORMANCE STEPS:
1. Issue FRAGO after initial contact.
2. Identify enemy positions using reconnaissance by observation or fire; do not become engaged.
3. Set one element of the unit in over watch of the identified enemy position.

4. Maneuver the rest of the unit through the most covered and concealed route available; taking care to minimize exposure to enemy fire and observation.
5. When the maneuvering unit has cleared the enemy position and established overwatch on the enemy, move the original overwatch unit along the same route.
6. Reconstitute the unit and continue with the original mission.
7. Conduct combat reporting as appropriate.

REFERENCES:
1. FM 3-20.15 Tank Platoon
2. MCO 3500.27B W/ERRATUM Operational Risk Management
3. MCWP 3-12 Marine Corps Tank Employment

1812-TAC-2827: Participate in a Mounted Attack

EVALUATION-CODED: NO **SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL:** 12 months

BILLETS: Platoon Sergeant, Tank Commander

GRADES: SGT, SSGT, GYSGT

INITIAL TRAINING SETTING: MOJT

CONDITION: Given an M1A1 tank unit, a supported infantry unit, operations order directing a movement to contact, tactical scenario with a stationary enemy unit (command and control, artillery, or service support) on a low alert status, specified threat, training area suitable for mechanized operations, and references.

STANDARD: To support the commander's intent and scheme of fire and maneuver.

PERFORMANCE STEPS:
1. Conduct movement to contact.
2. Identify enemy unit during movement to contact.
3. Issue FRAGO to unit, assigning sectors of fire and maneuver, limit of advance, dismount/reverse point, and coordinating instructions.
4. Pass through enemy unit using speed, surprise, and shock to limit enemy's reaction.
5. Direct secondary effort after unit reverses direction.
6. Coordinate dismounting embarked troops based on strength of enemy opposition.
7. Conduct consolidation and reorganization.
8. Conduct combat reporting.

REFERENCES:
1. FM 3-20.15 Tank Platoon
2. MCO 3500.27B W/ERRATUM Operational Risk Management
3. MCWP 3-12 Marine Corps Tank Employment

1812-TAC-2828: Conduct a Hasty Attack

EVALUATION-CODED: NO **SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL:** 12 months

BILLETS: Platoon Sergeant, Tank Commander

GRADES: SGT, SSGT, GYSGT

INITIAL TRAINING SETTING: FORMAL

CONDITION: Given an M1A1 tank unit, a supported infantry unit, fragmentary order directing a hasty attack, tactical scenario involving a stationary enemy force, specified threat, training area suitable for mechanized operations, and references.

STANDARD: To engage the enemy with resources immediately available to maintain momentum or take advantage of enemy situation.

PERFORMANCE STEPS:
1. Issue Warning Order to unit.
2. Receive and analyze FRAGO from higher unit.
3. Request additional information and support not originally contained in the FRAGO.
4. Issue FRAGO to unit, assigning: known enemy dispositions, timelines, tasks to subordinates, coordinating instructions unique to the attack, control measures required for the attack including time of attack, SP, routes, axis, RP, sectors, phase lines, attack positions, limit of advance, rally points, fire support control measures, and objectives.
5. Initiate unit movement.
6. Conduct unit movement to assault position and coordinate dismounting embarked troops.
7. Provide support by fire as directed within the FRAGO.
8. Secure objective.
9. Consolidate and reorganize unit as necessary, prepare for enemy counterattack.
10. Report all control measures and status of unit at end of attack.

REFERENCES:
1. FM 3-20.15 Tank Platoon
2. MCO 3500.27B W/ERRATUM Operational Risk Management
3. MCWP 3-12 Marine Corps Tank Employment

1812-TAC-2829: Conduct Attack Position Activities

EVALUATION-CODED: NO **SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL:** 12 months

BILLETS: Platoon Sergeant, Tank Commander

GRADES: SGT, SSGT, GYSGT

INITIAL TRAINING SETTING: FORMAL

CONDITION: Given an M1A1 tank unit, a supported infantry unit, operations order directing a deliberate attack, tactical scenario involving a stationary enemy, specified threat, training area suitable for mechanized operations, and references.

STANDARD: To account for unit elements, conduct weapons checks, adopt maneuver formations, and initiate the movement.

PERFORMANCE STEPS:
1. Following passage of friendly lines, move to a covered and concealed position.
2. Account for all elements of the unit.
3. Conduct vehicle checks to determine mechanical casualties during the movement to the attack position; conduct corrective maintenance and reorganization as necessary.
4. Conduct weapons checks as the situation allows.
5. Begin movement toward objective.

REFERENCES:
1. FM 3-20.15 Tank Platoon
2. MCO 3500.27B W/ERRATUM Operational Risk Management
3. MCWP 3-12 Marine Corps Tank Employment

1812-TAC-2830: Conduct Assault Position Activities

EVALUATION-CODED: NO **SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL:** 12 months

BILLETS: Platoon Sergeant, Tank Commander

GRADES: SGT, SSGT, GYSGT

INITIAL TRAINING SETTING: FORMAL

CONDITION: Given an M1A1 tank unit, a supported infantry unit, operations order directing a deliberate attack, tactical scenario involving a stationary enemy, specified threat, training area suitable for mechanized operations, and references.

STANDARD: To account for all elements of the unit, conduct any final coordination or reorganization required, and initiate the assault.

PERFORMANCE STEPS:
1. Move the unit into a covered and concealed position just beyond enemy observation and fire from the unit's objective using the appropriate security formation.
2. Account for all elements of the unit prior to initiating the assault.
3. Provide observation and supporting fires for assault element as they organize for the assault.
4. Conduct any final coordination or reorganization necessary.
5. Initiate assault with supporting fires as appropriate.
6. Displace to attack by fire/support by fire positions in accordance with the operations order.

REFERENCES:
1. FM 3-20.15 Tank Platoon
2. MCO 3500.27B W/ERRATUM Operational Risk Management
3. MCWP 3-12 Marine Corps Tank Employment

1812-TAC-2831: Assault Enemy Positions

EVALUATION-CODED: NO **SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL:** 12 months

BILLETS: Platoon Sergeant, Tank Commander

GRADES: SGT, SSGT, GYSGT

INITIAL TRAINING SETTING: MOJT

CONDITION: Given an M1A1 tank unit, a supported infantry unit, operations order directing a deliberate attack, tactical scenario involving a stationary enemy, specified threat, training area suitable for mechanized operations, and references.

STANDARD: To destroy enemy forces.

PERFORMANCE STEPS:
1. Establish overwatch elements to provide observation and supporting fires.
2. Employ preparatory fires when appropriate.
3. Move assault elements along designated routes using maximum cover and concealment.
4. Breach enemy obstacles as necessary.
5. Maintain momentum and mutual support as units advance.
6. Employ all weapons according to engagement criteria to destroy the enemy in detail and eliminate all resistance on the objective.
7. Shift supporting arms as units advance.
8. Move beyond objective to limit of advance.
9. Consolidate unit on objective.
10. Prepare for enemy counterattack.
11. Conduct reorganization, resupply, and evacuations.

REFERENCES:
1. FM 3-20.15 Tank Platoon
2. MCO 3500.27B W/ERRATUM Operational Risk Management
3. MCWP 3-12 Marine Corps Tank Employment

1812-TAC-2832: Conduct a Deliberate Attack

EVALUATION-CODED: NO **SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL:** 12 months

BILLETS: Platoon Sergeant, Tank Commander

GRADES: SGT, SSGT, GYSGT

INITIAL TRAINING SETTING: FORMAL

CONDITION: Given an M1A1 tank unit, a supported infantry unit, operations order directing a deliberate attack, tactical scenario with a stationary enemy unit, specified threat, training area suitable for mechanized operations, and references.

STANDARD: To destroy the enemy and/or seize the objective with minimal loss of equipment and personnel.

PERFORMANCE STEPS:

1. Acknowledge receipt of the higher unit's warning order and initiate detailed planning.
2. Issue warning order to subordinate units.
3. Conduct mission analysis. Identify specified, implied, and essential tasks, assumptions, restrictions, and limitations.
4. Request information and support not provided in the operations order.
5. Develop and issue the operations order for the unit.
6. Establish liaison with higher, adjacent and supporting units, as appropriate request direct liaison when appropriate.
7. Conduct rehearsals as time permits.
8. Conduct leaders' reconnaissance as time permits.
9. Coordinate passage of lines with unit in contact with enemy force.
10. Conduct forward passage of lines with unit in contact with enemy force.
11. Cross Line of Departure (LOD).
12. Conduct movement to attack/assault positions.
13. Conduct attack/assault position activities.
14. Initiate prepatory fires if included in the operations order.
15. Provide support by fire.
16. Conduct other mission as assigned by the operations order.
17. Conduct breach of enemy obstacle belt as necessary.
18. Assault enemy objectives.
19. Prepare for enemy counterattack.
20. Conduct consolidation and reorganization on the objective.

REFERENCES:

1. FM 3-20.15 Tank Platoon
2. MCO 3500.27B W/ERRATUM Operational Risk Management
3. MCWP 3-12 Marine Corps Tank Employment

1812-TAC-2833: Participate in Attack on Strongpoint

EVALUATION-CODED: NO **SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL:** 12 months

BILLETS: Platoon Sergeant, Tank Commander

GRADES: SGT, SSGT, GYSGT

INITIAL TRAINING SETTING: MOJT

CONDITION: Given an M1A1 tank unit, a supported infantry unit, operations order directing an attack on an enemy strongpoint, tactical scenario involving an enemy in a prepared position, specified threat, training area suitable for mechanized operations, and references.

STANDARD: To support commander's intent and scheme of maneuver.

PERFORMANCE STEPS:

1. Coordinate movement of embarked troop to the assault position.
2. Provide overwatch and supporting fires while embarked unit forms for attack.
3. Displace to support/attack by fire positions and conduct assigned fire support missions.
4. Conduct other missions as assigned in the operations order.

REFERENCES:
1. FM 3-20.15 Tank Platoon
2. MCO 3500.27B W/ERRATUM Operational Risk Management
3. MCWP 3-12 Marine Corps Tank Employment

1812-TAC-2834: Conduct a Feint

EVALUATION-CODED: NO **SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL:** 12 months

BILLETS: Platoon Sergeant, Tank Commander

GRADES: SGT, SSGT, GYSGT

INITIAL TRAINING SETTING: MOJT

CONDITION: Given an M1A1 tank unit, a supported infantry unit, operations order directing a feint, tactical scenario involving a known enemy position with reserves, specified threat, training area suitable for mechanized operations, and references.

STANDARD: To deceive the enemy as to the real direction of the main effort, force him to reveal the composition and disposition of his local forces and commit his local reserves.

PERFORMANCE STEPS:
1. Conduct planning along the lines of a deliberate attack, establishing a limit of advance that keep's the unit from becoming engaged in the enemy's obstacle belts or becoming decisively engaged with his main elements.
2. Unit must conduct a limited attack that threatens a vital enemy position in such strength as to convince him that it is a full scale attack.
3. Avoid becoming decisively engaged.
4. Unit disengages from enemy once his reserve elements have been committed, friendly losses exceed 5 per cent, or main attack is successful.

REFERENCES:
1. FM 3-20.15 Tank Platoon
2. MCO 3500.27B W/ERRATUM Operational Risk Management
3. MCWP 3-12 Marine Corps Tank Employment

1812-TAC-2835: Participate in an Exploitation

EVALUATION-CODED: NO **SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL:** 12 months

BILLETS: Platoon Sergeant, Tank Commander

GRADES: SGT, SSGT, GYSGT

INITIAL TRAINING SETTING: MOJT

CONDITION: Given an M1A1 tank unit, a supported infantry unit, operations order directing the conduct of an exploitation, tactical scenario involving a successful assault on an enemy position and a resulting gap in his positions that allows entry into his rear elements, specified threat, training area suitable for mechanized operations, and references.

STANDARD: To penetrate into the enemy's rear areas and disrupt his command and control and logistics capabilities.

PERFORMANCE STEPS:
1. Conduct mission analysis.
2. Task organize unit.
3. Issue operations order.
4. Cross LD/conduct passage of lines as appropriate.
5. Select movement technique/formation as appropriate.
6. Conduct movement to contact through enemy rear areas.
7. Determine whether to bypass or attack enemy formations as they are encountered.
8. Direct attack on established objectives.
9. Direct consolidation and reorganization on the objective.
10. Direct preparation for continuation of offensive operations.

REFERENCES:
1. FM 3-20.15 Tank Platoon
2. MCO 3500.27B W/ERRATUM Operational Risk Management
3. MCWP 3-12 Marine Corps Tank Employment

1812-TAC-2836: Participate in a Pursuit

EVALUATION-CODED: NO **SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL:** 12 months

BILLETS: Platoon Sergeant, Tank Commander

GRADES: SGT, SSGT, GYSGT

INITIAL TRAINING SETTING: MOJT

CONDITION: Given an M1A1 tank unit, a supported infantry unit, operations order directing the pursuit of a defeated enemy, tactical scenario involving the successful penetration of an enemy position and the pursuit of remnants of his forces, specified threat, training area suitable for mechanized operations, and references.

STANDARD: To prevent the reorganization of enemy forces.

PERFORMANCE STEPS:
1. Conduct movement to contact, maintaining a sizeable reserve element to develop the situation.
2. Locate the enemy's rear guard elements, bypassing and reporting enemy outposts and patrols.
3. Conduct hasty attacks to force the enemy to expose his positions and weapons, especially armor, anti-armor, and artillery units.
4. Employ the reserve element to exploit any gaps in enemy positions and seize key or decisive terrain.
5. Avoid becoming decisively engaged.

REFERENCES:
1. FM 3-20.15 Tank Platoon
2. MCO 3500.27B W/ERRATUM Operational Risk Management
3. MCWP 3-12 Marine Corps Tank Employment

1812-TAC-2837: Serve as a Reserve

EVALUATION-CODED: NO **SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL:** 12 months

BILLETS: Platoon Sergeant, Tank Commander

GRADES: SGT, SSGT, GYSGT

INITIAL TRAINING SETTING: FORMAL

CONDITION: Given an M1A1 tank unit, a supported infantry unit, operations order directing a deliberate attack and assigning a reserve mission to the unit, tactical scenario involving an enemy with sufficient forces to require the commitment of the reserves to seize the objective and complete consolidation, specified threat, training area suitable for mechanized operations, and references.

STANDARD: To disrupt local enemy counterattacks, provide reinforcement to the main effort, and conduct casualty evacuation or resupply operations as the situation develops.

PERFORMANCE STEPS:
1. Coordinate with elements where reserve may be committed.
2. Obtain and update control measures, obstacle plans, and fire support plans of units operating in zones and areas where reserve may be committed.
3. Obtain and update frequencies, call signs, and recognition signals of units operating in zones and areas where reserve may be committed.
4. Establish and maintain liaison with headquarters controlling reserve operations.
5. Conduct reconnaissance of zones and areas where reserve may be committed.
6. Conduct rehearsals of routes to be used during reserve operations to the extent possible.
7. Maintain appropriate alert status as directed by headquarters controlling reserve operations.

REFERENCES:
1. FM 3-20.15 Tank Platoon
2. MCO 3500.27B W/ERRATUM Operational Risk Management
3. MCWP 3-12 Marine Corps Tank Employment

1812-TAC-2838: Conduct an Exfiltration

EVALUATION-CODED: NO **SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL:** 12 months

BILLETS: Platoon Sergeant, Tank Commander

GRADES: SGT, SSGT, GYSGT

INITIAL TRAINING SETTING: MOJT

CONDITION: Given an M1A1 tank unit, a supported infantry unit, operations order directing an exfiltration by a mechanized force, tactical scenario with a fluid enemy situation and weak forward elements, specified threat, training area suitable for mechanized operations, and references.

STANDARD: To linkup with friendly elements without detection through the maximum use of night/limited visibility and cover and concealment.

PERFORMANCE STEPS:
1. Conduct reconnaissance of enemy positions to determine the following: forward positions, main line of defense, obstacles and mines, gaps in the enemy's defenses, composition and disposition of enemy defenses at objective, potential routes, lanes, assembly areas, rally points, and objectives.
2. Plan exfiltration to include: routes, checkpoints, rally points, sequence of movement, fire support, element size and equipment, and link up with friendly elements.
3. Conduct exfiltration by: maintaining communication, breaking down into elements at designated release points, taking advantage of weaknesses in enemy positions, avoiding enemy contact, ignoring ineffective enemy fires, maintain dispersion and strict noise/light/ camouflage discipline, enforcing radio silence, employing artillery and related battlefield noise to mask movement, avoiding enemy contact by halting and hiding, and engaging the enemy only when forced and primarily with indirect fires.

REFERENCES:
1. FM 3-20.15 Tank Platoon
2. MCO 3500.27B W/ERRATUM Operational Risk Management
3. MCWP 3-12 Marine Corps Tank Employment

1812-TAC-2839: Conduct an Infiltration

EVALUATION-CODED: NO **SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL:** 12 months

BILLETS: Platoon Sergeant, Tank Commander

GRADES: SGT, SSGT, GYSGT

INITIAL TRAINING SETTING: MOJT

CONDITION: Given an M1A1 tank unit, a supported infantry unit, operations order directing an infiltration by a mechanized force, tactical scenario with a fluid enemy situation and weak forward elements, specified threat, training area suitable for mechanized operations, and references.

STANDARD: Through enemy forward positions to his rear areas without detection utilizing maximum use of night/limited visibility and cover and concealment.

PERFORMANCE STEPS:
1. Conduct reconnaissance of enemy positions to determine the following: forward positions, main line of defense, obstacles and mines, gaps in the enemy's defenses, composition and disposition of enemy defenses at objective, potential routes, lanes, assembly areas, rally points, and objectives.
2. Plan infiltration to include: routes, checkpoints, rally points, sequence of movement, fire support, element size and equipment, and link up with friendly elements.
3. Conduct infiltration by: maintaining communication, breaking down into

elements at designated release points, taking advantage of weaknesses in enemy positions, avoiding enemy contact, ignoring ineffective enemy fires, maintain dispersion and strict noise/light/camouflage discipline, enforcing radio silence, employing artillery and related battlefield noise to mask movement, avoiding enemy contact by halting and hiding, and engaging the enemy only when forced and primarily with indirect fires.

REFERENCES:
1. FM 3-20.15 Tank Platoon
2. MCO 3500.27B W/ERRATUM Operational Risk Management
3. MCWP 3-12 Marine Corps Tank Employment

1812-TAC-2840: Participate in a Mechanized Raid

EVALUATION-CODED: NO **SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL:** 12 months

BILLETS: Platoon Sergeant, Tank Commander

GRADES: SGT, SSGT, GYSGT

INITIAL TRAINING SETTING: FORMAL

CONDITION: Given an M1A1 tank unit, a supported infantry unit, operations order directing a mechanized raid on a known enemy position, tactical scenario involving a fluid enemy disposition allowing for movement between his units, specified threat, training area suitable for mechanized operations, and references.

STANDARD: To attack a limited enemy objective and return to friendly positions with minimal loss of personnel and equipment and without becoming decisively engaged.

PERFORMANCE STEPS:
1. Receive operations order.
2. Coordinate passage of lines with friendly unit for both departure and return.
3. Conduct forward passage of lines.
4. Move to objective along the most covered and concealed route possible, avoiding enemy observation and detection as much as possible.
5. Attack and destroy raid objective with minimal loss of friendly elements.
6. Return to friendly units along the most covered and concealed route available, avoiding enemy observation and detection as much as possible.
7. Conduct passage of lines through friendly unit.

REFERENCES:
1. FM 3-20.15 Tank Platoon
2. MCO 3500.27B W/ERRATUM Operational Risk Management
3. MCWP 3-12 Marine Corps Tank Employment

1812-TAC-2841: Conduct a Hasty Ambush

EVALUATION-CODED: NO **SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL:** 12 months

BILLETS: Platoon Sergeant, Tank Commander

GRADES: SGT, SSGT, GYSGT

INITIAL TRAINING SETTING: FORMAL

CONDITION: Given an M1A1 tank unit, a supported infantry unit, operations order directing the unit to secure a specified route or area, tactical scenario involving enemy mechanized patrols in the unit's assigned area, specified threat, training area suitable for mechanized operations, and references.

STANDARD: To destroy enemy patrols and forces, disrupt his efforts to gain information on friendly positions and intentions, and screen the areas forward of the FEBA.

PERFORMANCE STEPS:
1. Identify enemy moving through area of operations.
2. Determine likely route of enemy formations and potential ambush sites along that route that can be used.
3. Issue FRAGO to unit.
4. Position elements of the unit to maintain observation of enemy unit.
5. Direct remaining elements to establish covered and concealed positions at the ambush site.
6. Allow enemy formation to enter ambush site.
7. Trigger ambush with prearranged signal.
8. Destroy enemy elements within the ambush site.
9. Send elements into the ambush site, under cover of over watch element, to search for enemy wounded and important documents.
10. Recovery enemy wounded for treatment and any documentation considered important.
11. Reassemble unit, account for all personnel and equipment, depart unit before enemy reaction force arrives.

REFERENCES:
1. FM 3-20.15 Tank Platoon
2. MCO 3500.27B W/ERRATUM Operational Risk Management
3. MCWP 3-12 Marine Corps Tank Employment

1812-TAC-2842: Conduct a Deliberate Ambush

EVALUATION-CODED: NO **SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL:** 12 months

BILLETS: Platoon Sergeant, Tank Commander

GRADES: SGT, SSGT, GYSGT

INITIAL TRAINING SETTING: FORMAL

CONDITION: Given an M1A1 tank unit, a supported infantry unit, operations order directing the unit to secure a specified route or area, tactical scenario involving enemy mechanized patrols in the unit's assigned area, specified threat, training area suitable for mechanized operations, and references.

STANDARD: To destroy enemy patrols and forces, disrupt his efforts to gain information on friendly positions and intentions, and screen the areas forward of the FEBA.

PERFORMANCE STEPS:
1. Issue warning order for element to prepare for ambush.
2. Conduct map reconnaissance or personal reconnaissance if possible to determine ambush site based on terrain and enemy movement patterns.
3. Conduct passage of lines and move to ambush site.
4. Establish ambush site.
5. Conduct ambush to include searching kill zone for wounded, documents, and equipment.
6. Return to friendly position; ensuring transportation of EPWs and captured documents.

REFERENCES:
1. FM 3-20.15 Tank Platoon
2. MCO 3500.27B W/ERRATUM Operational Risk Management
3. MCWP 3-12 Marine Corps Tank Employment

1812-TAC-2843: Conduct Linkup

EVALUATION-CODED: NO **SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL:** 12 months

BILLETS: Platoon Sergeant, Tank Commander

GRADES: SGT, SSGT, GYSGT

INITIAL TRAINING SETTING: MOJT

CONDITION: Given an M1A1 tank unit, a supported infantry unit, operations order directing the linkup of two friendly units, tactical scenario with enemy contact unlikely, specified threat, training area suitable for mechanized operations, and references.

STANDARD: As either a stationary or moving unit.

PERFORMANCE STEPS:
1. Establish liaison as appropriate.
2. Exchange frequencies, call signs, recognition signals, and obstacle plans as appropriate.
3. Stationary force assumes responsibility for fire support and local security during linkup.
4. Moving force conducts tactical road march to stationary forces position.
5. Stationary force provides guides and coordinates linkup.
6. Moving force assumes prearranged position.
7. Moving force uses guides and quartering party as appropriate.

REFERENCES:
1. FM 3-20.15 Tank Platoon
2. MCO 3500.27B W/ERRATUM Operational Risk Management
3. MCWP 3-12 Marine Corps Tank Employment

1812-TAC-2844: Conduct a Hasty Defense

EVALUATION-CODED: NO **SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL:** 12 months

BILLETS: Platoon Sergeant, Tank Commander

GRADES: SGT, SSGT, GYSGT

INITIAL TRAINING SETTING: FORMAL

CONDITION: Given an M1A1 tank unit, a supported infantry unit, operations order directing the hasty defense of a position, tactical scenario involving enemy attack on the position, specified threat, training area suitable for mechanized operations, and references.

STANDARD: Against the enemy's attack employing supporting arms, obstacles and mines as time permits, and limited counterattacks as appropriate to disrupt his formations and defeat his assault with minimal loss of personnel and equipment.

PERFORMANCE STEPS:
1. Establish vehicle fighting positions to include fire plans, if time permits. At a minimum establish Target Reference Points (TRPs) by vehicle, element, and unit when conducting the hasty defense of a battle position.
2. Employ supporting arms to disrupt enemy movement and establish suppression in accordance with engagement criteria established in the OPORD/FRAGO.
3. Employ vehicle weapons to destroy enemy troops and vehicles in accordance with engagement criteria established in the OPORD/FRAGO.
4. Displace to alternate, supplementary, and subsequent positions in accordance with disengagement criteria established in the OPORD/FRAGO.
5. Conduct local counterattacks as appropriate.
6. Conduct combat reporting as appropriate.
7. Conduct consolidation and reorganization as appropriate.

REFERENCES:
1. FM 3-20.15 Tank Platoon
2. MCO 3500.27B W/ERRATUM Operational Risk Management
3. MCWP 3-12 Marine Corps Tank Employment

1812-TAC-2845: Displace to Supplementary Positions

EVALUATION-CODED: NO **SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL:** 12 months

BILLETS: Platoon Sergeant, Tank Commander

GRADES: SGT, SSGT, GYSGT

INITIAL TRAINING SETTING: FORMAL

CONDITION: Given an M1A1 tank unit, a supported infantry unit, operations order directing the establishment of a defensive position, tactical scenario involving limited enemy activity in the next twenty-four hours, specified threat, training area suitable for mechanized operations, and references.

STANDARD: Along prescribed routes in day and night conditions, placing the vehicle in the prescribed position and validating the range card for that position.

PERFORMANCE STEPS:
1. Establish supplementary positions to include sketch card and fire plan, marking the position for use in day or night, and rehearsing movement to the position.
2. Displace to supplementary positions in accordance with disengagement criteria established in the OPORD/FRAGO.

REFERENCES:
1. FM 3-20.15 Tank Platoon
2. MCO 3500.27B W/ERRATUM Operational Risk Management
3. MCWP 3-12 Marine Corps Tank Employment

1812-TAC-2846: Defend a Battle Position

EVALUATION-CODED: NO **SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL:** 12 months

BILLETS: Platoon Sergeant, Tank Commander

GRADES: SGT, SSGT, GYSGT

INITIAL TRAINING SETTING: FORMAL

CONDITION: Given an M1A1 tank unit, a supported infantry unit, operations order directing the defense of a battle position, tactical scenario involving a deliberate enemy attack on the battle position, specified threat, training area suitable for mechanized operations, and references.

STANDARD: Against the enemy's deliberate attack employing supporting arms, obstacles and mines, and limited counterattacks as appropriate to disrupt his formations, interdict his supplies and reserves, and defeat his assault with minimal loss of personnel and equipment.

PERFORMANCE STEPS:
1. Establish vehicle fighting positions to include fire plans, if time permits; at a minimum establish Target Reference Points (TRPs) by vehicle, element, and unit when conducting the hasty defense of a battle position.
2. Employ supporting arms to disrupt enemy movement and establish suppression in accordance with engagement criteria established in the OPORD/FRAGO.
3. Employ vehicle weapons to destroy enemy troops and vehicles in accordance with engagement criteria established in the OPORD/FRAGO.
4. Displace to alternate, supplementary, and subsequent positions in accordance with disengagement criteria established in the OPORD/FRAGO.
5. Conduct local counterattacks as appropriate.
6. Conduct combat reporting as appropriate.
7. Conduct consolidation and reorganization as appropriate.
8. Conduct resupply, recovery, and evacuation operations as necessary.
9. Employ obstacles (natural and man made) and mines to disrupt and delay enemy movement in coordination with fire support to destroy his reconnaissance elements and defeat his main attack.

REFERENCES:
1. FM 3-20.15 Tank Platoon
2. MCO 3500.27B W/ERRATUM Operational Risk Management
3. MCWP 3-12 Marine Corps Tank Employment

1812-TAC-2847: Defend a Strongpoint

EVALUATION-CODED: NO **SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL:** 12 months

BILLETS: Platoon Sergeant, Tank Commander

GRADES: SGT, SSGT, GYSGT

INITIAL TRAINING SETTING: MOJT

CONDITION: Given an M1A1 tank unit, a supported infantry unit, operations order directing the defense of a strongpoint, tactical scenario involving a coordinated enemy attack, specified threat, training area suitable for mechanized operations, and references.

STANDARD: From deliberate attack, forcing the enemy to end the attack by defeating or destroying his forces without allowing penetration of the strongpoint perimeter.

PERFORMANCE STEPS:
1. Establish security element.
2. Establish strongpoint defense on key terrain.
3. Develop integrated obstacle and fire support plan to disrupt enemy formations and destroy his forces outside the perimeter of the strongpoint.
4. Develop survivability plan that allows maneuver, fire support, and CSS assets to survive enemy artillery attacks and remain effective to defend the strongpoint.
5. Defend strongpoint against deliberate attack.

REFERENCES:
1. FM 3-20.15 Tank Platoon
2. MCO 3500.27B W/ERRATUM Operational Risk Management
3. MCWP 3-12 Marine Corps Tank Employment

1812-TAC-2848: Conduct a Positional Defense

EVALUATION-CODED: NO **SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL:** 12 months

BILLETS: Platoon Sergeant, Tank Commander

GRADES: SGT, SSGT, GYSGT

INITIAL TRAINING SETTING: MOJT

CONDITION: Given an M1A1 tank unit, a supported infantry unit, operations order directing a positional defense, tactical scenario involving a coordinated enemy attack, specified threat, training area suitable for

mechanized operations, and references.

STANDARD: Forcing the enemy to end the attack by defeating or destroying his forces without allowing penetration of the defensive position.

PERFORMANCE STEPS:
1. Establish security element to prevent enemy interference with the development of the position.
2. Employ obstacles (natural and man made) and mines to disrupt and delay enemy movement in coordination with fire support to destroy his reconnaissance elements and defeat his main attack.
3. Establish vehicle fighting positions to include fire sketch; at a minimum establish Target Reference Points (TRPs) by vehicle, element, and unit when conducting the hasty defense of a battle position.
4. Employ vehicle weapons to engage enemy troops and vehicles in accordance with engagement criteria established in the OPORD/FRAGO.
5. Employ supporting arms to disrupt enemy movement and establish suppression in accordance with engagement criteria established in the OPORD/FRAGO.
6. Displace to alternate, supplementary, and subsequent positions in accordance with disengagement criteria established in the OPORD/FRAGO.
7. Conduct local counterattacks as appropriate.
8. Conduct combat reporting as appropriate.
9. Conduct consolidation and reorganization as appropriate.
10. Conduct resupply, recovery, and evacuation operations as necessary.

REFERENCES:
1. FM 3-20.15 Tank Platoon
2. MCO 3500.27B W/ERRATUM Operational Risk Management
3. MCWP 3-12 Marine Corps Tank Employment

1812-TAC-2849: Defend in Sector

EVALUATION-CODED: NO **SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL:** 12 months

BILLETS: Platoon Sergeant, Tank Commander

GRADES: SGT, SSGT, GYSGT

INITIAL TRAINING SETTING: FORMAL

CONDITION: Given an M1A1 tank unit, a supported infantry unit, operations order directing the defense of a sector, tactical scenario involving a deliberate enemy attack, specified threat, training area suitable for mechanized operations, and references.

STANDARD: By employing fire support and obstacle assets with a minimum of maneuver, defeating the enemy attack forward of the original position with minimal loss of personnel, equipment and terrain.

PERFORMANCE STEPS:
1. Establish security element to prevent enemy interference with the development of the position.
2. Establish vehicle and element positions based on scheme of defense.
3. Establish integrated obstacle and fire support plan to defeat or destroy

enemy forces within the sector.
4. Establish Target Reference Points (TRPs), decision points, engagement and disengagement criteria for the sector.
5. Direct fires to disrupt, suppress and destroy enemy units.
6. Direct displacement of maneuver and CSS elements as necessary.

REFERENCES:
1. FM 3-20.15 Tank Platoon
2. MCO 3500.27B W/ERRATUM Operational Risk Management
3. MCWP 3-12 Marine Corps Tank Employment

1812-TAC-2850: Conduct a Perimeter Defense

EVALUATION-CODED: NO **SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL:** 12 months

BILLETS: Platoon Sergeant, Tank Commander

GRADES: SGT, SSGT, GYSGT

INITIAL TRAINING SETTING: MOJT

CONDITION: Given an M1A1 tank unit, a supported infantry unit, operations order directing a perimeter defense, tactical scenario involving a deliberate enemy attack, specified threat, training area suitable for mechanized operations, and references.

STANDARD: By employing fire support and obstacle assets with minimal maneuver, defeating the enemy attack forward of the original position with minimal loss of personnel, equipment and terrain.

PERFORMANCE STEPS:
1. Establish security element to prevent enemy interference with the development of the position.
2. Establish vehicle and element positions based on scheme of defense.
3. Establish integrated obstacle and fire support plan to defeat or destroy enemy forces within the sector.
4. Establish Target Reference Points (TRPs), decision points, engagement and disengagement criteria for the sector.
5. Direct fires to disrupt, suppress and destroy enemy units.
6. Direct displacement of maneuver and CSS elements as necessary.

REFERENCES:
1. FM 3-20.15 Tank Platoon
2. MCO 3500.27B W/ERRATUM Operational Risk Management
3. MCWP 3-12 Marine Corps Tank Employment

1812-TAC-2851: Conduct a Mobile Defense

EVALUATION-CODED: NO **SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL:** 12 months

BILLETS: Platoon Sergeant, Tank Commander

GRADES: SGT, SSGT, GYSGT

INITIAL TRAINING SETTING: MOJT

CONDITION: Given an M1A1 tank unit, a supported infantry unit, operations order directing a mobile defense, tactical scenario involving a coordinated enemy attack, specified threat, training area suitable for mechanized operations, and references.

STANDARD: Forcing the enemy to end the attack by defeating or destroying his forces without allowing penetration of the defensive position.

PERFORMANCE STEPS:
1. Establish security element to prevent enemy interference with the development of the position.
2. Employ obstacles (natural and man made) and mines to disrupt and delay enemy movement in coordination with fire support to destroy his reconnaissance elements and defeat his main attack.
3. Establish vehicle fighting positions to include fire sketch; at a minimum establish Target Reference Points (TRPs) by vehicle, element, and unit when conducting the hasty defense of a battle position.
4. Employ vehicle weapons to engage enemy troops and vehicles in accordance with engagement criteria established in the OPORD/FRAGO.
5. Employ supporting arms to disrupt enemy movement and establish suppression in accordance with engagement criteria established in the OPORD/FRAGO.
6. Displace to alternate, supplementary, and subsequent positions in accordance with disengagement criteria established in the OPORD/FRAGO.
7. Conduct local counterattacks as appropriate.
8. Conduct combat reporting as appropriate.
9. Conduct consolidation and reorganization as appropriate.
10. Conduct resupply, recovery, and evacuation operations as necessary.

REFERENCES:
1. FM 3-20.15 Tank Platoon
2. MCO 3500.27B W/ERRATUM Operational Risk Management
3. MCWP 3-12 Marine Corps Tank Employment

1812-TAC-2852: Conduct a Delay

EVALUATION-CODED: NO **SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL:** 12 months

BILLETS: Platoon Sergeant, Tank Commander

GRADES: SGT, SSGT, GYSGT

INITIAL TRAINING SETTING: MOJT

CONDITION: Given an M1A1 tank unit, a supported infantry unit, operations order directing a delay, tactical scenario involving direct pressure from an enemy force not capable of overwhelming your delaying effort, specified threat, training area suitable for mechanized operations, and references.

STANDARD: So the enemy will be delayed forward of the designated phase line until the time specified in the OPORD and so the unit has enough combat power at the conclusion of the delay to conduct other operations.

PERFORMANCE STEPS:

1. Analyze operations order directing delay.
2. Issue warning order.
3. Develop a plan for the delay that identifies normal defensive operational considerations and designations; additionally a delay should: maximize the use of natural and man made obstacles to disrupt enemy formations and movement and expose him to direct and indirect fires to destroy him forward of the battle positions; supporting arms, in particular smoke, should be used to screen friendly movement as much as possible; disengagement criteria should direct maneuver elements in contact with the enemy to conduct battle handover with friendly elements in supporting battle positions and displace along designated routes without suffering significant losses; decisive engagement is to be avoided; and terrain is sacrificed to gain time.
4. Begin movement to defensive positions and preparation for defensive operations.
5. Coordinate with adjacent units to ensure mutual support and prevent enemy from bypassing your position.
6. Establish forward security elements to detect enemy forces while preparing the delay.
7. Conduct reconnaissance of zone, routes, and battle positions.
8. Complete planning and issue operations order for delay.
9. Prepare and occupy delaying positions.
10. Conduct rehearsals as time permits.
11. Delay enemy forces in zone by conducting battle handover between elements in subsequent battle positions and engagement areas.
12. Conduct combat reporting as required.

REFERENCES:

1. FM 3-20.15 Tank Platoon
2. MCO 3500.27B W/ERRATUM Operational Risk Management
3. MCWP 3-12 Marine Corps Tank Employment

1812-TAC-2853: Conduct a Withdrawal

EVALUATION-CODED: NO **SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL:** 12 months

BILLETS: Platoon Sergeant, Tank Commander

GRADES: SGT, SSGT, GYSGT

INITIAL TRAINING SETTING: MOJT

CONDITION: Given an M1A1 tank unit, a supported infantry unit, operations order directing a withdrawal, tactical scenario involving enemy pressure, specified threat, training area suitable for mechanized operations, and references.

STANDARD: Under enemy pressure with minimum loss of personnel and equipment and breaking contact with enemy forces as directed in the OPORD.

PERFORMANCE STEPS:

1. Analyze operations order directing withdrawal.
2. Issue warning order.

3. Develop a plan for the withdrawal that identifies normal defensive operational considerations and designations; additionally a withdrawal should: establish disengagement criteria for maneuver elements in contact with the enemy to conduct a battle handover with friendly elements in supporting battle positions and displace along routes without suffering significant losses; establish routes and other appropriate control measures to allow the unit to conduct a tactical road march with minimal pressure; and establish a rear guard force to protect the unit in case of an enemy attack.
4. Conduct reconnaissance of zone, routes, and defensive positions with quartering party as appropriate.
5. Execute withdrawal, conducting tactical road march to designated positions.
6. Conduct combat reporting as required.
7. Implement deception plan as appropriate.

REFERENCES:
1. FM 3-20.15 Tank Platoon
2. MCO 3500.27B W/ERRATUM Operational Risk Management
3. MCWP 3-12 Marine Corps Tank Employment

1812-TAC-2854: Conduct a Retirement

EVALUATION-CODED: NO **SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL:** 12 months

BILLETS: Platoon Sergeant, Tank Commander

GRADES: SGT, SSGT, GYSGT

INITIAL TRAINING SETTING: MOJT

CONDITION: Given an M1A1 tank unit, a supported infantry unit, operations order directing a retirement, tactical scenario involving no enemy activity, specified threat, training area suitable for mechanized operations, and references.

STANDARD: To designated positions as directed by the commander.

PERFORMANCE STEPS:
1. Analyze operations order directing retirement.
2. Issue warning order.
3. Develop movement orders for the unit based on a tactical road march; coordinate with unit providing immediate security between your unit and the enemy. Ensure security throughout the movement. Coordinate with any friendly units along the route of movement. Establish rear guard/security force to cover the unit's movements.
4. Conduct movement as directed to designated positions.
5. Conduct combat reporting as required.

REFERENCES:
1. FM 3-20.15 Tank Platoon
2. MCO 3500.27B W/ERRATUM Operational Risk Management
3. MCWP 3-12 Marine Corps Tank Employment

1812-TAC-2855: Conduct Breakout From Encirclement

EVALUATION-CODED: NO **SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL:** 12 months

BILLETS: Platoon Sergeant, Tank Commander

GRADES: SGT, SSGT, GYSGT

INITIAL TRAINING SETTING: MOJT

CONDITION: Given an M1A1 tank unit, a supported infantry unit, operations order directing a breakout from an encirclement, tactical scenario involving a unit encircled by enemy forces, friendly unit that can not relieve the encircled force but can conduct a battle handover with them at a designated position, specified treat, training area suitable for mechanized operations, and references.

STANDARD: To evacuate all dead and wounded personnel if possible, destroy all equipment designated to be left behind, move as many CSS assets as possible and conduct a battle handover with a stationary friendly unit.

PERFORMANCE STEPS:

1. Issue warning order to unit.
2. Task organize to establish elements to serve as: assault force, security force, CSS element and escort, rear guard, and reserve element.
3. Coordinate with friendly force outside the encirclement for link up/battle handover, including: control measures, frequencies, call signs, and recognition signals, fire support, and CSS requirements upon link up.
4. Plan breakout to include: assault on enemy at break out point, consolidation, security, and movement of CSS assets, rear guard/reserve to protect movement, disengagement from enemy forces if possible, movement from encirclement and link up with the nearest friendly unit, battle handover with stationary friendly unit, transportation of dead and wounded from perimeter before and during the breakout, destruction of equipment designated to be left behind, procedures for mechanical casualties during breakout and movement, and procedures for MEDEVACS during breakout and movement.
5. Conduct assault of enemy position at break out point.
6. Move security force elements out of perimeter to defensible position that can cover the break out and the movement of the CSS elements.
7. Move CSS element with security to position established by security force.
8. Assault force holds breach open while reserve/rear guard breaks contact and exits old perimeter.
9. Reserve/rear guard conduct battle handover with assault force.
10. Assault force disengages from the enemy at battle handover and links up with designated friendly unit as directed, based on its current strength, mobility, and ability to conduct further operations. Assault force may be absorbed into one of the other elements.
11. Breakout unit conducts disengagement if possible and movement with all around security to designated friendly unit for link up and battle hand over.
12. Breakout unit conducts link up and battle handover with designated friendly unit.
13. Breakout unit conducts rearward passage of lines and moves to assembly area to conduct consolidation and reorganization in anticipation of

further operations.

REFERENCES:
1. FM 3-20.15 Tank Platoon
2. MCO 3500.27B W/ERRATUM Operational Risk Management
3. MCWP 3-12 Marine Corps Tank Employment

1812-TAC-2856: Conduct a Relief in Place

EVALUATION-CODED: NO **SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL:** 12 months

BILLETS: Platoon Sergeant, Tank Commander

GRADES: SGT, SSGT, GYSGT

INITIAL TRAINING SETTING: FORMAL

CONDITION: Given an M1A1 tank unit, a supported infantry unit, operations order directing a relief in place, tactical scenario involving minimal enemy pressure, specified threat, training area suitable for mechanized operations, and references.

STANDARD: Minimizing the possibility of detection by the enemy, and continuing the mission of the relieved unit without loss of combat readiness or security.

PERFORMANCE STEPS:
1. Issue warning order to elements.
2. Analyze OPORD.
3. Establish liaison with other unit.
4. Establish command relationship between the stationary and moving unit; define responsibility for: fire support, barrier plan, controlling movement during relief, and methods and criteria for passing control.
5. Establish schedule of movement that maintains security, unit integrity, and dispersion.
6. Establish routes, assembly areas, positions, and priority of movement along the routes.
7. Coordinate as normal a pattern of activity as possible.
8. Stationary unit provides relief force with detailed defense plan to include: barrier and obstacle plan, minefields, observation and listening post locations, fire support plan, deception plan if applicable, known enemy positions and latest assessment.
9. Units exchange communication plan to include: frequencies and call signs, recognition signals (far, near, day, night), challenge and passwords, authentication procedures, reporting procedures and formats, and brevity codes.
10. Coordinate for any supplies being left by stationary unit to include: fuel, ammunition, medical supplies, and engineering materials.
11. Locate a forward CP for the relieving force with the stationary force to facilitate coordination and control.
12. Develop contingency plans for actions in the event of enemy attack prior to, during, and after the completion of the relief.
13. Use guides as necessary.
14. Relieve stationary security elements last in the process.

15. Fire support assets for the stationary unit remain in place to support the entire relief.
16. Account for all personnel and equipment before completing relief.

REFERENCES:
1. FM 3-20.15 Tank Platoon
2. MCO 3500.27B W/ERRATUM Operational Risk Management
3. MCWP 3-12 Marine Corps Tank Employment

1812-TAC-2857: Conduct a Battle Handover

EVALUATION-CODED: NO **SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL:** 12 months

BILLETS: Platoon Sergeant, Tank Commander

GRADES: SGT, SSGT, GYSGT

INITIAL TRAINING SETTING: MOJT

CONDITION: Given an M1A1 tank unit, a supported infantry unit, another unit with which to conduct the handover, operations order directing the handover between the units, tactical scenario, specified threat, and training area suitable for mechanized operations.

STANDARD: Per the references.

PERFORMANCE STEPS:
1. Establish liaison with stationary/moving unit as appropriate.
2. Coordinate for frequencies, call signs, and recognition signals.
3. Coordinate routes and other control measures.
4. Exchange obstacle and fire support plans.
5. Coordinate for use of guides as necessary.
6. Moving unit approaches and establishes contact with stationary unit.
7. Stationary unit alerts elements of approach of friendly unit, status becomes weapons tight.
8. Stationary unit provides guides through their barriers in order to expedite movement.
9. Stationary unit controls movement and is responsible for coordinating responses to enemy action.
10. Moving unit announces when all elements are cleared of stationary unit.
11. Moving unit enters stationary positions. Stationary unit provides copies of sketch cards, route plans, fire support plans, to new unit.

REFERENCES:
1. FM 3-20.15 Tank Platoon
2. MCO 3500.27B W/ERRATUM Operational Risk Management
3. MCWP 3-12 Marine Corps Tank Employment

1812-TAC-2858: Conduct a Counterattack

EVALUATION-CODED: NO **SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL:** 12 months

BILLETS: Platoon Sergeant, Tank Commander

GRADES: SGT, SSGT, GYSGT

INITIAL TRAINING SETTING: FORMAL

CONDITION: Given an M1A1 tank unit and a supported infantry unit serving as the reserve, operations order directing a counterattack, a tactical scenario involving an enemy force attacking friendly defensive positions, specified threat, training area suitable for mechanized operations, and references.

STANDARD: Against enemy units in order to destroy his attack and preserve friendly defensive positions.

PERFORMANCE STEPS:

1. Develop plan for employment of reserve in a counterattack; the plan should include: frequencies, call signs, and recognition signals of units operating in zones and areas where reserve may be committed, appropriate alert status as directed by headquarters controlling reserve operations, rehearsals of routes to be used during reserve operations to the extent possible, control measures, obstacle plans, fire support plans, and brevity codes to prevent fratricide, and command relationships in the event of counterattack.
2. Issue warning order to reserve element to serve as counterattack.
3. Employ supporting arms to seal the point of enemy penetration and disrupt the enemy formations.
4. Conduct a passage of lines through friendly units to the counterattack forces LOD.
5. Conduct coordinated attack against enemy forces to defeat their efforts and restore the original position.
6. Conduct consolidation and reorganization as appropriate.

REFERENCES:

1. FM 3-20.15 Tank Platoon
2. MCO 3500.27B W/ERRATUM Operational Risk Management
3. MCWP 3-12 Marine Corps Tank Employment

1812-TAC-2859: Conduct a Passage of Lines

EVALUATION-CODED: NO **SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL:** 12 months

BILLETS: Platoon Sergeant, Tank Commander

GRADES: SGT, SSGT, GYSGT

INITIAL TRAINING SETTING: FORMAL

CONDITION: Given an M1A1 tank unit, a stationary unit, operations order directing a passage of lines, tactical scenario involving limited enemy activity, specified threat, training area suitable for mechanized operations, and references.

STANDARD: So that movement does not disrupt the stationary unit's defense and the moving unit is not surprised or disrupted by enemy activity.

PERFORMANCE STEPS:

1. Establish liaison with stationary/moving unit as appropriate; liaison should exchange the following information: designation and types of units to pass, battle handover line location and point or time at which handover is complete, mission for each unit and concept of operations with rationale, NBC contamination (if any), fire support plans and control measures to include when fire control lines transfer, threat assessment, friendly locations (day and night), OPs and patrol routes, lanes, routes, and passage points, obstacles (location and type), assembly areas and attack positions, CS and CSS locations by type and mission, recognition signals and communication plans.
2. Coordinate for use of guides as necessary.
3. Moving unit approaches establishes contact with stationary unit.
4. Stationary unit provides guides through their barriers in order to expedite movement.
5. Stationary unit alerts elements of approach of friendly unit, status becomes weapons tight.
6. Stationary unit controls movement and is responsible for coordinating responses to enemy action.
7. Moving unit announces when all elements are cleared of stationary position.

REFERENCES:

1. FM 3-20.15 Tank Platoon
2. MCO 3500.27B W/ERRATUM Operational Risk Management
3. MCWP 3-12 Marine Corps Tank Employment

1812-TAC-2860: Conduct a Spoiling Attack

EVALUATION-CODED: NO **SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL:** 12 months

BILLETS: Platoon Sergeant, Tank Commander

GRADES: SGT, SSGT, GYSGT

INITIAL TRAINING SETTING: MOJT

CONDITION: Given an M1A1 tank unit, a supported infantry unit, operations order directing a spoiling attack, tactical scenario involving an enemy unit accumulating reserves for the purpose of conducting a counterattack, specified threat, training area suitable for mechanized operations, and references.

STANDARD: On the enemy's reserves in order to prevent him from organizing and conducting a counterattack against friendly forces.

PERFORMANCE STEPS:

1. Conduct hasty attack designed to disrupt enemy reserve formations.
2. Do not become decisively engaged.
3. Destroy or disrupt enemy reserve formations in order to prevent them from interfering with the main friendly effort.

REFERENCES:
1. FM 3-20.15 Tank Platoon
2. MCO 3500.27B W/ERRATUM Operational Risk Management
3. MCWP 3-12 Marine Corps Tank Employment

1812-TAC-2861: Conduct Guard Operations

EVALUATION-CODED: NO **SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL:** 12 months

BILLETS: Platoon Sergeant, Tank Commander

GRADES: SGT, SSGT, GYSGT

INITIAL TRAINING SETTING: FORMAL

CONDITION: Given an M1A1 tank unit, an operations order directing guard operations, a tactical scenario, specified threat, training area suitable for mechanized operations, and references.

STANDARD: Against the enemy's attacks to disrupt his formations and prevent his penetration forward of the guard line.

PERFORMANCE STEPS:
1. Establish vehicle fighting positions to include fire plans, if time permits; at a minimum establish Target Reference Points (TRPs) by vehicle, element, and unit when conducting the hasty defense of a battle position.
2. Employ supporting arms to disrupt enemy movement and establish suppression in accordance with engagement criteria established in the OPORD/FRAGO.
3. Employ vehicle weapons to destroy enemy troops and vehicles in accordance with engagement criteria established in the OPORD/FRAGO.
4. Displace to alternate, supplementary, and subsequent positions in accordance with disengagement criteria established in the OPORD/FRAGO.
5. Conduct local counterattacks as appropriate.
6. Conduct combat reporting as appropriate.
7. Conduct consolidation and reorganization as appropriate.

REFERENCES:
1. FM 3-20.15 Tank Platoon
2. FM 3-90.1 Tank and Mechanized Infantry Company Team
3. MCO 3500.27B W/ERRATUM Operational Risk Management
4. MCWP 3-12 Marine Corps Tank Employment

1812-TAC-2862: Conduct Screen Operations

EVALUATION-CODED: NO **SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL:** 12 months

BILLETS: Platoon Sergeant, Tank Commander

GRADES: SGT, SSGT, GYSGT

INITIAL TRAINING SETTING: FORMAL

CONDITION: Given an M1A1 tank unit, operations order directing screen operations, a tactical scenario, specified threat, training area suitable for mechanized operations, and references.

STANDARD: To maintain surveillance on the enemy, provide early warning to the higher commander, and impede and harass the enemy's advance.

PERFORMANCE STEPS:
1. Establish vehicle fighting positions to include fire plans, if time permits; at a minimum establish Target Reference Points (TRPs) by vehicle, element, and unit when conducting the hasty defense of a battle position.
2. Employ supporting arms to disrupt enemy movement and establish suppression in accordance with engagement criteria established in the OPORD/FRAGO.
3. Employ vehicle weapons to destroy enemy troops and vehicles in accordance with engagement criteria established in the OPORD/FRAGO.
4. Displace to alternate, supplementary, and subsequent positions in accordance with disengagement criteria established in the OPORD/FRAGO.
5. Conduct local counterattacks as appropriate.
6. Conduct combat reporting as appropriate.
7. Conduct consolidation and reorganization as appropriate.

REFERENCES:
1. FM 3-20.15 Tank Platoon
2. FM 3-90.1 Tank and Mechanized Infantry Company Team
3. MCO 3500.27B W/ERRATUM Operational Risk Management
4. MCWP 3-12 Marine Corps Tank Employment

1812-TAC-2863: Conduct Reconnaissance by Fire

EVALUATION-CODED: NO **SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL:** 12 months

BILLETS: Platoon Sergeant, Tank Commander

GRADES: SGT, SSGT, GYSGT

INITIAL TRAINING SETTING: FORMAL

CONDITION: Given an M1A1 tank unit, a supported unit, operations order, tactical scenario, training area, and references.

STANDARD: To expose enemy positions.

PERFORMANCE STEPS:
1. Scan area to determine likely enemy positions.
2. Assign element(s) to provide overwatch for unit.
3. Assign element to direct fires at suspected enemy position.
4. Develop situation based on enemy response.

REFERENCES:
1. FM 3-20.15 Tank Platoon
2. MCO 3500.27B W/ERRATUM Operational Risk Management
3. MCWP 3-12 Marine Corps Tank Employment

1812-TAC-2864: Conduct an Attack by Fire

EVALUATION-CODED: NO **SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL:** 12 months

BILLETS: Platoon Sergeant, Tank Commander

GRADES: SGT, SSGT, GYSGT

INITIAL TRAINING SETTING: FORMAL

CONDITION: Given an M1A1 tank unit, a supported unit, operations order, tactical scenario, training area, and references.

STANDARD: To support the commander's intent and scheme of maneuver.

PERFORMANCE STEPS:
1. Establish firing position with overwatch or security element.
2. Scan area to determine known enemy positions.
3. Observe appropriate control measures to unit to control: target area/beaten zone, priority of targets, rate of fire, and primary and alternate signals.
4. Engage enemy unit with fires in order to destroy or defeat his forces on the assigned objective.

REFERENCES:
1. FM 3-20.15 Tank Platoon
2. MCO 3500.27B W/ERRATUM Operational Risk Management
3. MCWP 3-12 Marine Corps Tank Employment

1812-TAC-2865: Conduct a Support by Fire

EVALUATION-CODED: NO **SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL:** 12 months

BILLETS: Platoon Sergeant, Tank Commander

GRADES: SGT, SSGT, GYSGT

INITIAL TRAINING SETTING: FORMAL

CONDITION: Given an M1A1 tank unit, a supported unit, operations order, tactical scenario, training area, and references.

STANDARD: To suppress the enemy and allow the supported unit to conduct its mission without casualties from fratricide.

PERFORMANCE STEPS:
1. Establish firing position with overwatch or security element.
2. Scan area to determine known enemy positions.
3. Observe appropriate control measures to unit to control: target area/beaten zone, priority of targets, rate of fire, and primary and alternate signals.
4. Engage enemy unit with fires in order to suppress or neutralize his forces on the assigned objective.
5. Lift or shift fires on order from assaulting element.

REFERENCES:
1. FM 3-20.15 Tank Platoon
2. MCO 3500.27B W/ERRATUM Operational Risk Management
3. MCWP 3-12 Marine Corps Tank Employment

1812-TAC-2866: Prepare Tank for Employment in Urban Terrain

EVALUATION-CODED: NO **SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL:** 12 months

BILLETS: Platoon Sergeant, Tank Commander

GRADES: SGT, SSGT, GYSGT

INITIAL TRAINING SETTING: MOJT

CONDITION: Given an M1A1 tank, a supported unit, operations order, tactical scenario involving urban terrain, specified threat, training area, appropriate collateral equipment, and references.

STANDARD: To support the commander's intent and scheme of maneuver.

PERFORMANCE STEPS:
1. Secure hatches.

REFERENCES:
1. FM 3-20.15 Tank Platoon
2. MCO 3500.27B W/ERRATUM Operational Risk Management
3. MCWP 3-12 Marine Corps Tank Employment
4. MCWP 3-35.3 Military Operations on Urbanized Terrain

1812-TAC-2867: Conduct a Launch Site Reconnaissance

EVALUATION-CODED: NO **SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL:** 12 months

BILLETS: Tank Crewman

GRADES: PFC, LCPL, CPL, SGT

INITIAL TRAINING SETTING: FORMAL

CONDITION: Given an M1A1 tank unit, AVLB attached, operations order, a tactical scenario requiring an attack across broken terrain, specified threat, and references.

STANDARD: To determine the site's suitability for employing the M60A1 AVLB in support of the operation.

REFERENCES:
1. FM 3-20.15 Tank Platoon
2. MCO 3500.27B W/ERRATUM Operational Risk Management
3. MCWP 3-12 Marine Corps Tank Employment
4. TM 5-5420-202-10 Operator's Manual for M-60 AVLB
5. TM 5-5420-203-14 Operator's Manual for AVLB

1812-TAC-2868: Select a Launch Site

EVALUATION-CODED: NO **SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL:** 12 months

BILLETS: Tank Crewman

GRADES: PFC, LCPL, CPL, SGT

INITIAL TRAINING SETTING: FORMAL

CONDITION: Given an M1A1 tank unit, AVLB attached, operations order, a tactical scenario requiring an attack across broken terrain with a wet or dry gap of 57 feet or less, specified threat, and references.

STANDARD: So that it allows for a successful and timely launch and for the entire unit to cross the gap as safely and quickly as possible.

PERFORMANCE STEPS:
1. Determine the width of the gap.
2. Evaluate far shore and near shore banks.
3. Evaluate access and obstacles.
4. Evaluate slope and approach.
5. Determine best launch site based on evaluated criteria.

REFERENCES:
1. FM 3-20.15 Tank Platoon
2. MCO 3500.27B W/ERRATUM Operational Risk Management
3. MCWP 3-12 Marine Corps Tank Employment
4. TM 5-5420-202-10 Operator's Manual for M-60 AVLB
5. TM 5-5420-203-14 Operator's Manual for AVLB

1812-TAC-2869: Launch the Bridge Across a Gap

EVALUATION-CODED: NO **SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL:** 12 months

BILLETS: Tank Crewman

GRADES: PFC, LCPL, CPL, SGT

INITIAL TRAINING SETTING: FORMAL

CONDITION: Assigned as an M60A1 AVLB operator, given an M60A1 AVLB, a wet or dry gap of 57 feet or less, and references.

STANDARD: Launch the bridge across a gap within 5 minutes of arriving at the gap as per TM 5-5420-202-10 and without allowing the far end of the bridge to rise over 36" above the far shore bank height.

PERFORMANCE STEPS:
1. Position AVLB.
2. Lock brakes.
3. Engage hydraulic pump.
4. Hold engine speed constant at 1800 rpm.
5. Unlock brakes.

6. Swing bridge up to vertical.
7. Open bridge.
8. Deploy bridge.

REFERENCES:
1. MCO 3500.27B W/ERRATUM Operational Risk Management
2. MCWP 3-12 Marine Corps Tank Employment
3. MCWP 3-12.1 (FM 17-15) Tank Platoon
4. TM 5-5420-202-10 Operator's Manual for M-60 AVLB
5. TM 5-5420-203-14 Operator's Manual for AVLB

1812-TAC-2870: Advise Supported Unit Commander on Tank Employment in Night/Limited Visibility Operations

EVALUATION-CODED: NO **SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL:** 12 months

BILLETS: Platoon Sergeant, Tank Commander

GRADES: SGT, SSGT, GYSGT

INITIAL TRAINING SETTING: FORMAL

CONDITION: Given an M1A1 tank unit, a supported unit, operations order, tactical scenario involving night or limited visibility conditions, specified threat, training area, appropriate collateral equipment, and references.

STANDARD: To support the commander's intent and scheme of maneuver.

PERFORMANCE STEPS:
1. Advise on night vision capabilities organic to the tank and the unit.
2. Advise on Tactics, Techniques, and Procedures (TTPs), established by the unit for night/limited visibility operations.
3. Advise on control measures required for mechanized forces in night/limited visibility operations.
4. Advise on CSS requirements for night/limited visibility operations.

REFERENCES:
1. FM 3-20.15 Tank Platoon
2. MCO 3500.27B W/ERRATUM Operational Risk Management
3. MCWP 3-12 Marine Corps Tank Employment

1812-TAC-2871: Advise Supported Unit Commander on Tank Employment in Jungles and Heavy Forest

EVALUATION-CODED: NO **SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL:** 12 months

BILLETS: Platoon Sergeant, Tank Commander

GRADES: SGT, SSGT, GYSGT

INITIAL TRAINING SETTING: MOJT

CONDITION: Given an M1A1 tank unit, a supported unit, operations order, tactical scenario involving jungle or heavy forests, specified threat, training area, appropriate collateral equipment, and references.

STANDARD: To support the commander's intent and scheme of maneuver.

PERFORMANCE STEPS:
1. Advise on Tactics, Techniques, and Procedures (TTPs), established by the unit for operations in jungles and heavy forests.
2. Advise on control measures required for mechanized forces in operations in jungles and heavy forests.
3. Advise on CSS requirements for operations in jungle and heavy forests.

REFERENCES:
1. MCO 3500.27B W/ERRATUM Operational Risk Management
2. MCWP 3-12 Marine Corps Tank Employment
3. MCWP 3-35.5 Jungle Operations

1812-TAC-2872: Advise Supported Unit Commander on Tank Employment in River Crossings

EVALUATION-CODED: NO **SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL:** 12 months

BILLETS: Platoon Sergeant, Tank Commander

GRADES: SGT, SSGT, GYSGT

INITIAL TRAINING SETTING: MOJT

CONDITION: Given an M1A1 tank unit, a supporting engineer unit, operations order, tactical scenario involving river crossings, specified threat, training area, appropriate collateral equipment, and references.

STANDARD: To support the commander's intent and scheme of maneuver.

PERFORMANCE STEPS:
1. Advise on Tactics, Techniques, and Procedures (TTPs), established by the unit for river crossings.
2. Advise on control measures required for mechanized forces in river crossings.
3. Advise on CSS requirements for river crossings.

REFERENCES:
1. FM 3-20.15 Tank Platoon
2. MCWP 3-12 Marine Corps Tank Employment
3. MCWP 3-17.1 River-Crossing Operations

1812-TAC-2873: Advise Supported Unit Commander on Tank Employment in Urban Terrain

EVALUATION-CODED: NO **SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL:** 12 months

BILLETS: Platoon Sergeant, Tank Commander

GRADES: SGT, SSGT, GYSGT

INITIAL TRAINING SETTING: FORMAL

CONDITION: Given an M1A1 tank unit, a supported unit, operations order, tactical scenario involving urban terrain, specified threat, training area, appropriate collateral equipment, and references.

STANDARD: To support the commander's intent and scheme of maneuver.

PERFORMANCE STEPS:
1. Advise on Tactics, Techniques, and Procedures (TTPs), established by the unit for urban terrain operations.
2. Advise on control measures required for mechanized forces in urban terrain operations.
3. Advise on CSS requirements for urban terrain operations.

REFERENCES:
1. FM 3-20.15 Tank Platoon
2. MCO 3500.27B W/ERRATUM Operational Risk Management
3. MCWP 3-12 Marine Corps Tank Employment

1812-TAC-2874: Advise Supported Unit Commander on Tank Employment in Desert Operations

EVALUATION-CODED: NO **SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL:** 12 months

BILLETS: Platoon Sergeant, Tank Commander

GRADES: SGT, SSGT, GYSGT

INITIAL TRAINING SETTING: MOJT

CONDITION: Given an M1A1 tank unit, a supported unit, operations order, tactical scenario involving desert operations, specified threat, training area, appropriate collateral equipment, and references.

STANDARD: To support commander's intent and scheme of maneuver.

PERFORMANCE STEPS:
1. Advise on Tactics, Techniques, and Procedures (TTPs), established by the unit for desert operations.
2. Advise on control measures required for mechanized forces in desert operations.
3. Advise on CSS requirements for desert operations.

REFERENCES:
1. FM 3-20.15 Tank Platoon
2. MCO 3500.27B W/ERRATUM Operational Risk Management
3. MCWP 3-12 Marine Corps Tank Employment
4. MCWP 3-35.6 Desert Operations

1812-TAC-2875: Advise Supported Unit Commander on Tank Employment in Mountain Operations

EVALUATION-CODED: NO **SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL:** 12 months

BILLETS: Platoon Sergeant, Tank Commander

GRADES: SGT, SSGT, GYSGT

INITIAL TRAINING SETTING: MOJT

CONDITION: Given an M1A1 tank unit, a supported unit, operations order, tactical scenario involving mountain operations, specified threat, training area, appropriate collateral equipment, and references.

STANDARD: To support commander's intent and scheme of maneuver.

PERFORMANCE STEPS:
1. Advise on Tactics, Techniques, and Procedures (TTPs), established by the unit for mountain operations.
2. Advise on control measures required for mechanized forces in mountain operations.
3. Advise on CSS requirements for mountain operations.

REFERENCES:
1. FM 3-20.15 Tank Platoon
2. MCO 3500.27B W/ERRATUM Operational Risk Management
3. MCWP 3-12 Marine Corps Tank Employment
4. MCWP 3-35.2 Mountain Operations

1812-TAC-2876: Advise Supported Unit Commander on Tank Employment in Cold Weather Operations

EVALUATION-CODED: NO **SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL:** 12 months

BILLETS: Platoon Sergeant, Tank Commander

GRADES: SGT, SSGT, GYSGT

INITIAL TRAINING SETTING: MOJT

CONDITION: Given an M1A1 tank unit, a supported unit, operations order, tactical scenario involving cold weather, specified threat, training area, appropriate collateral equipment, and references.

STANDARD: To support commander's intent and scheme of maneuver.

PERFORMANCE STEPS:
1. Advise on Tactics, Techniques, and Procedures (TTPs), established by the unit for cold weather operations.
2. Advise on control measures required for mechanized forces in cold weather operations.
3. Advise on CSS requirements for cold weather operations.

REFERENCES:
1. FM 3-20.15 Tank Platoon
2. MCO 3500.27B W/ERRATUM Operational Risk Management
3. MCWP 3-12 Marine Corps Tank Employment
4. MCWP 3-35.1 Cold Weather Operations

1812-TAC-2877: Displace to Alternate Positions

EVALUATION-CODED: NO **SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL:** 12 months

BILLETS: Tank Crewman

GRADES: LCPL, CPL, SGT, SSGT, GYSGT

INITIAL TRAINING SETTING: MOJT

CONDITION: Given an M1A1 tank unit, a supported infantry unit, operations order directing the establishment of a defensive position, tactical scenario involving limited enemy activity in the next twenty-four hours, specified threat, training area suitable for mechanized operations, and references.

STANDARD: Along prescribed routes in day and night conditions, placing the vehicle in the prescribed position and validating the range card for that position.

PERFORMANCE STEPS:
1. Establish alternate positions to include sketch card and fire plan, marking the position for use in day or night, and rehearsing movement to the position.
2. Displace to alternate positions in accordance with disengagement criteria established in the OPORD/FRAGO.

REFERENCES:
1. FM 3-20.15 Tank Platoon
2. MCO 3500.27B W/ERRATUM Operational Risk Management
3. MCWP 3-12 Marine Corps Tank Employment

1812-TAC-2878: Displace to Subsequent Positions

EVALUATION-CODED: NO **SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL:** 12 months

BILLETS: Tank Crewman

GRADES: LCPL, CPL, SGT, SSGT, GYSGT

INITIAL TRAINING SETTING: MOJT

CONDITION: Given an M1A1 tank unit, a supported infantry unit, operations order directing the establishment of a defensive position, tactical scenario involving limited enemy activity in the next twenty-four hours, specified threat, training area suitable for mechanized operations, and references.

STANDARD: Along prescribed routes in day and night conditions, placing the vehicle in the prescribed position and validating the range card for that position.

PERFORMANCE STEPS:

1. Establish subsequent positions to include sketch card and fire plan, marking the position for use in day or night, and rehearsing movement to the position.
2. Displace to subsequent positions in accordance with disengagement criteria established in the OPORD/FRAGO.

REFERENCES:

1. FM 3-20.15 Tank Platoon
2. MCO 3500.27B W/ERRATUM Operational Risk Management
3. MCWP 3-12 Marine Corps Tank Employment